

# **SOLUTIONS MANUAL**

# **DIGITAL DESIGN**

**FOURTH EDITION**

**M. MORRIS MANO**

**California State University, Los Angeles**

**MICHAEL D. CILETTI**

**University of Colorado, Colorado Springs**

**rev 01/21/2007**

## CHAPTER 1

**1.1** Base-10: 16 17 18 19 20 21 22 23 24 25 26 27 28 29 30 31 32  
 Octal: 20 21 22 23 24 25 26 27 30 31 32 33 34 35 36 37 40  
 Hex: 10 11 12 13 14 15 16 17 18 19 1A 1B 1C 1D 1E 1F 20  
 Base-13 A B C 10 11 12 13 14 15 16 17 18 19 23 24 25 26

**1.2** (a) 32,768 (b) 67,108,864 (c) 6,871,947,674

**1.3**  $(4310)_5 = 4 * 5^3 + 3 * 5^2 + 1 * 5^1 = 580_{10}$   
 $(198)_{12} = 1 * 12^2 + 9 * 12^1 + 8 * 12^0 = 260_{10}$   
 $(735)_8 = 7 * 8^2 + 3 * 8^1 + 5 * 8^0 = 477_{10}$   
 $(525)_6 = 5 * 6^2 + 2 * 6^1 + 5 * 6^0 = 197_{10}$

**1.4** 14-bit binary: 11\_1111\_1111\_1111  
 Decimal:  $2^{14} - 1 = 16,383_{10}$   
 Hexadecimal: 3FFF<sub>16</sub>

**1.5** Let b = base

(a)  $14/2 = (b + 4)/2 = 5$ , so b = 6

(b)  $54/4 = (5*b + 4)/4 = b + 3$ , so  $5 * b = 52 - 4$ , and b = 8

(c)  $(2 * b + 4) + (b + 7) = 4b$ , so b = 11

**1.6**  $(x - 3)(x - 6) = x^2 - (6 + 3)x + 6*3 = x^2 - 11x + 22$

Therefore:  $6 + 3 = b + 1$  so b = 8

Also,  $6*3 = (18)_{10} = (22)_8$

**1.7**  $68BE = 0110\_1000\_1011\_1110 = 110\_100\_010\_111\_110 = (64276)_8$

**1.8** (a) Results of repeated division by 2 (quotients are followed by remainders):

$431_{10} = 215(1); 107(1); 53(1); 26(1); 13(0); 6(1) \quad 3(0) \quad 1(1)$

Answer:  $1111\_1010_2 = FA_{16}$

(b) Results of repeated division by 16:

$431_{10} = 26(15); 1(10)$  (Faster)

Answer: FA =  $1111\_1010$

**1.9** (a)  $10110.0101_2 = 16 + 4 + 2 + .25 + .0625 = 22.3125$

(b)  $16.5_{16} = 16 + 6 + 5*(.0615) = 22.3125$

(c)  $26.24_8 = 2 * 8 + 6 + 2/8 + 4/64 = 22.3125$

$$(d) FAFA.B_{16} = 15 \cdot 16^3 + 10 \cdot 16^2 + 15 \cdot 16 + 10 + 11/16 = 64,250.6875$$

$$(e) 1010.1010_2 = 8 + 2 + .5 + .125 = 10.625$$

**1.10** (a)  $1.10010_2 = 0001.1001_2 = 1.9_{16} = 1 + 9/16 = 1.563_{10}$

(b)  $110.010_2 = 0110.0100_2 = 6.4_{16} = 6 + 4/16 = 6.25_{10}$

Reason:  $110.010_2$  is the same as  $1.10010_2$  shifted to the left by two places.

**1.11**

$$\begin{array}{r} \underline{1011.11} \\ 101 \overline{) 111011.0000} \\ \underline{101} \phantom{0000} \\ 01001 \phantom{000} \\ \underline{101} \phantom{000} \\ 1001 \phantom{00} \\ \underline{101} \phantom{00} \\ 1000 \phantom{0} \\ \underline{101} \phantom{0} \\ 0110 \end{array}$$

The quotient is carried to two decimal places, giving  $1011.11$   
 Checking:  $111011_2 / 101_2 = 59_{10} / 5_{10} \cong 1011.11_2 = 58.75_{10}$

**1.12** (a) 10000 and 110111

$$\begin{array}{r} 1011 \\ +101 \\ \hline 10000 = 16_{10} \end{array} \qquad \begin{array}{r} 1011 \\ \times 101 \\ \hline 1011 \\ 1011 \\ \hline 110111 = 55_{10} \end{array}$$

(b)  $62_h$  and  $958_h$

$$\begin{array}{r} 2E_h \quad 0010\_1110 \\ +34_h \quad 0011\_0100 \\ \hline 62_h \quad 0110\_0010 = 98_{10} \end{array} \qquad \begin{array}{r} 2E_h \\ \times 34_h \\ \hline B^38 \\ \hline 8^2A \\ \hline 9\ 5\ 8_h = 2392_{10} \end{array}$$

**1.13** (a) Convert 27.315 to binary:

	Integer Quotient		Remainder	Coefficient
27/2 =	13	+	$\frac{1}{2}$	$a_0 = 1$
13/2	6	+	$\frac{1}{2}$	$a_1 = 1$
6/2	3	+	0	$a_2 = 0$
3/2	1	+	$\frac{1}{2}$	$a_3 = 1$
$\frac{1}{2}$	0	+	$\frac{1}{2}$	$a_4 = 1$

$$27_{10} = 11011_2$$

	Integer		Fraction	Coefficient
.315 x 2	= 0	+	.630	$a_1 = 0$
.630 x 2	= 1	+	.26	$a_2 = 1$
.26 x 2	= 0	+	.52	$a_3 = 0$
.52 x 2	= 1	+	.04	$a_4 = 1$

$$.315_{10} \cong .0101_2 = .25 + .0625 = .3125$$

$$27.315 \cong 11011.0101_2$$

**(b)**  $2/3 \cong .666666667$

	Integer		Fraction	Coefficient
.6666_6666_67 x 2	= 1	+	.3333_3333_34	$a_1 = 1$
.333333334 x 2	= 0	+	.6666666668	$a_2 = 0$
.6666666668 x 2	= 1	+	.333333336	$a_3 = 1$
.333333336 x 2	= 0	+	.6666666672	$a_4 = 0$
.6666666672 x 2	= 1	+	.333333344	$a_5 = 1$
.333333344 x 2	= 0	+	.6666666688	$a_6 = 0$
.6666666688 x 2	= 1	+	.333333376	$a_7 = 1$
.333333376 x 2	= 0	+	.6666666752	$a_8 = 0$

$$.666666667_{10} \cong .10101010_2 = .5 + .125 + .0313 + .0078 = .6641_{10}$$

$$.10101010_2 = .1010_2 = .AA_{16} = 10/16 + 10/256 = .6641_{10} \text{ (Same as (b)).}$$

**1.14**      **(a)**      1000\_0000      **(b)**      0000\_0000      **(c)**      1101\_1010  
1s comp: 0111\_1111      1s comp: 1111\_1111      1s comp: 0010\_0101  
2s comp: 1000\_0000      2s comp: 0000\_0000      2s comp: 0010\_0110

**(d)**      0111\_0110      **(e)**      1000\_0101      **(f)**      1111\_1111  
1s comp: 1000\_1001      1s comp: 0111\_1010      1s comp: 0000\_0000  
2s comp: 1000\_1010      2s comp: 0111\_1011      2s comp: 0000\_0001

**1.15**      **(a)**      52,784,630      **(b)**      63,325,600  
9s comp: 47,215,369      9s comp: 36,674,399  
10s comp: 47,215,370      10s comp: 36,674,400

**(c)**      25,000,000      **(d)**      00,000,000  
9s comp: 74,999,999      9s comp: 99,999,999  
10s comp: 75,000,000      10s comp: 00,000,000

**1.16**      B2FA      B2FA: 1011\_0010\_1111\_1010  
15s comp: 4D05      1s comp: 0100\_1101\_0000\_0101  
16s comp: 4D06      2s comp: 0100\_1101\_0000\_0110 = 4D06

**1.17**      **(a)**      3409 → 03409 → 96590 (9s comp) → 96591 (10s comp)  
06428 – 03409 = 06428 + 96591 = 03019

**(b)**      1800 → 01800 → 98199 (9s comp) → 98200 (10 comp)  
125 – 1800 = 00125 + 98200 = 98325 (negative)  
Magnitude: 1675  
Result: 125 – 1800 = 1675

(c)  $6152 \rightarrow 06152 \rightarrow 93847$  (9s comp)  $\rightarrow 93848$  (10s comp)  
 $2043 - 6152 = 02043 + 93848 = 95891$  (Negative)  
 Magnitude: 4109  
 Result:  $2043 - 6152 = -4109$

(d)  $745 \rightarrow 00745 \rightarrow 99254$  (9s comp)  $\rightarrow 99255$  (10s comp)  
 $1631 - 745 = 01631 + 99255 = 0886$  (Positive)  
 Result:  $1631 - 745 = 886$

**1.18** Note: Consider sign extension with 2s complement arithmetic.

<p>(a)</p> <p>10001</p> <p>1s comp: 01110</p> <p>2s comp: 01111</p> <p><u>10011</u></p> <p>Diff: 00010</p>	<p>(b)</p> <p>100011</p> <p>1s comp: 1011100 with sign extension</p> <p>2s comp: 1011101</p> <p><u>0100010</u></p> <p>1111111 sign bit indicates that the result is negative</p> <p>0000001 2s complement</p> <p>-000001 result</p>
<p>(c)</p> <p>101000</p> <p>1s comp: 1010111</p> <p>2s comp: 1011000</p> <p><u>001001</u></p> <p>Diff: 1100001 (negative)</p> <p>0011111 (2s comp)</p> <p>-011111 (diff is -31)</p>	<p>(d)</p> <p>10101</p> <p>1s comp: 1101010 with sign extension</p> <p>2s comp: 1101011</p> <p><u>110000</u></p> <p>0011011 sign bit indicates that the result is positive</p> <p>Check: <math>48 - 21 = 27</math></p>

**1.19**  $+9286 \rightarrow 009286$ ;  $+801 \rightarrow 000801$ ;  $-9286 \rightarrow 990714$ ;  $-801 \rightarrow 999199$

(a)  $(+9286) + (801) = 009286 + 000801 = 010087$

(b)  $(+9286) + (-801) = 009286 + 999199 = 008485$

(c)  $(-9286) + (+801) = 990714 + 000801 = 991515$

(d)  $(-9286) + (-801) = 990714 + 999199 = 989913$

**1.20**  $+49 \rightarrow 0\_110001$  (Needs leading zero indicate + value);  $+29 \rightarrow 0\_011101$  (Leading 0 indicates + value)  
 $-49 \rightarrow 1\_001111$ ;  $-29 \rightarrow 1\_100011$

(a)  $(+29) + (-49) = 0\_011101 + 1\_001111 = 1\_101100$  (1 indicates negative value.)  
 Magnitude =  $0\_010100$ ; Result  $(+29) + (-49) = -20$

(b)  $(-29) + (+49) = 1\_100011 + 0\_110001 = 0\_010100$  (0 indicates positive value)  
 $(-29) + (+49) = +20$

(c) Must increase word size by 1 (sign extension) to accomodate overflow of values:  
 $(-29) + (-49) = 11\_100011 + 11\_001111 = 10\_110010$  (1 indicates negative result)  
 Magnitude:  $1\_001110 = 78_{10}$   
 Result:  $(-29) + (-49) = -78$

**1.21** +9742 → 009742 → 990257 (9's comp) → 990258 (10s comp)  
+641 → 000641 → 999358 (9's comp) → 999359 (10s comp)

(a) (+9742) + (+641) → 010383

(b) (+9742) + (-641) → 009742 + 999359 = 009102  
Result: (+9742) + (-641) = 9102

(c) -9742 + (+641) = 990258 + 000641 = 990899 (negative)  
Magnitude: 009101  
Result: (-9742) + (641) = -9101

(d) (-9742) + (-641) = 990258 + 999359 = 989617 (Negative)  
Magnitude: 10383  
Result: (-9742) + (-641) = -10383

**1.22** 8,723  
BCD: 1000\_0111\_0010\_0011  
ASCII: 0\_011\_1000\_011\_0111\_011\_0010\_011\_0001

**1.23**

1000	0100	0010	( 842)
<u>0101</u>	<u>0011</u>	<u>0111</u>	(+537)
1101	0111	1001	
<u>0110</u>			
0001	0011	0111	0101 (1,379)

<b>1.24</b>	<b>(a)</b>	<b>(b)</b>
	6 3 1 1    Decimal	6 4 2 1    Decimal
	0 0 0 0    0	0 0 0 0    0
	0 0 0 1    1	0 0 0 1    1
	0 0 1 0    2	0 0 1 0    2
	0 1 0 0    3	0 0 1 1    3
	0 1 1 0    4 (or 0101)	0 1 0 0    4
	0 1 1 1    5	0 1 0 1    5
	1 0 0 0    6	1 0 0 0    6 (or 0110)
	1 0 1 0    7 (or 1001)	1 0 0 1    7
	1 0 1 1    8	1 0 1 0    8
	1 1 0 0    9	1 0 1 1    9

**1.25**

(a) 5,137 <sub>10</sub>	BCD: 0101_0011_0111
(b)	Excess-3: 1000_0100_0110_1010
(c)	2421: 1011_0001_0011_0111
(d)	6311: 0111_0001_0100_1001

**1.26** 5,137 9s Comp: 4,862  
2421 code: 0100\_1110\_1100\_1000  
1s comp: 1011\_0001\_0011\_0111 same as (c) in 1.25

**1.27** For a deck with 52 cards, we need 6 bits ( $32 < 52 < 64$ ). Let the msb's select the suit (e.g., diamonds, hearts, clubs, spades are encoded respectively as 00, 01, 10, and 11. The remaining four bits select the "number" of the card. Example: 0001 (ace) through 1011 (9), plus 101 through 1100 (jack, queen, king). This a jack of spades might be coded as 11\_1010. (Note: only 52 out of 64 patterns are used.)

**1.28** G (dot) (space) B o o l e  
01000111\_11101111\_01101000\_01101110\_00100000\_11000100\_11101111\_11100101

**1.29** Bill Gates

**1.30** 73 F4 E5 76 E5 4A EF 62 73

**73:** 0\_111\_0011 s  
**F4:** 1\_111\_0100 t  
**E5:** 1\_110\_0101 e  
**76:** 0\_111\_0110 v  
**E5:** 1\_110\_0101 e  
**4A:** 0\_100\_1010 j  
**EF:** 1\_110\_1111 o  
**62:** 0\_110\_0010 b  
**73:** 0\_111\_0011 s

**1.31**  $62 + 32 = 94$  printing characters

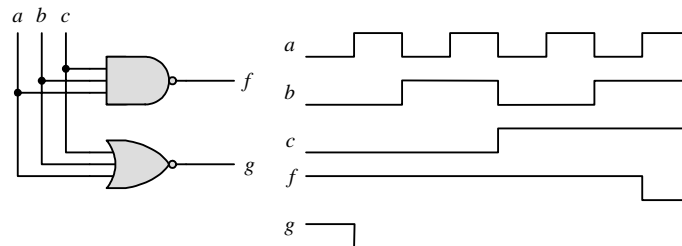
**1.32** bit 6 from the right

**1.33** (a) 897 (b) 564 (c) 871 (d) 2,199

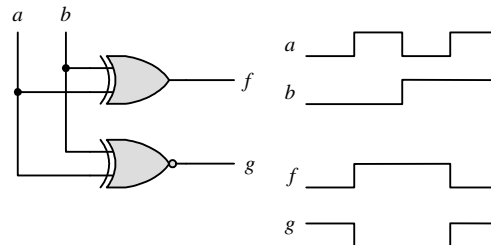
**1.34** ASCII for decimal digits with odd parity:

(0): 10110000 (1): 00110001 (2): 00110010 (3): 10110011  
(4): 00110100 (5): 10110101 (6): 10110110 (7): 00110111  
(8): 00111000 (9): 10111001

**1.35** (a)



**1.36**



## CHAPTER 2

### 2.1 (a)

$x y z$	$x + y + z$	$(x + y + z)'$	$x'$	$y'$	$z'$	$x' y' z'$	$x y z$	$(xyz)$	$(xyz)'$	$x'$	$y'$	$z'$	$x' + y' + z'$
000	0	1	1	1	1	1	000	0	1	1	1	1	1
001	1	0	1	1	0	0	001	0	1	1	1	0	1
010	1	0	1	0	1	0	010	0	1	1	0	1	1
011	1	0	1	0	0	0	011	0	1	1	0	0	1
100	1	0	0	1	1	0	100	0	1	0	1	1	1
101	1	0	0	1	0	0	101	0	1	0	1	0	1
110	1	0	0	0	1	0	110	0	1	0	0	1	1
111	1	0	0	0	0	0	111	1	0	0	0	0	0

### (b)

$x y z$	$x + yz$	$(x + y)$	$(x + z)$	$(x + y)(x + z)$
000	0	0	0	0
001	0	0	1	0
010	0	1	0	0
011	1	1	1	1
100	1	1	1	1
101	1	1	1	1
110	1	1	1	1
111	1	1	1	1

### (c)

$x y z$	$x(y + z)$	$xy$	$xz$	$xy + xz$
000	0	0	0	0
001	0	0	0	0
010	0	0	0	0
011	0	0	0	0
100	0	0	0	0
101	1	0	1	1
110	1	1	0	1
111	1	1	1	1

### (c)

$x y z$	$x$	$y + z$	$x + (y + z)$	$(x + y)$	$(x + y) + z$
000	0	0	0	0	0
001	0	1	1	0	1
010	0	1	1	1	1
011	0	1	1	1	1
100	1	0	1	1	1
101	1	1	1	1	1
110	1	1	1	1	1
111	1	1	1	1	1

### (d)

$x y z$	$yz$	$x(yz)$	$xy$	$(xy)z$
000	0	0	0	0
001	0	0	0	0
010	0	0	0	0
011	1	0	0	0
100	0	0	0	0
101	0	0	0	0
110	0	0	1	0
111	1	1	1	1

**2.2 (a)**  $xy + xy' = x(y + y') = x$

**(b)**  $(x + y)(x + y') = x + yy' = x(x + y') + y(x + y') = xx + xy' + xy + yy' = x$

**(c)**  $xyz + x'y + xyz' = xy(z + z') + x'y = xy + x'y = y$

**(d)**  $(A + B)'(A' + B') = (A'B')(A B) = (A'B')(BA) = A'(B'BA) = 0$

**(e)**  $xyz' + x'yz + xyz + x'yz' = xy(z + z') + x'y(z + z') = xy + x'y = y$

**(f)**  $(x + y + z')(x' + y' + z) = xx' + xy' + xz + x'y + yy' + yz + x'z' + y'z' + zz' = xy' + xz + x'y + yz + x'z' + y'z' = x \oplus y + (x \oplus z)' + (y \oplus z)'$

**2.3 (a)**  $ABC + A'B + ABC' = AB + A'B = B$



(b)  $x'yz + xz = (x'y + x)z = z(x + x')(x + y) = z(x + y)$

(c)  $(x + y)'(x' + y') = x'y'(x' + y') = x'y'$

(d)  $xy + x(wz + wz') = x(y + wz + wz') = x(w + y)$

(e)  $(BC' + A'D)(AB' + CD') = BC'AB' + BC'CD' + A'DAB' + A'DCD' = 0$

(f)  $(x + y' + z')(x' + z') = xx' + xz' + x'y' + y'z' + x'z' + z'z' = z' + y'(x' + z') = z' + x'y'$

2.4

(a)  $A'C' + ABC + AC' = C' + ABC = (C + C')(C' + AB) = AB + C'$

(b)  $(x'y' + z)' + z + xy + wz = (x'y')'z' + z + xy + wz = [(x + y)z' + z] + xy + wz = (z + z')(z + x + y) + xy + wz = z + wz + x + xy + y = z(1 + w) + x(1 + y) + y = x + y + z$

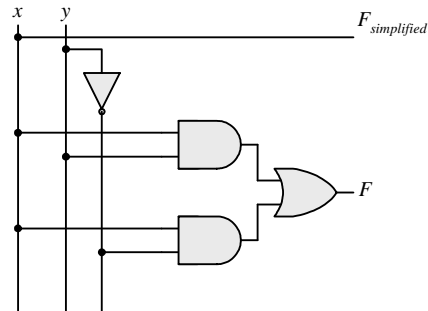
(c)  $A'B(D' + C'D) + B(A + A'CD) = B(A'D' + A'C'D + A + A'CD) = B(A'D' + A + A'D(C + C')) = B(A + A'(D' + D)) = B(A + A') = B$

(d)  $(A' + C)(A' + C')(A + B + C'D) = (A' + CC')(A + B + C'D) = A'(A + B + C'D) = AA' + A'B + A'C'D = A'(B + C'D)$

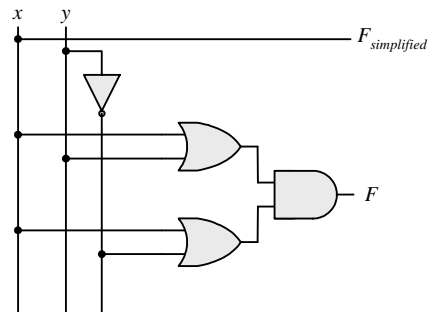
(e)  $ABCD + A'BD + ABC'D = ABD + A'BD = BD$

2.5

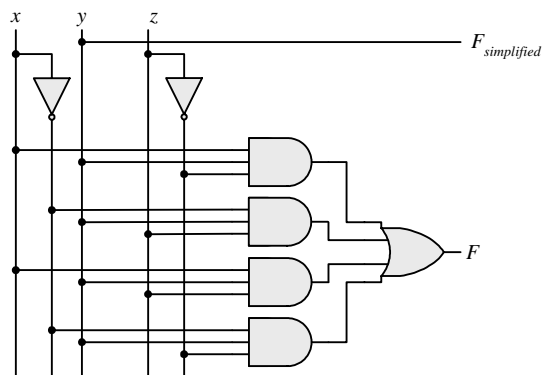
(a)



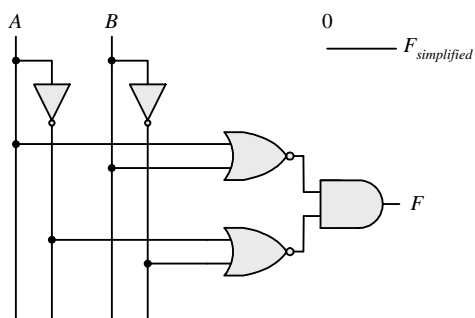
(b)



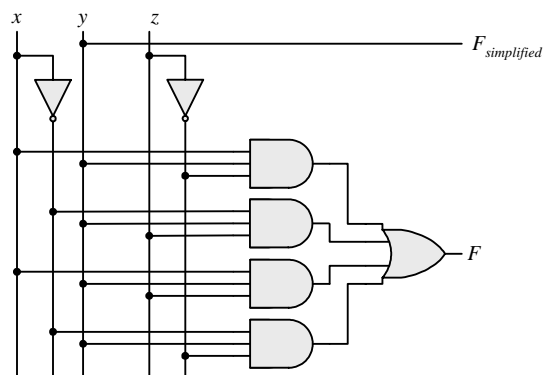
(c)



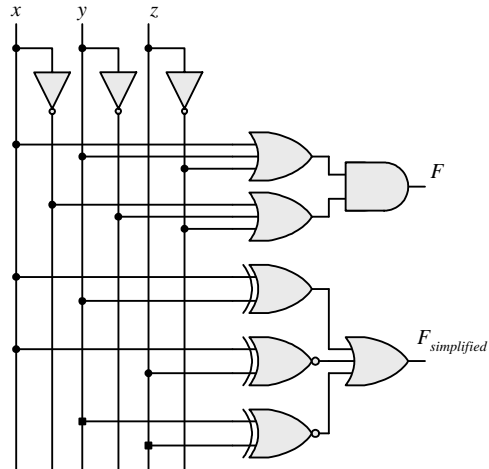
(d)



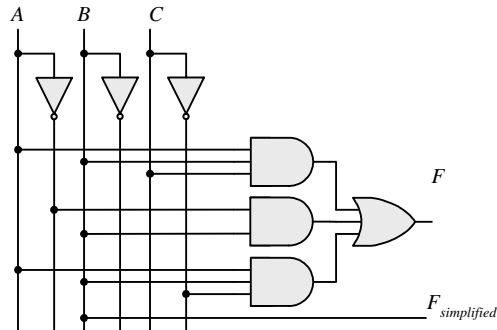
(e)



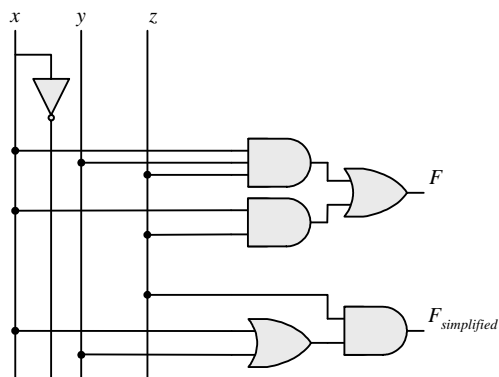
(f)



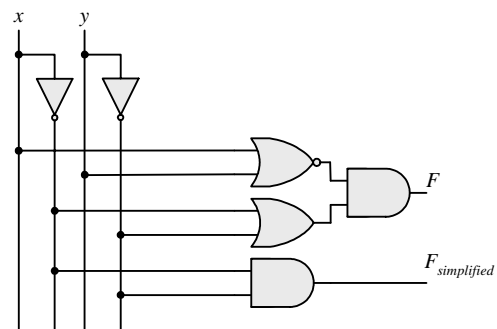
2.6 (a)



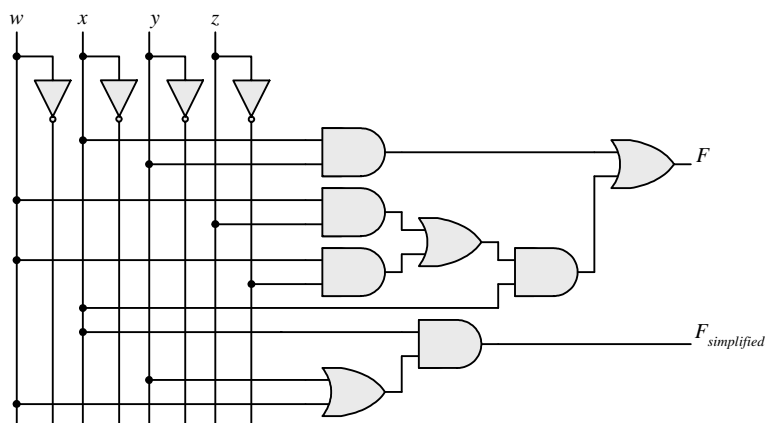
(b)



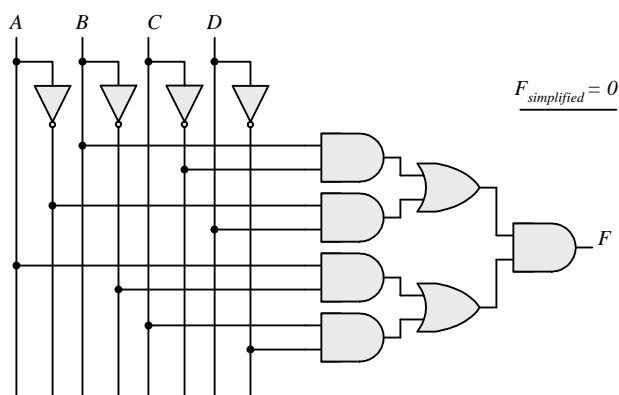
(c)



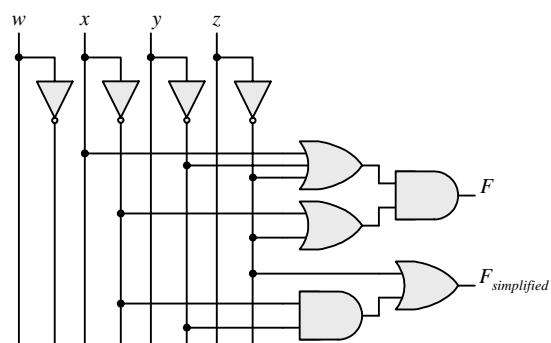
(d)



(e)

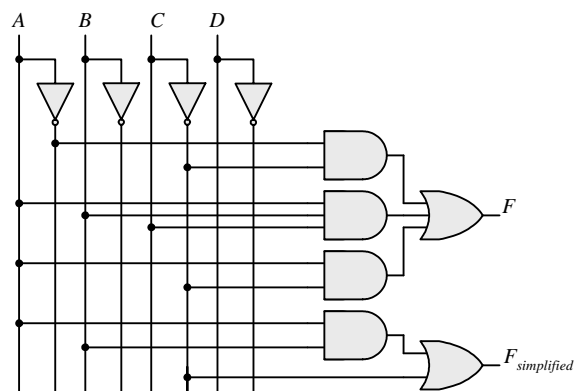


(f)

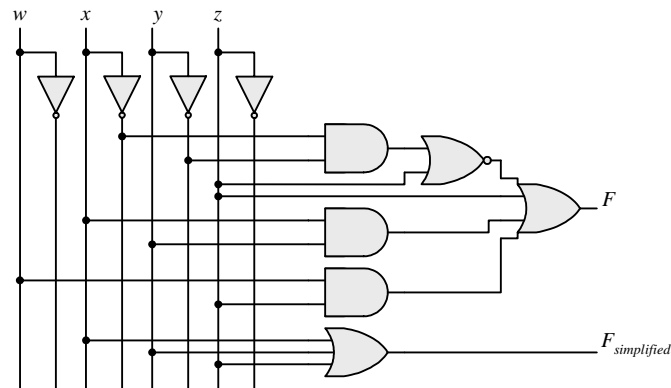


2.7

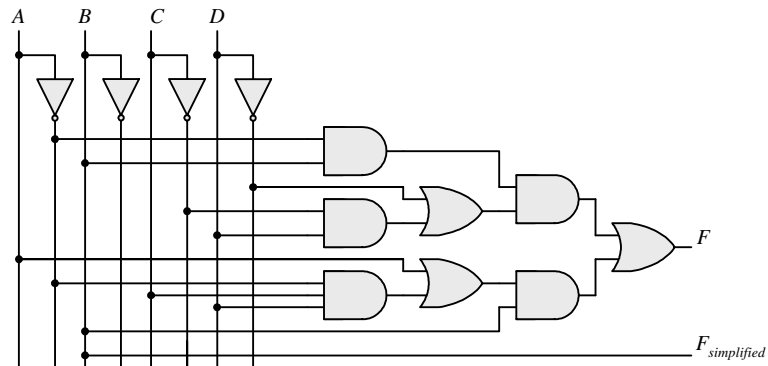
(a)



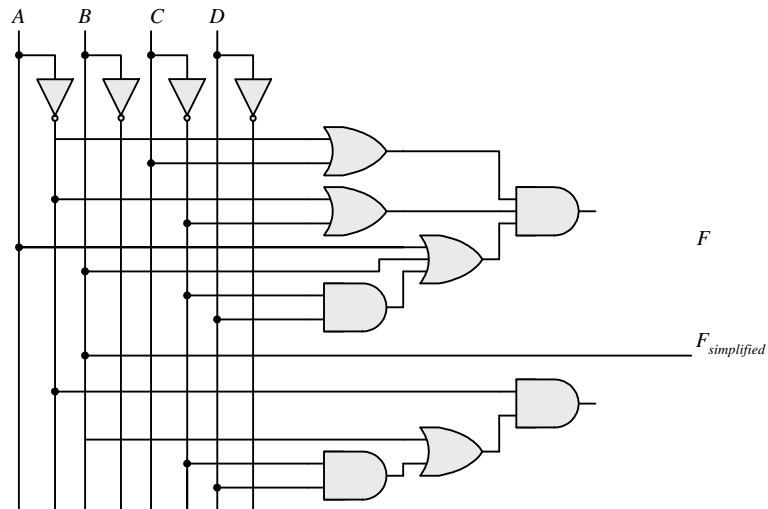
(b)



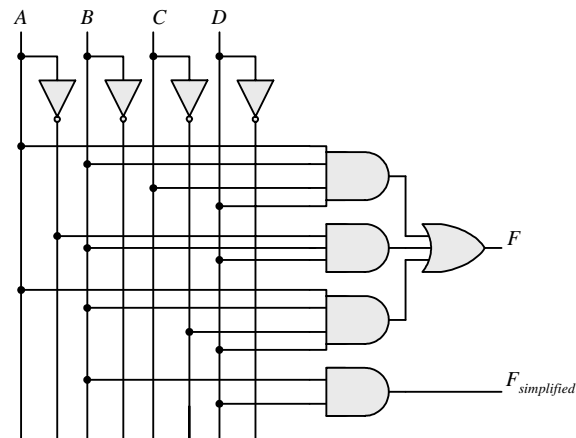
(c)



(d)



(e)



2.8  $F' = (wx + yz)' = (wx)'(yz)' = (w' + x')(y' + z')$

$$FF' = wx(w' + x')(y' + z') + yz(w' + x')(y' + z') = 0$$

$$F + F' = wx + yz + (wx + yz)' = A + A' = I \text{ with } A = wx + yz$$

2.9 (a)  $F' = (xy' + x'y)' = (xy')'(x'y)' = (x' + y)(x + y') = xy + x'y'$

(b)  $F' = [(A'B + CD)E' + E]' = [(A'B + CD) + E]' = (A'B + CD)'E' = (A'B)'(CD)'E'$   
 $F' = (A + B')(C' + D')E' = AC'E' + A D'E' + B'C'E' + B'D'E'$

(c)  $F' = [(x' + y + z')(x + y')(x + z)]' = (x' + y + z')' + (x + y')' + (x + z)' =$   
 $F' = xy'z + x'y + x'z'$

2.10 (a)  $F_1 + F_2 = \sum m_{1i} + \sum m_{2i} = \sum (m_{1i} + m_{2i})$

(b)  $F_1 F_2 = \sum m_i \sum m_j$  where  $m_i m_j = 0$  if  $i \neq j$  and  $m_i m_j = 1$  if  $i = j$

2.11 (a)  $F(x, y, z) = \sum(1, 4, 5, 6, 7)$

(b)  $F(x, y, z) = \sum(0, 2, 3, 7)$

$F = xy + xy' + y'z$	
x y z	$F$
0 0 0	0
0 0 1	1
0 1 0	0
0 1 1	0
1 0 0	1
1 0 1	1
1 1 0	1
1 1 1	1

$F = x'z' + yz$	
x y z	$F$
0 0 0	1
0 0 1	0
0 1 0	1
0 1 1	1
1 0 0	0
1 0 1	0
1 1 0	0
1 1 1	1

2.12  $A = 1011\_0001$   
 $B = 1010\_1100$

(a)  $A \text{ AND } B = 1010\_0000$

(b)  $A \text{ OR } B = 1011\_1101$

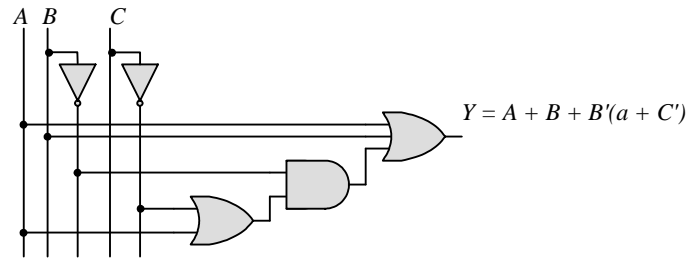
(c)  $A \text{ XOR } B = 0001\_1101$

(d)  $NOT A = 0100\_1110$

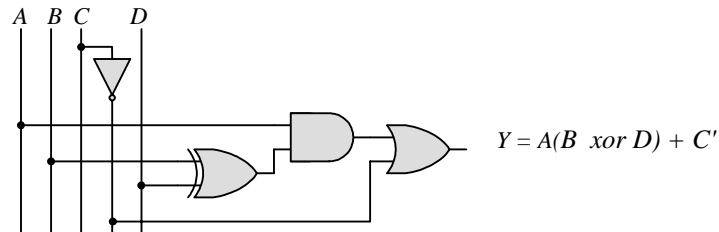
(e)  $NOT B = 0101\_0011$

2.13

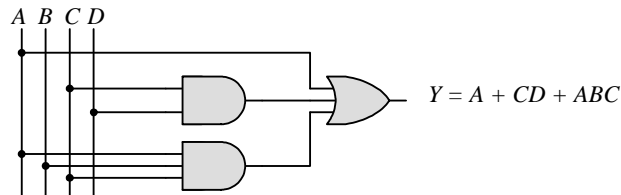
(a)



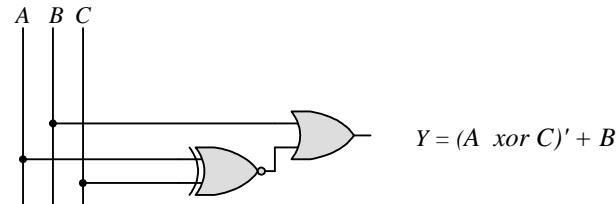
(b)



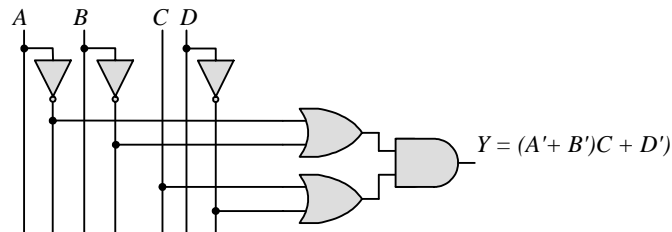
(c)



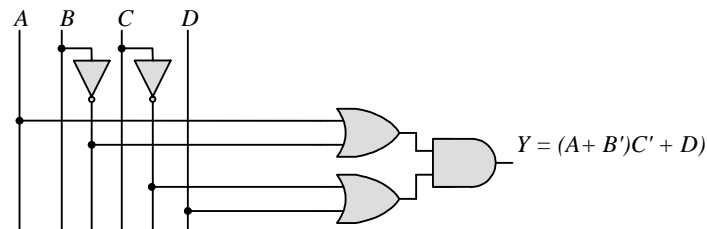
(d)



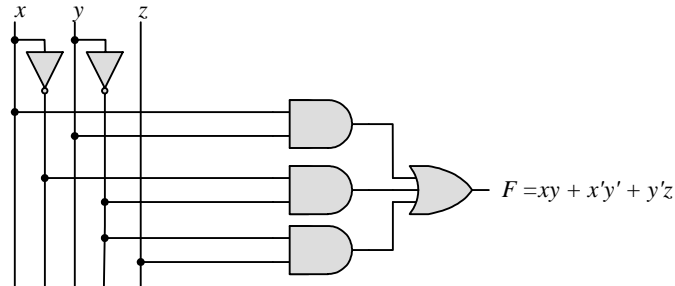
(e)



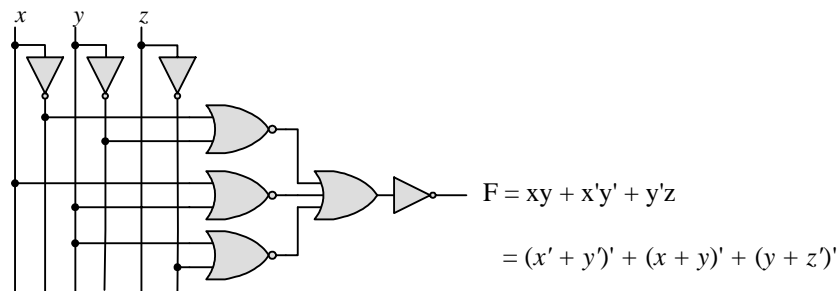
(f)



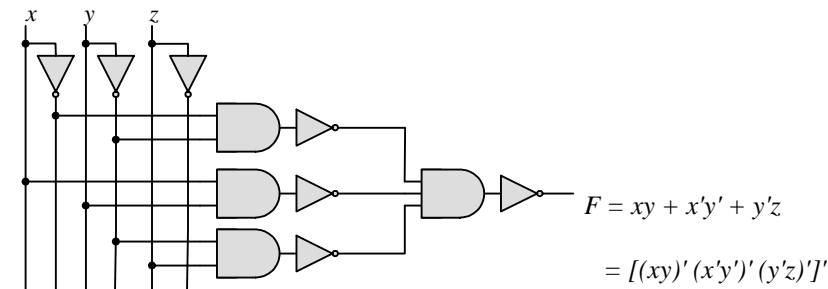
2.14 (a)



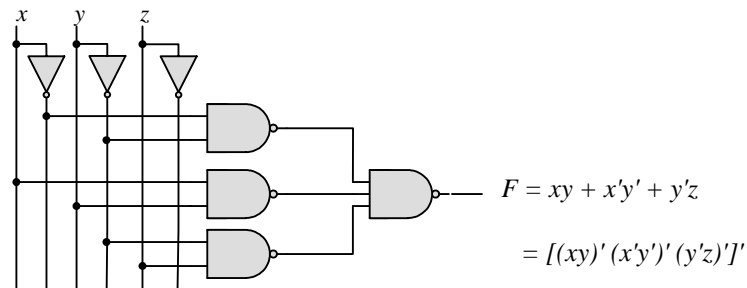
(b)



(c)

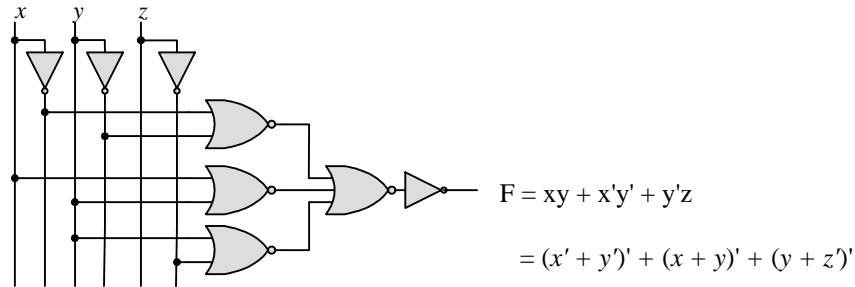


(d)





(e)



**2.15** (a)  $T_1 = A'B'C' + A'B'C + A'BC' = A'B'(C' + C) + A'C'(B' + B) = A'B' + A'C' = A'(B' + C')$

(b)  $T_2 = T_1' = A'BC + AB'C' + AB'C + ABC' + ABC$   
 $= BC(A' + A) + AB'(C' + C) + AB(C' + C)$   
 $= BC + AB' + AB = BC + A(B' + B) = A + BC$

$\Sigma(3, 5, 6, 7) = \Pi(0, 1, 2, 4)$

$T_1 = A'B'C' + A'B'C + A'BC'$   
 $\swarrow \quad \searrow$   
 $A'B' \quad A'C'$   
 $T_1 = A'B' A'C' = A'(B' + C')$

$T_2 = A'BC + AB'C' + AB'C + ABC' + ABC$   
 $\swarrow \quad \searrow \quad \searrow$   
 $AC' \quad AC \quad BC$   
 $T_2 = AC' + BC + AC = A + BC$

**2.16** (a)  $F(A, B, C) = A'B'C' + A'B'C + A'BC' + A'BC + AB'C' + AB'C + ABC' + ABC$   
 $= A'(B'C' + B'C + BC' + BC) + A((B'C' + B'C + BC' + BC))$   
 $= (A' + A)(B'C' + B'C + BC' + BC) = B'C' + B'C + BC' + BC$   
 $= B'(C' + C) + B(C' + C) = B' + B = 1$

(b)  $F(x_1, x_2, x_3, \dots, x_n) = \Sigma m_i$  has  $2^{n-1}/2$  minterms with  $x_1$  and  $2^{n-1}/2$  minterms with  $x_1'$ , which can be factored and removed as in (a). The remaining  $2^{n-1}$  product terms will have  $2^{n-1}/2$  minterms with  $x_2$  and  $2^{n-1}/2$  minterms with  $x_2'$ , which can be factored to remove  $x_2$  and  $x_2'$ . continue this process until the last term is left and  $x_n + x_n' = 1$ . Alternatively, by induction,  $F$  can be written as  $F = x_n G + x_n' G$  with  $G = 1$ . So  $F = (x_n + x_n')G = 1$ .

**2.17** (a)  $(xy + z)(y + xz) = xy + yz + xyz + xz = \Sigma(3, 5, 6, 7) = \Pi(0, 1, 2, 4)$

(b)  $(A' + B)(B' + C) = A'B' + A'C + BC = \Sigma(0, 1, 3, 7) = \Pi(2, 4, 5, 6)$

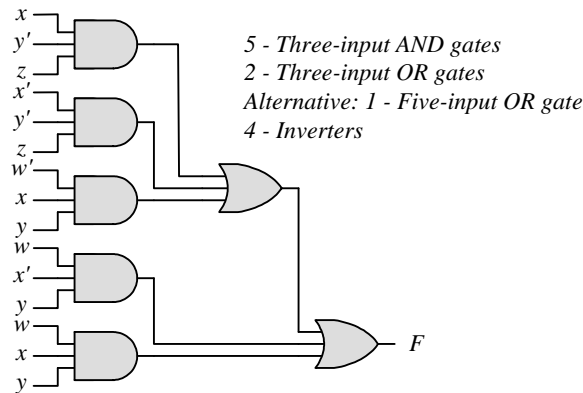
(c)  $y'z + wxy' + wxz' + w'x'z = \Sigma(1, 3, 5, 9, 12, 13, 14) = \Pi(0, 2, 4, 6, 7, 8, 10, 11, 15)$

(d)  $(xy + yz' + x'z)(x + z) = xy + xyz' + xyz + x'z$   
 $= \Sigma(1, 3, 9, 11, 14, 15) = \Pi(0, 2, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 10, 12, 13)$

2.18 (a)

wx y z	F	$F = xy'z + x'y'z + w'xy + wx'y + wxy$ $F = \Sigma(1, 5, 6, 7, 9, 10, 11, 13, 14, 15)$
00 0 0	0	
00 0 1	1	
00 1 0	0	
00 1 1	0	
01 0 0	0	
01 0 1	1	
01 1 0	1	
01 1 1	1	
10 0 0	0	
10 0 1	1	
10 1 0	1	
10 1 1	1	
11 0 0	0	
11 0 1	1	
11 1 0	1	
11 1 1	1	

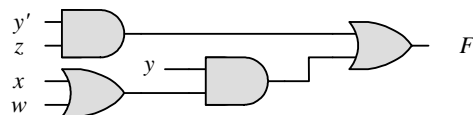
(b)



(c)  $F = xy'z + x'y'z + w'xy + wx'y + wxy = y'z + xy + wy = y'z + y(w + x)$

(d)  $F = y'z + yw + yx = \Sigma(1, 5, 9, 13, 10, 11, 13, 15, 6, 7, 14, 15)$   
 $= \Sigma(1, 5, 6, 7, 9, 10, 11, 13, 14, 15)$

(e)



1 - Inverter, 2 - Two-input AND gates, 2 - Two-input OR gates

**2.19**  $F = B'D + A'D + BD$

$ABCD$	$ABCD$	$ABCD$
$\overline{B'D}$	$A'\overline{D}$	$\overline{B'D}$
0001 = 1	0001 = 1	0101 = 5
0011 = 3	0011 = 3	0111 = 7
1001 = 9	0101 = 5	1101 = 13
1011 = 11	0111 = 7	1111 = 15

$$F = \Sigma(1, 3, 5, 7, 9, 11, 13, 15) = \Pi(0, 2, 4, 6, 8, 10, 12, 14)$$

**2.20** (a)  $F(A, B, C, D) = \Sigma(3, 5, 9, 11, 15)$   
 $F'(A, B, C, D) = \Sigma(0, 1, 2, 4, 6, 7, 8, 10, 12, 13, 14)$

(b)  $F(x, y, z) = \Pi(2, 4, 5, 7)$   
 $F' = \Sigma(2, 4, 5, 7)$

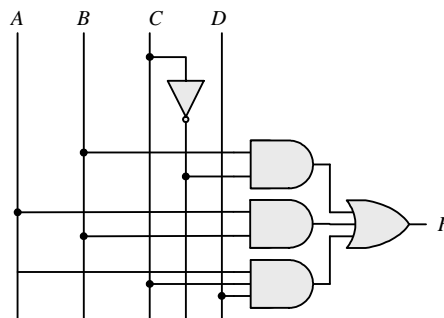
**2.21** (a)  $F(x, y, z) = \Sigma(2, 5, 6) = \Pi(0, 1, 3, 4, 7)$

(b)  $F(A, B, C, D) = \Pi(0, 1, 2, 4, 7, 9, 12) = \Sigma(3, 5, 6, 8, 10, 11, 13, 14, 15)$

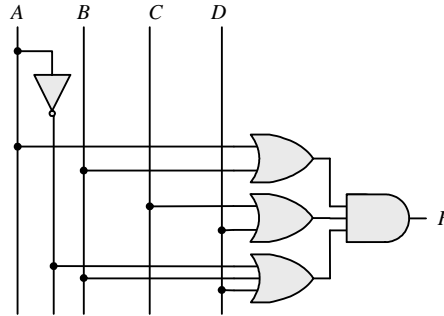
**2.22** (a)  $(AB + C)(B + C'D) = AB + BC + ABC'D + CC'D = AB(I + C'D) + BC$   
 $= AB + BC$  (SOP form)  
 $= B(A + C)$  (POS form)

(b)  $x' + x(x + y')(y + z') = (x' + x)[x' + (x + y')(y + z')] =$   
 $= (x' + x + y')(x' + y + z')$   
 $= x' + y + z'$

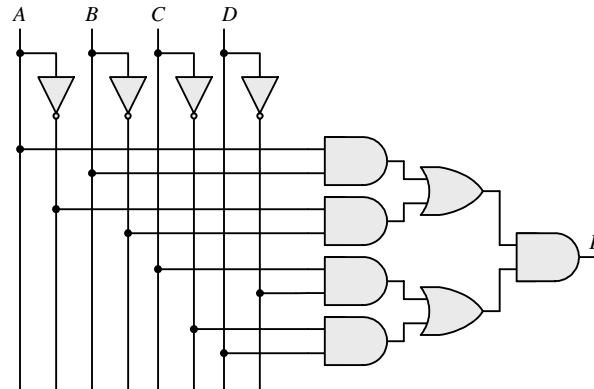
**2.23** (a)  $B'C + AB + ACD$



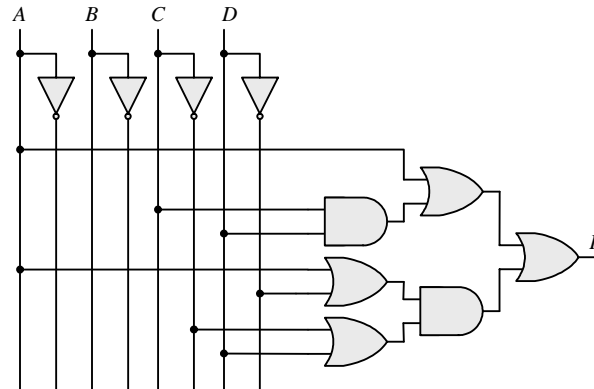
(b)  $(A + B)(C + D)(A' + B + D)$



(c)  $(AB + A'B')(CD' + C'D)$



(d)  $A + CD + (A + D')(C' + D)$



2.24  $x \oplus y = x'y + xy'$  and  $(x \oplus y)' = (x + y')(x' + y)$

Dual of  $x'y + xy' = (x' + y)(x + y') = (x \oplus y)'$

2.25 (a)  $x/y = xy' \neq y/x = x'y$  Not commutative  
 $(x/y)/z = xy'z' \neq x/(y/z) = x(yz')' = xy' + xz$  Not associative

(b)  $(x \oplus y) = xy' + x'y = y \oplus x = yx' + y'x$  Commutative

$(x \oplus y) \oplus z = \Sigma(1, 2, 4, 7) = x \oplus (y \oplus z)$  Associative

## 2.26

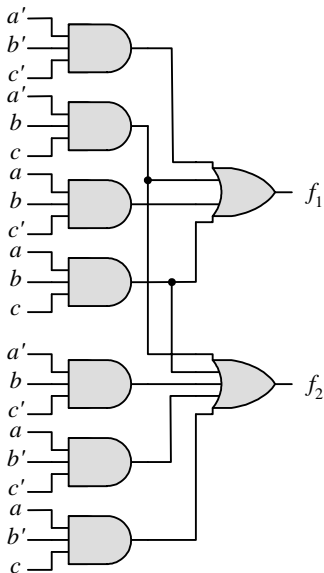
Gate		NAND (Positive logic)		NOR (Negative logic)	
x y	z	x y	z	x y	z
L L	H	0 0	1	1 1	0
L H	H	0 1	1	1 0	0
H L	H	1 0	1	0 1	0
H H	L	1 1	0	0 0	1

Gate		NOR (Positive logic)		NAND (Negative logic)	
x y	z	x y	z	x y	z
L L	H	0 0	1	1 1	0
L H	L	0 1	0	1 0	1
H L	L	1 0	0	0 1	1
H H	L	1 1	0	0 0	1

2.27  $f_1 = a'b'c + a'bc + abc' + abc$

$f_2 = a'bc' + a'bc + ab'c' + ab'c + abc'$



**2.28** (a)  $y = a(bcd)'e = a(b' + c' + d')e$

$$y = a(b' + c' + d')e = ab'e + ac'e + ad'e$$

$$= \Sigma(17, 19, 21, 23, 25, 27, 29)$$

a bcde	y	a bcde	y
0 0000	0	1 0000	0
0 0001	0	<b>1 0001</b>	1
0 0010	0	1 0010	0
0 0011	0	<b>1 0011</b>	1
0 0100	0	1 0100	0
0 0101	0	<b>1 0101</b>	1
0 0110	0	1 0110	0
0 0111	0	<b>1 0111</b>	1
	0		0
0 1000	0	1 1000	0
0 1001	0	<b>1 1001</b>	1
0 1010	0	1 1010	0
0 1011	0	<b>1 1011</b>	1
0 1100	0	1 1100	0
0 1101	0	<b>1 1101</b>	1
0 1110	0	1 1110	0
0 1111	0	1 1111	0

(b)  $y_1 = a \oplus (c + d + e) = a'(c + d + e) + a(c'd'e') = a'c + a'd + a'e + ac'd'e'$

$$y_2 = b'(c + d + e)f = b'cf + b'df + b'ef$$

$$y_1 = a(c + d + e) = a'(c + d + e) + a(c'd'e') = a'c + a'd + a'e + ac'd'e'$$

$$y_2 = b'(c + d + e)f = b'cf + b'df + b'ef$$

$a'-c---$	$a'--d--$	$a'---e-$	$a-c'd'e'-$		
001000 = 8	000100 = 8	000010 = 2	100000 = 32		
001001 = 9	000101 = 9	000011 = 3	100001 = 33		
001010 = 10	000110 = 10	000110 = 6	110000 = 34		
001011 = 11	000111 = 11	000111 = 7	110001 = 35		
001100 = 12	001100 = 12	001010 = 10			
001101 = 13	001101 = 13	001011 = 11			
001110 = 14	001110 = 14	001110 = 14			
001111 = 15	001111 = 15	001111 = 15			
			-b' c--f	-b' -d-f	-b' --ef
011000 = 24	010100 = 20	010010 = 18	001001 = 9	001001 = 9	000011 = 3
011001 = 25	010101 = 21	010011 = 19	001011 = 11	001011 = 11	000111 = 7
011010 = 26	010110 = 22	010110 = 22	001101 = 13	001101 = 13	001011 = 11
011011 = 27	010111 = 23	010111 = 23	001111 = 15	001111 = 15	001111 = 15
			101001 = 41	101001 = 41	100011 = 35
011100 = 28	011100 = 28	011010 = 26	101011 = 43	101011 = 43	100111 = 39
011101 = 29	011101 = 29	011001 = 27	101101 = 45	101101 = 45	101011 = 51
011110 = 30	011110 = 30	011110 = 30	101111 = 47	101111 = 47	101111 = 55
011111 = 31	011111 = 31	011111 = 31			

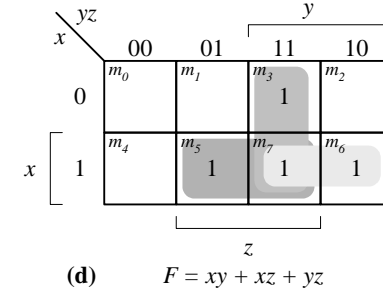
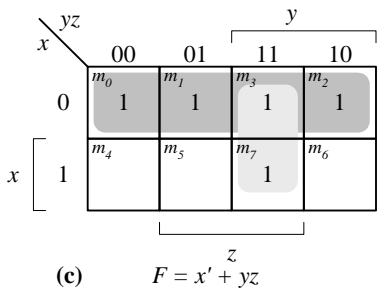
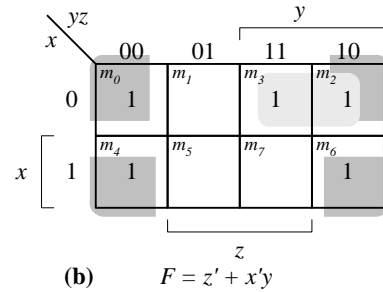
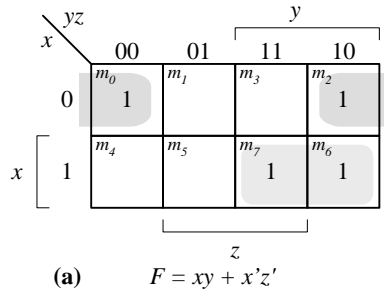
$$y_1 = \Sigma (2, 3, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, 18, 19, 22, 23, 24, 25, 26, 27, 28, 29, 30, 31, 32, 33, 34, 35)$$

$$y_2 = \Sigma (3, 7, 9, 13, 15, 35, 39, 41, 43, 45, 47, 51, 55)$$

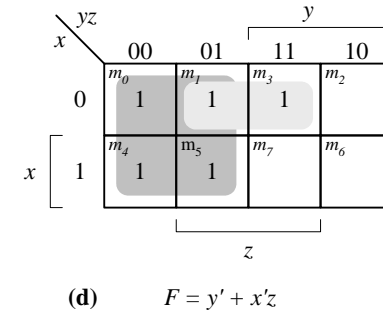
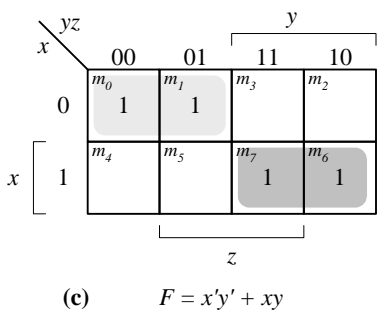
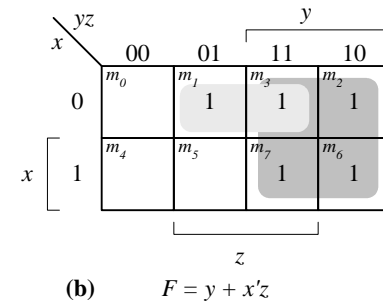
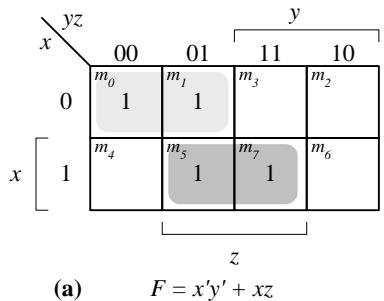
<i>ab cdef</i>	$y_1 \ y_2$	<i>ab cdef</i>	$y_1 \ y_2$	<i>ab cdef</i>	$y_1 \ y_2$	<i>ab cdef</i>	$y_1 \ y_2$
00 0000	0 0	01 0000	0 0	10 0000	1 0	11 0000	0 0
00 0001	0 0	01 0001	0 0	10 0001	1 0	11 0001	0 0
00 0010	1 0	01 0010	1 0	10 0010	1 0	11 0010	0 0
00 0011	1 1	01 0011	1 0	10 0011	1 1	11 0011	0 1
00 0100	0 0	01 0100	0 0	10 0100	0 0	11 0100	0 0
00 0101	0 0	01 0101	0 0	10 0101	0 0	11 0101	0 0
00 0110	1 0	01 0110	1 0	10 0110	0 0	11 0110	0 0
00 0111	1 1	01 0111	1 0	10 0111	0 1	11 0111	0 1
00 1000	1 0	01 1000	1 0	10 1000	0 0	11 1000	0 0
00 1001	1 1	01 1001	1 0	10 1001	0 1	11 1001	0 0
00 1010	1 0	01 1010	1 0	10 1010	0 0	11 1010	0 0
00 1011	1 0	01 1011	1 0	10 1011	0 1	11 1011	0 0
00 1100	1 0	01 1100	1 0	10 1100	0 0	11 1100	0 0
00 1101	1 1	01 1101	1 0	10 1101	0 1	11 1101	0 0
00 1110	1 0	01 1110	1 0	10 1110	0 0	11 1110	0 0
00 1111	1 1	01 1111	1 0	10 1111	0 1	11 1111	0 0

## Chapter 3

### 3.1



### 3.2





		$y$			
		$yz$	00	01	11
$x$	0	$m_0$	$m_1$ 1	$m_3$ 1	$m_2$
	1	$m_4$	$m_5$ 1	$m_7$ 1	$m_6$
		$z$			

(e)  $F = z$

		$y$				
		$yz$	$00$	$01$	$11$	$10$
$x$	$0$	$m_0$	$m_1$	$m_3$	$m_2$	
	$1$	$m_4$	$m_5$	$m_7$	$m_6$	
		$z$				

(f)  $F = x + y'z$

### 3.3

		$y$			
		$yz$	$00$	$01$	$11$
$x$	$0$	$m_0$ 1	$m_1$	$m_3$	$m_2$ 1
	$1$	$m_4$	$m_5$	$m_7$ 1	$m_6$ 1
		$z$			

(a)  $F = xy + x'y'z' + x'yz'$   
 $F = xy + x'z'$

		$y$				
		$yz$	$00$	$01$	$11$	$10$
$x$	$0$	$m_0$	$m_1$	$m_3$	$m_2$	
	$1$	$m_4$	$m_5$	$m_7$	$m_6$	
		$z$				

(b)  $F = x'y' + yz + x'yz'$   
 $F = x' + yz$

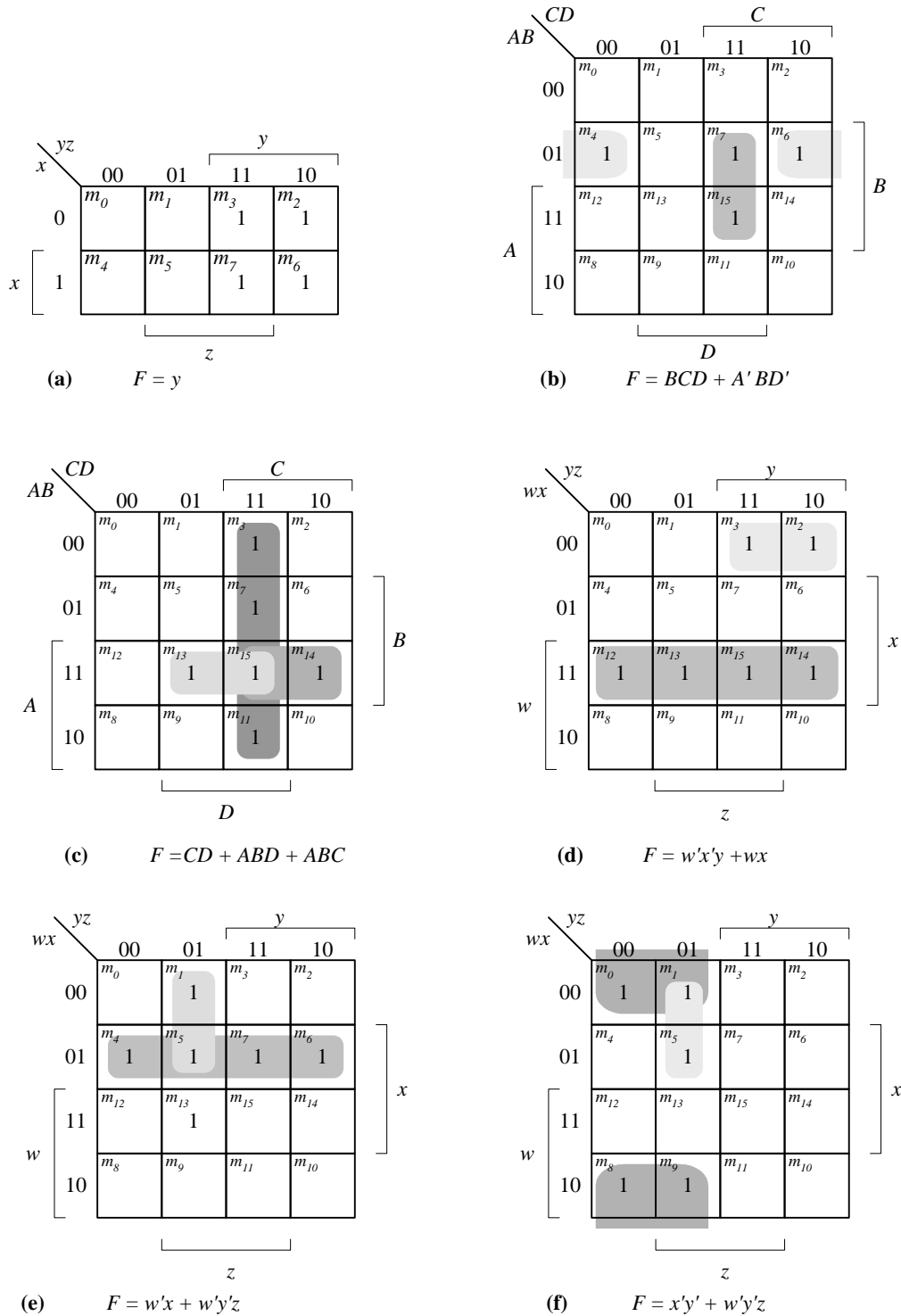
		$y$				
		$yz$	$00$	$01$	$11$	$10$
$x$	$0$	$m_0$	$m_1$	$m_3$	$m_2$	
	$1$	$m_4$	$m_5$	$m_7$	$m_6$	
		$z$				

(c)  $F = x'y + yz' + y'z'$   
 $F = x'y + z'$

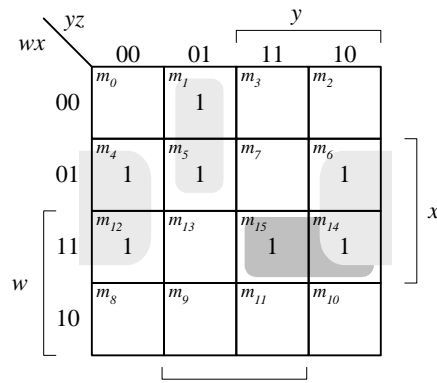
		$y$				
		$yz$	$00$	$01$	$11$	$10$
$x$	$0$	$m_0$	$m_1$	$m_3$	$m_2$	
	$1$	$m_4$	$m_5$	$m_7$	$m_6$	
		$z$				

(d)  $F = xyz + x'y'z + xyz'$   
 $F = x'y'z + xy$

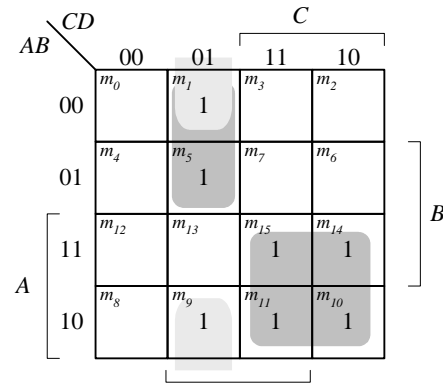
### 3.4



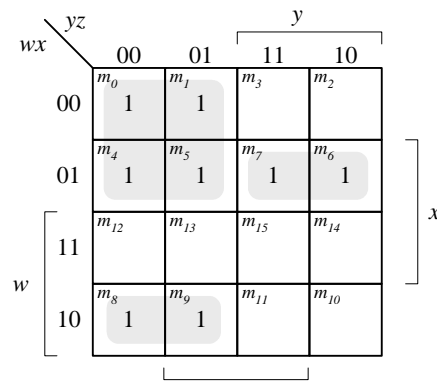
### 3.5



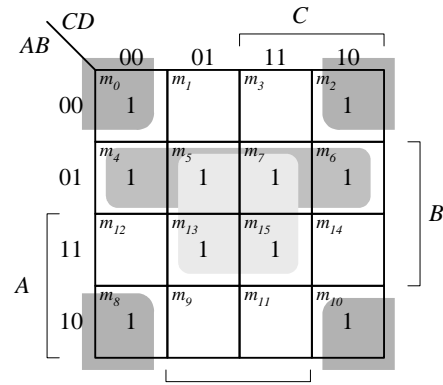
(a)  $F = xz' + w'y'z + wx y$



(b)  $F = A'C + A' C'D + B' C'D$

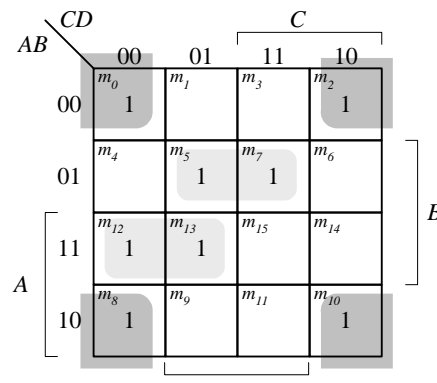


(c)  $F = w'y' + wx'y' + w'xy$

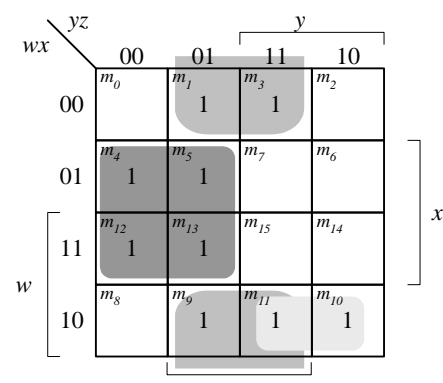


(d)  $F = BD + A'B + B'D'$   
or  $= BD + B'D' + A'D'$

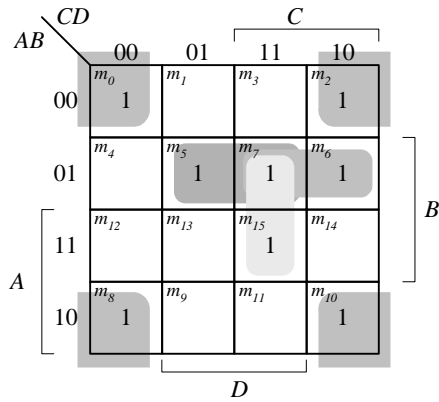
### 3.6



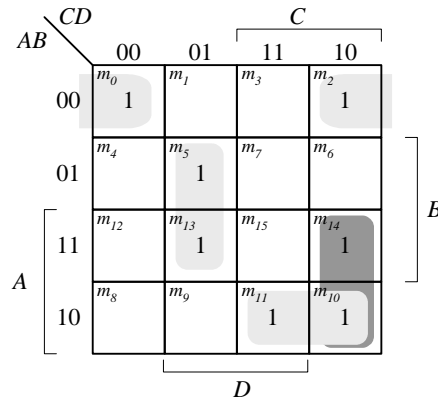
(a)  $F = B'D' + A'BD + ABC'$



(b)  $F = xy' + x'z + wx'y$

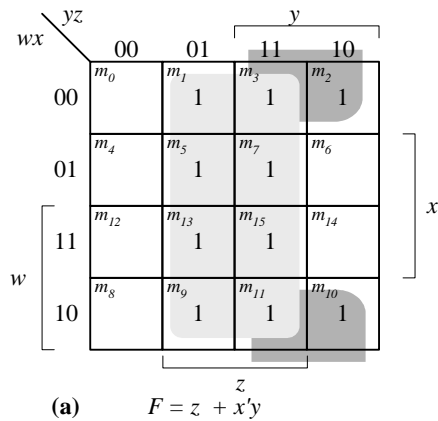


(c)  $F = B'D' + BCD + A'BD + A'BC$

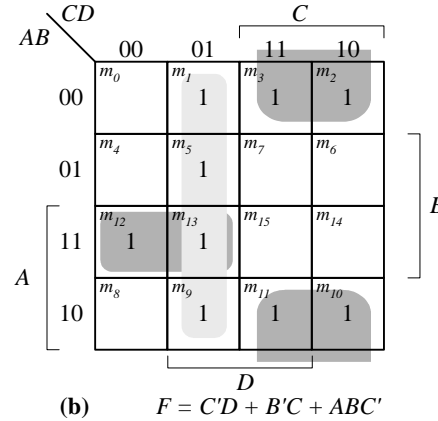


(d)  $F = A'B'D' + BC'D + ACD' + AB'C$

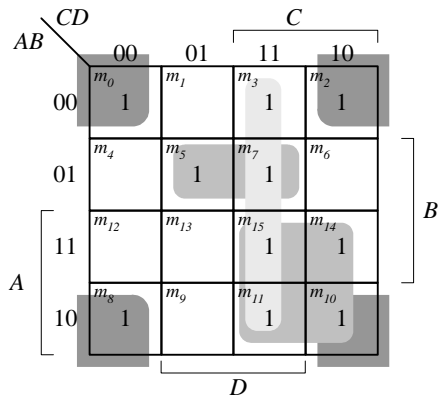
### 3.7



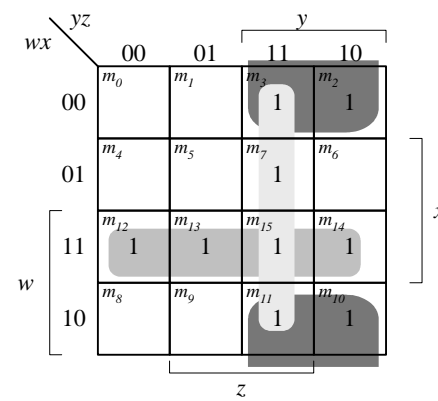
(a)  $F = z + x'y$



(b)  $F = C'D + B'C + ABC'$



(c)  $F = B'D' + AC + A'BD + CD \text{ (or } B'C)$



(d)  $F = wx + x'y + yz$

3.8

(a)  $F(x, y, z) = \Sigma(3, 5, 6, 7)$

		y			
		00	01	11	10
x	yz	$m_0$	$m_1$	$m_3$	$m_2$
	0			1	
1	1	$m_4$	$m_5$	$m_7$	$m_6$
			1	1	1

z

(b)  $F = \Sigma(1, 3, 5, 9, 12, 13, 14)$

		C			
		00	01	11	10
A	CD	$m_0$	$m_1$	$m_3$	$m_2$
	00		1	1	
	01	$m_4$	$m_5$	$m_7$	$m_6$
			1		
11	11	$m_{12}$	$m_{13}$	$m_{15}$	$m_{14}$
		1	1		1
10	10	$m_8$	$m_9$	$m_{11}$	$m_{10}$
			1		

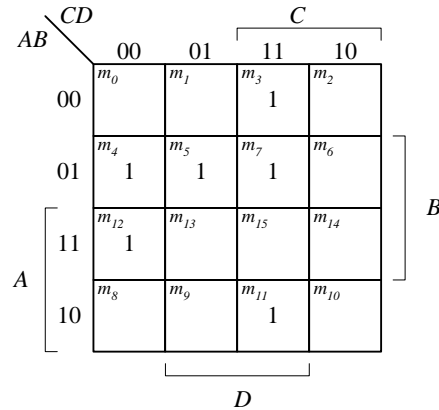
D

(c)  $F = \Sigma(0, 1, 2, 3, 11, 12, 14, 15)$

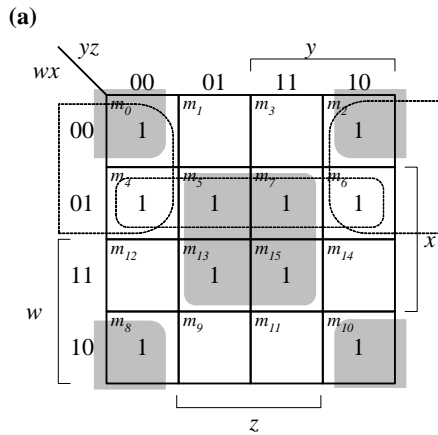
		y			
		00	01	11	10
w	wx	$m_0$	$m_1$	$m_3$	$m_2$
	00	1	1	1	1
	01	$m_4$	$m_5$	$m_7$	$m_6$
11	11	$m_{12}$	$m_{13}$	$m_{15}$	$m_{14}$
		1		1	1
10	10	$m_8$	$m_9$	$m_{11}$	$m_{10}$
				1	

z

(d)  $F = \Sigma(3, 4, 5, 7, 11, 12)$



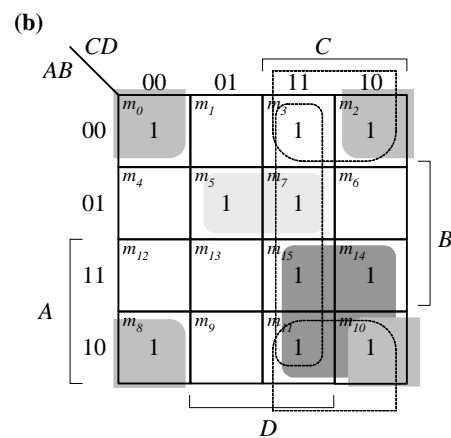
3.9



**Essential:**  $xz, x'z'$

**Non-essential:**  $w'x, w'z'$

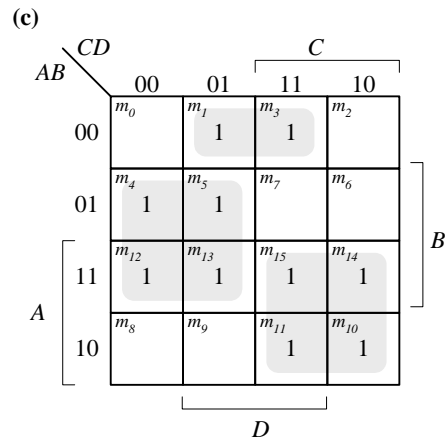
$F = xz + x'z' + (w'x \text{ or } w'z')$



**Essential:**  $B'D', AC, A'BD$

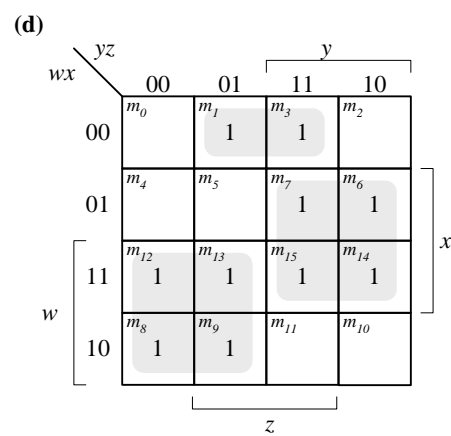
**Non-essential:**  $CD, B'C$

$F = B'D' + AC + A'BD + (CD \text{ OR } B'C)$



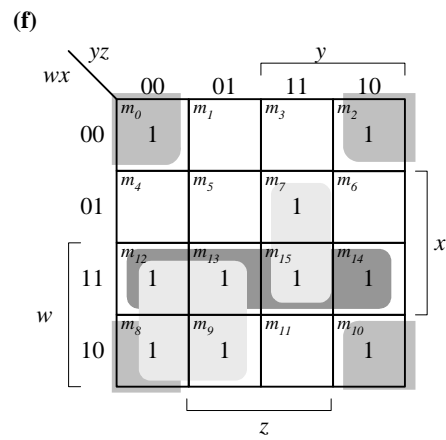
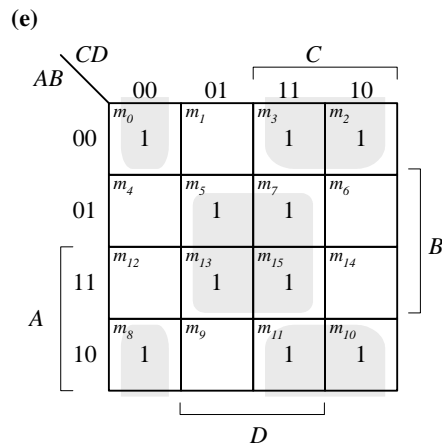
**Essential:**  $BC', AC, A'BD$

$F = BC' + AC + A'BD$

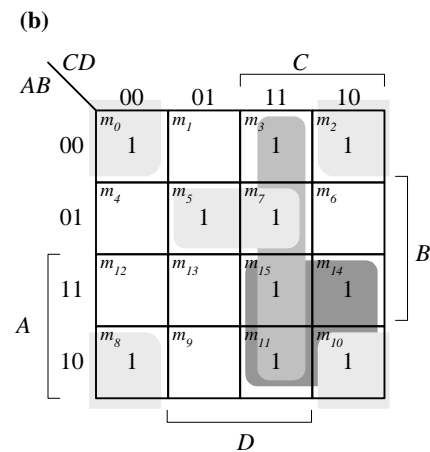
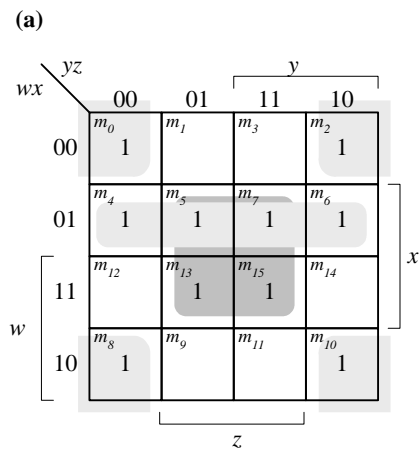


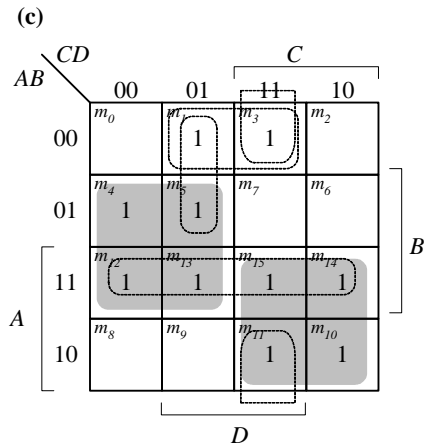
**Essential:**  $wy', xy, w'x'z$

$F = wy' + xy + w'x'z$

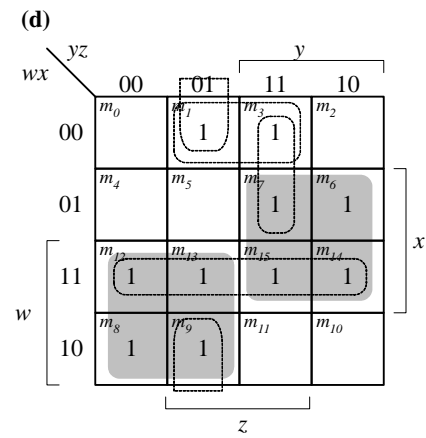


### 3.10

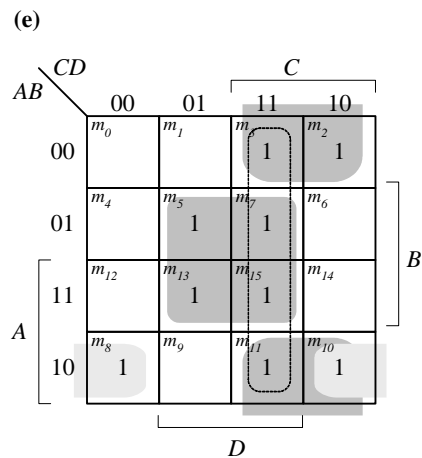




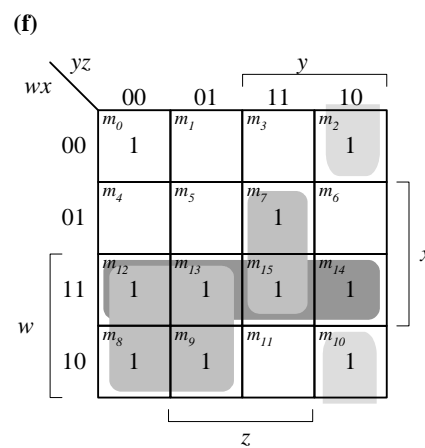
**Essential:**  $BC'$ ,  $AC$   
**Non-essential:**  $AB$ ,  $A'B'D$ ,  $B'CD$ ,  $A'C'D$   
 $F = BC' + AC + A'B'D$



**Essential:**  $wy'$ ,  $xy$   
**Non-essential:**  $wx$ ,  $x'y'z$ ,  $w'wz$ ,  $w'x'z$   
 $F = wy' + xy + w'x'z$



**Essential:**  $BD$ ,  $B'C$ ,  $AB'C$   
**Non-essential:**  $CD$   
 $F = BD + B'C + AB'C$



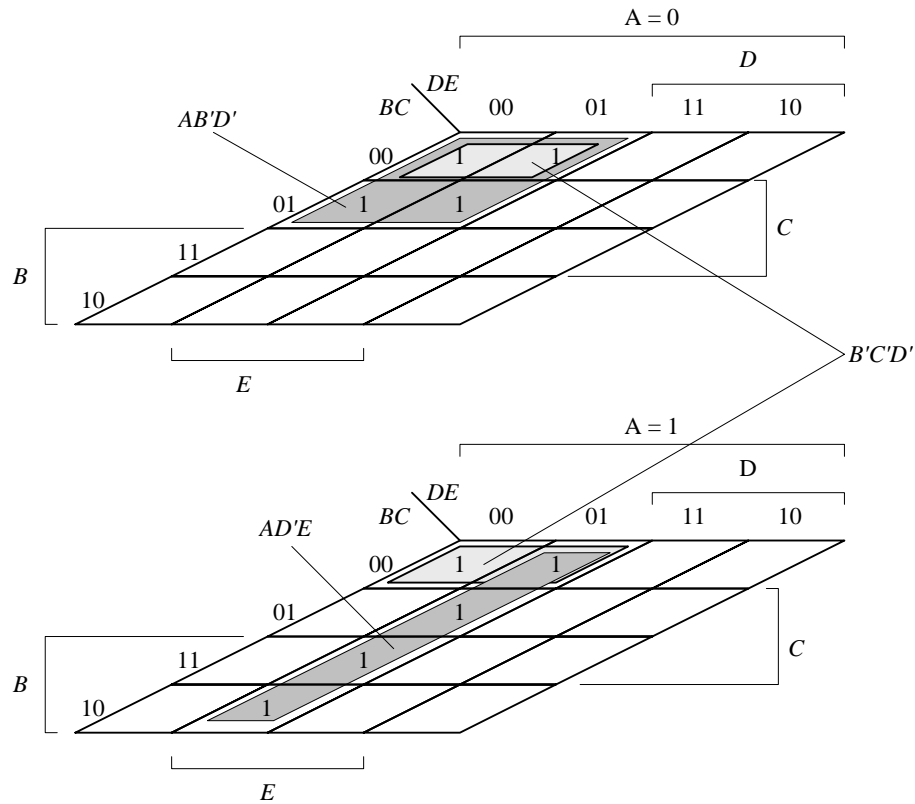
**Essential:**  $wy'$ ,  $wx$ ,  $xyz$ ,  $x'yz'$   
 $F = wy' + wx + xyz + x'yz'$



**3.11 (a)**  $F(A, B, C, D, E) = \sum (0, 1, 4, 5, 16, 17, 21, 25, 29)$

$$F = A'B'D' + AD'E + B'C'D'$$

$m_0$ :	$A'B'C'D'E'$	= 00000
$m_1$ :	$A'B'C'D'E$	= 00001
$m_4$ :	$A'B'CD'E'$	= 00100
$m_5$ :	$A'B'CD'E$	= 00101
$m_{16}$ :	$AB'C'D'E'$	= 10000
$m_{17}$ :	$AB'C'D'E$	= 10001
$m_{21}$ :	$AB'CD'E$	= 10101
$m_{25}$ :	$ABC'D'E$	= 11001
$m_{29}$ :	$ABCD'E$	= 11101



(b)  $F(A, B, C, D, E) = A'B'CE' + B'C'D'E' + A'B'D' + B'CD' + A'CD + A'BD$   
 $F(A, B, C, D, E) = A'B'D' + B'D'E' + B'CD' + A'CD + A'BD$

$A'B'CE'$ :  $AB'CDE' + A'B'CD'E'$

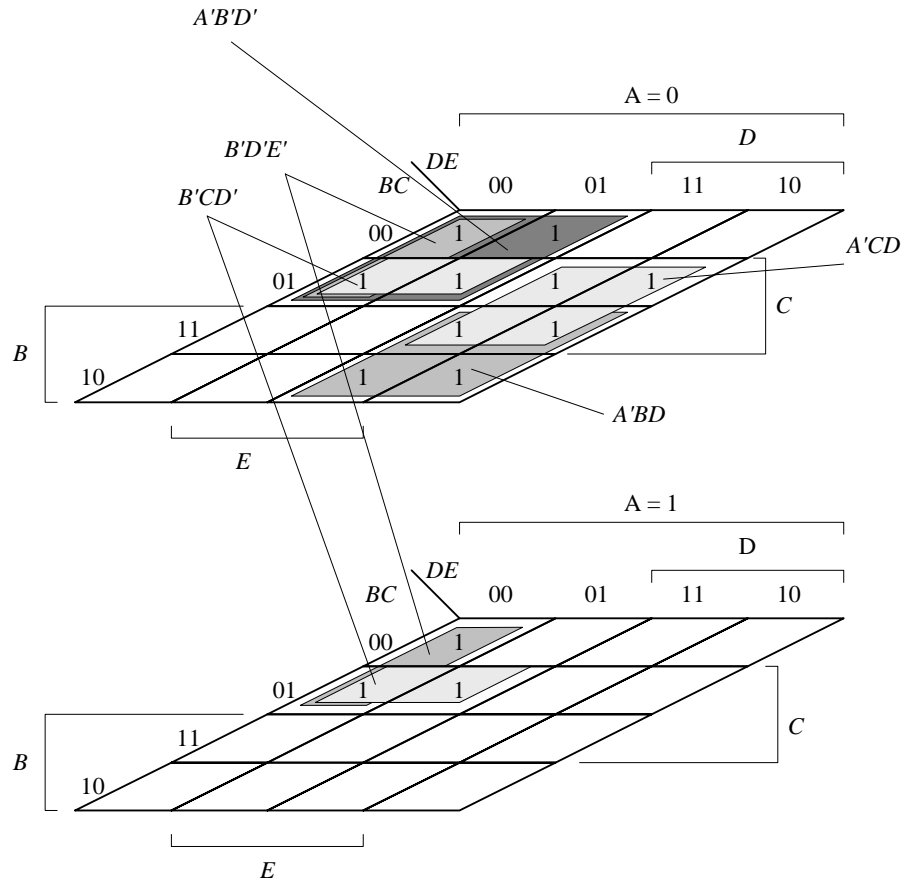
$B'C'D'E'$ :  $AB'C'D'E' + A'B'C'D'E'$

$A'B'D'$ :  $A'B'CD'E + A'B'CD'E' + A'B'C'D'E + A'B'C'D'E'$

$B'CD'$ :  $AB'CD'E + AB'CD'E' + A'B'CD'E + A'B'CD'E'$

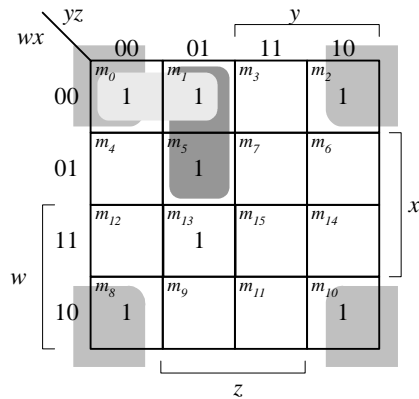
$A'CD$ :  $A'BCDE + A'BCDE' + A'B'CDE + A'B'CDE'$

$A'BD$ :  $A'BCDE + A'BCDE' + A'BC'DE + A'BC'DE'$



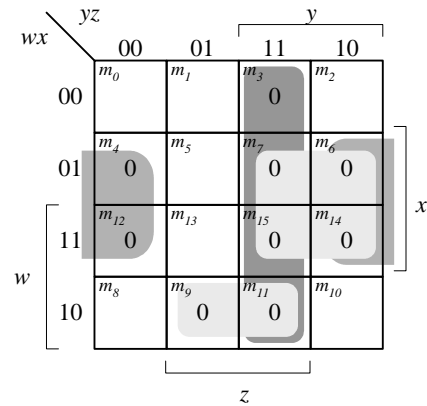
### 3.12

(a)



$$F = \Sigma(0, 1, 2, 5, 8, 10, 13)$$

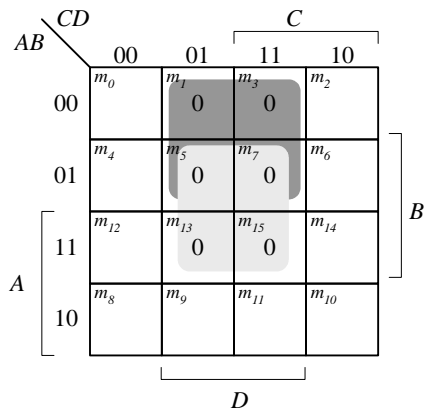
$$F = x'z' + w'x'y' + w'y'z$$



$$F' = yz + xz' + xy + wx'z$$

$$F = (y' + z')(x' + z)(x' + y')(w' + x + z')$$

(b)



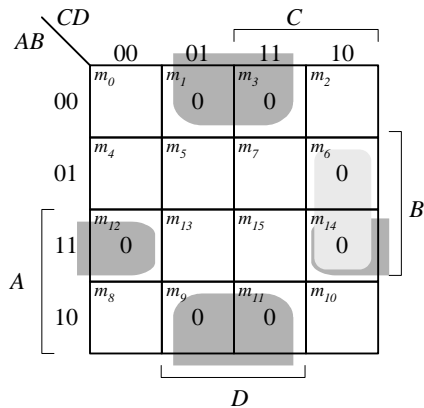
$$F = \Pi(1, 3, 5, 7, 13, 15)$$

$$F' = A'D + B'D$$

$$F = (A + D)(B' + D')$$

$$F = C'D' + AB' + CD'$$

(c)



$$F = \Pi(1, 3, 6, 9, 11, 12, 14)$$

$$F' = B'D + BCD' + ABD'$$

$$F = (B + D')(B' + C' + D)(A' + B' + D)$$

$$F = BD + B'D' + A'C'D'$$

3.13 (a)  $F = xy + z' = (x + z')(y + z')$

(b)

AB \ CD		C			
		00	01	11	10
A	00	$m_0$ 0	$m_1$ 1	$m_3$ 0	$m_2$ 0
	01	$m_4$ 0	$m_5$ 1	$m_7$ 0	$m_6$ 0
	11	$m_{12}$ 1	$m_{13}$ 1	$m_{15}$ 1	$m_{14}$ 0
	10	$m_8$ 1	$m_9$ 1	$m_{11}$ 1	$m_{10}$ 1

$$F = AC' + AD + C'D + AB'C$$

AB \ CD		C			
		00	01	11	10
A	00	$m_0$ 0	$m_1$ 1	$m_3$ 0	$m_2$ 0
	01	$m_4$ 0	$m_5$ 1	$m_7$ 0	$m_6$ 0
	11	$m_{12}$ 1	$m_{13}$ 1	$m_{15}$ 1	$m_{14}$ 0
	10	$m_8$ 1	$m_9$ 1	$m_{11}$ 1	$m_{10}$ 1

$$F' A'D' + A'C + BCD'$$

$$F = (A + D)(A + C')(B' + C' + D)$$

(c)

AB \ CD		C			
		00	01	11	10
A	00	$m_0$ 0	$m_1$ 0	$m_3$ 0	$m_2$ 0
	01	$m_4$ 0	$m_5$ 0	$m_7$ 0	$m_6$ 0
	11	$m_{12}$ 0	$m_{13}$ 0	$m_{15}$ 0	$m_{14}$ 0
	10	$m_8$ 0	$m_9$ 0	$m_{11}$ 0	$m_{10}$ 0

$$F = (A + C' + D')(A' + B' + D')(A' + B + D')(A' + B + C')$$

$$F' = A'CD + ABD + AB'D + AB'C$$

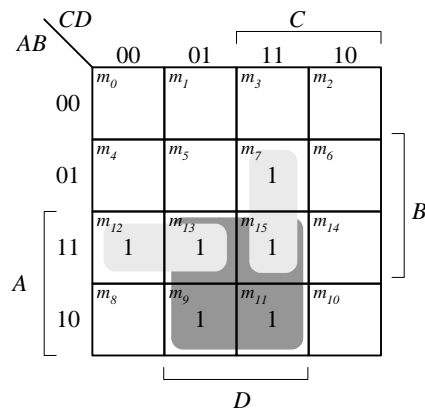
$$F = A'C + A'D' + BD' + C'D'$$

$$F' = AD + CD + AB'C$$

$$F = (A' + D')(C + D')(A' + B + C')$$

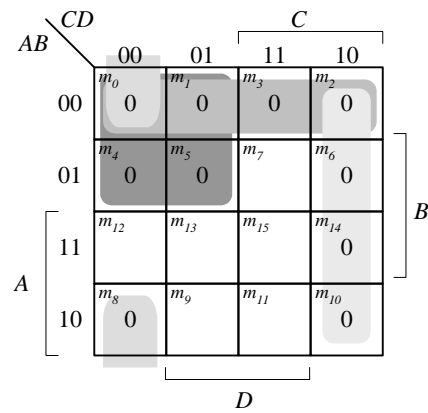
AB \ CD		C			
		00	01	11	10
A	00	$m_0$ 1	$m_1$ 1	$m_3$ 1	$m_2$ 1
	01	$m_4$ 1	$m_5$ 1	$m_7$ 1	$m_6$ 1
	11	$m_{12}$ 1	$m_{13}$ 1	$m_{15}$ 1	$m_{14}$ 1
	10	$m_8$ 1	$m_9$ 1	$m_{11}$ 1	$m_{10}$ 1

(d)



$$F = ABC' + AB'D + BCD$$

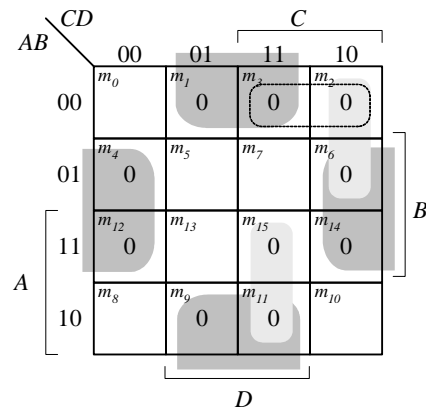
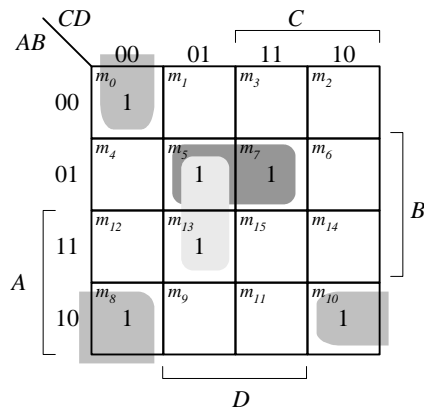
$$F = AD + ABC' + BCD$$



$$F' = A'C' + A'B' + CD' + B'C'D'$$

$$F = (A + C)(A + B)(C' + D)(B + C + D)$$

3.14



SOP form (using 1s):  $F = B'C'D' + AB'D' + BC'D + A'BD$

$$F = B'D'(A + C') + BD(A' + C')$$

POS form (using 0s):  $F' = BD' + B'D + A'CD' + ACD$

$$F = [(B' + D)(B + D')][(A + C' + D)(A' + C' + D')]$$

Alternative POS:  $F' = BD' + B'D + A'CD' + A'B'C$

$$F = [(B' + D)(B + D')][(A + C' + D)(A' + B + C)]$$

### 3.15

(a)

		y			
		00	01	11	10
x	0	$m_0$ x	$m_1$ x	$m_3$ 1	$m_2$ 1
	1	$m_4$ 1	$m_5$ x	$m_7$ 1	$m_6$ 1

$$F = 1$$

$$F = \Sigma(0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7)$$

(b)

		C			
		00	01	11	10
A	00	$m_0$ 1	$m_1$	$m_3$	$m_2$ x
	01	$m_4$ x	$m_5$	$m_7$	$m_6$ 1
	11	$m_{12}$	$m_{13}$ 1	$m_{15}$	$m_{14}$ 1
	10	$m_8$ 1	$m_9$	$m_{11}$	$m_{10}$ x

$$F = B'D' + ABC'D$$

$$F = \Sigma(0, 2, 6, 8, 10, 13, 14)$$

(c)

		C			
		00	01	11	10
A	00	$m_0$	$m_1$ x	$m_3$	$m_2$
	01	$m_4$ 1	$m_5$ 1	$m_7$ 1	$m_6$
	11	$m_{12}$ 1	$m_{13}$ 1	$m_{15}$ x	$m_{14}$ 1
	10	$m_8$	$m_9$ x	$m_{11}$ x	$m_{10}$

$$F = BC' + BD + AB$$

$$F = \Sigma(4, 5, 7, 12, 13, 14, 15)$$

(d)

		C			
		00	01	11	10
A	00	$m_0$ x	$m_1$ 1	$m_3$ 1	$m_2$ x
	01	$m_4$	$m_5$	$m_7$	$m_6$
	11	$m_{12}$	$m_{13}$	$m_{15}$ 1	$m_{14}$
	10	$m_8$ 1	$m_9$ x	$m_{11}$	$m_{10}$ 1

$$F = B'D' + A'B' + ABCD$$

$$F = \Sigma(0, 1, 2, 3, 8, 10, 15)$$

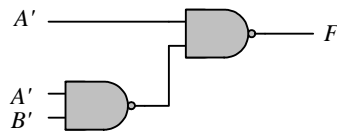
### 3.16

(a)

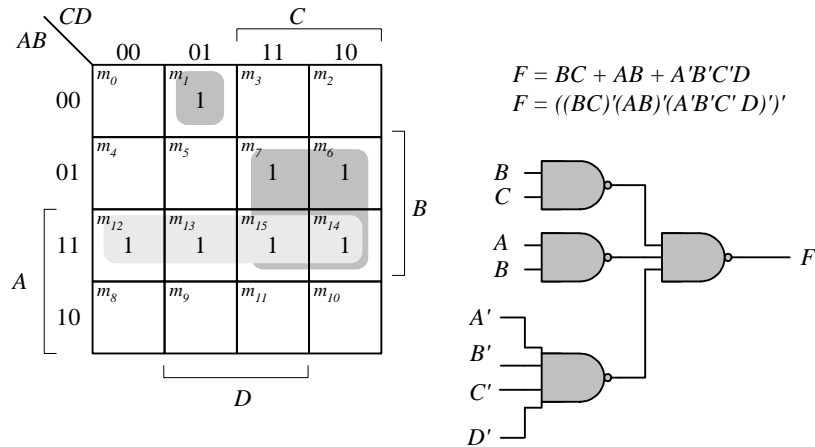
		C			
		00	01	11	10
A	00	$m_0$ 1	$m_1$ 1	$m_3$ 1	$m_2$ 1
	01	$m_4$	$m_5$	$m_7$	$m_6$
	11	$m_{12}$ 1	$m_{13}$ 1	$m_{15}$ 1	$m_{14}$ 1
	10	$m_8$ 1	$m_9$ 1	$m_{11}$ 1	$m_{10}$ 1

$$F = A + A'B'$$

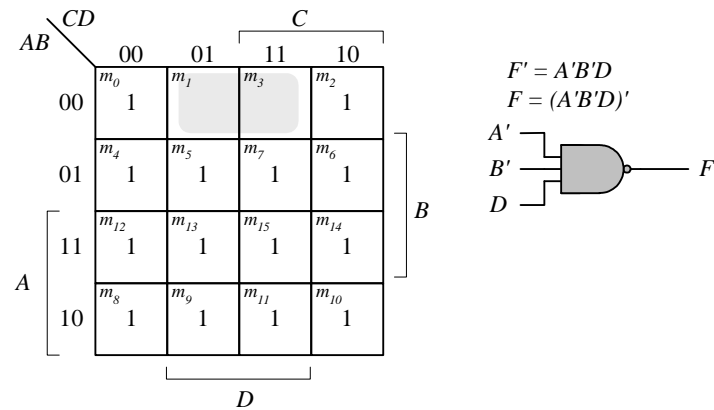
$$F = (A'(A'B'))'$$



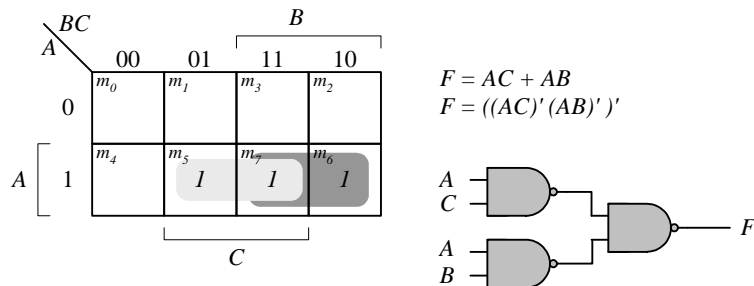
(b)



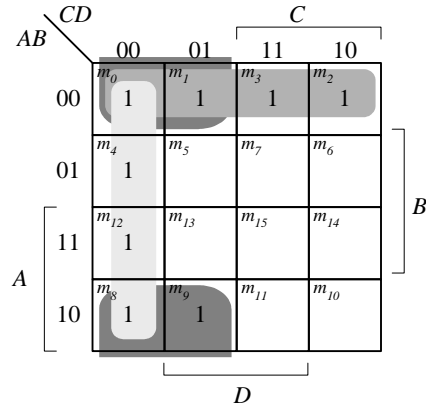
(c)



(d)

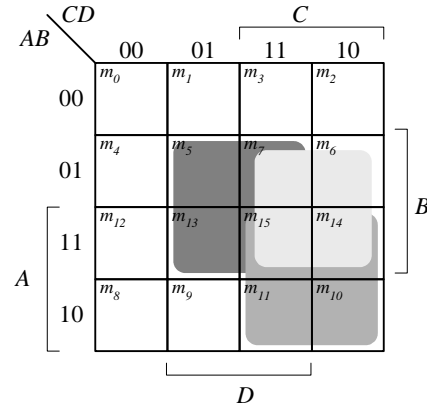


3.17

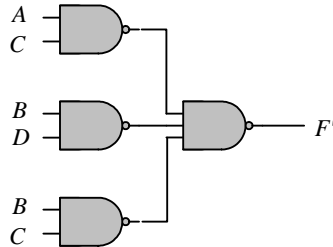


$$F = A'B' + C'D' + B'C'$$

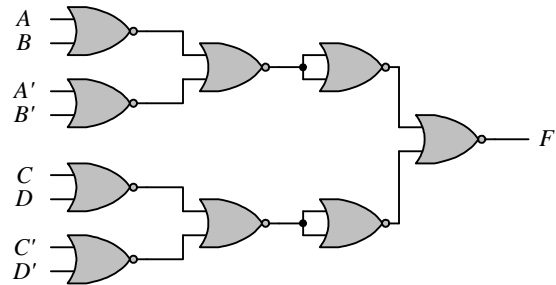
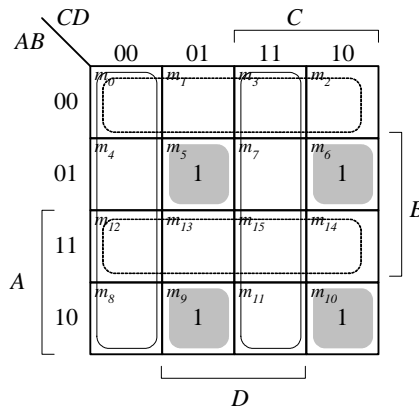
$$F = (BC)'(AC)'(BD)'$$



$$F' = BC + AC + BD$$



**3.18**  $F = (A \oplus B)(C \oplus D) = (AB' + A'B)(CD' + C'D) = AB'CD' + AB'C'D + A'BCD' + A'BC'D$



$$F = AB'CD' + AB'C'D + A'BCD' + A'BC'D \text{ and } F' = A'B' + AB + C'D' + CD$$

$$F = (A'B')'(AB)'(C'D')'(CD)' = (A + B)(A' + B') (C' + D')(C + D)$$

$$F' = [(A + B)(A' + B')] + [(C' + D')(C + D)]'$$

$$F = ([ (A + B)(A' + B') ]' + [(C' + D')(C + D)]')'$$

$$F = ([ (A + B)' + (A' + B')' ] + [(C' + D')' + (C + D)'])'$$



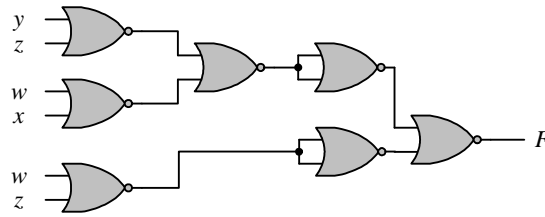
**3.19 (a)**  $F = (w + z')(x' + z')(w' + x' + y')$

		yz			
		y		z	
wx	00	00	01	11	10
	00	$m_0$	$m_1$	$m_3$	$m_2$
	01	$m_4$	$m_5$	$m_7$	$m_6$
	11	$m_{12}$	$m_{13}$	$m_{15}$	$m_{14}$
w	10	$m_8$	$m_9$	$m_{11}$	$m_{10}$

$$F = y'z' + wx' + w'z'$$

$$F = [(y + z)' + (w' + x)' + (w + z)']$$

$$F' = [(y + z)' + (w' + x)' + (w + z)']'$$



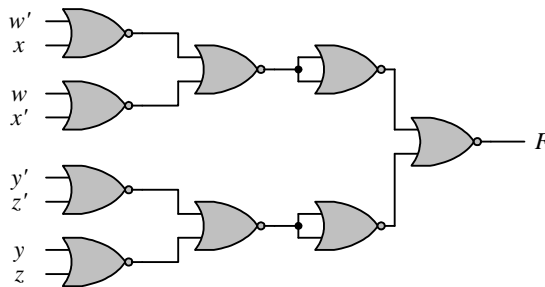
**(b)**

		yz			
		y		z	
wx	00	00	01	11	10
	00	$m_0$	$m_1$	$m_3$	$m_2$
	01	$m_4$	$m_5$	$m_7$	$m_6$
	11	$m_{12}$	$m_{13}$	$m_{15}$	$m_{14}$
w	10	$m_8$	$m_9$	$m_{11}$	$m_{10}$

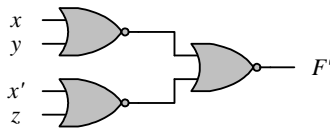
$$F = \Sigma(1, 2, 13, 14)$$

$$F' = w'x + wx' + y'z' + yz = [(w + x')(w' + x)(y + z)(y' + z)']$$

$$F = (w + x')' + (w' + x)' + (y + z)' + (y' + z)'$$



**(c)**  $F = [(x + y)(x' + z)]' = (x + y)' + (x' + z)'$   
 $F' = [(x + y)' + (x' + z)']'$



**3.20**

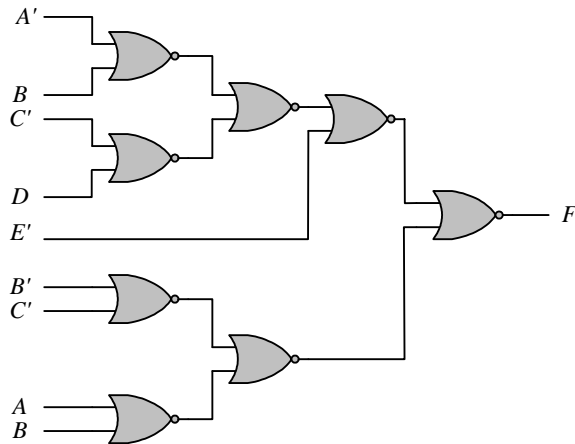
Multi-level NOR:

$$F = (AB' + CD'E) + BC(A + B)$$

$$F' = [(AB' + CD'E) + BC(A + B)]'$$

$$F' = [ (AB' + CD'E)' + E ]' + [ (BC)' + (A + B)' ]' ]'$$

$$F' = [ [ (A' + B)' + (C' + D)' ]' + E ]' + [ (B' + C)' + (A + B)' ]' ]'$$

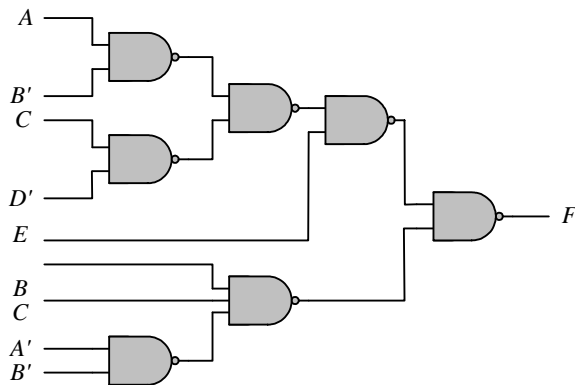


Multi-level NAND:

$$F = (AB' + CD'E) + BC(A + B)$$

$$F' = [(AB' + CD'E)]' [BC(A + B)]'$$

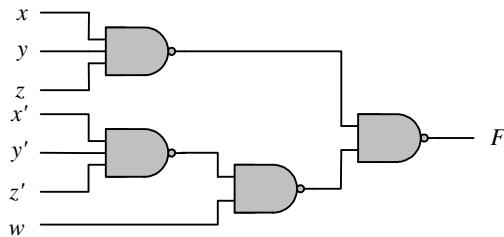
$$F' = [((AB')'(CD'E)')E]' [BC(A'B')']'$$



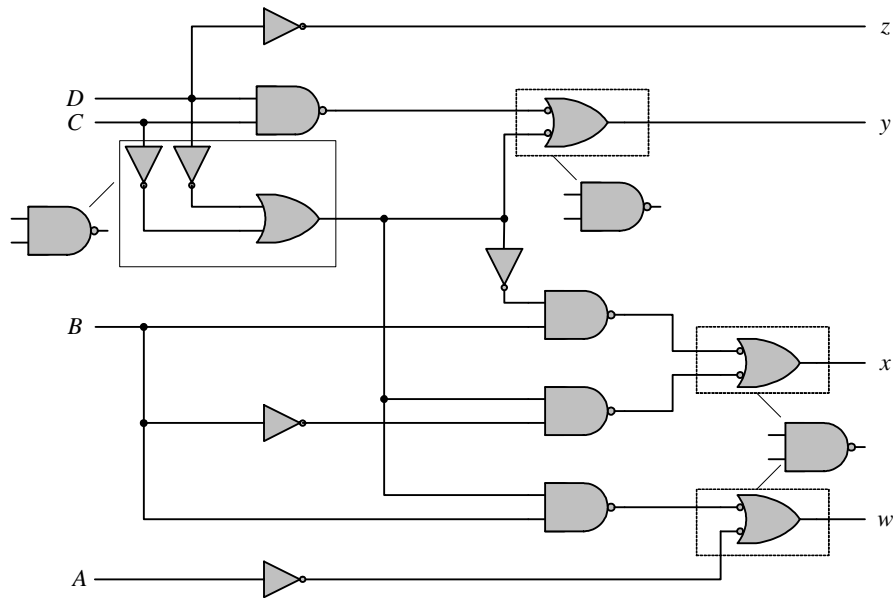
3.21

$$F = w(x + y + z) + xyz$$

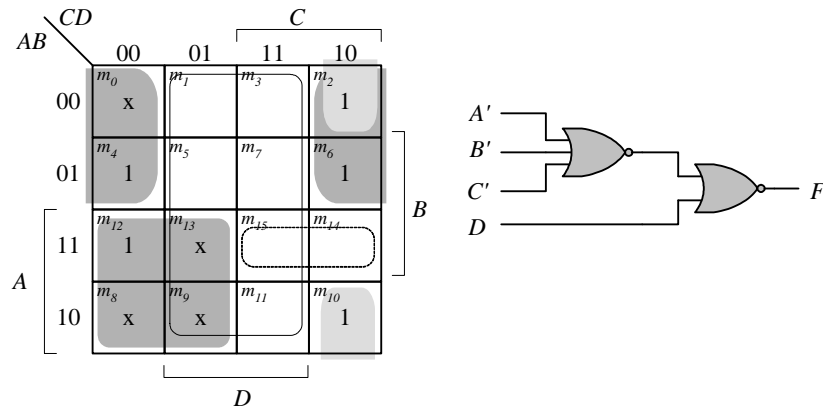
$$F' = [w(x + y + z)]' [xyz]' = [w(x'y'z')]' (xyz)'$$



3.22



3.23

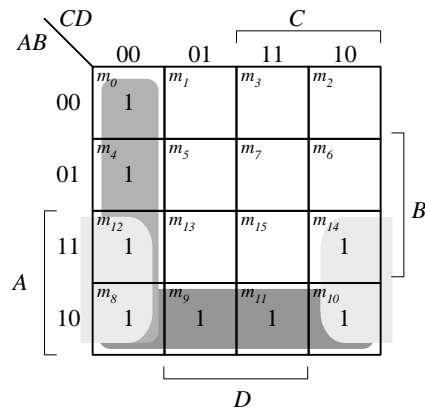


$$F = AC' + A'D' + B'CD'$$

$$F' = D + ABC$$

$$F = [D + ABC]' = [D + (A' + B' + C')]'$$

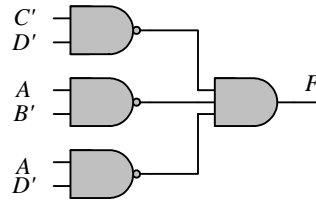
3.24



(a)  $F = C'D' + AB' + AD'$

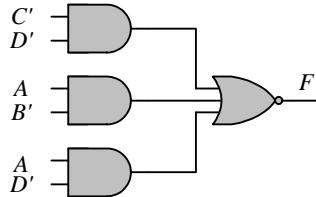
$$F' = (C'D')(AB')(AD)'$$

AND-NAND:



(b)  $F' = [C'D' + AB' + AD']'$

AND-NOR:

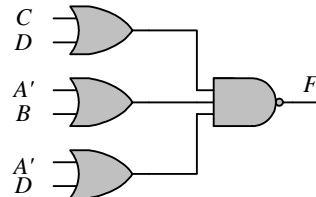


(c)  $F = C'D' + AB' + AD' = (C + D)' + (A' + B)' + (A' + D)'$

$$F' = (C'D')(AB')(AD)' = (C + D)(A' + B)(A' + D)$$

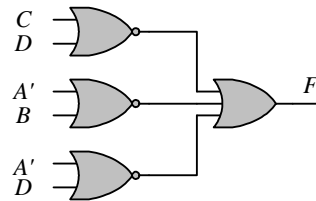
$$F = [(C + D)(A' + B)(A' + D)]'$$

OR-NAND:

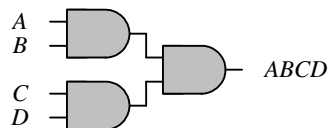


(d)  $F = C'D' + AB' + AD' = (C + D)' + (A' + B)' + (A' + D)'$

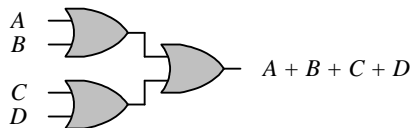
NOR-OR:



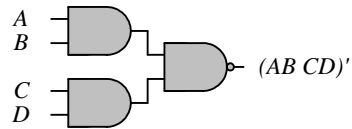
### 3.25



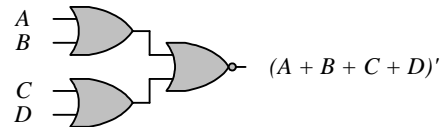
AND-AND  $\rightarrow$  AND



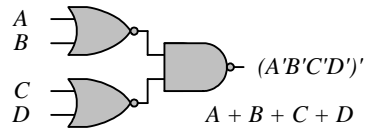
OR-OR  $\rightarrow$  OR



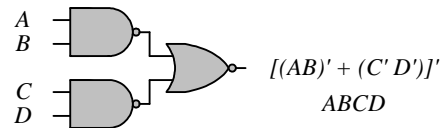
AND-NAND  $\rightarrow$  NAND



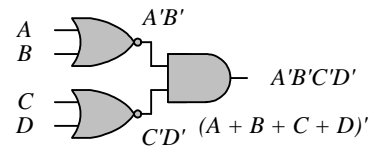
OR-NOR  $\rightarrow$  NOR



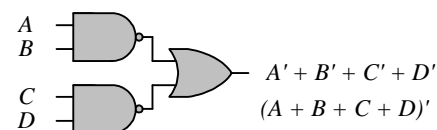
NOR-NAND  $\rightarrow$  OR



NAND-NOR  $\rightarrow$  AND



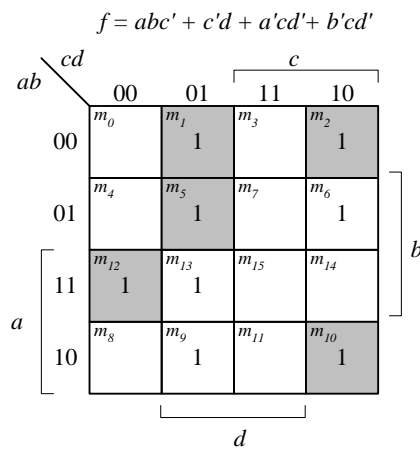
NOR-AND  $\rightarrow$  NOR



NAND-OR  $\rightarrow$  NAND

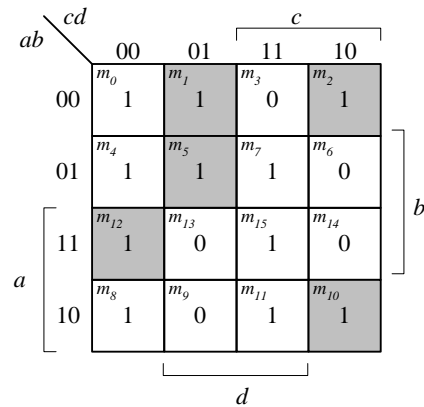
The degenerate forms use 2-input gates to implement the functionality of 4-input gates.

### 3.26



$$g = (a + b + c' + d')(b' + c' + d)(a' + c + d')$$

$$g' = a'b'cd + bcd' + ac'd$$

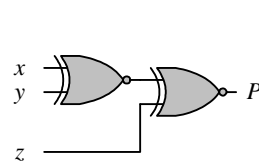


$$fg = ac'd + abc'd + b'cd'$$

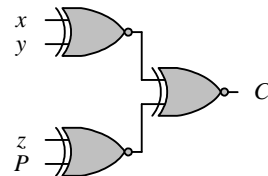
### 3.27

$$x \oplus y = x'y + xy'; \text{ Dual} = (x' + y)(x + y') = (x \oplus y)'$$

### 3.28



(a) 3-bit odd parity generator



(b) 4-bit odd parity generator

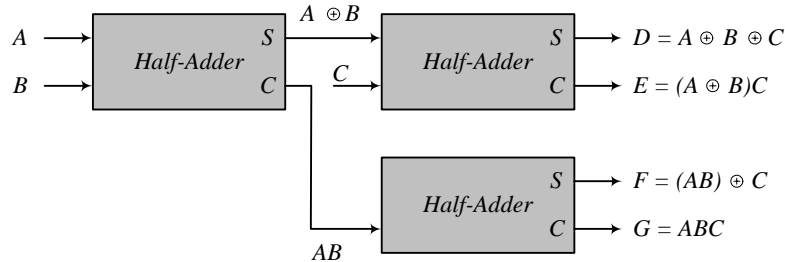
**3.29**

$$D = A \oplus B \oplus C$$

$$E = A'BC + AB'C = (A \oplus B)C$$

$$F = ABC' + (A' + B')C = ABC' + (AB)'C = (AB) \oplus C$$

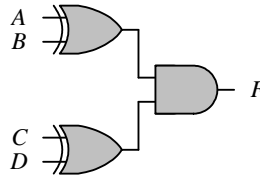
$$G = ABC$$



**3.30**

$$F = AB'CD' + A'BCD' + AB'C'D + A'BC'D$$

$$F = (A \oplus B)CD' + (A \oplus B)C'D = (A \oplus B)(C \oplus D)$$



**3.31** Note: It is assumed that a complemented input is generated by another circuit that is not part of the circuit that is to be described.

(a) **module** Fig\_3\_22a\_gates (F, A, B, C, C\_bar, D);  
**output** F;  
**input** A, B, C, C\_bar, D;  
**wire** w1, w2, w3, w4;  
**and** (w1, C, D);  
**or** (w2, w1, B);  
**and** (w3, w2, A);  
**and** (w4, B, C\_bar);  
**or** (F, w3, w4);  
**endmodule**

(b) **module** Fig\_3\_22b\_gates (F, A, B, C, C\_bar, D);  
**output** F;  
**input** A, B, C, C\_bar, D;  
**wire** w1, w2, w3, w4;  
**not** (w1\_bar, w1);  
**not** (B\_bar, B);  
**not** (w3\_bar, w3);  
**not** (w4\_bar, w4);  
**nand** (w1, C, D);  
**or** (w2, w1\_bar, B\_bar);  
**nand** (w3, w2, A);  
**nand** (w4, B, C\_bar);  
**or** (F, w3\_bar, w4\_bar);  
**endmodule**

- (c) **module** Fig\_3\_23a\_gates (F, A, A\_bar, B, B\_bar, C, D\_bar);  
**output** F;  
**input** A, A\_bar, B, B\_bar, C, D\_bar;  
**wire** w1, w2, w3, w4;  
**and** (w1, A, B\_bar);  
**and** (w2, A\_bar, B);  
**or** (w3, w1, w2);  
**or** (w4, C, D\_bar);  
**or** (F, w3, w4);  
**endmodule**
- (d) **module** Fig\_3\_23b\_gates (F, A, A\_bar, B, B\_bar, C\_bar, D);  
**output** F;  
**input** A, A\_bar, B, B\_bar, C\_bar, D;  
**wire** w1, w2, w3, w4;  
**nand** (w1, A, B\_bar);  
**nand** (w2, A\_bar, B);  
**not** (w1\_bar, w1);  
**not** (w2\_bar, w2);  
**or** (w3, w1\_bar, w2\_bar);  
**or** (w4, C, D\_bar);  
**not** (w5, C\_bar);  
**not** (w6, D);  
**nand** (F\_bar, w5, w6);  
**not** (F, F\_bar);  
**endmodule**
- (e) **module** Fig\_3\_26\_gates (F, A, B, C, D, E\_bar);  
**output** F;  
**input** A, B, C, D, E\_bar;  
**wire** w1, w2, w1\_bar, w2\_bar, w3\_bar;  
**not** (w1\_bar, w1);  
**not** (w2\_bar, w2);  
**not** (w3\_bar, E\_bar);  
**nor** (w1, A, B);  
**nor** (w2, C, D);  
**nand** (F, w1\_bar, w2\_bar, w3\_bar);  
**endmodule**
- (f) **module** Fig\_3\_27\_gates (F, A, A\_bar, B, B\_bar, C, D\_bar);  
**output** F;  
**input** A, A\_bar, B, B\_bar, C, D\_bar;  
**wire** w1, w2, w3, w4, w5, w6, w7, w8, w7\_bar, w8\_bar;  
**not** (w1, A\_bar);  
**not** (w2, B\_bar);  
**not** (w3, A);  
**not** (w4, B\_bar);  
**not** (w7\_bar, w7);  
**not** (w8\_bar, w8);  
**and** (w5, w1, w2);  
**and** (w6, w3, w4);  
**nor** (w7, w5, w6);  
**nor** (w8, C, D\_bar);  
**and** (F, w7\_bar, w8\_bar);  
**endmodule**

**3.32**

Note: It is assumed that a complemented input is generated by another circuit that is not part of the circuit that is to be described.

- (a) **module** Fig\_3\_22a\_CA (F, A, B, C, C\_bar, D);  
**output** F;  
**input** A, B, C, C\_bar, D;  
**wire** w1, w2, w3, w4;  
**assign** w1 = C & D;  
**assign** w2 = w1 | B;  
**assign** w3 = w2 & A;  
**assign** w4 = B & C\_bar;  
**assign** F = w3 | w4;  
**endmodule**
- (b) **module** Fig\_3\_22b\_CA (F, A, B, C, C\_bar, D);  
**output** F;  
**input** A, B, C, C\_bar, D;  
**wire** w1, w2, w3, w4;  
**assign** w1\_bar = ~w1;  
**assign** B\_bar = ~B;  
**assign** w3\_bar = ~w3;  
**assign** w4\_bar = ~w4;  
**assign** w1 = ~(C & D);  
**assign** w2 = w1\_bar | B\_bar;  
**assign** w3 = ~(w2 & A);  
**assign** w4 = ~(B & C\_bar);  
**assign** F = w3\_bar | w4\_bar;  
**endmodule**
- (c) **module** Fig\_3\_23a\_CA (F, A, A\_bar, B, B\_bar, C, D\_bar);  
**output** F;  
**input** A, A\_bar, B, B\_bar, C, D\_bar;  
**wire** w1, w2, w3, w4;  
**assign** w1 = A & B\_bar;  
**assign** w2 = A\_bar & B;  
**assign** w3 = w1 | w2;  
**assign** w4 = C | D\_bar;  
**assign** F = w3 | w4;  
**endmodule**
- (d) **module** Fig\_3\_23b\_CA (F, A, A\_bar, B, B\_bar, C\_bar, D);  
**output** F;  
**input** A, A\_bar, B, B\_bar, C\_bar, D;  
**wire** w1, w2, w3, w4;  
**assign** w1 = ~(A & B\_bar);  
**assign** w2 = ~(A\_bar & B);  
**assign** w1\_bar = ~w1;  
**assign** w2\_bar = ~w2;  
**assign** w3 = w1\_bar | w2\_bar;  
**assign** w4, C | D\_bar;  
**assign** w5 = ~C\_bar;  
**assign** w6 = ~D;  
**assign** F\_bar = ~(w5 & w6);  
**assign** F = ~F\_bar;  
**endmodule**

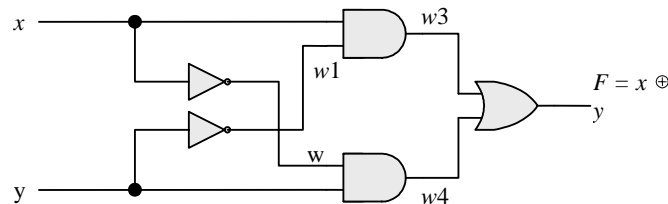


```
(e) module Fig_3_26_CA (F, A, B, C, D, E_bar);
    output F;
    input A, B, C, D, E_bar;
    wire w1, w2, w1_bar, w2_bar, w3_bar;
    not w1_bar = ~w1;
    not w2_bar = ~w2;
    not w3_bar = ~E_bar;
    nor w1 = (A | B);
    nor w2 = (C | D);
    nand F = ~( w1_bar & w2_bar & w3_bar);
endmodule

(f) module Fig_3_27_CA (F, A, A_bar, B, B_bar, C, D_bar);
    output F;
    input A, A_bar, B, B_bar, C, D_bar;
    wire w1, w2, w3, w4, w5, w6, w7, w8, w7_bar, w8_bar;
    not w1 = ~A_bar;
    not w2 = ~B_bar;
    not w3 = ~A;
    not w4 = ~B_bar;
    not w7_bar = ~w7;
    not w8_bar = ~w8;
    assign w5 = w1 & w2;
    assign w6 = w3 & w4;
    assign w7 = ~(w5 | w6);
    assign w8 = ~(C | D_bar);
    assign F = w7_bar & w8_bar;
endmodule
```

3.32

(a)



Initially, with  $xy = 00$ ,  $w1 = w2 = 1$ ,  $w3 = w4 = 0$  and  $F = 0$ .  $w1$  should change to 0 4ns after  $xy$  changes to 01.  $w4$  should change to 1 8 ns after  $xy$  changes to 01.  $F$  should change from 0 to 1 10 ns after  $w4$  changes from 0 to 1, i.e., 18 ns after  $xy$  changes from 00 to 01.

(b)

```
`timescale 1ns/1ps

module Prob_3_33 (output F, input x, y);
    wire w1, w2, w3, w4;

    and #8 (w3, x, w1);
    not #4 (w1, x);
    and #8 (w4, y, w1);
    not #4 (w2, y);
    or #10 (F, w3, w4);

endmodule

module t_Prob_3_33 ();
    reg x, y;
    wire F;
```

Prob\_3\_33 M0 (F, x, y);

**initial #200 \$finish;**

**initial fork**

x = 0;

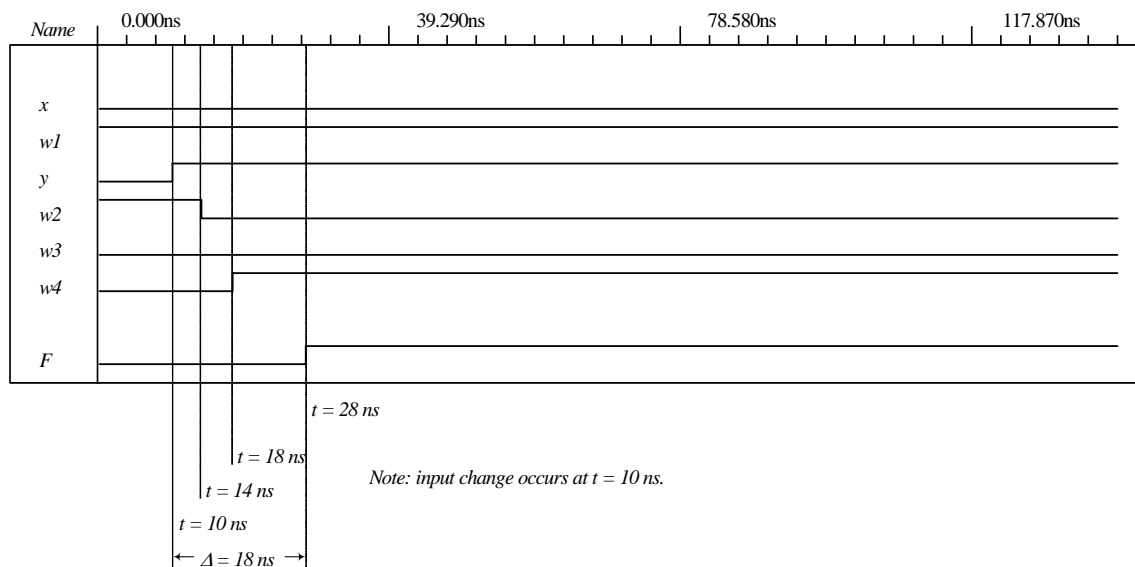
y = 0;

#20 y = 1;

**join**

**endmodule**

(c) To simulate the circuit, it is assumed that the inputs  $xy = 00$  have been applied sufficiently long for the circuit to be stable before  $xy = 01$  is applied. The testbench sets  $xy = 00$  at  $t = 0$  ns, and  $xy = 1$  at  $t = 10$  ns. The simulator assumes that  $xy = 00$  has been applied long enough for the circuit to be in a stable state at  $t = 0$  ns, and shows  $F = 0$  as the value of the output at  $t = 0$ . The waveforms show the response to  $xy = 01$  applied at  $t = 10$  ns.



3.34

```

module Prob_3_34 (Out_1, Out_2, Out_3, A, B, C, D);
  output Out_1, Out_2, Out_3;
  input A, B, C, D;
  wire A_bar, B_bar, C_bar, D_bar;
  assign A_bar = ~A;
  assign B_bar = ~B;
  assign C_bar = ~C;
  assign D_bar = ~D;
  assign Out_1 = ~( (C | B) & (A_bar | D) & B );
  assign Out_2 = ((C * B_bar) | (A & B & C) | (C_bar & B) ) & (A | D_bar);
  assign Out_3 = C & ( (A & D) | B ) | (C & A_bar);
endmodule

```

3.35

```

module Exmpl-3(A, B, C, D, F) // Line 1
  inputs A, B, C, Output D, F, // Line 2
  output B // Line 3
  and g1(A, B, B); // Line 4
  not (D, B, A), // Line 5
  OR (F, B; C); // Line 6

```

**endofmodule;** // Line 7

Line 1: Dash not allowed, use underscore: Exmpl\_3. Terminate line with semicolon (;).

Line 2: **inputs** should be **input** (no s at the end). Change last comma (,) to semicolon (;). *Output* is declared but does not appear in the port list, and should be followed by a comma if it is intended to be in the list of inputs. If *Output* is a misspelling of **output** and is to declare output ports, *C* should be followed by a semicolon (;) and *F* should be followed by a semicolon (;).

Line 3: *B* cannot be declared as input (Line 2) and output (Line 3). Terminate the line with a semicolon (;).

Line 4: *A* cannot be an output of the primitive if it is an input to the module

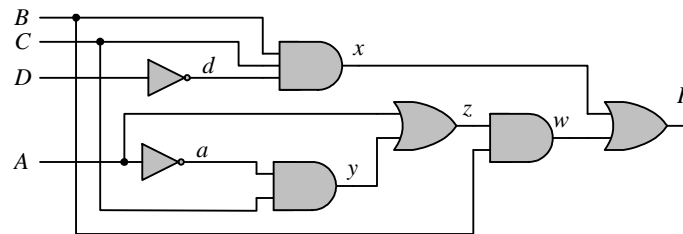
Line 5: Too many entries for the not gate (only two allowed).

Line 6: OR must be in lowercase: change to “or”.

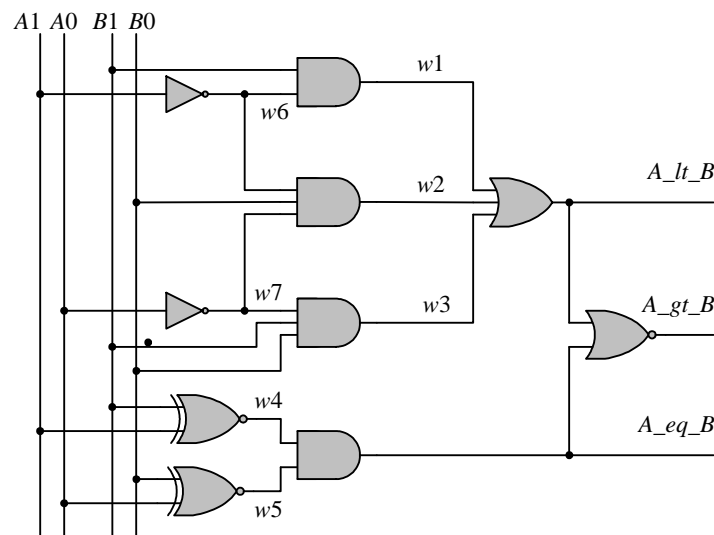
Line 7: **endmodule** is misspelled. Remove semicolon (no semicolon after endmodule).

3.36

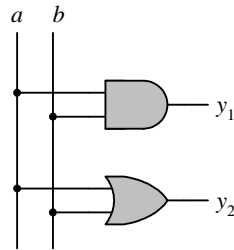
(a)



(b)



(c)



3.37

```

UDP_Majority_4 (y, a, b, c, d);
  output y;
  input a, b, c, d;
  table
    // a b c d : y
    0 0 0 0 : 0;
    0 0 0 1 : 0;
    0 0 1 0 : 0;
    0 0 1 1 : 0;
    0 1 0 0 : 0;
    0 1 0 1 : 0;
    0 1 1 0 : 0;
    0 1 1 1 : 1;

    1 0 0 0 : 0;
    1 0 0 1 : 0;
    1 0 1 0 : 0;
    1 0 1 1 : 0;
    1 1 0 0 : 0;
    1 1 0 1 : 0;
    1 1 1 0 : 1;
    1 1 1 1 : 1;
  endtable
endprimitive

```

3.38

```

module t_Circuit_with_UDP_02467;
  wire E, F;
  reg A, B, C, D;
  Circuit_with_UDP_02467 m0 (E, F, A, B, C, D);

  initial #100 $finish;
  initial fork
    A = 0; B = 0; C = 0; D = 0;
    #40 A = 1;
    #20 B = 1;
    #40 B = 0;
    #60 B = 1;
    #10 C = 1; #20 C = 0; #30 C = 1; #40 C = 0; #50 C = 1; #60 C = 0; #70 C = 1;
    #20 D = 1;
  join
endmodule

// Verilog model: User-defined Primitive
primitive UDP_02467 (D, A, B, C);
  output D;
  input A, B, C;
  // Truth table for D = f (A, B, C) = Σ (0, 2, 4, 6, 7);

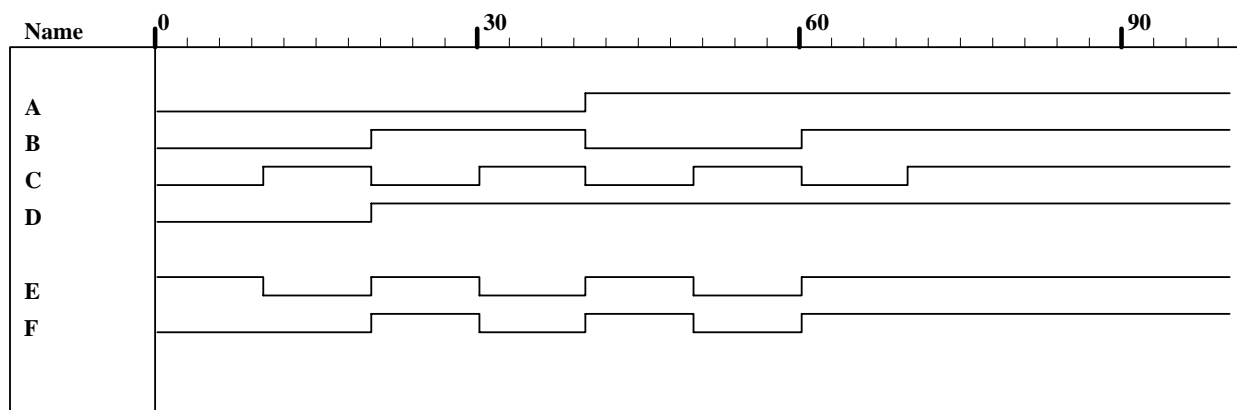
```

```

table
//  A  B  C  :  D  // Column header comment
    0  0  0  :  1;
    0  0  1  :  0;
    0  1  0  :  1;
    0  1  1  :  0;
    1  0  0  :  1;
    1  0  1  :  0;
    1  1  0  :  1;
    1  1  1  :  1;
endtable
endprimitive
// Verilog model: Circuit instantiation of Circuit_UDP_02467
module Circuit_with_UDP_02467 (e, f, a, b, c, d);
    output    e, f;
    input     a, b, c, d;

    UDP_02467 M0 (e, a, b, c);
    and       (f, e, d); //Option gate instance name omitted
endmodule

```

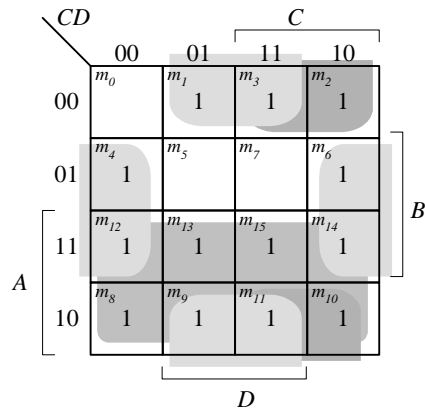


## CHAPTER 4

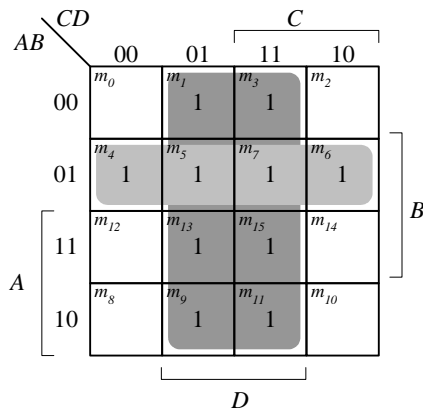
- 4.1 (a)  $T_1 = B'C$ ,  $T_2 = A'B$ ,  $T_3 = A + T_1 = A + B'C$ ,  
 $T_4 = D \oplus T_2 = D \oplus (A'B) = A'BD' + D(A + B') = A'BD' + AD + B'D$   
 $F_1 = T_3 + T_4 = A + B'C + A'BD' + AD + B'D$   
 With  $A + AD = A$  and  $A + A'BD' = A + BD'$ :  
 $F_1 = A + B'C + BD' + B'D$   
 Alternative cover:  $F_1 = A + CD' + BD' + B'D$

$$F_2 = T_2 + D = A'B + D$$

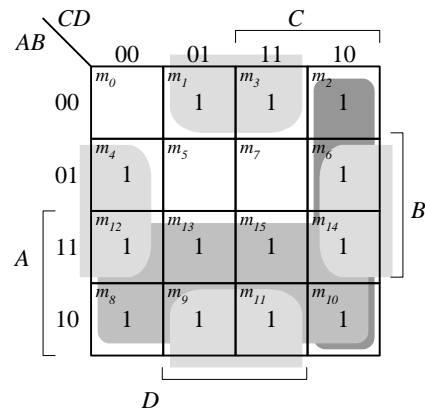
ABCD	$T_1$	$T_2$	$T_3$	$T_4$	$F_1$	$F_2$
0000	0	0	0	0	0	0
0001	0	0	0	1	1	1
0010	1	0	1	0	1	0
0011	1	0	1	1	1	1
0100	0	1	0	1	1	1
0101	0	1	0	0	0	1
0110	0	1	0	1	1	1
0111	0	1	0	0	0	1
1000	0	0	1	0	1	0
1001	0	0	1	1	1	1
1010	1	0	1	0	1	0
1011	1	0	1	1	1	1
1100	0	0	1	0	1	0
1101	0	0	1	1	1	1
1110	0	0	1	0	1	0
1111	0	0	1	1	1	1



$$F_1 = A + B'C + B'D + BD'$$

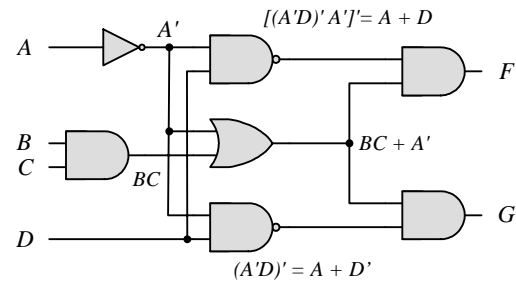


$$F_2 = A'B + D$$



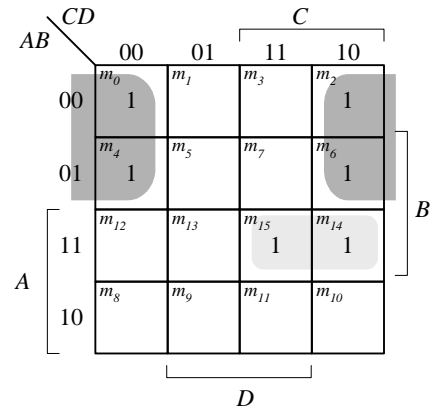
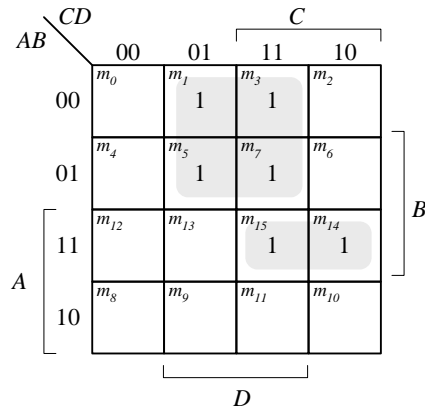
$$F_1 = A + CD' + B'D + BD'$$

## 4.2



$$F = (A + D)(A' + BC) = A'D + ABC + BCD + A'D + ABC$$

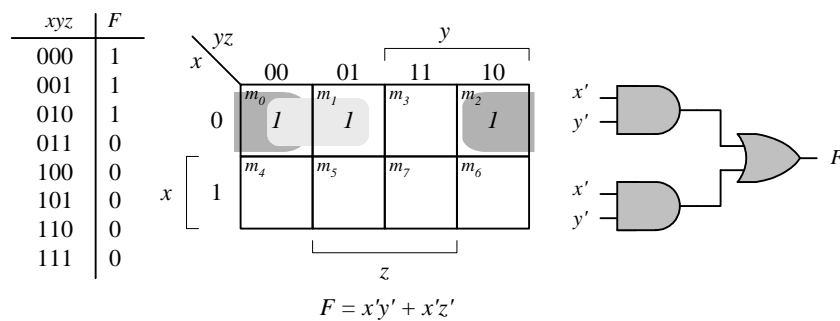
$$F = (A + D')(A' + BC) = A'D' + ABC + BCD' = A'D' + ABC$$



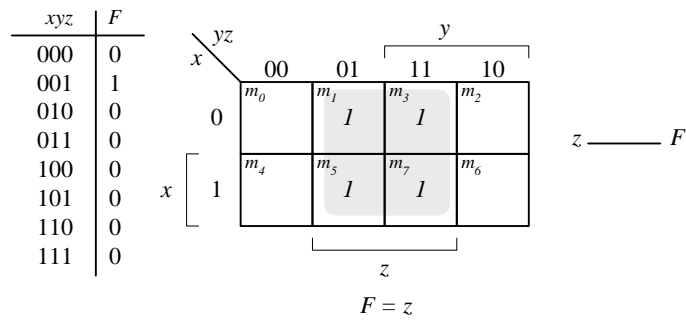
4.3 (a)  $Y_i = (A_i S' + B_i S) E'$  for  $i = 0, 1, 2, 3$

(b) 1024 rows and 14 columns

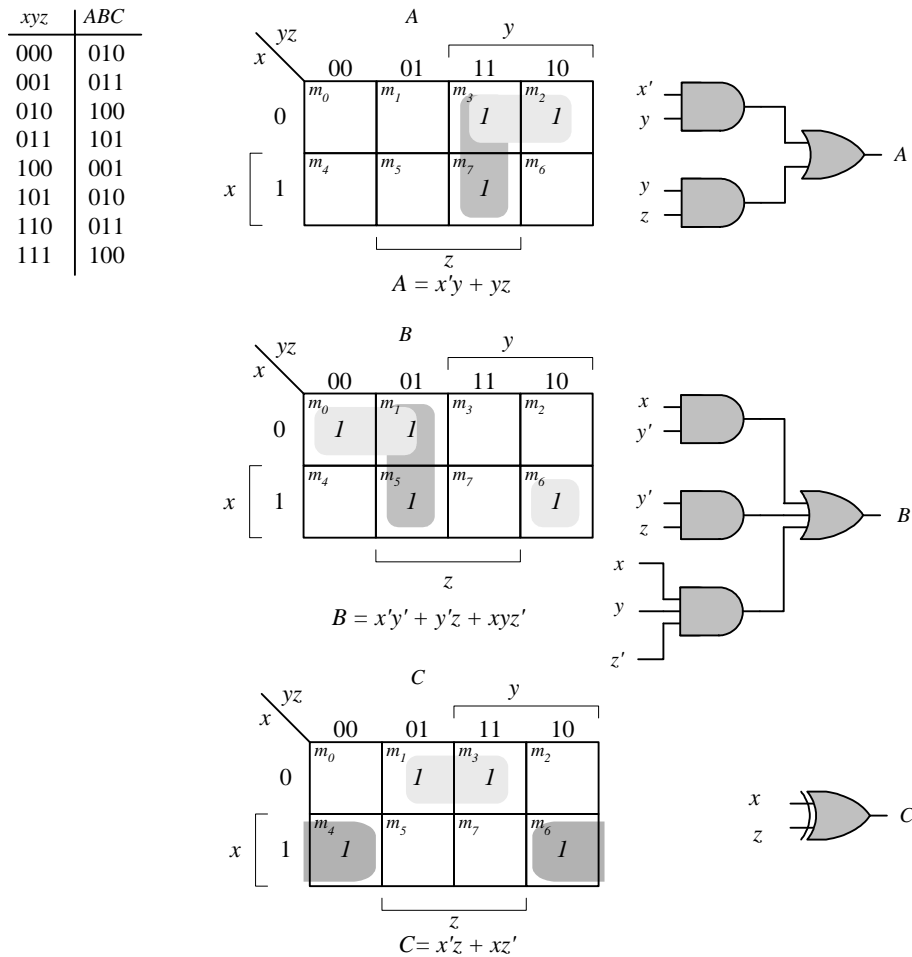
4.4 (a)



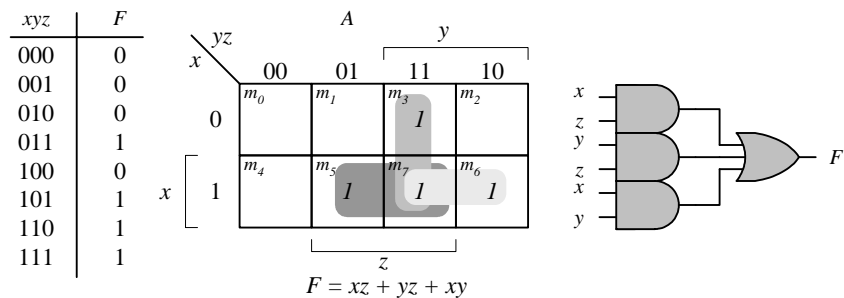
(b)



4.5



4.6





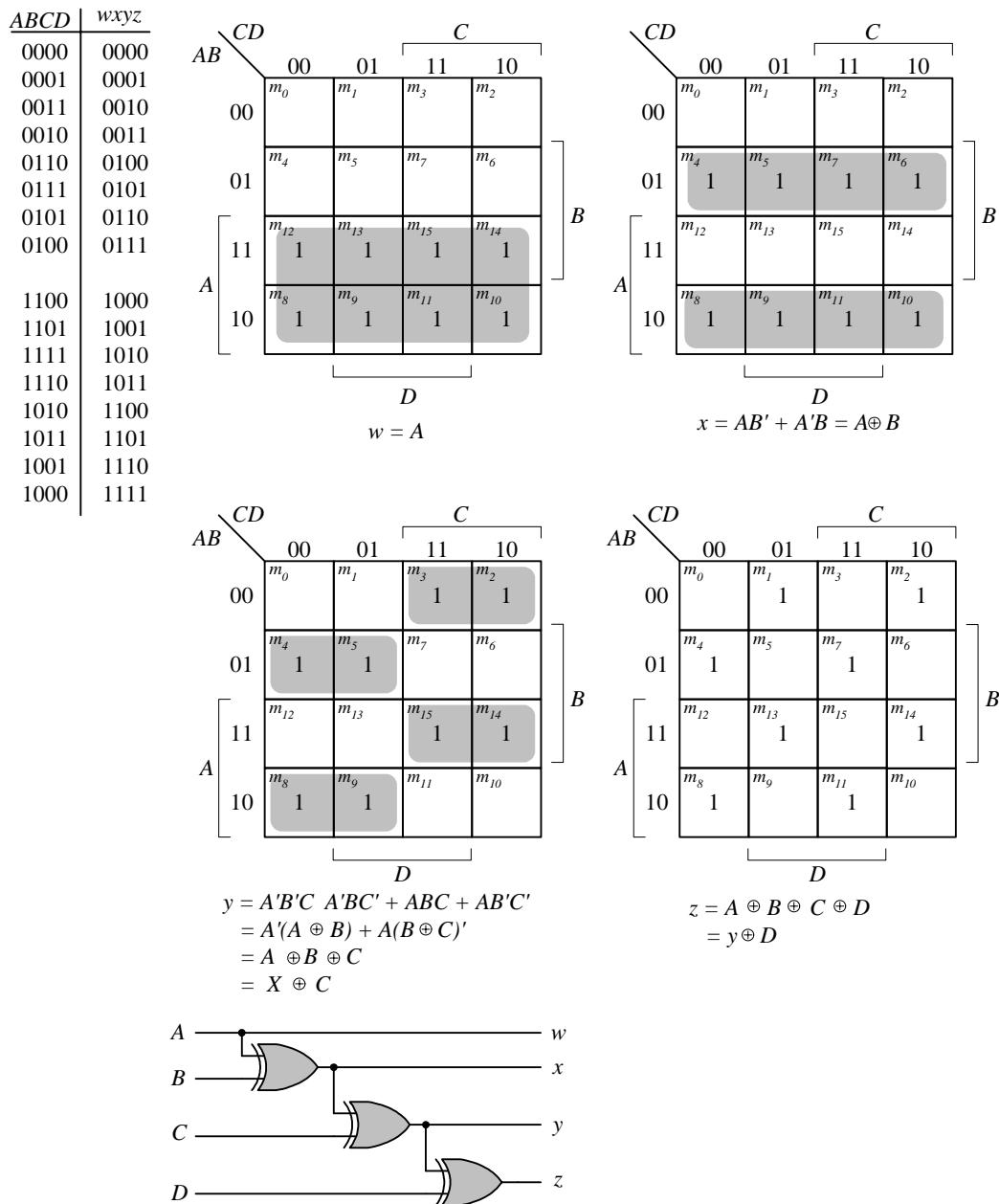
```

module Prob_4_6 (output F, input x, y, z);
  assign F = (x & z) | (y & z) | (x & y);
endmodule

```

4.7

(a)



(b)

```

module Prob_4_7(output w, x, y, z, input A, B, C, D);
  always @ (A, B, C, D)
  case ({A, B, C, D})
    4'b0000: {w, x, y, z} = 4'b0000;

```

```

4'b0001:    {w, x, y, z} = 4'b1111;
4'b0010:    {w, x, y, z} = 4'b1110;
4'b0011:    {w, x, y, z} = 4'b1101;
4'b0100:    {w, x, y, z} = 4'b1100;
4'b0101:    {w, x, y, z} = 4'b1011;
4'b0110:    {w, x, y, z} = 4'b1010;
4'b0111:    {w, x, y, z} = 4'b1001;

4'b1000:    {w, x, y, z} = 4'b1000;
4'b1001:    {w, x, y, z} = 4'b0111;
4'b1010:    {w, x, y, z} = 4'b0110;
4'b1011:    {w, x, y, z} = 4'b0101;
4'b1100:    {w, x, y, z} = 4'b0100;
4'b1101:    {w, x, y, z} = 4'b0011;
4'b1110:    {w, x, y, z} = 4'b0010;
4'b1111:    {w, x, y, z} = 4'b0001;
endcase
endmodule

```

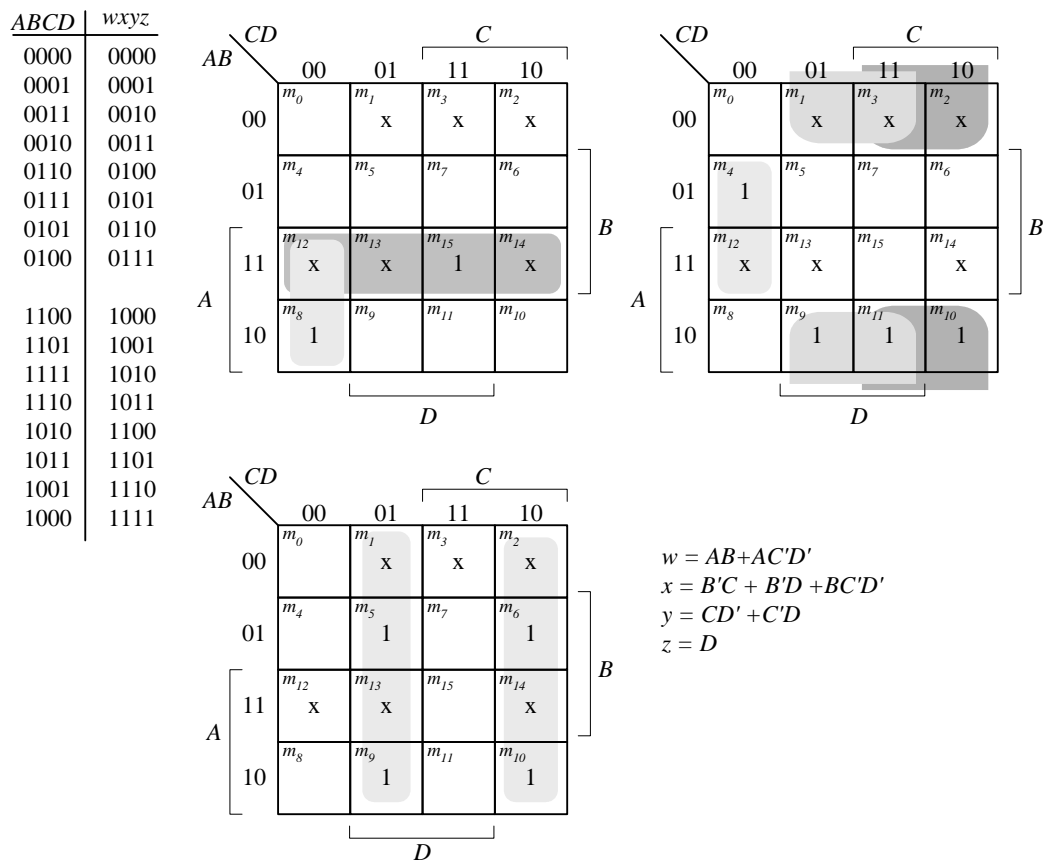
Alternative model:

```

module Prob_4_7(output w, x, y, z, input A, B, C, D);
    assign w = A;
    assign x = A ^ B;
    assign y = x ^ C;
    assign z = y ^ D;
endmodule

```

#### 4.8



Alternative model:

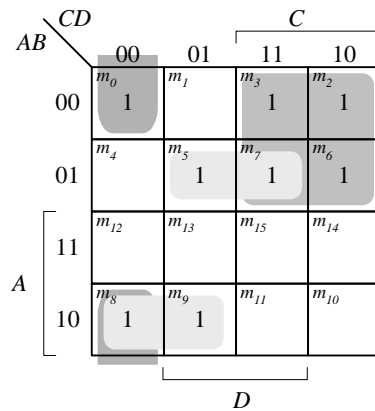
```

module Prob_4_8(output w, x, y, z, input A, B, C, D);
  assign w = (A&B) | (A & (~C)) & (~D) ;
  assign x = (~B) & C | ((~B) & D) | (B & (~C)) & (~D);
  assign y = C ^ D;
  assign z = D;
endmodule

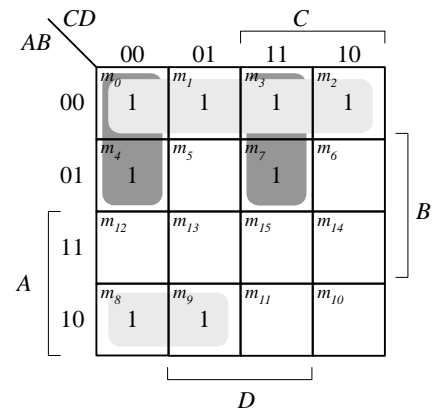
```

#### 4.9

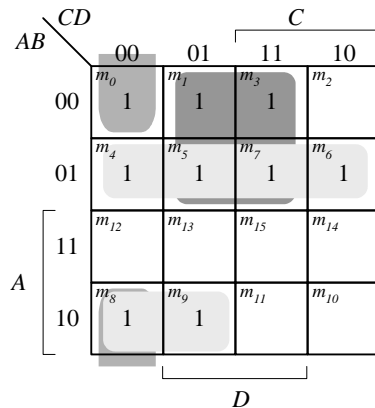
ABCD	a	b	c	d	e	f	g
0000	1	1	1	1	1	1	0
0001	0	1	1	0	0	0	0
0010	1	1	0	1	1	0	1
0011	1	1	1	1	0	0	1
0100	0	1	1	0	0	1	1
0101	1	0	1	1	0	1	1
0110	1	0	1	1	1	1	1
0111	1	1	1	0	0	0	0
1000	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
1001	1	1	1	1	0	1	1



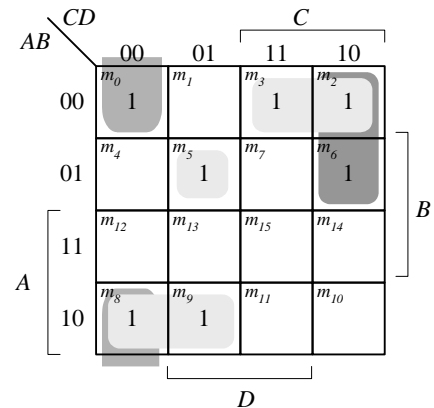
$$a = A'C + A'BD + B'C'D' + AB'C'$$



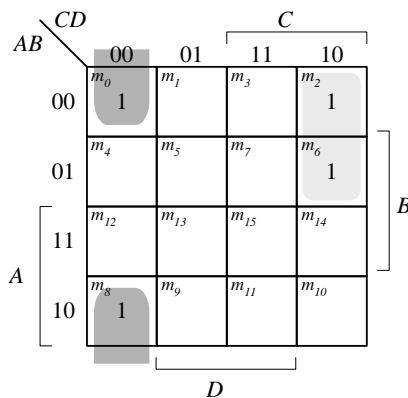
$$b = A'B' + A'C'D' + A'CD + AB'C'$$



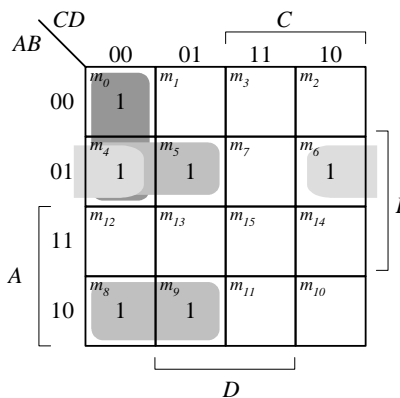
$$c = A'B + A'D + B'C'D' + AB'C'$$



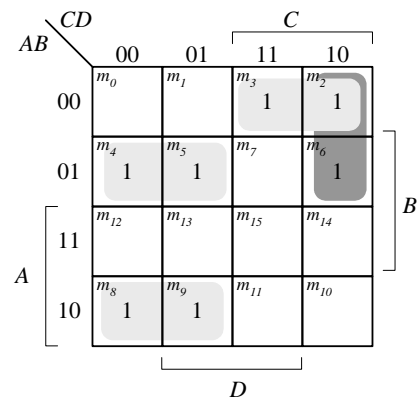
$$d = A'CD' + A'B'C + B'C'D' + AB'C' + A'BC'D$$



$$e = A'CD' + B'C'D'$$



$$f = A'BC' + A'C'D' + A'BD + AB'C'$$



$$g = A'CD' + A'B'C + A'BC' + AB'C'$$

#### 4.10

ABCD	wxyz
0000	0000
0001	1111
0010	1110
0011	1101
0100	1100
0101	1011
0110	1001
0111	1000
1000	1000
1001	0111
1010	0110
1011	0101
1100	0100
1101	0011
1110	0010
1111	0001

$w = A'(B + C + D) + AB'C'D'$   
 $= A \oplus (B + C + D)$

$x = B'(C + D) + CB'D'$   
 $= B \oplus (C + D)$

$y = CD' + C'D = C \oplus D$

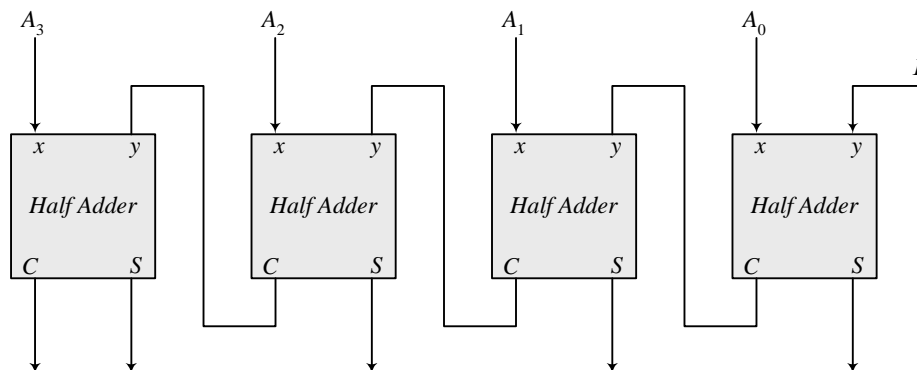
$z = D$

For a 5-bit 2's complementer with input E and output v:

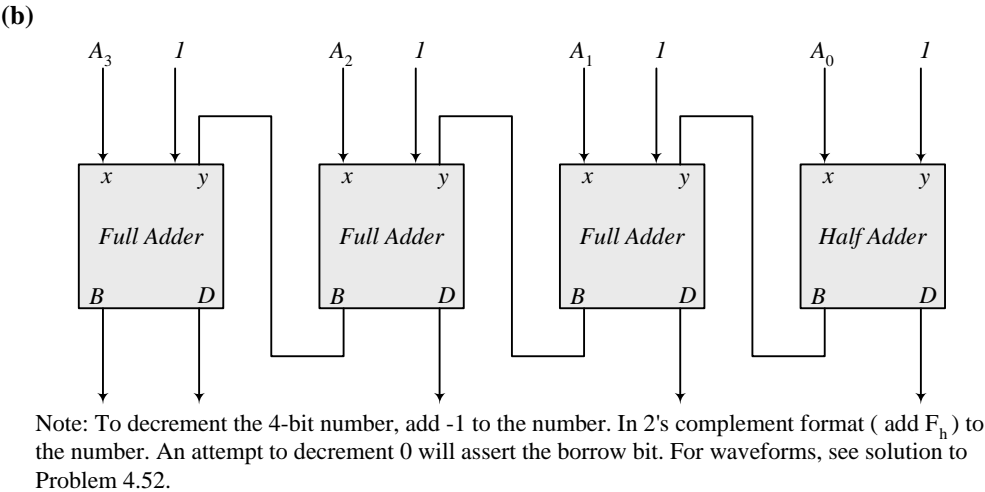
$$v = E \oplus (A + B + C + D)$$

#### 4.11

(a)



Note: 5-bit output



4.12

(a)

$x$	$y$	$B$	$D$
0	0	0	0
0	1	1	1
1	0	0	1
1	1	0	0

$D = x'y + xy'$   
 $B = x'y$

(b)

$x$	$y$	$B_{in}$	$B$	$D$
0	0	0	0	0
0	0	1	1	1
0	1	0	1	1
0	1	1	1	0
1	0	0	0	1
1	0	1	0	0
1	1	0	0	0
1	1	1	1	1

$Diff = x \oplus y \oplus z$   
 $B_{out} = x'y + x'z + yz$

4.13

	Sum	$C$	$V$
(a)	1101	0	1
(b)	0001	1	1
(c)	0100	1	0
(d)	1011	0	1
(e)	1111	0	0

4.14

xor	AND	OR	XOR
10	+ 5	+ 5	+ 10 = 30 ns

$$\begin{aligned} 4.15 \quad C_4 &= G_3 + P_3C_3 = G_3 + P_3(G_2 + P_2G_1 + P_2P_1G_0 + P_2P_1P_0C_0) \\ &= G_3 + P_3G_2 + P_3P_2G_1 + P_3P_2P_1G_0 + P_3P_2P_1P_0C_0 \end{aligned}$$

4.16 (a)

$$\begin{aligned} (C'_iG'_i + p'_i)' &= (C_i + G_i)P_i = G_iP_i + P_iC_i \\ &= A_iB_i(A_i + B_i) + P_iC_i \\ &= A_iB_i + P_iC_i = G_i + P_iC_i \\ &= A_iB_i + (A_i + B_i)C_i = A_iB_i + A_iC_i + B_iC_i = C_{i+1} \\ (P_iG'_i) \oplus C_i &= (A_i + B_i)(A_iB_i)' \oplus C_i = (A_i + B_i)(A'_i + B'_i) \oplus C_i \\ &= (A'_iB_i + A_iB'_i) \oplus C_i = A_i \oplus B_i \oplus C_i = S_i \end{aligned}$$

(b)

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Output of NOR gate} &= (A_0 + B_0)' = P'_0 \\ \text{Output of NAND gate} &= (A_0B_0)' = G'_0 \\ S_1 &= (P_0G'_0) \oplus C_0 \\ C_1 &= (C'_0G'_0 + P'_0)' \quad \text{as defined in part (a)} \end{aligned}$$

4.17 (a)

$$\begin{aligned} (C'_iG'_i + P'_i)' &= (C_i + G_i)P_i = G_iP_i + P_iC_i = A_iB_i(A_i + B_i) + P_iC_i \\ &= A_iB_i + P_iC_i = G_i + P_iC_i \\ &= A_iB_i + (A_i + B_i)C_i = A_iB_i + A_iC_i + B_iC_i = C_{i+1} \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} (P_iG'_i) \oplus C_i &= (A_i + B_i)(A_iB_i)' \oplus C_i = (A_i + B_i)(A'_i + B'_i) \oplus C_i \\ &= (A'_iB_i + A_iB'_i) \oplus C_i = A_i \oplus B_i \oplus C_i = S_i \end{aligned}$$

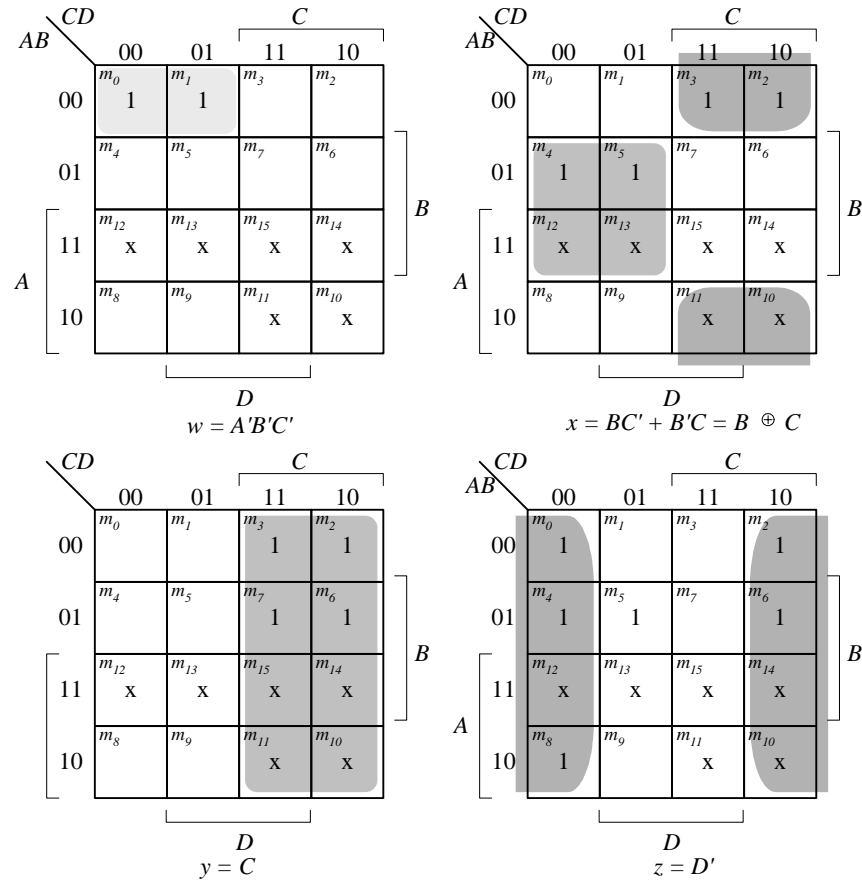
(b)

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Output of NOR gate} &= (A_0 + B_0)' = P'_0 \\ \text{Output of NAND gate} &= (A_0B_0)' = G'_0 \end{aligned}$$

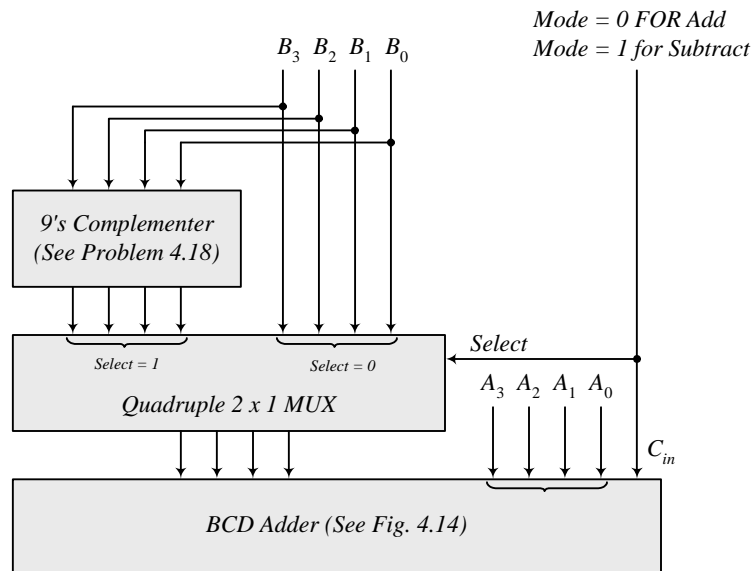
$$\begin{aligned} S_0 &= (P_0G'_0) \oplus C_0 \\ C_1 &= (C'_0G'_0 + P'_0)' \quad \text{as defined in part (a)} \end{aligned}$$

4.18

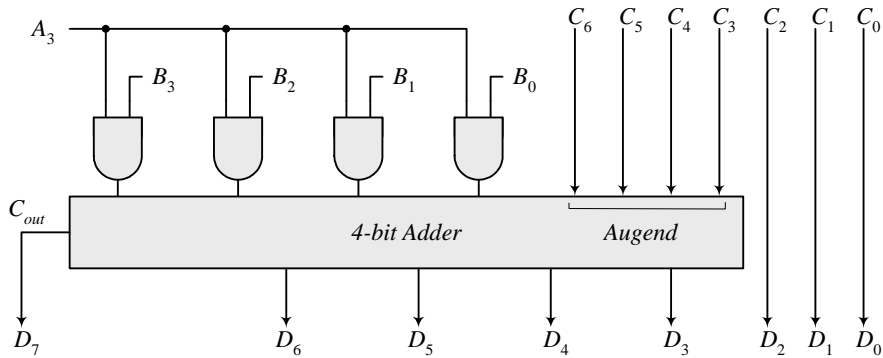
Inputs <i>ABCD</i>	Outputs <i>wxyz</i>	
0000	1001	$d(A, b, c, d) = \Sigma(10, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15)$
0001	1000	
0010	0111	
0011	0110	
0100	0101	
0101	0100	
0110	0011	
0111	0010	
1000	0001	
1001	0000	



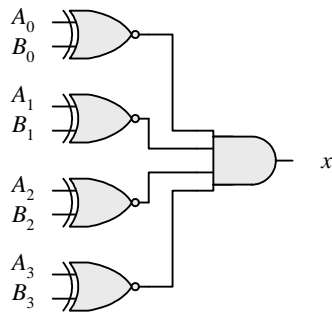
#### 4.19



4.20 Combine the following circuit with the 4-bit binary multiplier circuit of Fig. 4.16.



4.21

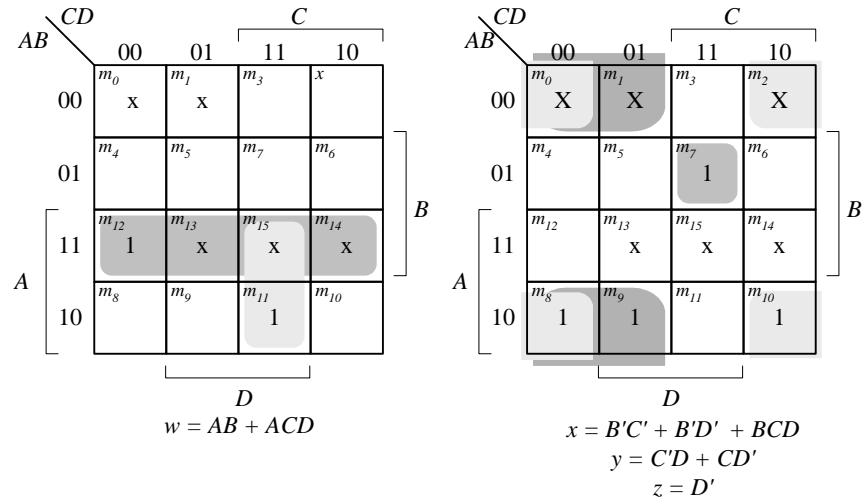


$$x = (A_0 \oplus B_0)'(A_1 \oplus B_1)'(A_2 \oplus B_2)'(A_3 \oplus B_3)'$$

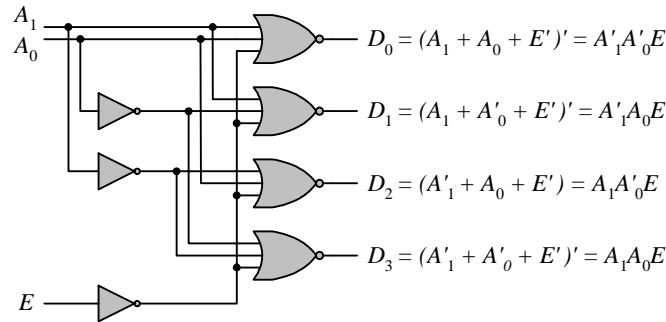
4.22

XS-3 <i>ABCD</i>	Binary <i>wxyz</i>
0011	0000
0100	0001
0101	0010
0110	0011
0111	0100
1000	0101
1001	0110
1010	0111
1011	1000
1100	1001

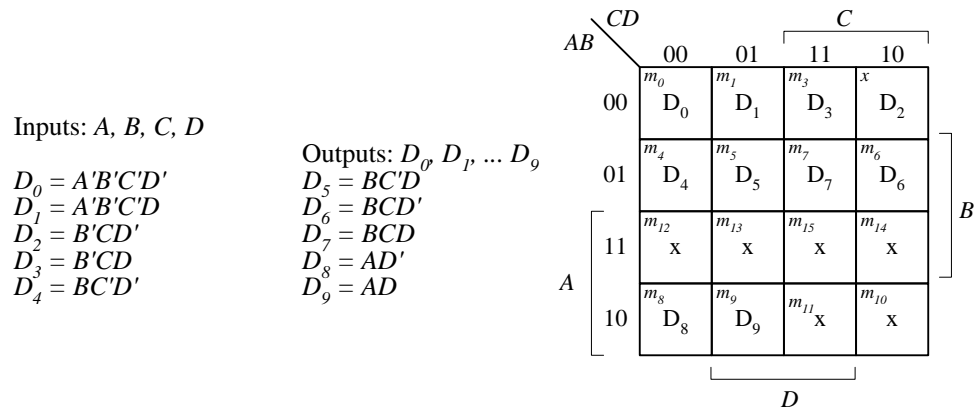




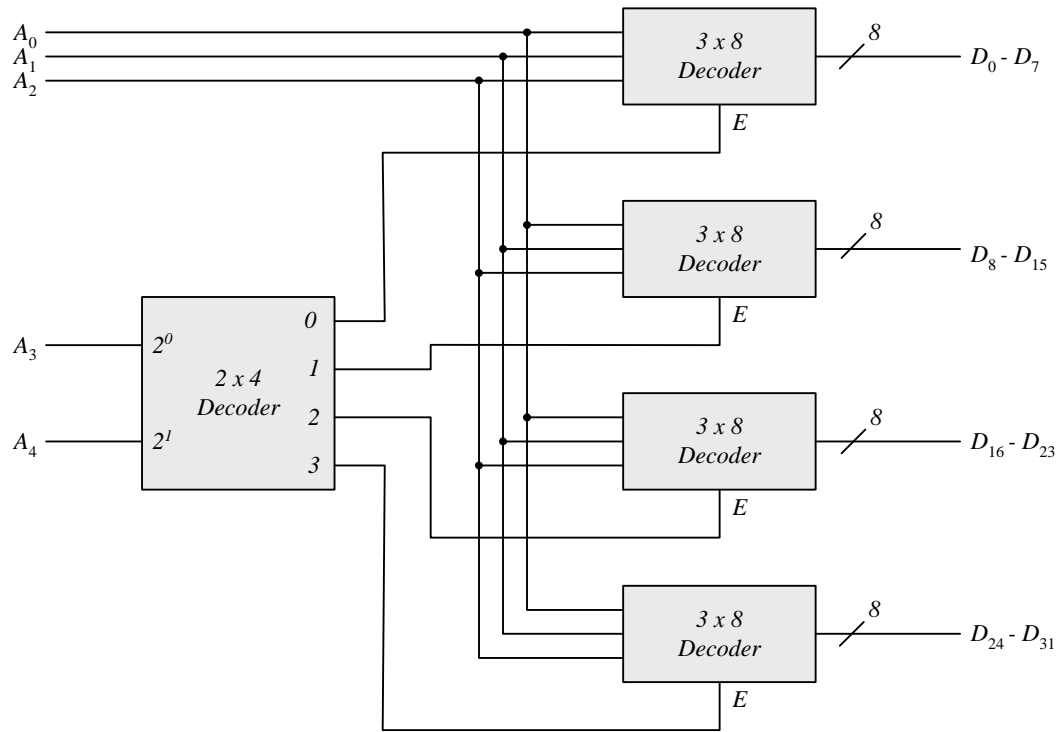
4.23



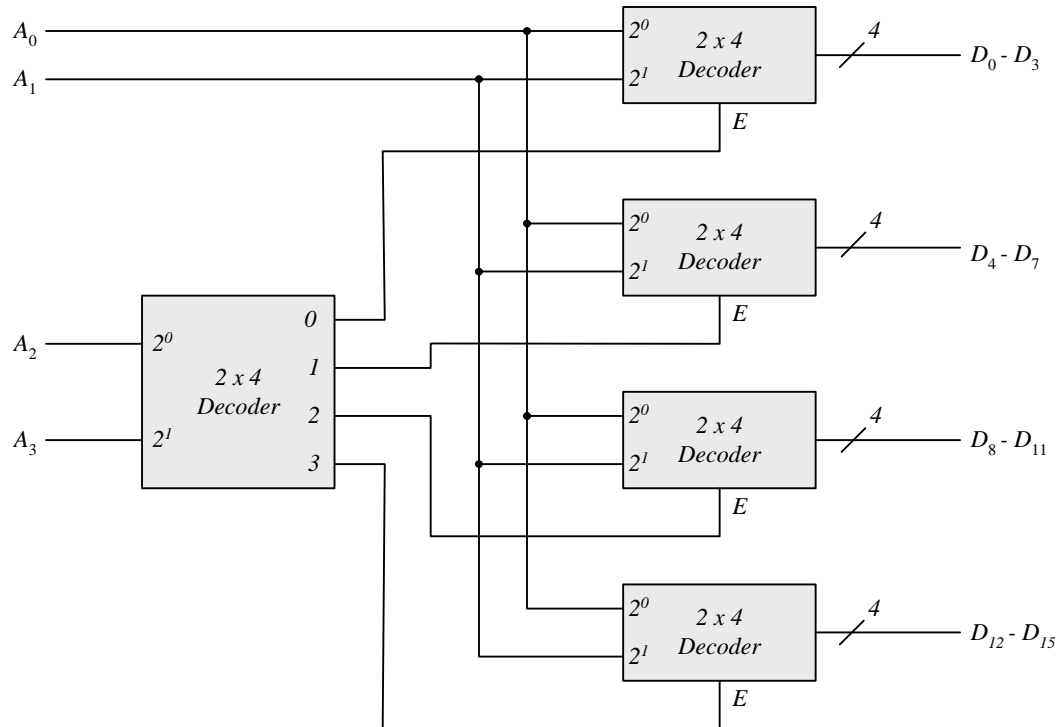
4.24



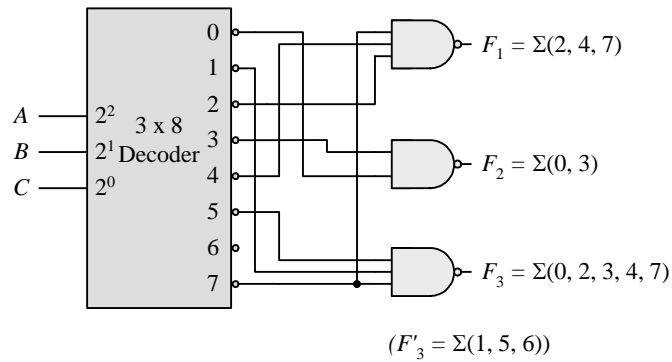
4.25



4.26



4.27

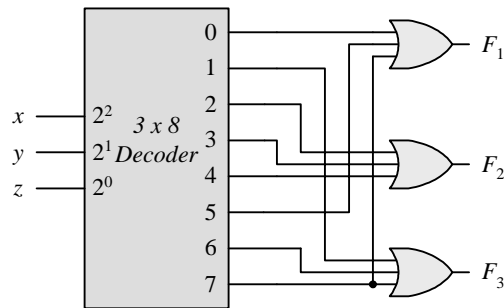


4.28 (a)

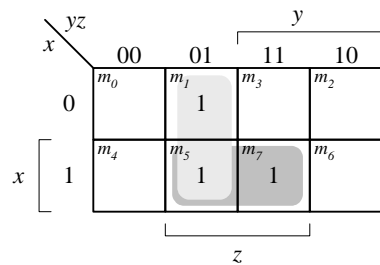
$$F_1 = x(y + y')z = x'y'z' = \Sigma(0, 5, 7)$$

$$F_2 = xy'z' + x'y + x'y(z + z') = \Sigma(2, 3, 4)$$

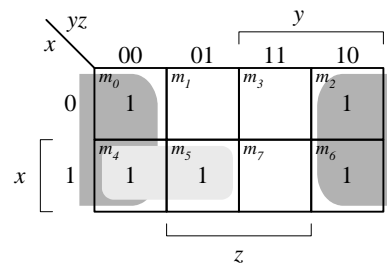
$$F_3 = x'y'z + xy(z + z') = \Sigma(1, 6, 7)$$



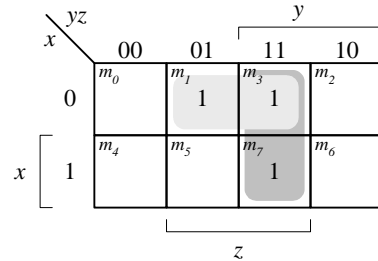
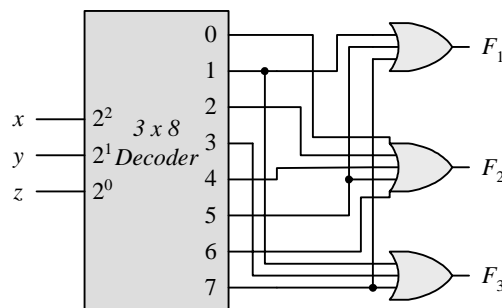
(b)



$$F_1 = y'z + xz = \Sigma(1, 5, 7)$$



$$F_2 = y'z' + xy' + yz' = \Sigma(0, 2, 4, 5, 6)$$



$$F_3 = x'z + yz = \Sigma(1, 3, 7)$$

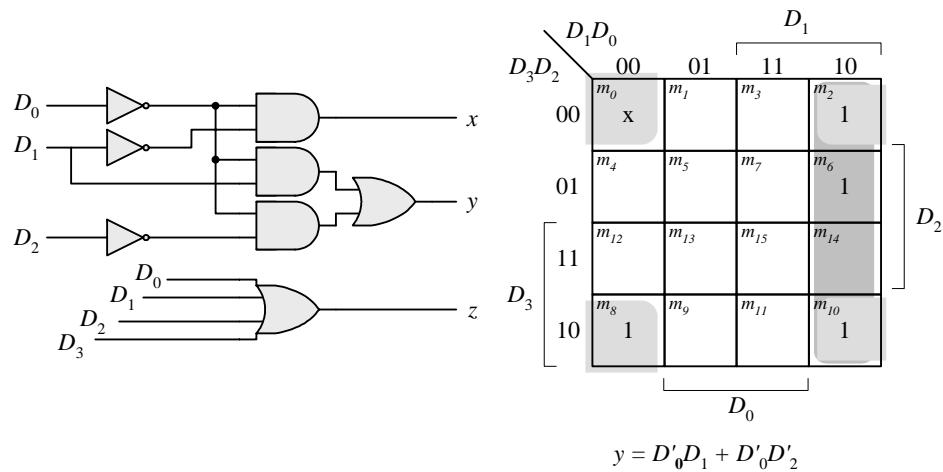
4.29

Inputs				Outputs		
$D_3$	$D_2$	$D_1$	$D_0$	$X$	$Y$	$Z$
0	0	0	0	x	x	0
x	x	x	1	0	0	1
x	x	1	0	0	1	1
x	1	0	0	1	0	1
1	0	0	0	1	1	1

		$D_1 D_0$		$D_1$	
		00	01	11	10
$D_3 D_2$	00	$m_0$ x	$m_1$	$m_3$	$m_2$
	01	$m_4$ 1	$m_5$	$m_7$	$m_6$
	11	$m_{12}$ 1	$m_{13}$	$m_{15}$	$m_{14}$
	10	$m_8$ 1	$m_9$	$m_{11}$	$m_{10}$
		$D_0$			

$v = D_0 + D_1 + D_2 + D_3$

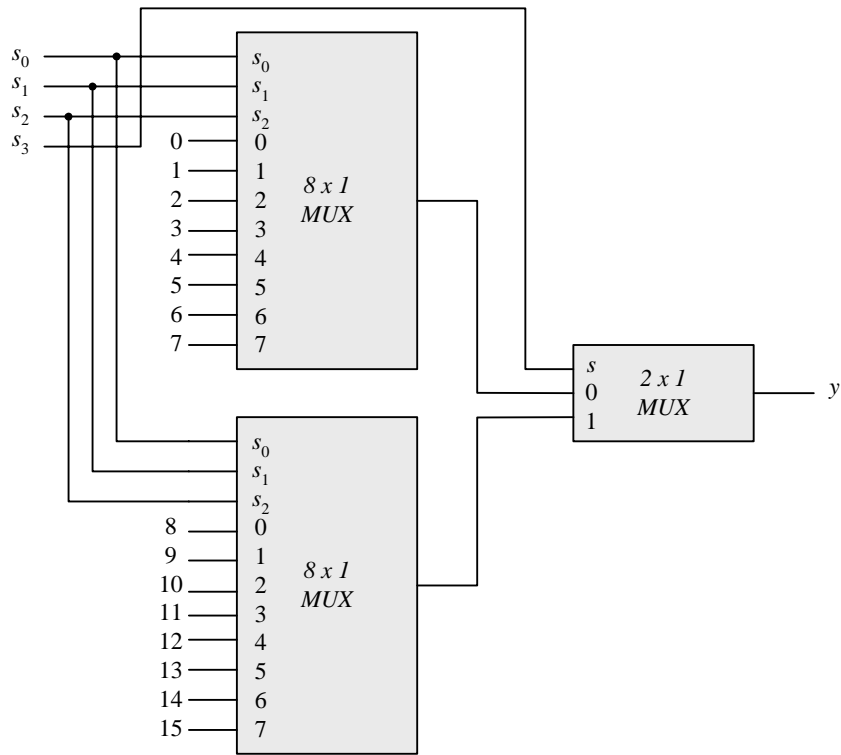


4.30

Inputs								Outputs			
$D_0$	$D_1$	$D_2$	$D_3$	$D_4$	$D_5$	$D_6$	$D_7$	$x$	$y$	$z$	$V$
0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	x	x	x	0
1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1
x	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1
x	x	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0
x	x	x	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	1
x	x	x	x	1	0	0	0	0	1	0	0
x	x	x	x	x	1	0	0	0	1	0	1
x	x	x	x	x	x	1	0	0	1	0	0
x	x	x	x	x	x	x	1	1	1	1	1

If  $D_2 = 1$ ,  $D_6 = 1$ , all others = 0  
 Output xyz = 100 and  $V = 1$

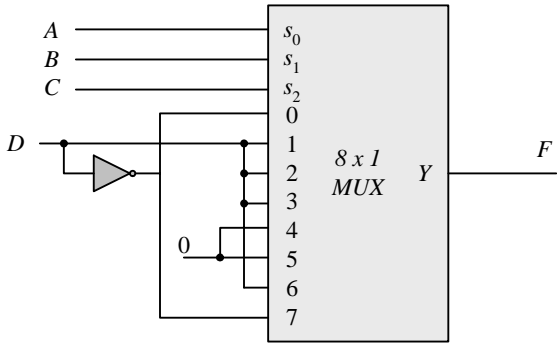
4.31



4.32

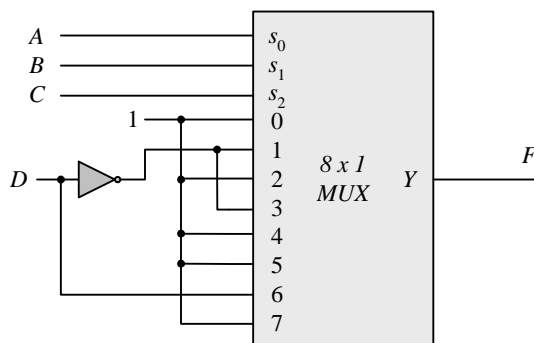
(a)  $F = \Sigma (0, 2, 5, 7, 11, 14)$

Inputs ABCD	F
0000	1 $F = D'$
0001	0
0010	1 $F = D$
0011	0
0100	0 $F = D$
0101	1
0110	0 $F = D$
0111	1
1000	0 $F = 0$
1001	0
1010	0 $F = 0$
1011	0
1100	0 $F = D$
1101	1
1110	1 $F = D'$
1111	0



(b)  $F = \Pi(3, 8, 12) = (A' + B' + C + D)(A + B' + C' + D')(A + B + C' + D')$   
 $F' = ABC'D' + A'BCD + A'B'CD = \Sigma(12, 7, 3)$   
 $F = \Sigma(0, 1, 2, 4, 5, 6, 8, 9, 10, 11, 13, 14, 15)$

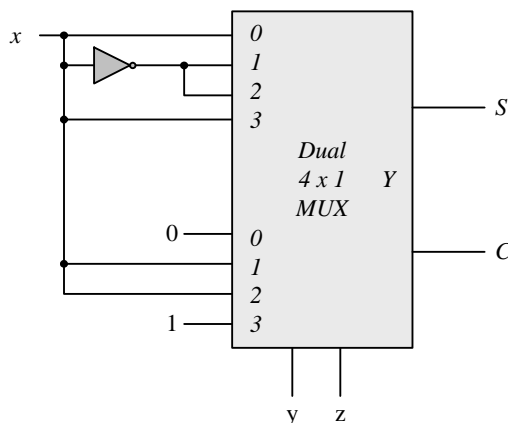
Inputs ABCD	F
0000	1 $F = 1$
0001	1
0010	1 $F = D'$
0011	0
0100	1 $F = 1$
0101	1
0110	1 $F = D'$
0111	0
1000	1 $F = 1$
1001	1
1010	1 $F = 1$
1011	1
1100	0 $F = D$
1101	1
1110	1 $F = 1$
1111	1



4.33

$S(x, y, z) = \Sigma(1, 2, 4, 7)$   
 $C(x, y, z) = \Sigma(3, 5, 6, 7)$

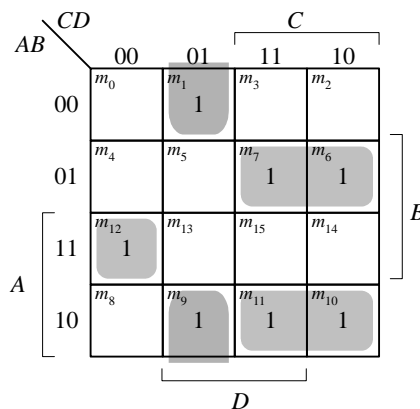
S	$I_0$	$I_1$	$I_2$	$I_3$	C	$I_0$	$I_1$	$I_2$	$I_3$
$x'$	0	1	2	3	$x'$	0	1	2	3
$x$	4	5	6	7	$x$	4	5	6	7
	$x$	$x'$	$x'$	$x$		0	$x'$	$x'$	1



4.34

(a)

	A	B	C	D	F
$I_3 = 1$	0	1	1	0	1
	0	1	1	1	1
$I_5 = 1$	1	0	1	0	1
	1	0	1	1	1
$I_0 = D$	0	0	0	0	0
	0	0	0	1	1
$I_4 = D$	1	0	0	0	0
	1	0	0	1	1
$I_6 = D'$	1	1	0	0	1
	1	1	0	1	0



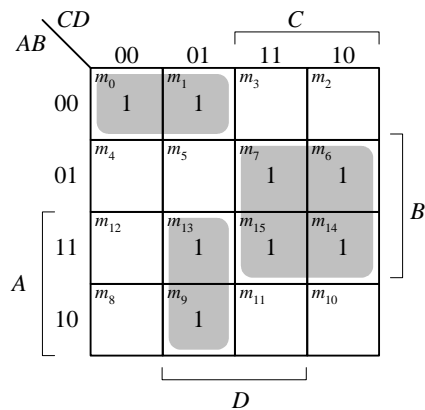
Other minterms = 0  
since  $I_1 = I_2 = I_7 = 0$

$F(A, B, C, D) = \Sigma(1, 6, 7, 9, 10, 11, 12)$

(b)

	A	B	C	D	F
$I_1 = 0$	0	0	1	0	0
$I_2 = 0$	0	0	1	1	0
$I_3 = 1$	0	1	1	0	1
$I_7 = 1$	1	1	1	0	1
$I_4 = D$	1	0	0	0	0
$I_0 = D'$	0	0	0	0	1
$I_6 = D'$	1	1	0	0	1
	1	1	0	1	0

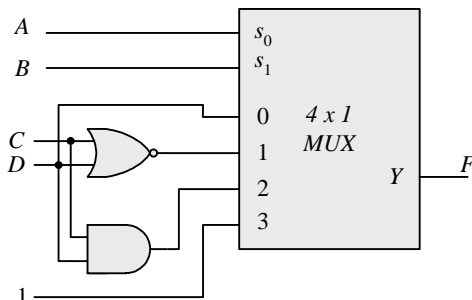
Other minterms = 0  
since  $I_1 = I_2 = 0$



$$F(A, B, C, D) = \Sigma(0, 1, 6, 7, 9, 13, 14, 15)$$

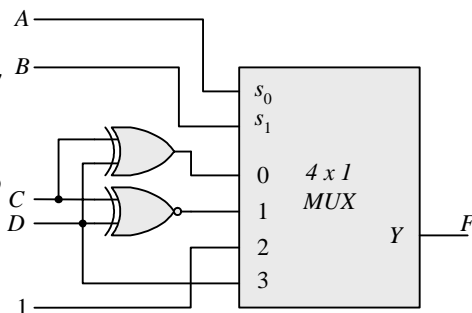
4.35 (a)

Inputs ABCD	F
0000	0
0001	1 $AB = 00$
0010	0 $F = D$
0011	1
0100	1 $AB = 01$
0101	0 $F = C'D'$
0110	0 $= (C + D)'$
0111	0
1000	0
1001	0 $AB = 10$
1010	0 $F = CD$
1011	1
1100	1 $AB = 11$
1101	1 $F = 1$
1110	1
1111	1



(b)

Inputs ABCD	F
0000	0
0001	1 $AB = 00$
0010	1 $F = C'D + CD'$
0011	0
0100	1 $AB = 01$
0101	0 $F = C'D' + CD$
0110	0
0111	1
1000	1
1001	1 $AB = 10$
1010	1 $F = 1$
1011	1
1100	0 $AB = 11$
1101	1 $F = D$
1110	0
1111	1



4.36

```
module priority_encoder_gates (output x, y, V, input D0, D1, D2, D3); // V2001
    wire w1, D2_not;
    not (D2_not, D2);
    or (x, D2, D3);
    or (V, D0, D1, x);
    and (w1, D2_not, D1);
    or (y, D3, w1);
endmodule
```

Note: See Problem 4.45 for testbench)

4.37

```
module Add_Sub_4_bit (
    output [3: 0] S,
    output C,
    input [3: 0] A, B,
    input M
);
    wire [3: 0] B_xor_M;
    wire C1, C2, C3, C4;
    assign C = C4; // output carry
    xor (B_xor_M[0], B[0], M);
    xor (B_xor_M[1], B[1], M);
    xor (B_xor_M[2], B[2], M);
    xor (B_xor_M[3], B[3], M);
    // Instantiate full adders
    full_adder FA0 (S[0], C1, A[0], B_xor_M[0], M);
    full_adder FA1 (S[1], C2, A[1], B_xor_M[1], C1);
    full_adder FA2 (S[2], C3, A[2], B_xor_M[2], C2);
    full_adder FA3 (S[3], C4, A[3], B_xor_M[3], C3);
endmodule

module full_adder (output S, C, input x, y, z); // See HDL Example 4.2
    wire S1, C1, C2;
    // instantiate half adders
    half_adder HA1 (S1, C1, x, y);
    half_adder HA2 (S, C2, S1, z);
    or G1 (C, C2, C1);
endmodule

module half_adder (output S, C, input x, y); // See HDL Example 4.2
    xor (S, x, y);
    and (C, x, y);
endmodule

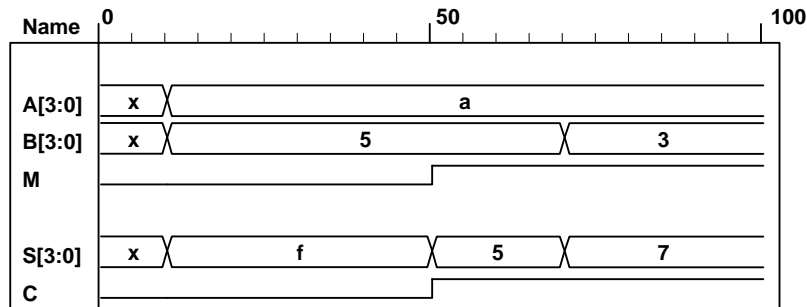
module t_Add_Sub_4_bit ();
    wire [3: 0] S;
    wire C;
    reg [3: 0] A, B;
    reg M;

    Add_Sub_4_bit M0 (S, C, A, B, M);

    initial #100 $finish;
    initial fork
        #10 M = 0;
        #10 A = 4'hA;
        #10 B = 4'h5;
```



```
#50 M = 1;
#70 B = 4'h3;
join
endmodule
```



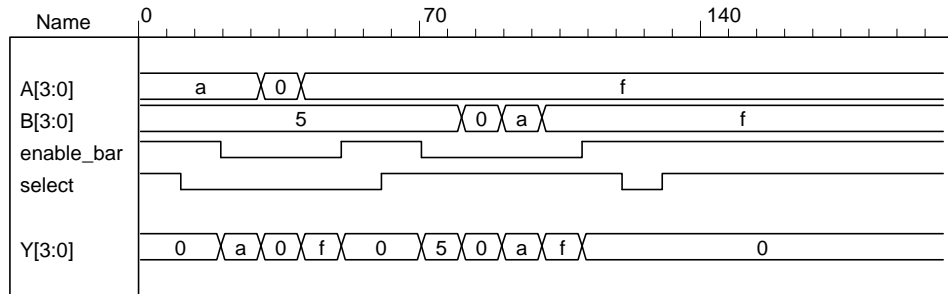
4.38

```
module quad_2x1_mux (           // V2001
    input  [3: 0]  A, B,         // 4-bit data channels
    input          enable_bar, select, // enable_bar is active-low)
    output [3: 0]  Y             // 4-bit mux output
);
    //assign Y = enable_bar ? 0 : (select ? B : A); // Grounds output
    assign Y = enable_bar ? 4'bzzzz : (select ? B : A); // Three-state output
endmodule
// Note that this mux grounds the output when the mux is not active.
```

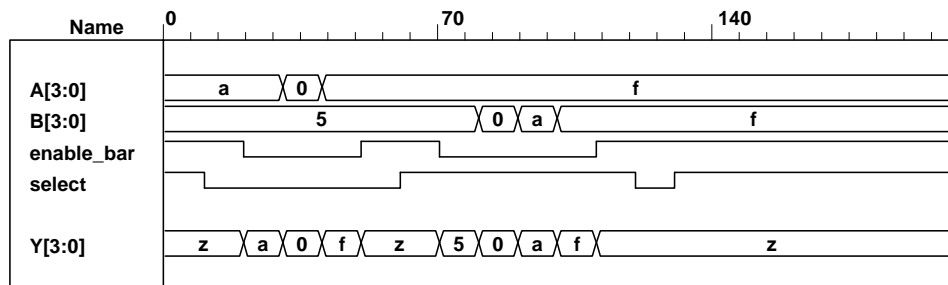
```
module t_quad_2x1_mux ();
    reg  [3: 0] A, B, C;           // 4-bit data channels
    reg          enable_bar, select; // enable_bar is active-low)
    wire [3: 0]  Y;               // 4-bit mux
```

```
quad_2x1_mux M0 (A, B, enable_bar, select, Y);
```

```
initial #200 $finish;
initial fork
    enable_bar = 1;
    select = 1;
    A = 4'hA;
    B = 4'h5;
    #10 select = 0; // channel A
    #20 enable_bar = 0;
    #30 A = 4'h0;
    #40 A = 4'hF;
    #50 enable_bar = 1;
    #60 select = 1; // channel B
    #70 enable_bar = 0;
    #80 B = 4'h00;
    #90 B = 4'hA;
    #100 B = 4'hF;
    #110 enable_bar = 1;
    #120 select = 0;
    #130 select = 1;
    #140 enable_bar = 1;
join
endmodule
```



With three-state output:



```
4.39 // Verilog 1995
module Compare (A, B, Y);
  input  [3: 0] A, B; // 4-bit data inputs.
  output [5: 0] Y;    // 6-bit comparator output.
  reg     [5: 0] Y;   // EQ, NE, GT, LT, GE, LE

  always @ (A or B)
    if (A==B) Y = 6'b10_0011; // EQ, GE, LE
    else if (A < B) Y = 6'b01_0101; // NE, LT, LE
    else Y = 6'b01_1010; // NE, GT, GE
endmodule
```

// Verilog 2001, 2005

```
module Compare (input [3: 0] A, B, output reg [5:0] Y);
  always @ (A, B)
    if (A==B) Y = 6'b10_0011; // EQ, GE, LE
    else if (A < B) Y = 6'b01_0101; // NE, LT, LE
    else Y = 6'b01_1010; // NE, GT, GE
endmodule
```

4.40

```
module Prob_4_40 (
  output [3: 0] sum_diff, output carry_borrow,
  input [3: 0] A, B, input sel_diff
);

  assign {carry_borrow, sum_diff} = sel_diff ? A - B : A + B;
endmodule

module t_Prob_4_40;
  wire [3: 0] sum_diff;
  wire carry_borrow;
  reg [3:0] A, B;
```

```

reg sel_diff;

integer I, J, K;
Prob_4_40 M0 ( sum_diff, carry_borrow, A, B, sel_diff);
initial #4000 $finish;
initial begin
    for (I = 0; I < 2; I = I + 1) begin
        sel_diff = I;
        for (J = 0; J < 16; J = J + 1) begin
            A = J;
            for (K = 0; K < 16; K = K + 1) begin B = K; #5 ; end
        end
    end
end
endmodule

```

#### 4.41

```

module Prob_4_41 (
    output reg [3: 0] sum_diff, output reg carry_borrow,
    input [3: 0] A, B, input sel_diff
);

    always @ (A, B, sel_diff)
        {carry_borrow, sum_diff} = sel_diff ? A - B : A + B;

endmodule

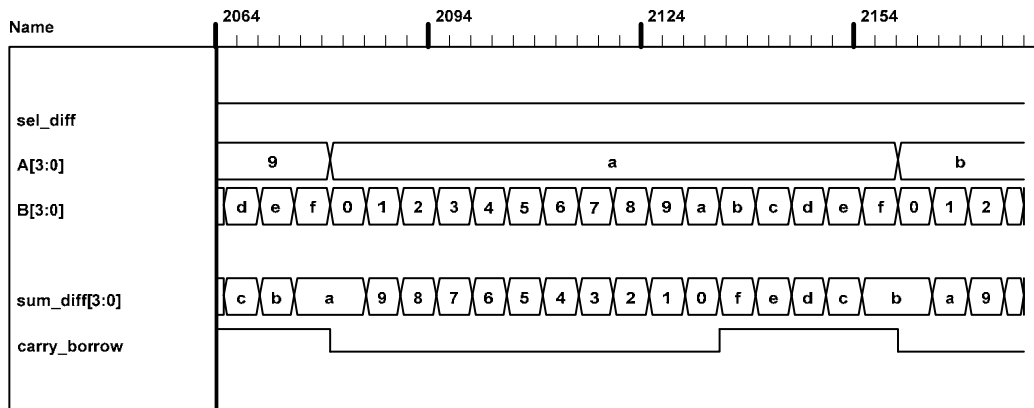
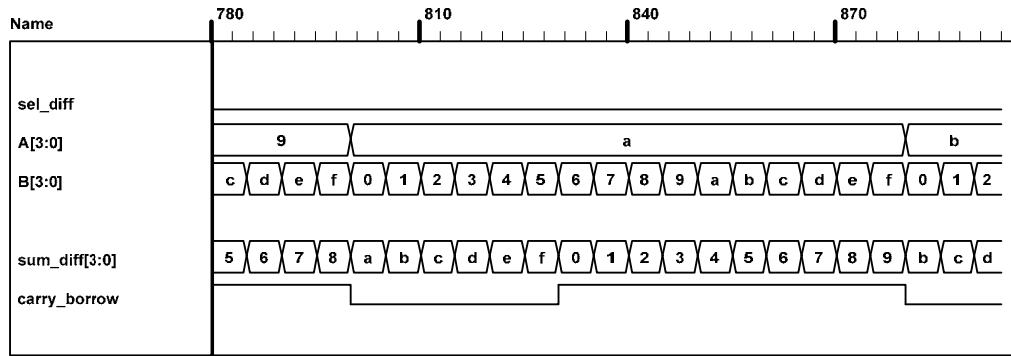
```

```

module t_Prob_4_41;
    wire [3: 0] sum_diff;
    wire carry_borrow;
    reg [3:0] A, B;
    reg sel_diff;

    integer I, J, K;
    Prob_4_46 M0 ( sum_diff, carry_borrow, A, B, sel_diff);
    initial #4000 $finish;
    initial begin
        for (I = 0; I < 2; I = I + 1) begin
            sel_diff = I;
            for (J = 0; J < 16; J = J + 1) begin
                A = J;
                for (K = 0; K < 16; K = K + 1) begin B = K; #5 ; end
            end
        end
    end
end
endmodule

```



4.42

```
(a)
module Xs3_Gates (input A, B, C, D, output w, x, y, z);
  wire B_bar, C_or_D_bar;
  wire CD, C_or_D;
  or (C_or_D, C, D);
  not (C_or_D_bar, C_or_D);
  not (B_bar, B);
  and (CD, C, D);
  not (z, D);
  or (y, CD, C_or_D_bar);
  and (w1, C_or_D_bar, B);
  and (w2, B_bar, C_or_D);
  and (w3, C_or_D, B);
  or (x, w1, w2);
  or (w, w3, A);
endmodule

(b)
module Xs3_Dataflow (input A, B, C, D, output w, x, y, z);
  assign {w, x, y, z} = {A, B, C, D} + 4'b0011;
endmodule

(c)
module Xs3_Behavior_95 (A, B, C, D, w, x, y, z);
  input A, B, C, D;
  output w, x, y, z;
  reg w, x, y, z;

  always @ (A or B or C or D) begin {w, x, y, z} = {A, B, C, D} + 4'b0011; end
endmodule

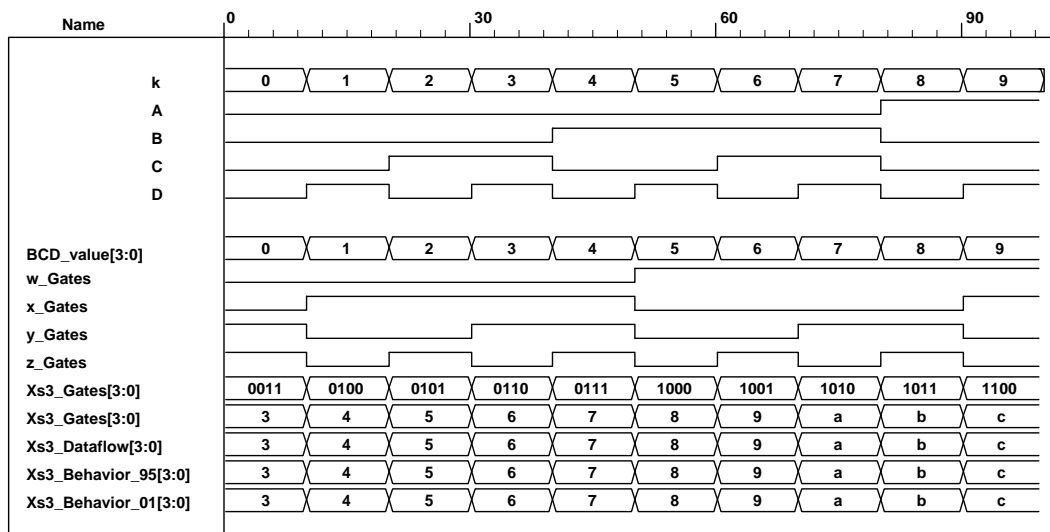
module Xs3_Behavior_01 (input A, B, C, D, output reg w, x, y, z);
```

```
always @ (A, B, C, D) begin {w, x, y, z} = {A, B, C, D} + 4'b0011; end
endmodule
```

```
module t_Xs3_Converters ();
reg A, B, C, D;
wire w_Gates, x_Gates, y_Gates, z_Gates;
wire w_Dataflow, x_Dataflow, y_Dataflow, z_Dataflow;
wire w_Behavior_95, x_Behavior_95, y_Behavior_95, z_Behavior_95;
wire w_Behavior_01, x_Behavior_01, y_Behavior_01, z_Behavior_01;
integer k;
wire [3: 0] BCD_value;
wire [3: 0] Xs3_Gates = {w_Gates, x_Gates, y_Gates, z_Gates};
wire [3: 0] Xs3_Dataflow = {w_Dataflow, x_Dataflow, y_Dataflow, z_Dataflow};
wire [3: 0] Xs3_Behavior_95 = {w_Behavior_95, x_Behavior_95, y_Behavior_95, z_Behavior_95};
wire [3: 0] Xs3_Behavior_01 = {w_Behavior_01, x_Behavior_01, y_Behavior_01, z_Behavior_01};

assign BCD_value = {A, B, C, D};
Xs3_Gates M0 (A, B, C, D, w_Gates, x_Gates, y_Gates, z_Gates);
Xs3_Dataflow M1 (A, B, C, D, w_Dataflow, x_Dataflow, y_Dataflow, z_Dataflow);
Xs3_Behavior_95 M2 (A, B, C, D, w_Behavior_95, x_Behavior_95, y_Behavior_95, z_Behavior_95);
Xs3_Behavior_01 M3 (A, B, C, D, w_Behavior_01, x_Behavior_01, y_Behavior_01, z_Behavior_01);

initial #200 $finish;
initial begin
k = 0;
repeat (10) begin {A, B, C, D} = k; #10 k = k + 1; end
end
endmodule
```



4.43 Two-channel mux with 2-bit data paths, enable, and three-state output.

4.44

```
module ALU (output reg [7: 0] y, input [7: 0] A, B, input [2: 0] Sel);
always @ (A, B, Sel) begin
y = 0;
case (Sel)
3'b000: y = 8'b0;
3'b001: y = A & B;
3'b010: y = A | B;
3'b011: y = A ^ B;
```

```

3'b100: y = A + B;
3'b101: y = A - B;
3'b110: y = ~A;
3'b111: y = 8'hFF;
endcase
end

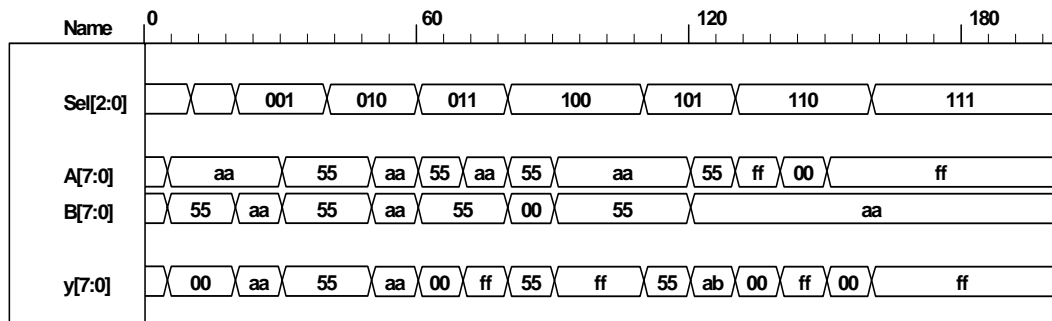
endmodule

module t_ALU ();
wire[7: 0]y;
reg [7: 0] A, B;
reg [2: 0] Sel;

ALU M0 (y, A, B, Sel);

initial #200 $finish;
initial fork
    #5 begin A = 8'hAA; B = 8'h55; end // Expect y = 8'd0
    #10 begin Sel = 3'b000; A = 8'hAA; B = 8'h55; end // y = 8'b000 Expect y = 8'd0
    #20 begin Sel = 3'b001; A = 8'hAA; B = 8'hAA; end // y = A & B Expect y = 8'hAA = 8'1010_1010
    #30 begin Sel = 3'b001; A = 8'h55; B = 8'h55; end // y = A & B Expect y = 8'h55 = 8'b0101_0101
    #40 begin Sel = 3'b010; A = 8'h55; B = 8'h55; end // y = A | B Expect y = 8'h55 = 8'b0101_0101
    #50 begin Sel = 3'b010; A = 8'hAA; B = 8'hAA; end // y = A | B Expect y = 8'hAA = 8'b1010_1010
    #60 begin Sel = 3'b011; A = 8'h55; B = 8'h55; end // y = A ^ B Expect y = 8'd0
    #70 begin Sel = 3'b011; A = 8'hAA; B = 8'h55; end // y = A ^ B Expect y = 8'hFF = 8'b1111_1111
    #80 begin Sel = 3'b100; A = 8'h55; B = 8'h00; end // y = A + B Expect y = 8'h55 = 8'b0101_0101
    #90 begin Sel = 3'b100; A = 8'hAA; B = 8'h55; end // y = A + B Expect y = 8'hFF = 8'b1111_1111
    #110 begin Sel = 3'b101; A = 8'hAA; B = 8'h55; end // y = A - B Expect y = 8'h55 = 8'b0101_0101
    #120 begin Sel = 3'b101; A = 8'h55; B = 8'hAA; end // y = A - B Expect y = 8'hAB = 8'b1010_1011
    #130 begin Sel = 3'b110; A = 8'hFF; end // y = ~A Expect y = 8'd0
    #140 begin Sel = 3'b110; A = 8'd0; end // y = ~A Expect y = 8'hFF = 8'b1111_1111
    #150 begin Sel = 3'b110; A = 8'hFF; end // y = ~A Expect y = 8'd0
    #160 begin Sel = 3'b111; end // y = 8'hFF Expect y = 8'hFF = 8'b1111_1111
join
endmodule

```



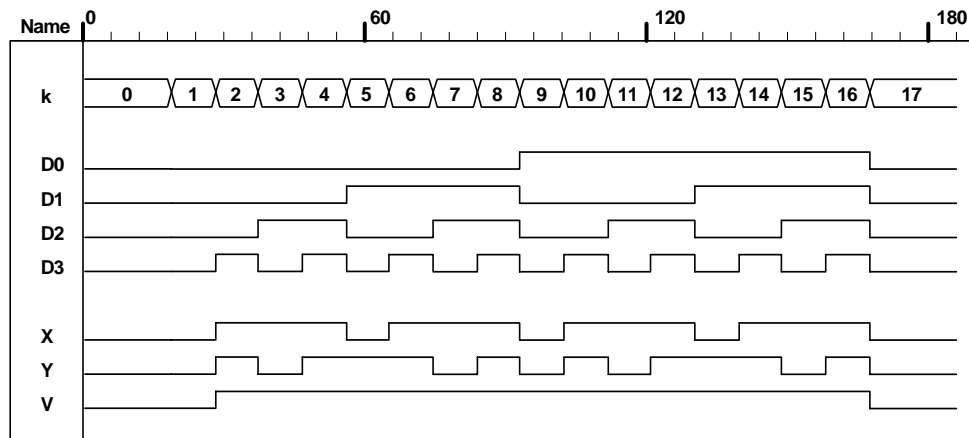
Note that the subtraction operator performs 2's complement subtraction. So 8'h55 – 8'hAA adds the 2's complement of 8'hAA to 8'h55 and gets 8'hAB. The sign bit is not included in the model, but hand calculation shows that the 9<sup>th</sup> bit is 1, indicating that the result of the operation is negative. The magnitude of the result can be obtained by taking the 2's complement of 8'hAB.

#### 4.45

```

module priority_encoder_beh (output reg X, Y, V, input D0, D1, D2, D3); // V2001
always @ (D0, D1, D2, D3) begin
    X = 0;
    Y = 0;

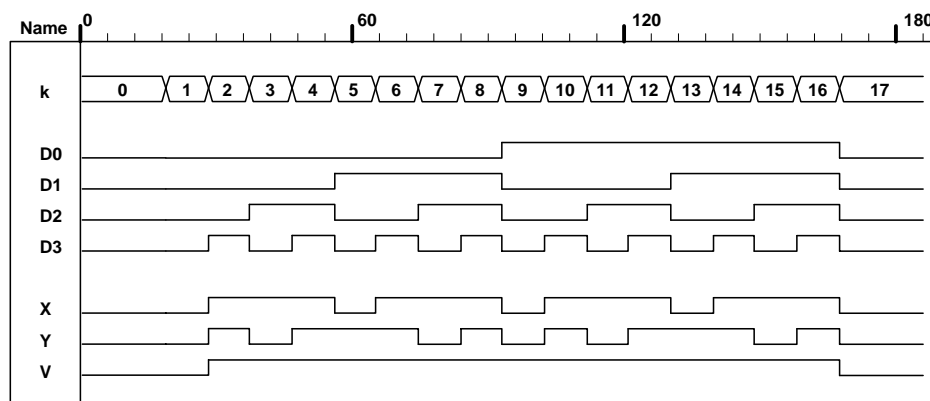
```



```
(~A&B&C&~D) | (A&~B&~C&~D) | (A&~B&~C&D) | (A&~B&C&~D) | (A&~B&C&D) | (A&B&~C&D) |
(A&B&C&~D) | (A&B&C&D);
endmodule
```

```
module t_Prob_4_46a ();
wire F_a, F_b;
reg A, B, C, D;
integer k;
Prob_4_46a M0 (F_a, A, B, C, D);
Prob_4_46b M1 (F_b, A, B, C, D);

initial #200 $finish;
initial begin
    k = 0;
    #10 repeat (15) begin {A, B, C, D} = k; #10 k = k + 1; end
end
endmodule
```



4.47

```
module Add_Sub_4_bit_Dataflow (
    output [3: 0] S,
    output C, V,
    input [3: 0] A, B,
    input M
);
    wire C3;

    assign {C3, S[2: 0]} = A[2: 0] + ({M, M, M} ^ B[2: 0]) + M;
    assign {C, S[3]} = A[3] + M ^ B[3] + C3;
    assign V = C ^ C3;
endmodule
```

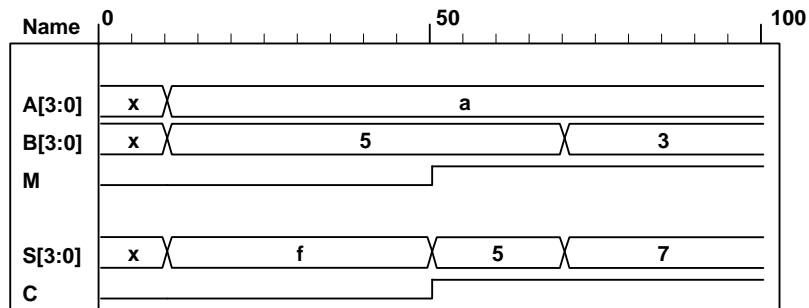
```
module t_Add_Sub_4_bit_Dataflow ();
    wire [3: 0] S;
    wire C, V;
    reg [3: 0] A, B;
    reg M;

    Add_Sub_4_bit_Dataflow M0 (S, C, V, A, B, M);

    initial #100 $finish;
    initial fork
        #10 M = 0;
        #10 A = 4'hA;
        #10 B = 4'h5;
    end
endmodule
```



```
#50 M = 1;
#70 B = 4'h3;
join
endmodule
```



4.48

```
module ALU_3state (output [7: 0] y_tri, input [7: 0] A, B, input [2: 0] Sel, input En);
```

```
  reg [7: 0] y;
  assign y_tri = En ? y: 8'bz;
  always @ (A, B, Sel) begin
    y = 0;
    case (Sel)
      3'b000: y = 8'b0;
      3'b001: y = A & B;
      3'b010: y = A | B;
      3'b011: y = A ^ B;
      3'b100: y = A + B;
      3'b101: y = A - B;
      3'b110: y = ~A;
      3'b111: y = 8'hFF;
    endcase
  end
end
```

```
endmodule
```

```
module t_ALU_3state ();
```

```
  wire[7: 0] y;
  reg [7: 0] A, B;
  reg [2: 0] Sel;
  reg En;
```

```
  ALU_3state M0 (y, A, B, Sel, En);
```

```
initial #200 $finish;
```

```
initial fork
```

```
  #5 En = 1;
```

```
  #5 begin A = 8'hAA; B = 8'h55; end // Expect y = 8'd0
```

```
  #10 begin Sel = 3'b000; A = 8'hAA; B = 8'h55; end // y = 8'b000 Expect y = 8'd0
```

```
  #20 begin Sel = 3'b001; A = 8'hAA; B = 8'hAA; end // y = A & B Expect y = 8'hAA = 8'1010_1010
```

```
  #30 begin Sel = 3'b001; A = 8'h55; B = 8'h55; end // y = A & B Expect y = 8'h55 = 8'b0101_0101
```

```
  #40 begin Sel = 3'b010; A = 8'h55; B = 8'h55; end // y = A | B Expect y = 8'h55 = 8'b0101_0101
```

```
  #50 begin Sel = 3'b010; A = 8'hAA; B = 8'hAA; end // y = A | B Expect y = 8'hAA = 8'b1010_1010
```

```
  #60 begin Sel = 3'b011; A = 8'h55; B = 8'h55; end // y = A ^ B Expect y = 8'd0
```

```
  #70 begin Sel = 3'b011; A = 8'hAA; B = 8'h55; end // y = A ^ B Expect y = 8'hFF = 8'b1111_1111
```

```
  #80 begin Sel = 3'b100; A = 8'h55; B = 8'h00; end // y = A + B Expect y = 8'h55 = 8'b0101_0101
```

```
  #90 begin Sel = 3'b100; A = 8'hAA; B = 8'h55; end // y = A + B Expect y = 8'hFF = 8'b1111_1111
```

```
  #100 En = 0;
```

```
  #115 En = 1;
```

```
#110 begin Sel = 3'b101; A = 8'hAA; B = 8'h55; end // y = A – B    Expect y = 8'h55 = 8'b0101_0101
#120 begin Sel = 3'b101; A = 8'h55; B = 8'hAA; end // y = A – B    Expect y = 8'hab = 8'b1010_1011
#130 begin Sel = 3'b110; A = 8'hFF; end // y = ~A    Expect y = 8'd0
#140 begin Sel = 3'b110; A = 8'd0; end // y = ~A    Expect y = 8'hFF = 8'b1111_1111
#150 begin Sel = 3'b110; A = 8'hFF; end // y = ~A    Expect y = 8'd0
#160 begin Sel = 3'b111; end // y = 8'hFF    Expect y = 8'hFF = 8'b1111_1111
join
endmodule
```

#### 4.49

```
// See Problem 4.1
module Problem_4_49_Gates (output F1, F2, input A, B, C, D);
    wire A_bar = !A;
    wire B_bar = !B;

    and (T1, B_bar, C);
    and (T2, A_bar, B);
    or (T3, A, T1);
    xor (T4, T2, D);
    or (F1, T3, T4);
    or (F2, T2, D);
endmodule

module Problem_4_49_Boolean_1 (output F1, F2, input A, B, C, D);
    wire A_bar = !A;
    wire B_bar = !B;
    wire T1 = B_bar && C;
    wire T2 = A_bar && B;
    wire T3 = A || T1;
    wire T4 = T2 ^ D;
    assign F1 = T3 || T4;
    assign F2 = T2 || D;
endmodule

module Problem_4_49_Boolean_2(output F1, F2, input A, B, C, D);
    assign F1 = A || (!B && C) || (B && !D) || (!B && D);
    assign F2 = (!A) && B || D;
endmodule

module t_Problem_4_49;
    reg A, B, C, D;
    wire F1_Gates, F2_Gates;
    wire F1_Boolean_1, F2_Boolean_1;
    wire F1_Boolean_2, F2_Boolean_2;

    Problem_4_48_Gates M0 (F1_Gates, F2_Gates, A, B, C, D);
    Problem_4_48_Boolean_1 M1 (F1_Boolean_1, F2_Boolean_1, A, B, C, D);
    Problem_4_48_Boolean_2 M2 (F1_Boolean_2, F2_Boolean_2, A, B, C, D);

    initial #100 $finish;
    integer K;
    initial begin
        for (K = 0; K < 16; K = K + 1) begin {A, B, C, D} = K; #5; end
    end
endmodule
```

#### 4.50

```
// See Problem 4.8 and Table 1.5.
// Verilog 1995

module Prob_4_50 (Code_8_4_m2_m1, A, B, C, D);
    output [3: 0] Code_8_4_m2_m1;
    input A, B, C, D;
    reg [3: 0] Code_8_4_m2_m1;
    ...

// Verilog 2001, 2005
```

```
module Prob_4_50 (output reg [3: 0] Code_8_4_m2_m1, input A, B, C, D);
```

```
    always @ (A, B, C, D)          // always @ (A or B or C or D)
    case ({A, B, C, D})
        4'b0000: Code_8_4_m2_m1 = 4'b0000;    // 0    0
        4'b0001: Code_8_4_m2_m1 = 4'b0111;    // 1    7
        4'b0010: Code_8_4_m2_m1 = 4'b0110;    // 2    6
        4'b0011: Code_8_4_m2_m1 = 4'b0101;    // 3    5
        4'b0100: Code_8_4_m2_m1 = 4'b0100;    // 4    4
        4'b0101: Code_8_4_m2_m1 = 4'b1011;    // 5   11
        4'b0110: Code_8_4_m2_m1 = 4'b1010;    // 6   10
        4'b0111: Code_8_4_m2_m1 = 4'b1001;    // 7    9
        4'b1000: Code_8_4_m2_m1 = 4'b1000;    // 8    8
        4'b1001: Code_8_4_m2_m1 = 4'b1111;    // 9   15

        4'b1010: Code_8_4_m2_m1 = 4'b0001;    // 10   1
        4'b1011: Code_8_4_m2_m1 = 4'b0010;    // 11   2
        4'b1100: Code_8_4_2_1 = 4'b0011;    // 12   3
        4'b1101: Code_8_4_2_1 = 4'b1100;    // 13  12
        4'b1110: Code_8_4_2_1 = 4'b1101;    // 14  13
        4'b1111: Code_8_4_2_1 = 4'b1110;    // 15  14
    endcase
endmodule
```

```
module t_Prob_4_50;
    wire [3: 0] BCD;
    reg        A, B, C, D;
    integer    K;

    Prob_4_50 M0 ( BCD, A, B, C, D); // Unit under test (UUT)

    initial #100 $finish;
    initial begin
        for (K = 0; K < 16; K = K + 1) begin {A, B, C, D} = K; #5 ; end
    end
endmodule
```

**4.51** Assume that that the LEDs are asserted when the output is high.

```
module Seven_Seg_Display_V2001 (
    output reg [6: 0] Display,
    input [3: 0] BCD
);

    //          abc_defg
    parameter BLANK      = 7'b000_0000;
    parameter ZERO       = 7'b111_1110;    // h7e
    parameter ONE        = 7'b011_0000;    // h30
    parameter TWO        = 7'b110_1101;    // h6d
    parameter THREE      = 7'b111_1001;    // h79
    parameter FOUR       = 7'b011_0011;    // h33
    parameter FIVE       = 7'b101_1011;    // h5b
    parameter SIX        = 7'b101_1111;    // h5f
    parameter SEVEN      = 7'b111_0000;    // h70
    parameter EIGHT      = 7'b111_1111;    // h7f
    parameter NINE       = 7'b111_1011;    // h7b

    always @ (BCD)
    case (BCD)
        0:    Display = ZERO;
    endcase
```

```

1:   Display = ONE;
2:   Display = TWO;
3:   Display = THREE;
4:   Display = FOUR;
5:   Display = FIVE;
6:   Display = SIX;
7:   Display = SEVEN;
8:   Display = EIGHT;
9:   Display = NINE;
    default: Display = BLANK;
endcase
endmodule

module t_Seven_Seg_Display_V2001 ();
    wire [6: 0] Display;
    reg  [3: 0] BCD;

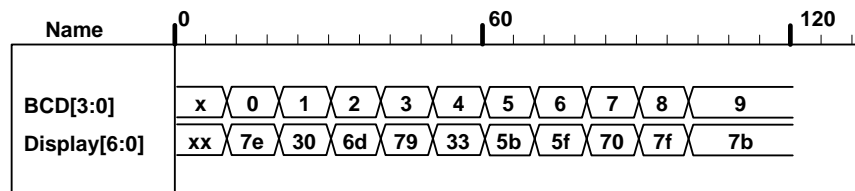
    parameter BLANK      = 7'b000_0000;
    parameter ZERO       = 7'b111_1110;    // h7e
    parameter ONE        = 7'b011_0000;    // h30
    parameter TWO        = 7'b110_1101;    // h6d
    parameter THREE      = 7'b111_1001;    // h79
    parameter FOUR       = 7'b011_0011;    // h33
    parameter FIVE       = 7'b101_1011;    // h5b
    parameter SIX        = 7'b001_1111;    // h1f
    parameter SEVEN      = 7'b111_0000;    // h70
    parameter EIGHT      = 7'b111_1111;    // h7f
    parameter NINE       = 7'b111_1011;    // h7b

    initial #120 $finish;
    initial fork
        #10 BCD = 0;
        #20 BCD = 1;
        #30 BCD = 2;
        #40 BCD = 3;
        #50 BCD = 4;
        #60 BCD = 5;
        #70 BCD = 6;
        #80 BCD = 7;
        #90 BCD = 8;
        #100 BCD = 9;

    join

    Seven_Seg_Display_V2001 M0 (Display, BCD);
endmodule

```



Alternative with continuous assignments (dataflow):

```

module Seven_Seg_Display_V2001_CA (
    output [6: 0] Display,
    input  [3: 0] BCD
);

```

```
//          abc_defg
parameter BLANK    = 7'b000_0000;
parameter ZERO     = 7'b111_1110;    // h7e
parameter ONE      = 7'b011_0000;    // h30
parameter TWO      = 7'b110_1101;    // h6d
parameter THREE    = 7'b111_1001;    // h79
parameter FOUR     = 7'b011_0011;    // h33
parameter FIVE     = 7'b101_1011;    // h5b
parameter SIX      = 7'b101_1111;    // h5f
parameter SEVEN    = 7'b111_0000;    // h70
parameter EIGHT    = 7'b111_1111;    // h7f
parameter NINE     = 7'b111_1011;    // h7b
wire          A, B, C, D, a, b, c, d, e, f, g;

assign A = BCD[3];
assign B = BCD[2];
assign C = BCD[1];
assign D = BCD[0];
assign Display = {a,b,c,d,e,f,g};
assign a = (~A)&C | (~A)&B&D | (~B)&(~C)&(~D) | A & (~B)&(~C);
assign b = (~A)&(~B) | (~A)&(~C)&(~D) | (~A)&C&D | A&(~B)&(~C);
assign c = (~A)&B | (~A)&D | (~B)&(~C)&(~D) | A&(~B)&(~C);
assign d = (~A)&C&(~D) | (~A)&(~B)&C | (~B)&(~C)&(~D) | A&(~B)&(~C) | (~A)&B&(~C)&D;
assign e = (~A)&C&(~D) | (~B)&(~C)&(~D);
assign f = (~A)&B&(~C) | (~A)&(~C)&(~D) | (~A)&B&(~D) | A&(~B)&(~C);
assign g = (~A)&C&(~D) | (~A)&(~B)&C | (~A)&B&(~C) | A&(~B)&(~C);
endmodule

module t_Seven_Seg_Display_V2001_CA ();
  wire [6: 0] Display;
  reg [3: 0] BCD;

  parameter BLANK    = 7'b000_0000;
  parameter ZERO     = 7'b111_1110;    // h7e
  parameter ONE      = 7'b011_0000;    // h30
  parameter TWO      = 7'b110_1101;    // h6d
  parameter THREE    = 7'b111_1001;    // h79
  parameter FOUR     = 7'b011_0011;    // h33
  parameter FIVE     = 7'b101_1011;    // h5b
  parameter SIX      = 7'b001_1111;    // h1f
  parameter SEVEN    = 7'b111_0000;    // h70
  parameter EIGHT    = 7'b111_1111;    // h7f
  parameter NINE     = 7'b111_1011;    // h7b

  initial #120 $finish;
  initial fork
    #10 BCD = 0;
    #20 BCD = 1;
    #30 BCD = 2;
    #40 BCD = 3;
    #50 BCD = 4;
    #60 BCD = 5;
    #70 BCD = 6;
    #80 BCD = 7;
    #90 BCD = 8;
    #100 BCD = 9;
  join

  Seven_Seg_Display_V2001_CA M0 (Display, BCD);

```

**endmodule**

**4.52 (a) Incrementer for unsigned 4-bit numbers**

```
module Problem_4_52a_Data_Flow (output [3: 0] sum, output carry, input [3: 0] A);
  assign {carry, sum} = A + 1;
endmodule
```

```
module t_Problem_4_52a_Data_Flow;
  wire [3: 0] sum;
  wire carry;
  reg [3: 0] A;

  Problem_4_52a_Data_Flow M0 (sum, carry, A);

  initial # 100 $finish;
  integer K;
  initial begin
    for (K = 0; K < 16; K = K + 1) begin A = K; #5; end
  end
endmodule
```

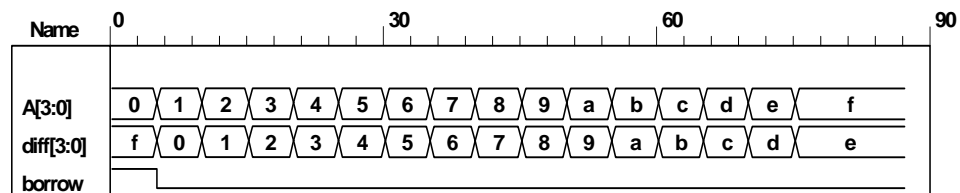
**(b) Decrementer for unsigned 4-bit numbers**

```
module Problem_4_52b_Data_Flow (output [3: 0] diff, output borrow, input [3: 0] A);
  assign {borrow, diff} = A - 1;
endmodule
```

```
module t_Problem_4_52b_Data_Flow;
  wire [3: 0] diff;
  wire borrow;
  reg [3: 0] A;

  Problem_4_52b_Data_Flow M0 (diff, borrow, A);

  initial # 100 $finish;
  integer K;
  initial begin
    for (K = 0; K < 16; K = K + 1) begin A = K; #5; end
  end
endmodule
```



**4.53 // BCD Adder**

```

module Problem_4_53_BCD_Adder (
    output      Output_carry,
    output [3: 0] Sum,
    input [3: 0] Addend, Augend,
    input      Carry_in;
    supply0    gnd;
    wire [3: 0] Z_Addend;
    wire      Carry_out;
    wire      C_out;
    assign Z_Addend = {1'b0, Output_carry, Output_carry, 1'b0};
    wire [3: 0] Z_sum;

    and (w1, Z_sum[3], Z_sum[2]);
    and (w2, Z_sum[3], Z_sum[1]);
    or (Output_carry, Carry_out, w1, w2);

    Adder_4_bit M0 (Carry_out, Z_sum, Addend, Augend, Carry_in);
    Adder_4_bit M1 (C_out, Sum, Z_Addend, Z_sum, gnd);
endmodule

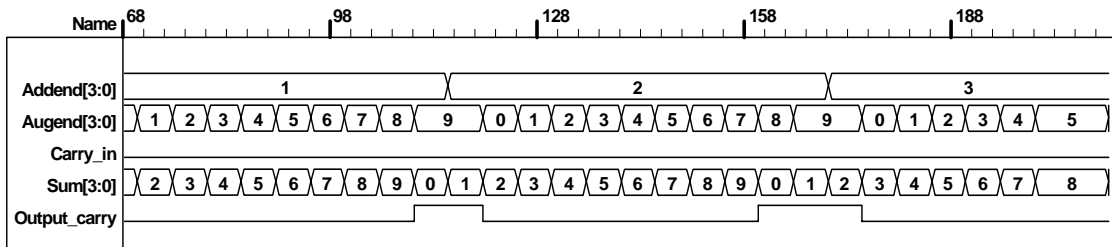
module Adder_4_bit (output carry, output [3:0] sum, input [3: 0] a, b, input c_in);
    assign {carry, sum} = a + b + c_in;
endmodule

module t_Problem_4_53_Data_Flow;
    wire [3: 0] Sum;
    wire      Output_carry;
    reg [3: 0] Addend, Augend;
    reg      Carry_in;

    Problem_4_53_BCD_Adder M0 (Output_carry, Sum, Addend, Augend, Carry_in);

    initial # 1500 $finish;
    integer i, j, k;
    initial begin
        for (i = 0; i <= 1; i = i + 1) begin Carry_in = i; #5;
            for (j = 0; j <= 9; j = j + 1) begin Addend = j; #5;
                for (k = 0; k <= 9; k = k + 1) begin Augend = k; #5;
                    end
                end
            end
        end
    endmodule

```



4.54

```

module Nines_Complementer (           // V2001
    output reg [3: 0] Word_9s_Comp,
    input       [3: 0] Word_BCD
);
    always @ (Word_BCD) begin
        Word_9s_Comp = 4'b0;
        case (Word_BCD)
            4'b0000: Word_9s_Comp = 4'b1001;    // 0 to 9
            4'b0001: Word_9s_Comp = 4'b1000;    // 1 to 8
            4'b0010: Word_9s_Comp = 4'b1111;    // 2 to 7
            4'b0011: Word_9s_Comp = 4'b0110;    // 3 to 6
            4'b0100: Word_9s_Comp = 4'b1001;    // 4 to 5
            4'b0101: Word_9s_Comp = 4'b0100;    // 5 to 4
            4'b0110: Word_9s_Comp = 4'b0011;    // 6 to 3
            4'b0111: Word_9s_Comp = 4'b0010;    // 7 to 2
            4'b1000: Word_9s_Comp = 4'b0001;    // 8 to 1
            4'b1001: Word_9s_Comp = 4'b0000;    // 9 to 0
            default: Word_9s_Comp = 4'b1111;    // Error detection
        endcase
    end
endmodule

module t_Nines_Complementer ();
    wire [3: 0] Word_9s_Comp;
    reg [3: 0] Word_BCD;

    Nines_Complementer M0 (Word_9s_Comp, Word_BCD);

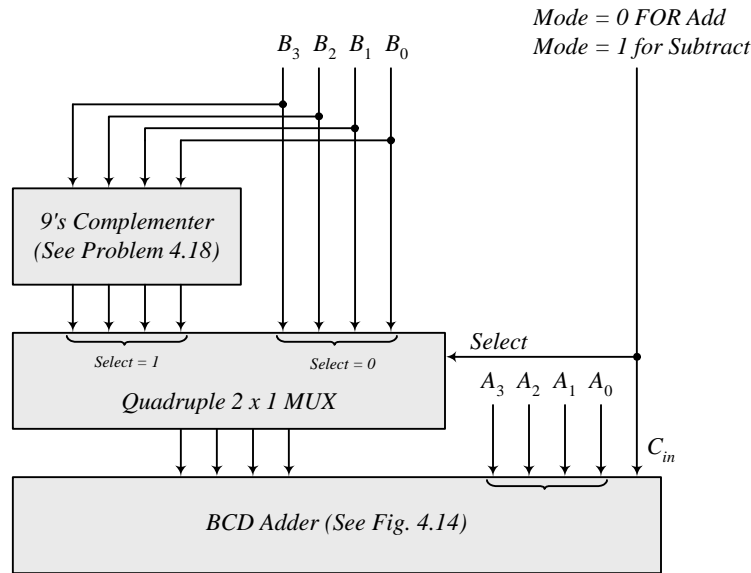
    initial #11$finish;
    initial fork
        Word_BCD = 0;
        #10 Word_BCD = 1;
        #20 Word_BCD = 2;
        #30 Word_BCD = 3;
        #40 Word_BCD = 4;
        #50 Word_BCD = 5;
        #60 Word_BCD = 6;
        #70 Word_BCD = 7;
        #20 Word_BCD = 8;
        #90 Word_BCD = 9;
        #100 Word_BCD = 4'b1100;
    join
endmodule

```

Name	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
Word_BCD[3:0]	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
Word_9s_Comp[3:0]	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0



4.55 From Problem 4.19:



```
// BCD Adder – Subtractor
module Problem_4_55_BCD_Adder_Subtractor (
    output [3: 0]    BCD_Sum_Diff,
    output          Carry_Borrow,
    input [3: 0]    B, A,
    input           Mode
);
    wire [3: 0] Word_9s_Comp, mux_out;
    Nines_Complementer M0 (Word_9s_Comp, B);
    Quad_2_x_1_mux      M2 (mux_out, Word_9s_Comp, B, Mode);
    BCD_Adder           M1 (Carry_Borrow, BCD_Sum_Diff, mux_out, A, Mode);
endmodule

module Nines_Complementer (                // V2001
    output reg [3: 0] Word_9s_Comp,
    input       [3: 0] Word_BCD
);
    always @ (Word_BCD) begin
        Word_9s_Comp = 4'b0;
        case (Word_BCD)
            4'b0000: Word_9s_Comp = 4'b1001; // 0 to 9
            4'b0001: Word_9s_Comp = 4'b1000; // 1 to 8
            4'b0010: Word_9s_Comp = 4'b0111; // 2 to 7
            4'b0011: Word_9s_Comp = 4'b0110; // 3 to 6
            4'b0100: Word_9s_Comp = 4'b1001; // 4 to 5
            4'b0101: Word_9s_Comp = 4'b0100; // 5 to 4
            4'b0110: Word_9s_Comp = 4'b0011; // 6 to 3
            4'b0111: Word_9s_Comp = 4'b0010; // 7 to 2
            4'b1000: Word_9s_Comp = 4'b0001; // 8 to 1
            4'b1001: Word_9s_Comp = 4'b0000; // 9 to 0
            default: Word_9s_Comp = 4'b1111; // Error detection
        endcase
    end
endmodule
```

```

module Quad_2_x_1_mux (output reg [3: 0] mux_out, input [3: 0] b, a, input select);
  always @ (a, b, select)
    case (select)
      0: mux_out = a;
      1: mux_out = b;
    endcase
endmodule

module BCD_Adder (
  output      Output_carry,
  output [3: 0] Sum,
  input  [3: 0] Addend, Augend,
  input      Carry_in;
  supply0      gnd;
  wire [3: 0] Z_Addend;
  wire      Carry_out;
  wire      C_out;
  assign Z_Addend = {1'b0, Output_carry, Output_carry, 1'b0};
  wire [3: 0] Z_sum;

  and (w1, Z_sum[3], Z_sum[2]);
  and (w2, Z_sum[3], Z_sum[1]);
  or (Output_carry, Carry_out, w1, w2);

  Adder_4_bit M0 (Carry_out, Z_sum, Addend, Augend, Carry_in);
  Adder_4_bit M1 (C_out, Sum, Z_Addend, Z_sum, gnd);
endmodule

module Adder_4_bit (output carry, output [3:0] sum, input [3: 0] a, b, input c_in);
  assign {carry, sum} = a + b + c_in;
endmodule

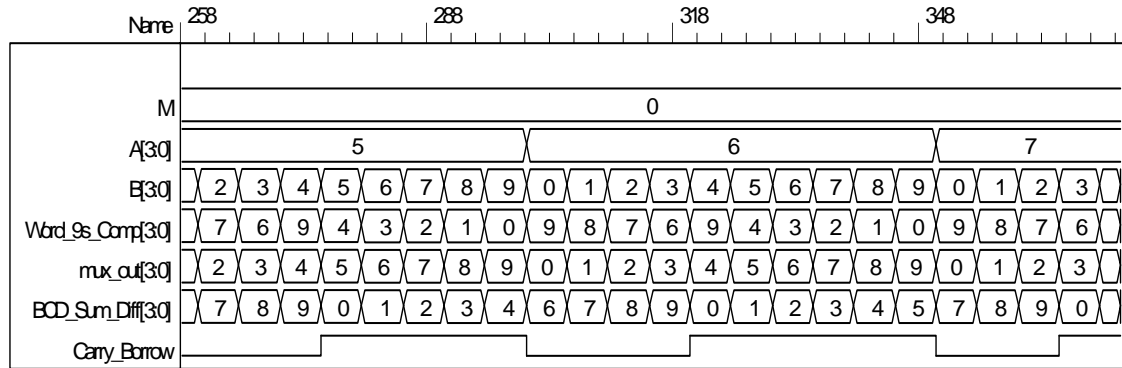
module t_Problem_4_55_BCD_Adder_Subtractor();
  wire [3: 0] BCD_Sum_Diff;
  wire      Carry_Borrow;
  reg [3: 0] B, A;
  reg      Mode;

  Problem_4_55_BCD_Adder_Subtractor M0 (BCD_Sum_Diff, Carry_Borrow, B, A, Mode);

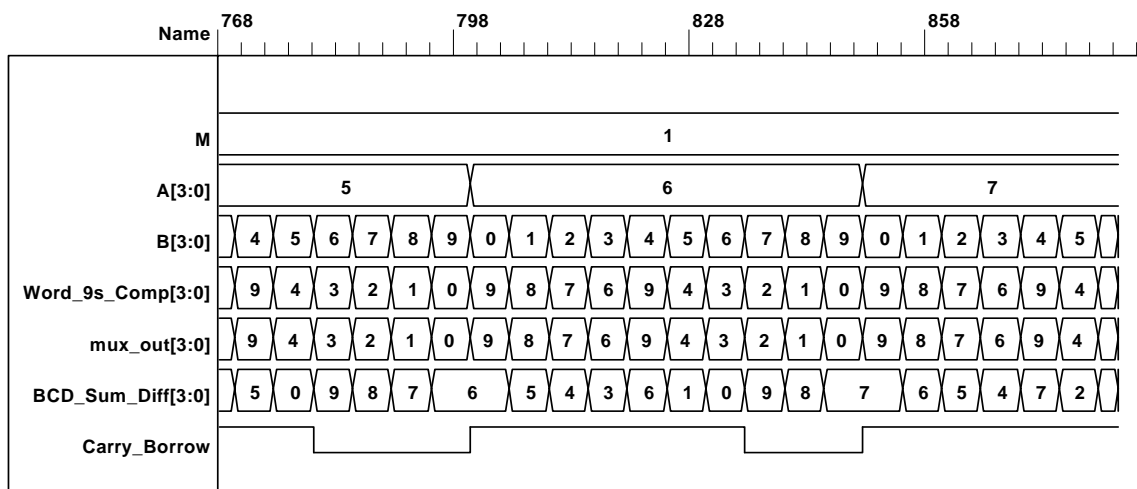
  initial #1000 $finish;

  integer J, K, M;
  initial begin
    for (M = 0; M < 2; M = M + 1) begin
      for (J = 0; J < 10; J = J + 1) begin
        for (K = 0; K < 10; K = K + 1) begin
          A = J; B = K; Mode = M; #5 ;
        end
      end
    end
  endmodule

```



Note: For subtraction, Carry\_Borrow = 1 indicates a positive result; Carry\_Borrow = 0 indicates a negative result.



4.56

**assign** match = (A == B); // Assumes **reg** [3: 0] A, B;

4.57

// Priority encoder (See Problem 4.29)  
 // Caution: do not confuse logic value x with identifier x.  
 // Verilog 1995

```

module Prob_4_57 (x, y, v, D3, D2, D1, D0);
output x, y, v;
input D3, D2, D1, D0;
reg x, y, v;
...
    
```

// Verilog 2001, 2005

```

module Prob_4_57 (output reg x, y, v, input D3, D2, D1, D0);
always @ (D3, D2, D1, D0) begin // always @ (D3 or D2 or D1 or D0)
    x = 0;
    y = 0;
    v = 0;
    case ({D3, D2, D1, D0})
        4'b0000: {x, y, v} = 3'bxx0;
        4'bxxx1: {x, y, v} = 3'b001;
    
```

```

    4'bxx10: {x, y, v} = 3'b011;
    4'bx100: {x, y, v} = 3'b101;
    4'b1000: {x, y, v} = 3'b110;
  endcase
end
endmodule

module t_Prob_4_57;
  wire      x, y, v;
  reg       D3, D2, D1, D0;
  integer    K;
  Prob_4_57 M0 (x, y, v, D3, D2, D1, D0);
  initial #100 $finish;
  initial begin
    for (K = 0; K < 16; K = K + 1) begin {D3, D2, D1, D0} = K; #5 ; end
  end
endmodule

```

4.58

```

//module shift_right_by_3_V2001 (output [31: 0] sig_out, input [31: 0] sig_in);
// assign sig_out = sig_in >>> 3;
//endmodule

module shift_right_by_3_V1995 (output reg [31: 0] sig_out, input [31: 0] sig_in);
  always @ (sig_in)
    sig_out = {sig_in[31], sig_in[31], sig_in[31], sig_in[31: 3]};
endmodule

module t_shift_right_by_3 ();
  wire [31: 0] sig_out_V1995;
  wire [31: 0] sig_out_V2001;

  reg [31: 0] sig_in;

  //shift_right_by_3_V2001 M0 (sig_out_V2001, sig_in);

  shift_right_by_3_V1995 M1 (sig_out_V1995, sig_in);
  integer k;
  initial #1000 $finish;
  initial begin
    sig_in = 32'hf000_0000;
    #100 sig_in = 32'h8fff_ffff;
    #500 sig_in = 32'h0fff_ffff;
  end
endmodule

```

Name	609	619	629	639
sig_in[31:0]	00001111111111111111111111111111			
sig_out_V1995[31:0]	00000001111111111111111111111111			

Name	34	44	54	64
sig_in[31:0]	11110000000000000000000000000000			
sig_out_V1995[31:0]	11111110000000000000000000000000			

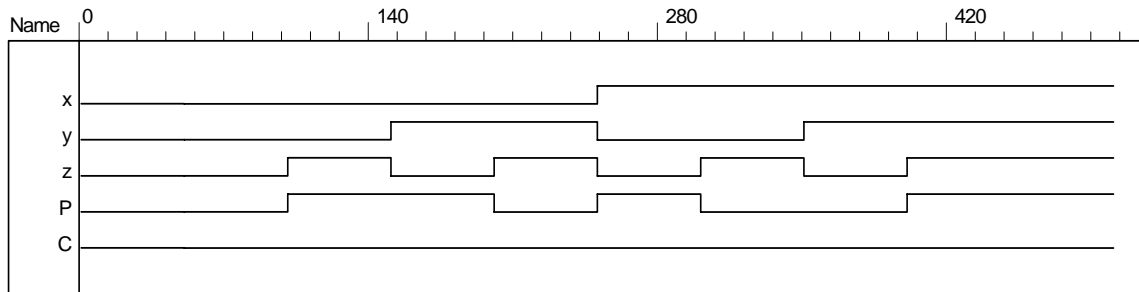


```
xor (w2, z, P);
endmodule
```

See Problem 4.62 for testbench and waveforms.

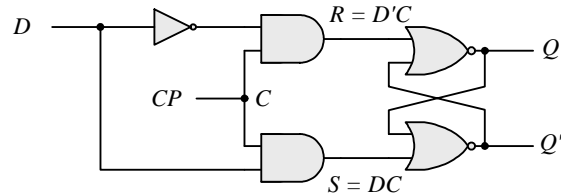
4.62

```
module Even_Parity_Checker_4 (output P, C, input x, y, z);
  assign w1 = x ^ y;
  assign P = w1 ^ z;
  assign C = w1 ^ w2;
  assign w2 = z ^ P;
endmodule
```

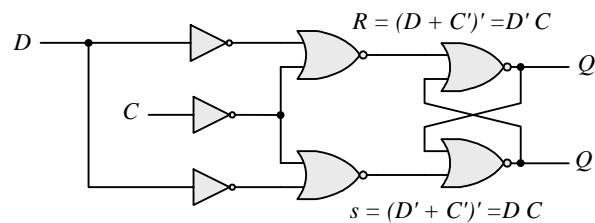


## CHAPTER 5

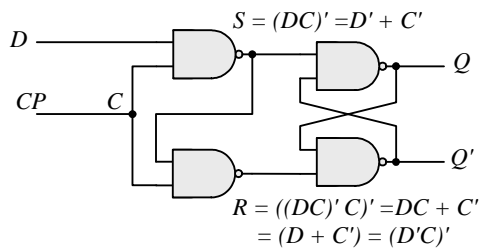
5.1 (a)



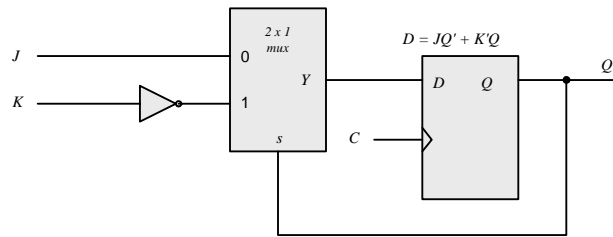
(b)



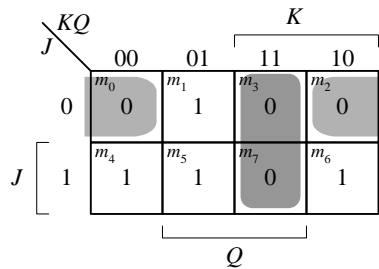
(c)



5.2



5.3  $Q'(t + 1) = (JQ' + K'Q)' = (J' + Q)(K + Q') = J'Q' + KQ$



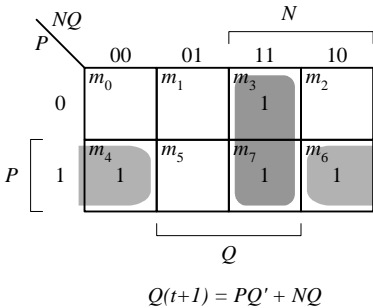
5.4

(a)

P	N	Q(t + 1)
0	0	0
0	1	Q(t)
1	0	Q'(t)
1	1	1

(b)

P	N	Q(t)	Q(t + 1)
0	0	0	0
0	0	1	0
0	1	0	0
0	1	1	1
1	0	0	1
1	0	1	0
1	1	0	1
1	1	1	1



$Q(t+1) = PQ' + NQ$

(c)

Q(t)	Q(t+1)	P	N
0	0	0	x
0	1	1	x
1	0	x	0
1	1	x	1

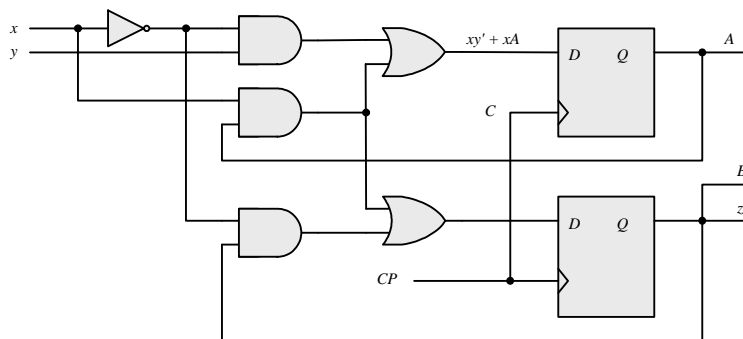
(d) Connect P and N together.

5.5

The truth table describes a combinational circuit.  
The state table describes a sequential circuit.  
The characteristic table describes the operation of a flip-flop.  
The excitation table gives the values of flip-flop inputs for a given state transition.  
The four equations correspond to the algebraic expression of the four tables.

5.6

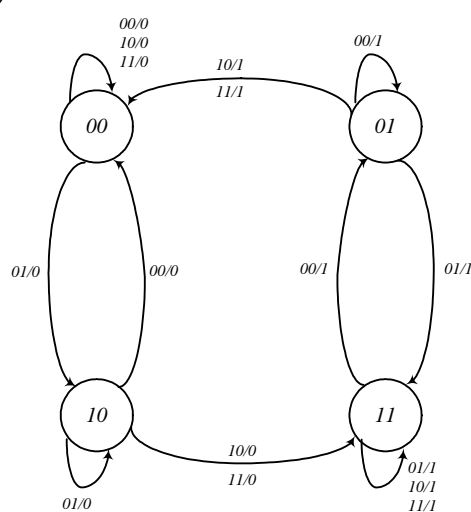
(a)



(b)

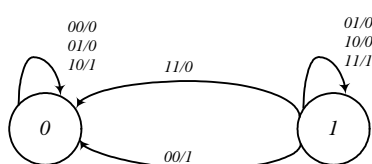
Present state		Inputs		Next state		Output
A	B	x	y	A	B	z
0	0	0	0	0	0	0
0	0	0	1	1	0	0
0	0	1	0	0	0	0
0	0	1	1	0	0	0
0	1	0	0	0	1	1
0	1	0	1	1	1	1
0	1	1	0	0	0	1
0	1	1	1	0	0	1
1	0	0	0	0	0	0
1	0	0	1	1	0	0
1	0	1	0	1	1	0
1	0	1	1	1	1	0
1	1	0	0	0	1	1
1	1	0	1	1	1	1
1	1	1	0	1	1	1
1	1	1	1	1	1	1

(c)



5.7

Present state	Inputs		Next state	Output
Q	x	y	Q	S
0	0	0	0	0
0	0	1	0	1
0	1	0	0	1
0	1	1	1	0
1	0	0	0	1
1	0	1	1	0
1	1	0	1	0
1	1	1	1	1



$$S = x \oplus y \oplus Q$$

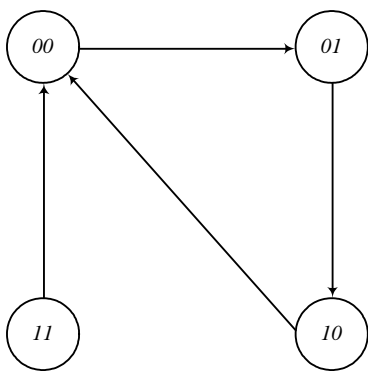
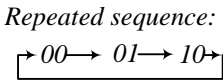
$$Q(t+1) = xy + xQ + yQ$$



5.8 A counter with a repeated sequence of 00, 01, 10.

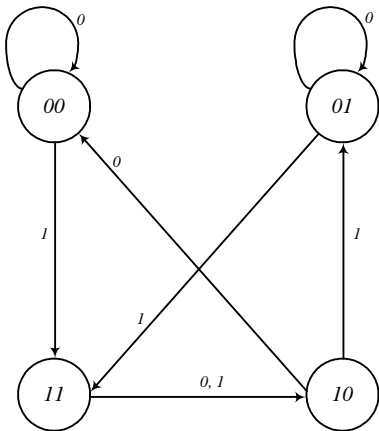
Present state		Next state		FF Inputs	
A	B	A	B	$T_A$	$T_B$
0	0	0	0	0	1
0	1	1	0	1	1
1	0	0	0	1	0
1	1	0	0	1	1

$T_A = A + B$   
 $T_B = A' + B$



5.9

$A(t+1) = J_A A' + K' A = xA' + BA$   
 $B(t+1) = J_B B' + K' B = xB' + A'B$



**5.10** (a)  $J_A = Bx + B'y'$   $J_B = A'x$   
 $K_A = B'xy'$   $K_B = A + xy'$   $z = Axy + Bx'y'$

(b)

Present state		Inputs		Next state		Output	FF Outputs			
A	B	x	y	A	B	z	$J_A$	$K_A$	$J_B$	$K_B$
0	0	0	0	1	0	0	1	0	0	0
0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
0	0	1	0	1	1	0	1	1	1	1
0	0	1	1	0	1	0	0	0	1	0
0	1	0	0	0	1	1	0	0	0	0
0	1	0	1	0	1	0	0	0	0	0
0	1	1	0	1	0	0	1	0	1	0
0	1	1	1	1	1	0	1	0	1	0
1	0	0	0	1	0	0	1	0	0	1
1	0	0	1	1	0	0	0	0	0	1
1	0	1	0	0	0	0	1	1	0	1
1	0	1	1	1	0	0	0	0	0	1
1	1	0	0	1	0	1	0	0	0	1
1	1	0	1	1	0	0	0	0	0	1
1	1	1	0	1	0	0	1	0	0	1
1	1	1	1	1	0	1	1	0	0	1

(c)

xy		x			
		00	01	11	10
AB	00	$m_0$ 1	$m_1$	$m_3$	$m_2$ 1
	01	$m_4$	$m_5$	$m_7$ 1	$m_6$ 1
	11	$m_{12}$ 1	$m_{13}$ 1	$m_{15}$ 1	$m_{14}$ 1
	10	$m_8$ 1	$m_9$ 1	$m_{11}$ 1	$m_{10}$

$$A(t+1) = Ax' + Bx + Ay + A'B'y'$$

xy		x			
		00	01	11	10
AB	00	$m_0$	$m_1$	$m_3$ 1	$m_2$ 1
	01	$m_4$ 1	$m_5$ 1	$m_7$ 1	$m_6$
	11	$m_{12}$	$m_{13}$	$m_{15}$	$m_{14}$
	10	$m_8$	$m_9$	$m_{11}$	$m_{10}$

$$B(t+1) = A'B'x + A'B'(x' + y)$$

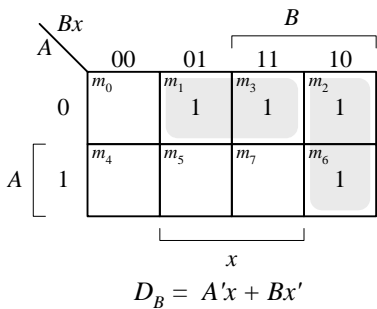
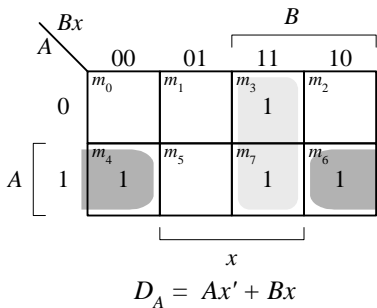
**5.11** Present state: 00 00 01 00 01 11 00 01 11 10 00 01 11 10 10  
Input: 0 1 0 1 1 0 1 1 1 0 1 1 1 1 0  
Output: 0 0 1 0 0 1 0 0 0 1 0 0 0 0 1  
Next state: 00 01 00 01 11 00 01 11 10 00 01 11 10 10 00

**5.12**

Present state	Next state		Output	
	0	1	0	1
a	f	b	0	0
b	d	a	0	0
d	g	a	1	0
f	f	b	1	1
g	g	d	0	1



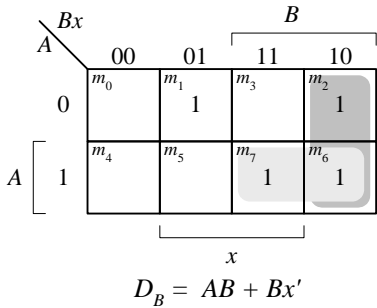
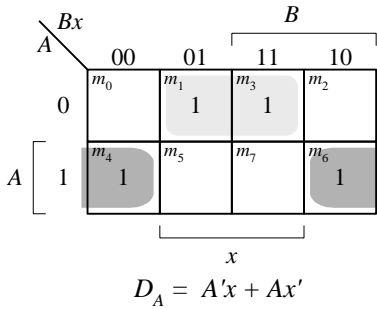
Present state		Input x	Next state	
A	B		A	B
0	0	0	0	0
0	0	1	0	1
0	1	0	0	1
0	1	1	1	1
1	0	0	1	0
1	0	1	0	0
1	1	0	1	1
1	1	1	1	0



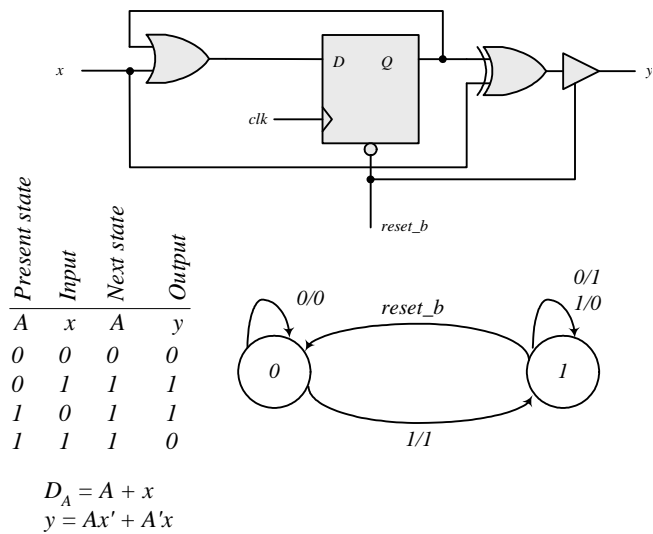
(b)  $D_A = A'x + Ax'$

$D_B = AB + Bx'$

Present state		Input x	Next state	
A	B		A	B
0	0	0	0	0
0	0	1	1	1
0	1	0	0	1
0	1	1	1	0
1	0	0	1	0
1	0	1	0	0
1	1	0	1	1
1	1	1	0	1

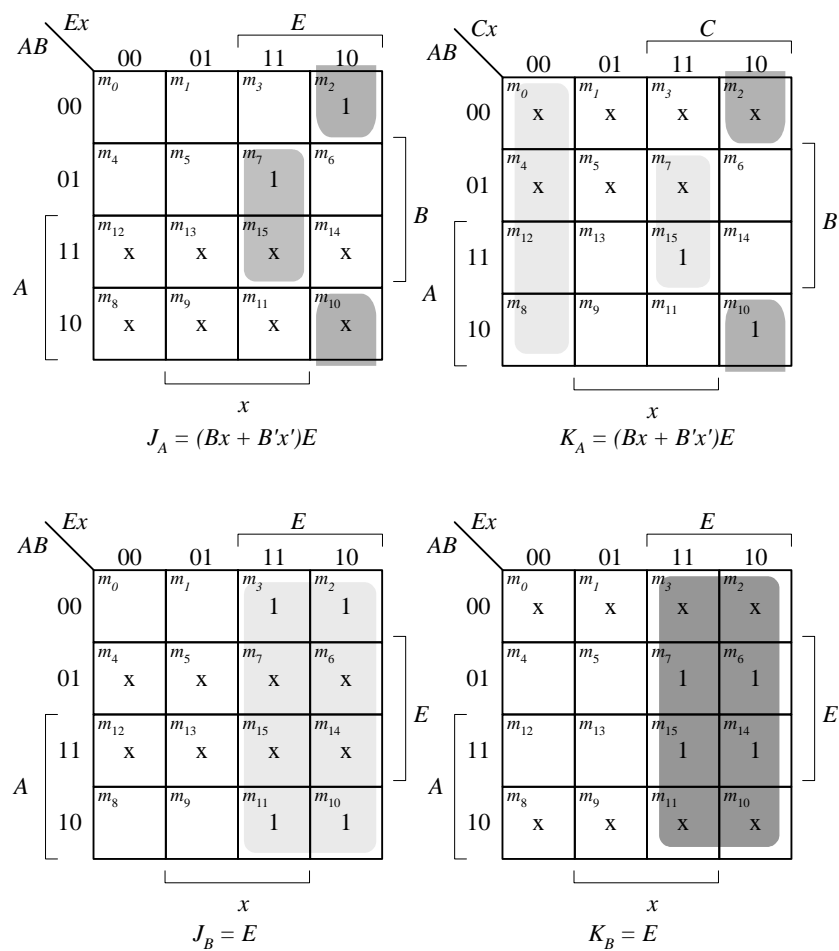


5.17 The output is 0 for all 0 inputs until the first 1 occurs, at which time the output is 1. Thereafter, the output is the complement of the input. The state diagram has two states. In state 0: output = input; in state 1: output = input'.



5.18 Binary up-down counter with enable E.

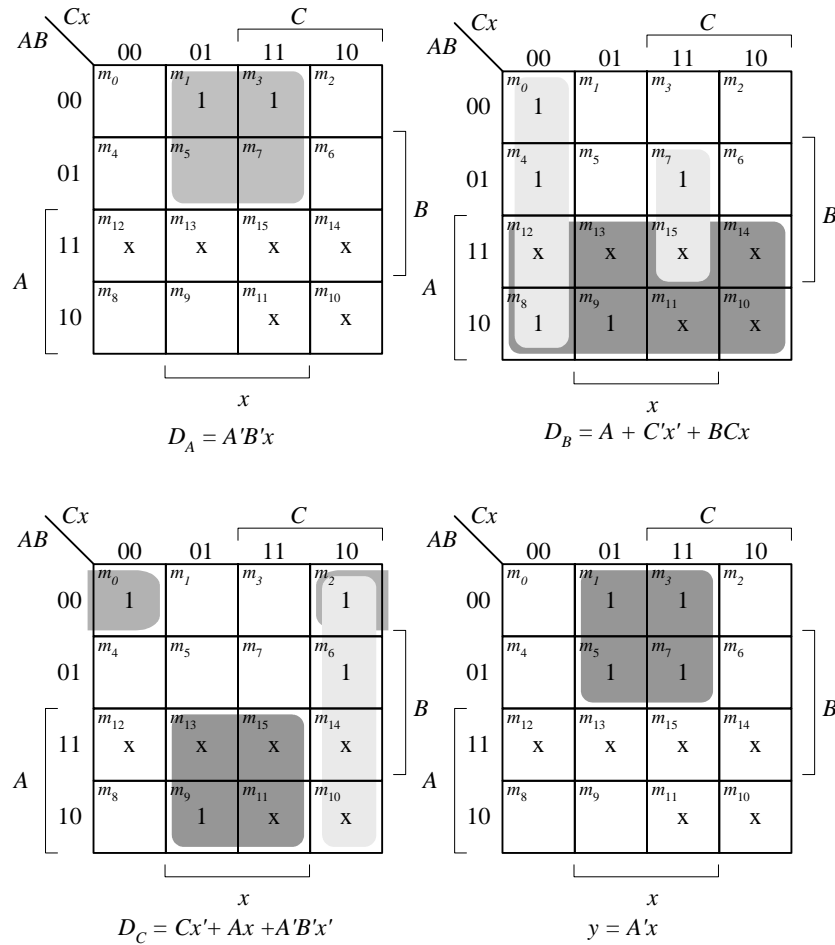
Present state	Input	Next state	Flip-flop inputs			
			$J_A$	$K_A$	$J_B$	$K_B$
A B	x	A B				
00	01	00	0	x	0	x
00	01	00	0	x	0	x
00	10	11	1	x	1	x
00	11	01	0	x	1	x
01	00	01	0	x	x	0
01	01	01	0	x	x	0
01	10	01	0	x	x	1
01	11	10	1	x	x	1
10	00	10	x	0	1	0
10	01	10	x	0	1	0
10	10	01	x	1	x	1
10	11	11	x	0	x	1
11	00	11	x	0	x	0
11	01	11	x	0	x	0
11	10	11	1	0	x	1
11	11	11	x	1	x	1



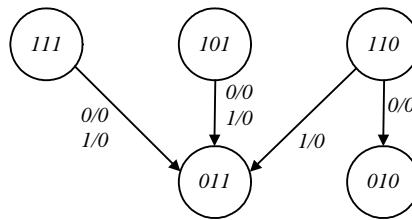
5.19 (a) Unused states (see Fig. P5.19): 101, 110, 111.

Present state	Input	Next state	Output
ABC	x	ABC	y
000	0	011	0
000	1	100	1
001	0	001	0
001	1	100	1
010	0	010	0
010	1	000	1
011	0	001	0
011	1	010	1
100	0	010	0
100	1	011	1

$d(A, B, C, x) = \Sigma (10, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15)$



The machine is self-correcting, i.e., the unused states transition to known states.



(b) With JK flip=flops, the state table is the same as in (a).

Flip-flop inputs

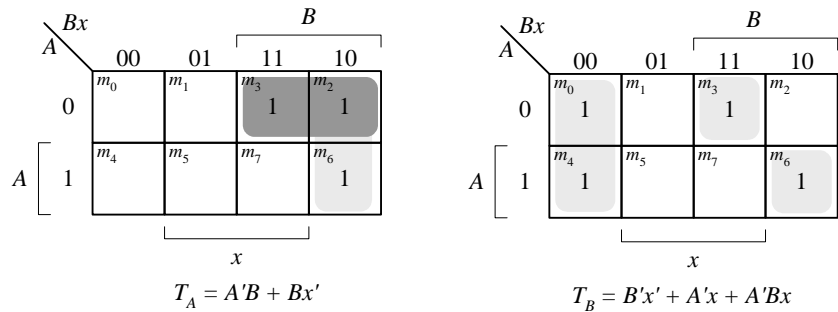
$J_A$	$K_A$	$J_B$	$K_B$	$J_C$	$K_C$
0	x	1	x	1	x
1	x	0	x	0	x
0	x	0	x	x	0
1	x	0	x	x	1
0	x	x	0	0	x
0	x	x	1	0	x
0	x	x	1	x	0
0	x	x	0	x	1
x	1	1	x	0	x
x	1	1	x	1	x

$$J_A = B'x$$
$$J_B = A + C'x'$$
$$J_C = Ax + A'B'x'$$
$$y = A'x$$

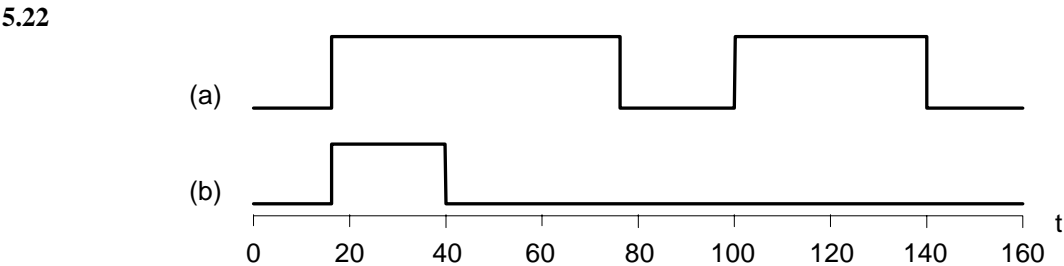
The machine is self-correcting because  $K_A = 1$ .

$$K_A = 1$$
$$K_B = C'x + Cx'$$
$$K_C = x$$

5.20 From state table 5.4:  $T_A(A, B, x) = \Sigma(2, 3, 6)$ ,  $T_B(A, B, x) = \Sigma(0, 3, 4, 6)$ .



5.21 The statements associated with an **initial** keyword execute once, in sequence, with the activity expiring after the last statment competes execution; the statements associated with the **always** keyword execute repeatedly, subject to timing control (e.g, #10).



5.23 (a)  $RegA = 125$ ,  $RegB = 125$   
(b)  $RegA = 125$ ,  $RegB = 30$



5.24 (a)

```

module DFF (output reg Q, input D, clk, preset, clear);
  always @ (posedge clk, negedge preset, negedge clear )
    if (preset == 0) Q <= 1'b1;
    else if (clear == 0) Q <= 1'b0;
    else Q <= D;
endmodule

```

```

module t_DFF ();

```

```

  wire Q;
  reg clk, preset, clear;
  reg D;

```

```

  DFF M0 (Q, D, clk, preset, clear);

```

```

  initial #160 $finish;

```

```

  initial begin clk = 0; forever #5 clk = ~clk; end

```

```

  initial fork

```

```

    #10 preset = 0;

```

```

    #20 preset = 1;

```

```

    #50 clear = 0;

```

```

    #80 clear = 1;

```

```

    #10 D = 1;

```

```

    #100 D = 0;

```

```

    #200 D = 1;

```

```

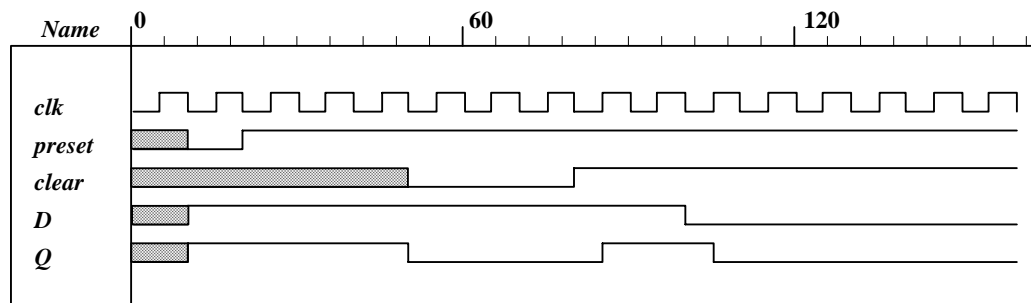
  join

```

```

endmodule

```

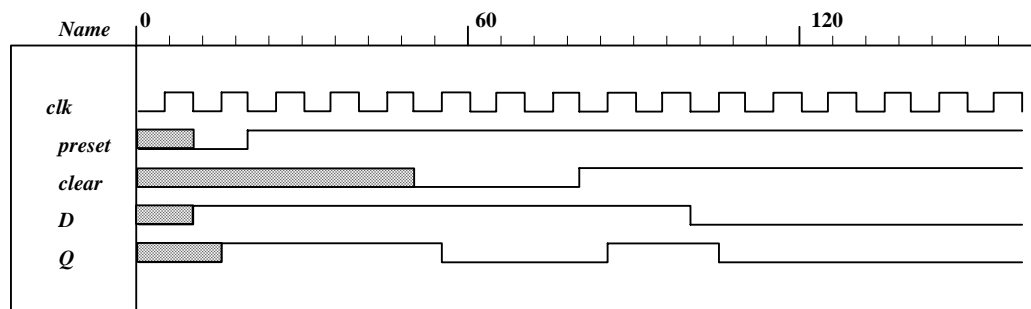


(b) **module** DFF (**output reg** Q, **input** D, clk, preset, clear);

```

  always @ (posedge clk)
    if (preset == 0) Q <= 1'b1;
    else if (clear == 0) Q <= 1'b0;
    else Q <= D;
endmodule

```



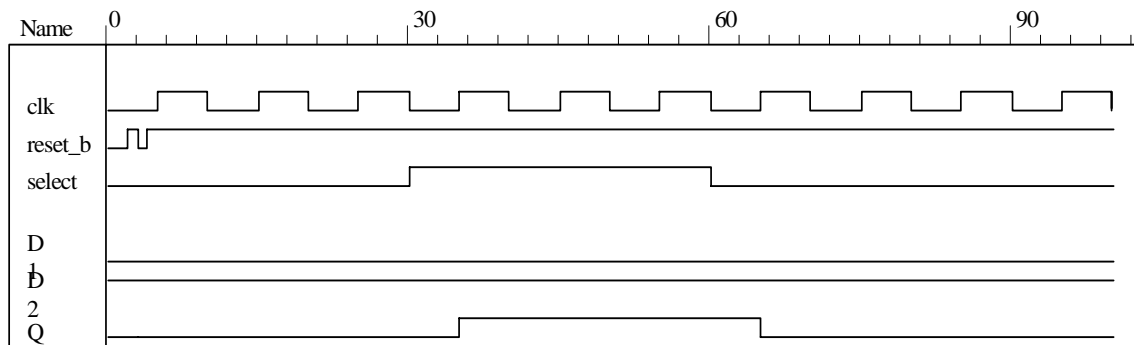
## 5.25

```

module Dual_Input_DFF (output reg Q, input D1, D2, select, clk, reset_b);
  always @ (posedge clk, negedge reset_b)
    if (reset_b == 0) Q <= 0;
    else Q <= select ? D2 : D1;
endmodule

module t_Dual_Input_DFF ();
  wire Q;
  reg D1, D2, select, clk, reset_b;
  Dual_Input_DFF M0 (Q, D1, D2, select, clk, reset_b);
  initial #350$finish;
  initial begin clk = 0; forever #5 clk = ~clk; end
  initial fork
    select = 0;
    #30 select = 1;
    #60 select = 0;
  join
  initial fork
    #2 reset_b = 1;
    #3 reset_b = 0;
    #4 reset_b = 1;
    D1 = 0;
    D2 = 1;
  join
endmodule

```



## 5.26 (a)

$$Q(t + 1) = JQ' + K'Q$$

When  $Q = 0$ ,  $Q(t + 1) = J$

When  $Q = 1$ ,  $Q(t + 1) = K'$

```

module JK_Behavior_a (output reg Q, input J, K, CLK, reset_b);
  always @ (posedge CLK, negedge reset_b)
    if (reset_b == 0) Q <= 0; else
      if (Q == 0) Q <= J;
      else Q <= ~K;
endmodule

```

(b)

```

module JK_Behavior_b (output reg Q, input J, K, CLK, reset_b);
  always @ (posedge CLK, negedge reset_b)
    if (reset_b == 0) Q <= 0;
    else
      case ({J, K})
        2'b00: Q <= Q;
        2'b01: Q <= 0;
        2'b10: Q <= 1;
        2'b11: Q <= ~Q;
      endcase
    endmodule

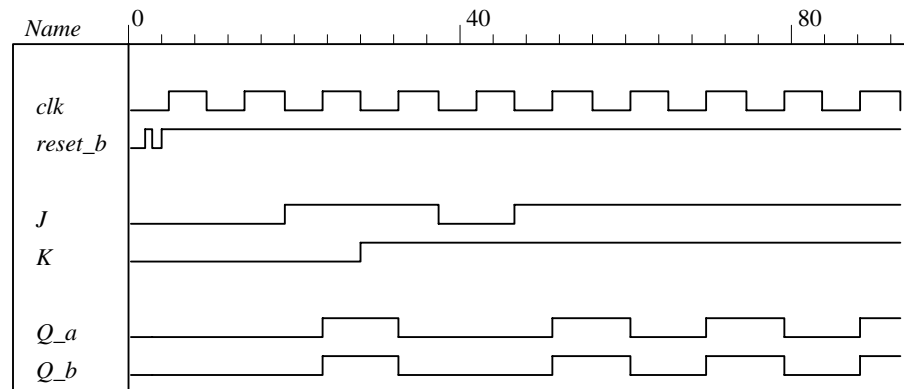
```

```

module t_Prob_5_26 ();
  wire Q_a, Q_b;
  reg J, K, clk, reset_b;
  JK_Behavior_a M0 (Q_a, J, K, clk, reset_b);
  JK_Behavior_b M1 (Q_b, J, K, clk, reset_b);

  initial #100 $finish;
  initial begin clk = 0; forever #5 clk = ~clk; end
  initial fork
    #2 reset_b = 1;
    #3 reset_b = 0;           // Initialize to s0
    #4 reset_b = 1;
    J = 0; K = 0;
    #20 begin J = 1; K = 0; end
    #30 begin J = 1; K = 1; end
    #40 begin J = 0; K = 1; end
    #50 begin J = 1; K = 1; end
  join
endmodule

```



5.27

```

// Mealy FSM zero detector (See Fig. 5.16)
module Mealy_Zero_Detector (
  output reg y_out,
  input x_in, clock, reset
);
  reg [1: 0] state, next_state;
  parameter S0 = 2'b00, S1 = 2'b01, S2 = 2'b10, S3 = 2'b11;

  always @ (posedge clock, negedge reset) // state transition
    if (reset == 0) state <= S0;
    else state <= next_state;

```

```

always @ (state, x_in) // Form the next state
case (state)
  S0:begin y_out = 0; if (x_in) next_state = S1; else next_state = S0; end
  S1: begin y_out = ~x_in; if (x_in) next_state = S3; else next_state = S0; end
  S2:begin y_out = ~x_in; if (~x_in) next_state = S0; else next_state = S2; end
  S3: begin y_out = ~x_in; if (x_in) next_state = S2; else next_state = S0; end
endcase

endmodule

module t_Mealy_Zero_Detector;
  wire t_y_out;
  reg t_x_in, t_clock, t_reset;

  Mealy_Zero_Detector M0 (t_y_out, t_x_in, t_clock, t_reset);

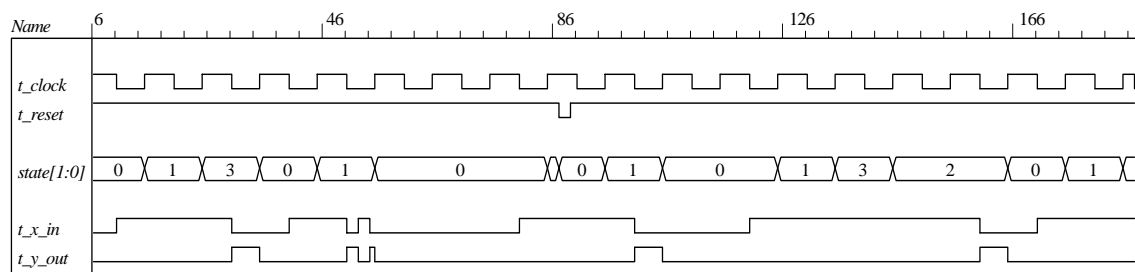
  initial #200 $finish;
  initial begin t_clock = 0; forever #5 t_clock = ~t_clock; end

  initial fork
    t_reset = 0;
    #2 t_reset = 1;
    #87 t_reset = 0;
    #89 t_reset = 1;
    #10 t_x_in = 1;
    #30 t_x_in = 0;
    #40 t_x_in = 1;
    #50 t_x_in = 0;
    #52 t_x_in = 1;
    #54 t_x_in = 0;
    #70 t_x_in = 1;
    #80 t_x_in = 1;
    #70 t_x_in = 0;
    #90 t_x_in = 1;
    #100 t_x_in = 0;
    #120 t_x_in = 1;
    #160 t_x_in = 0;
    #170 t_x_in = 1;

  join
endmodule

```

Note: Simulation results match Fig. 5.22.



5.28 (a)

```

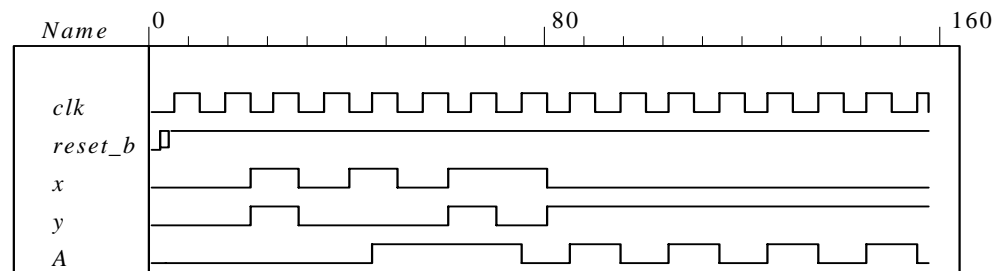
module Prob_5_28a (output A, input x, y, clk, reset_b);
  parameter s0 = 0, s1 = 1;
  reg state, next_state;
  assign A = state;

  always @ (posedge clk, negedge reset_b)
    if (reset_b == 0) state <= s0; else state <= next_state;

  always @ (state, x, y) begin
    next_state = s0;
    case (state)
      s0: case ({x, y})
          2'b00, 2'b11: next_state = s0;
          2'b01, 2'b10: next_state = s1;
        endcase
      s1: case ({x, y})
          2'b00, 2'b11: next_state = s1;
          2'b01, 2'b10: next_state = s0;
        endcase
    endcase
  end
endmodule

module t_Prob_5_28a ();
  wire A;
  reg x, y, clk, reset_b;
  Prob_5_28a M0 (A, x, y, clk, reset_b);
  initial #350 $finish;
  initial begin clk = 0; forever #5 clk = ~clk; end
  initial fork
    #2 reset_b = 1;
    #3 reset_b = 0;    // Initialize to s0
    #4 reset_b = 1;
    x = 0; y = 0;
    #20 begin x = 1; y = 1; end
    #30 begin x = 0; y = 0; end
    #40 begin x = 1; y = 0; end
    #50 begin x = 0; y = 0; end
    #60 begin x = 1; y = 1; end
    #70 begin x = 1; y = 0; end
    #80 begin x = 0; y = 1; end
  join
endmodule

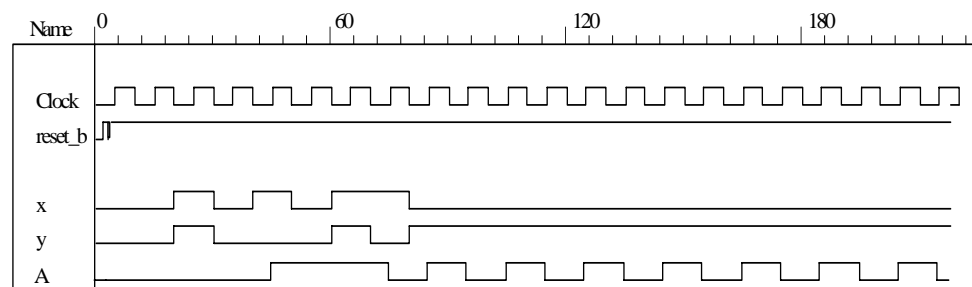
```



(b)  
**module** Prob\_5\_28b (**output** A, **input** x, y, Clock, reset\_b);  
 xor (w1, x, y);  
 xor (w2, w1, A);  
 DFF M0 (A, w2, Clock, reset\_b);  
**endmodule**

**module** DFF (**output reg** Q, **input** D, Clock, reset\_b);  
**always** @ (**posedge** Clock, **negedge** reset\_b)  
**if** (reset\_b == 0) Q <= 0;  
**else** Q <= D;  
**endmodule**

**module** t\_Prob\_5\_28b ();  
**wire** A;  
**reg** x, y, clk, reset\_b;  
 Prob\_5\_28b M0 (A, x, y, clk, reset\_b);  
**initial** #350 \$finish;  
**initial begin** clk = 0; **forever** #5 clk = ~clk; **end**  
**initial fork**  
 #2 reset\_b = 1;  
 #3 reset\_b = 0; // Initialize to s0  
 #4 reset\_b = 1;  
 x = 0; y = 0;  
 #20 **begin** x = 1; y = 1; **end**  
 #30 **begin** x = 0; y = 0; **end**  
 #40 **begin** x = 1; y = 0; **end**  
 #50 **begin** x = 0; y = 0; **end**  
 #60 **begin** x = 1; y = 1; **end**  
 #70 **begin** x = 1; y = 0; **end**  
 #80 **begin** x = 0; y = 1; **end**  
**join**  
**endmodule**



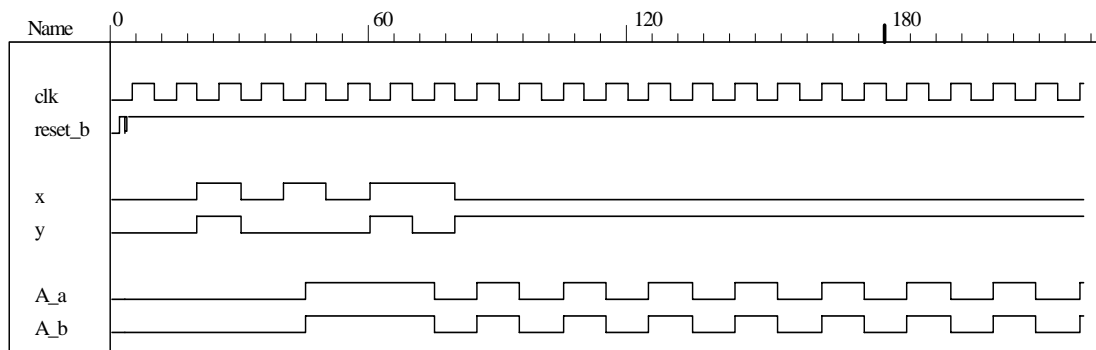
(c) See results of (b) and (c).

```

module t_Prob_5_28c ();
  wire A_a, A_b;
  reg x, y, clk, reset_b;
  Prob_5_28a M0 (A_a, x, y, clk, reset_b);
  Prob_5_28b M1 (A_b, x, y, clk, reset_b);

  initial #350 $finish;
  initial begin clk = 0; forever #5 clk = ~clk; end
  initial fork
    #2 reset_b = 1;
    #3 reset_b = 0;      // Initialize to s0
    #4 reset_b = 1;
    x = 0; y = 0;
    #20 begin x = 1; y = 1; end
    #30 begin x = 0; y = 0; end
    #40 begin x = 1; y = 0; end
    #50 begin x = 0; y = 0; end
    #60 begin x = 1; y = 1; end
    #70 begin x = 1; y = 0; end
    #80 begin x = 0; y = 1; end
  join
endmodule

```



5.29

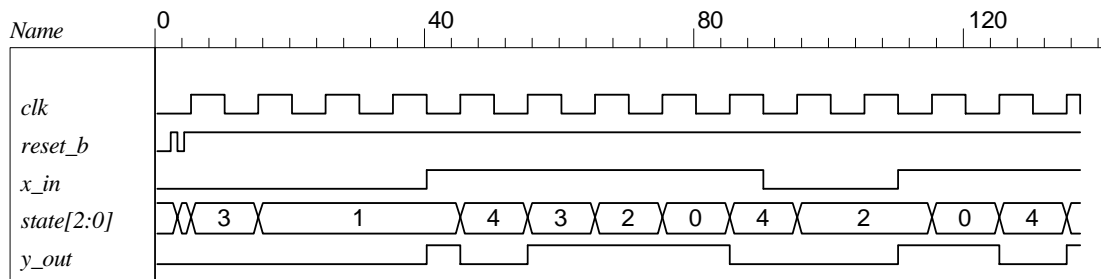
```

module Prob_5_29 (output reg y_out, input x_in, clock, reset_b);
  parameter s0 = 3'b000, s1 = 3'b001, s2 = 3'b010, s3 = 3'b011, s4 = 3'b100;
  reg [2: 0] state, next_state;

  always @ (posedge clock, negedge reset_b)
    if (reset_b == 0) state <= s0;
    else state <= next_state;

  always @ (state, x_in) begin
    y_out = 0;
    next_state = s0;
    case (state)
      s0: if (x_in) begin next_state = s4; y_out = 1; end else begin next_state = s3; y_out = 0; end;
      s1: if (x_in) begin next_state = s4; y_out = 1; end else begin next_state = s1; y_out = 0; end;
      s2: if (x_in) begin next_state = s0; y_out = 1; end else begin next_state = s2; y_out = 0; end;
      s3: if (x_in) begin next_state = s2; y_out = 1; end else begin next_state = s1; y_out = 0; end;
      s4: if (x_in) begin next_state = s3; y_out = 0; end else begin next_state = s2; y_out = 0; end;
      default: next_state = 3'bxxx;
    endcase
  end
endmodule

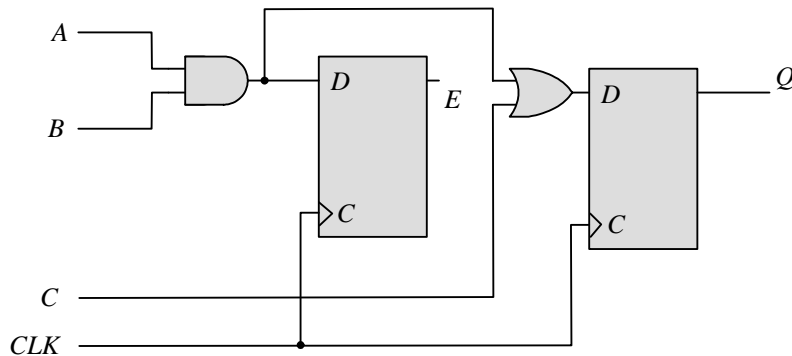
```



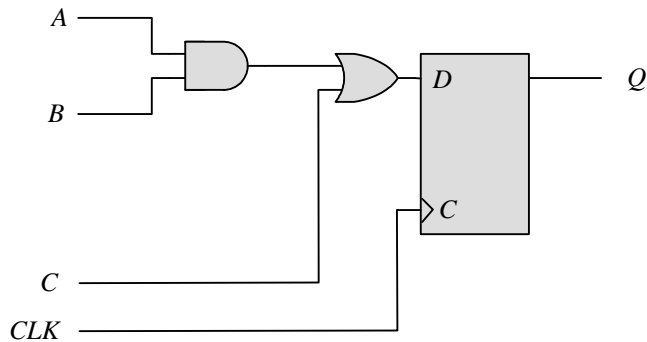


### 5.30

With non-blocking ( $\leq$ ) assignment operator:



With blocking ( $=$ ) assignment operator:



Note: The expression substitution implied by the sequential ordering with the blocking assignment operator results in the elimination of E by a synthesis tool. To retain E, it is necessary to declare E to be an output port of the module.

### 5.31

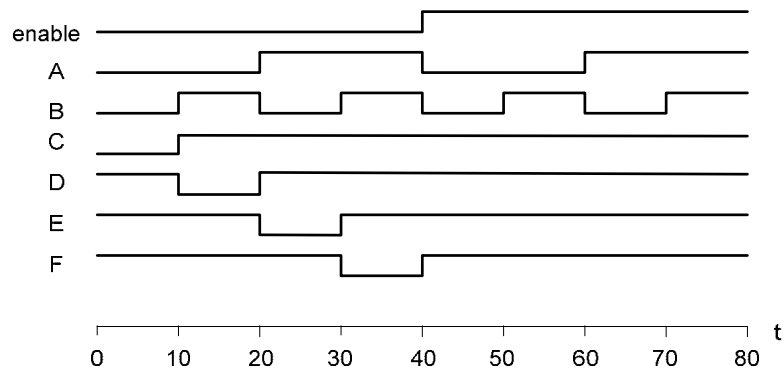
```

module Seq_Ckt (input A, B, C, CLK, output reg Q);
  reg E;
  always @ (posedge CLK)
  begin
    Q = E | C;
    E = A & B;
  end
endmodule

```

Note: The statements must be written in an order than produces the effect of concurrent assignments.

### 5.32



#### initial begin

```
enable = 0; A = 0; B = 0; C = 0; D = 1; E = 1; F = 1;
#10 B = 1;
    C = 1;
    D = 0;
#10 A = 1;
    B = 0;
    D = 1;
    E = 0;
#10 B = 1;
    E = 1;
    F = 0;
#10 enable = 1;
    A = 0;
    B = 0;
    F = 0;
#10 B = 1;
#10 A = 1;
    B = 0;
#10 B = 1;
end
```

#### initial fork

```
enable = 0; A = 0; B = 0; C = 0; D = 1; E = 1; F = 1;
#40 enable = 1;
#20 A = 1;
#40 A = 0;
#60 A = 1;
#10 B = 1;
#20 B = 0;
#30 B = 1;
#40 B = 0;
#50 B = 1;
#60 B = 0;
#70 B = 1;
#10 C = 1;
#10 D = 0;
#20 D = 1;
#20 E = 0;
#30 E = 1;
#30 F = 0;
#40 F = 1;
```

#### join

- 5.33** Signal transitions that are caused by input signals that change on the active edge of the clock race with the clock itself to reach the affected flip-flops, and the outcome is indeterminate (unpredictable). Conversely, changes caused by inputs that are synchronized to the inactive edge of the clock reach stability before the active edge, with predictable outputs of the flip-flops that are affected by the inputs.

**5.34**

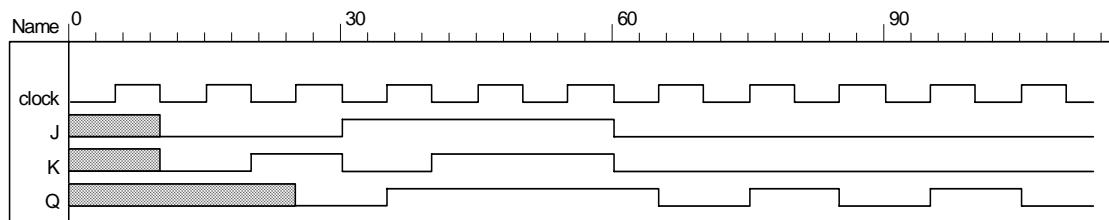
```
module JK_flop_Prob_5_34 (output Q, input J, K, clk);
    wire K_bar;
    D_flop M0 (Q, D, clk);
    Mux M1 (D, J, K_bar, Q);
    Inverter M2 (K_bar, K);
endmodule
```

```
module D_flop (output reg Q, input D, clk);
    always @ (posedge clk) Q <= D;
endmodule
```

```
module Inverter (output y_bar, input y);
    assign y_bar = ~y;
endmodule
```

```
module Mux (output y, input a, b, select);
    assign y = select ? a : b;
endmodule
```

```
module t_JK_flop_Prob_5_34 ();
    wire Q;
    reg J, K, clock;
    JK_flop_Prob_5_34 M0 (Q, J, K, clock);
    initial #500 $finish;
    initial begin clock = 0; forever #5 clock = ~clock; end
    initial fork
        #10 begin J = 0; K = 0; end // toggle Q unknown
        #20 begin J = 0; K = 1; end // set Q to 0
        #30 begin J = 1; K = 0; end // set q to 1
        #40 begin J = 1; K = 1; end // no change
        #60 begin J = 0; K = 0; end // toggle Q
    join
endmodule
```



**5.35**

```
initial begin
    enable = 0; A = 0; B = 0; C = 0; D = 1; E = 1; F = 1;
    #10 begin B = 1; C = 1; D = 0; end
    #10 begin A = 1; B = 0; D = 1; E = 0; end
    #10 begin A = 1; B = 0; E = 1; F = 0; end
    #10 begin enable = 1; A = 0; B = 0; F = 1; end
    #10 begin B = 1; end
    #10 begin A = 1; B = 0; end
    #10 B = 1;
end
```

```

initial fork
  enable = 0;
  #40 enable = 1;
  #20 A = 1;
  #40 A = 0;
  #60 A = 1;

  #10 B = 1;
  #20 B = 0;
  #30 B = 1;
  #40 B = 0;
  #50 B = 1;
  #60 B = 0;
  #70 B = 1;

  #10 C = 1;

  #10 D = 0;
  #20 D = 1;

  #20 E = 0;
  #30 E = 1;

  #30 F = 0;
  #40 F = 1;
join

```

**5.36** Note: See Problem 5.8 (counter with repeated sequence: (A, B) = 00, 01, 10, 00 ....

```

// See Fig. P5.8
module Problem_5_36 (output A, B, input Clock, reset_b);
  or (T_A, A, B);
  or (T_B, A_b, B);
  T_flop M0 (A, A_b, T_A, Clock, reset_b);
  T_flop M1 (B, B_b, T_B, Clock, reset_b);
endmodule

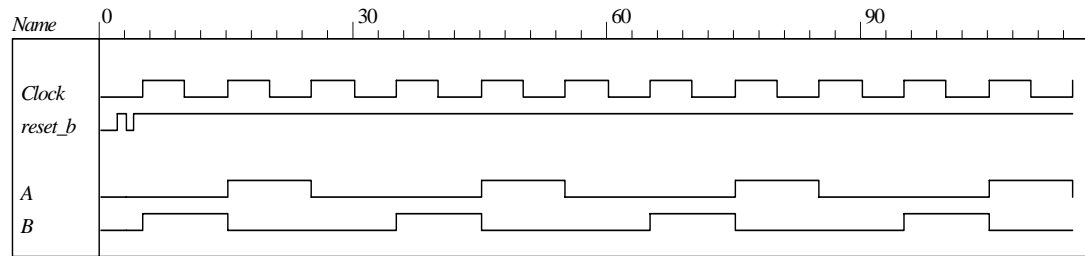
module T_flop (output reg Q, output QB, input T, Clock, reset_b);
  assign QB = ~ Q;
  always @ (posedge Clock, negedge reset_b)
    if (reset_b == 0) Q <= 0;
    else if (T) Q <= ~Q;
endmodule

module t_Problem_5_36 ();
  wire A, B;
  reg Clock, reset_b;

  Problem_5_36 M0 (A, B, Clock, reset_b);

  initial #350$finish;
  initial begin Clock = 0; forever #5 Clock = ~Clock; end
  initial fork
    #2 reset_b = 1;
    #3 reset_b = 0;
    #4 reset_b = 1;
  join
endmodule

```



### 5.37

**module** Problem\_5\_37\_Fig\_5\_25 (output reg y, input x\_in, clock, reset\_b);

**parameter** a = 3'b000, b = 3'b001, c = 3'b010, d = 3'b011, e = 3'b100, f = 3'b101, g = 3'b110;  
**reg** [2: 0] state, next\_state;

**always @ (posedge clock, negedge reset\_b)**  
**if** (reset\_b == 0) state <= a;  
**else** state <= next\_state;

**always @ (state, x\_in) begin**

y = 0;

next\_state = a;

**case** (state)

a: **begin** y = 0; **if** (x\_in == 0) next\_state = a; **else** next\_state = b; **end**

b: **begin** y = 0; **if** (x\_in == 0) next\_state = c; **else** next\_state = d; **end**

c: **begin** y = 0; **if** (x\_in == 0) next\_state = a; **else** next\_state = d; **end**

d: **if** (x\_in == 0) **begin** y = 0; next\_state = e; **end**  
**else** **begin** y = 1; next\_state = f; **end**

e: **if** (x\_in == 0) **begin** y = 0; next\_state = a; **end**  
**else** **begin** y = 1; next\_state = f; **end**

f: **if** (x\_in == 0) **begin** y = 0; next\_state = g; **end**  
**else** **begin** y = 1; next\_state = f; **end**

g: **if** (x\_in == 0) **begin** y = 0; next\_state = a; **end**  
**else** **begin** y = 1; next\_state = f; **end**

**default:** next\_state = a;

**endcase**

**end**

**endmodule**

**module** Problem\_5\_37\_Fig\_5\_26 (output reg y, input x\_in, clock, reset\_b);

**parameter** a = 3'b000, b = 3'b001, c = 3'b010, d = 3'b011, e = 3'b100;

**reg** [2: 0] state, next\_state;

**always @ (posedge clock, negedge reset\_b)**  
**if** (reset\_b == 0) state <= a;  
**else** state <= next\_state;

```

always @ (state, x_in) begin
    y = 0;
    next_state = a;
    case (state)
        a:    begin y = 0; if (x_in == 0) next_state = a; else next_state = b; end

        b:    begin y = 0; if (x_in == 0) next_state = c; else next_state = d; end

        c:    begin y = 0; if (x_in == 0) next_state = a; else next_state = d; end

        d:    if (x_in == 0) begin y = 0; next_state = e; end
              else begin y = 1; next_state = d; end

        e:    if (x_in == 0) begin y = 0; next_state = a; end
              else begin y = 1; next_state = d; end

        default:    next_state = a;
    endcase
end
endmodule

module t_Problem_5_37 ();
    wire y_Fig_5_25, y_Fig_5_26;
    reg x_in, clock, reset_b;

    Problem_5_37_Fig_5_25 M0 (y_Fig_5_25, x_in, clock, reset_b);
    Problem_5_37_Fig_5_26 M1 (y_Fig_5_26, x_in, clock, reset_b);

    wire [2: 0] state_25 = M0.state;
    wire [2: 0] state_26 = M1.state;

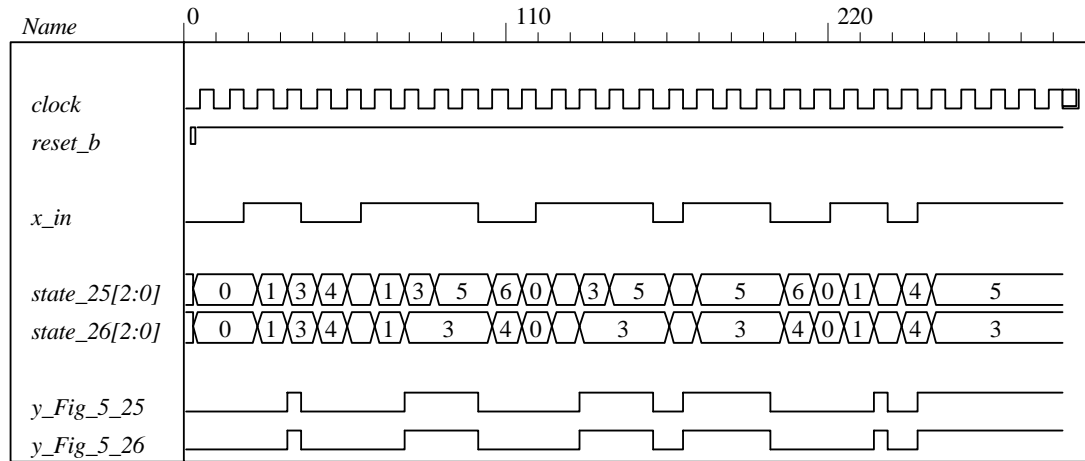
    initial #350 $finish;
    initial begin clock = 0; forever #5 clock = ~clock; end
    initial fork
        x_in = 0;
        #2 reset_b = 1;
        #3 reset_b = 0;
        #4 reset_b = 1;
        #20 x_in = 1;
        #40 x_in = 0;    // abdea, abdea

        #60 x_in = 1;
        #100 x_in = 0; // abdf....fga, abd ... dea

        #120 x_in = 1;
        #160 x_in = 0;
        #170 x_in = 1;
        #200 x_in = 0; // abdf....fgf...fga, abd ...ded...ea

        #220 x_in = 1;
        #240 x_in = 0;
        #250 x_in = 1; // abdef... // abded...
    join
endmodule

```



5.38 (a)

```

module Prob_5_38a (input x_in, clock, reset_b);
parameter s0 = 2'b00, s1 = 2'b01, s2 = 2'b10, s3 = 2'b11;
reg [1: 0] state, next_state;

always @ (posedge clock, negedge reset_b)
if (reset_b == 0) state <= s0;
else state <= next_state;

always @ (state, x_in) begin
    next_state = s0;
    case (state)
        s0: if (x_in == 0) next_state = s0;
            else if (x_in == 1) next_state = s3;

        s1: if (x_in == 0) next_state = s1;
            else if (x_in == 1) next_state = s2;

        s2: if (x_in == 0) next_state = s2;
            else if (x_in == 1) next_state = s0;

        s3: if (x_in == 0) next_state = s3;
            else if (x_in == 1) next_state = s1;
        default: next_state = s0;
    endcase
end
endmodule
    
```

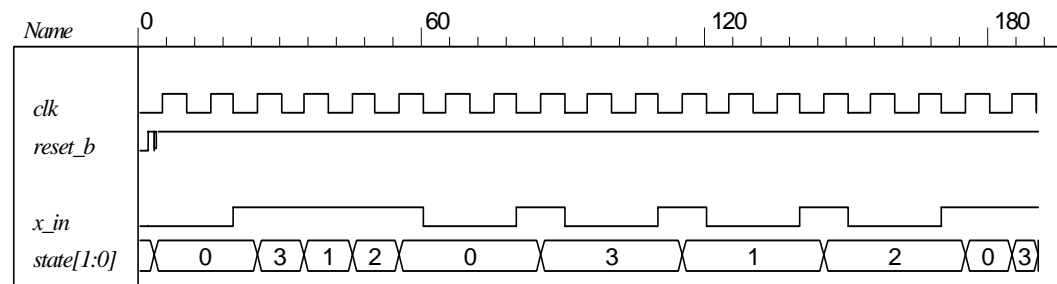
```

module t_Prob_5_38a ();
  reg x_in, clk, reset_b;

  Prob_5_38a M0 ( x_in, clk, reset_b);

  initial #350$finish;
  initial begin clk = 0; forever #5 clk = ~clk; end
  initial fork
    #2 reset_b = 1;
    #3 reset_b = 0;    // Initialize to s0
    #4 reset_b = 1;
    #2 x_in = 0;
    #20 x_in = 1;
    #60 x_in = 0;
    #80 x_in = 1;
    #90 x_in = 0;
    #110 x_in = 1;
    #120 x_in = 0;
    #140 x_in = 1;
    #150 x_in = 0;
    #170 x_in = 1;
  join
endmodule

```



(b)

```

module Prob_5_38b (input x_in, clock, reset_b);
  parameter s0 = 2'b00, s1 = 2'b01, s2 = 2'b10, s3 = 2'b11;
  reg [1: 0] state, next_state;

  always @ (posedge clock, negedge reset_b)
    if (reset_b == 0) state <= s0;
    else state <= next_state;

  always @ (state, x_in) begin
    next_state = s0;
    case (state)
      s0:   if (x_in == 0) next_state = s0;
           else if (x_in == 1) next_state = s3;

      s1:   if (x_in == 0) next_state = s1;
           else if (x_in == 1) next_state = s2;

      s2:   if (x_in == 0) next_state = s2;
           else if (x_in == 1) next_state = s0;

      s3:   if (x_in == 0) next_state = s3;
           else if (x_in == 1) next_state = s1;
    default:    next_state = s0;
  endcase
end

```



```

endmodule

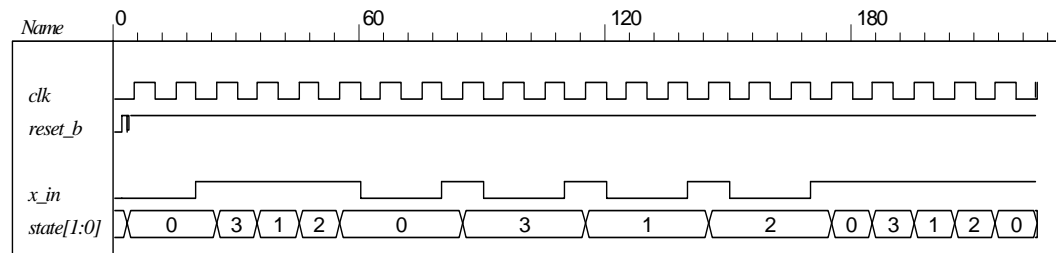
module t_Prob_5_38b ();

    reg x_in, clk, reset_b;

    Prob_5_38b M0 ( x_in, clk, reset_b);

    initial #350$finish;
    initial begin clk = 0; forever #5 clk = ~clk; end
    initial fork
        #2 reset_b = 1;
        #3 reset_b = 0;    // Initialize to s0
        #4 reset_b = 1;
        #2 x_in = 0;
        #20 x_in = 1;
        #60 x_in = 0;
        #80 x_in = 1;
        #90 x_in = 0;
        #110 x_in = 1;
        #120 x_in = 0;
        #140 x_in = 1;
        #150 x_in = 0;
        #170 x_in = 1;
    join
endmodule

```



### 5.39

```

module Serial_2s_Comp (output reg B_out, input B_in, clk, reset_b);
// See problem 5.17
    parameter S_0 = 1'b0, S_1 = 1'b1;
    reg state, next_state;
    always @ (posedge clk, negedge reset_b) begin
        if (reset_b == 0) state <= S_0;
        else state <= next_state;
    end

    always @ (state, B_in) begin
        B_out = 0;
        case (state)
            S_0: if (B_in == 0) begin next_state = S_0; B_out = 0; end
                 else if (B_in == 1) begin next_state = S_1; B_out = 1; end

            S_1: begin next_state = S_1; B_out = ~B_in; end
        default:    next_state = S_0;

    endcase
    end
endmodule

```

```

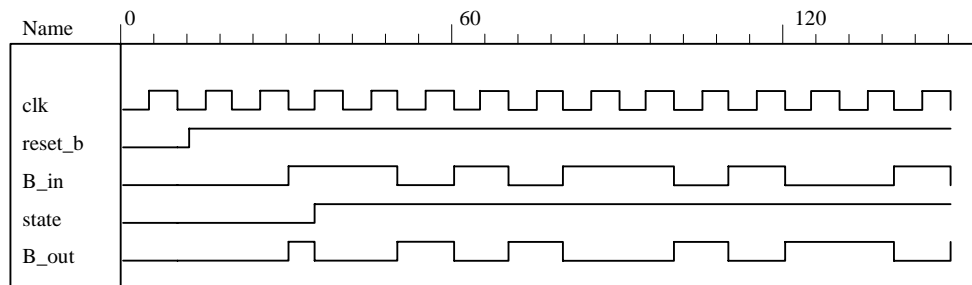
module t_Serial_2s_Comp ();
  wire B_in, B_out;
  reg clk, reset_b;
  reg [15: 0] data;
  assign B_in = data[0];

  always @ ( negedge clk, negedge reset_b)
    if (reset_b == 0) data <= 16'h5ac; else data <= data >> 1; // Sample bit stream

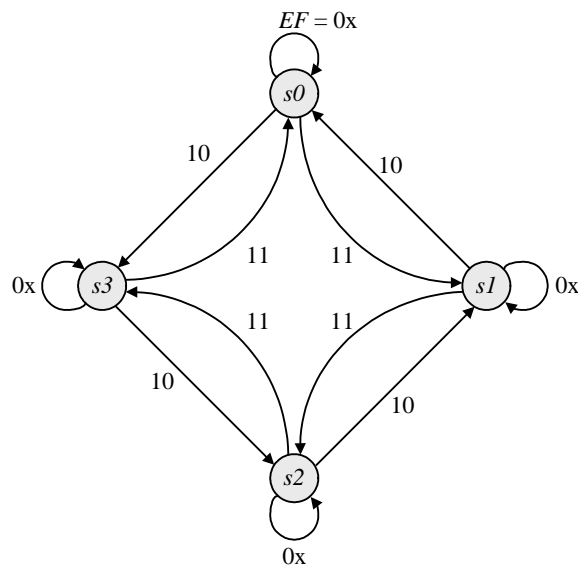
  Serial_2s_Comp M0 (B_out, B_in, clk, reset_b);

  initial #150 $finish;
  initial begin clk = 0; forever #5 clk = ~clk; end
  initial fork
    #10 reset_b = 0;
    #12 reset_b = 1;
  join
endmodule

```



5.40



```

module Prob_5_40 (input E, F, clock, reset_b);
  parameter s0 = 2'b00, s1 = 2'b01, s2 = 2'b10, s3 = 2'b11;
  reg [1: 0] state, next_state;

  always @ ( posedge clock, negedge reset_b)
    if (reset_b == 0) state <= s0;
    else state <= next_state;

```

```

always @ (state, E, F) begin
    next_state = s0;
case (state)
    s0:   if (E == 0) next_state = s0;
         else if (F == 1) next_state = s1; else next_state = s3;

    s1:   if (E == 0) next_state = s1;
         else if (F == 1) next_state = s2; else next_state = s0;

    s2:   if (E == 0) next_state = s2;
         else if (F == 1) next_state = s3; else next_state = s1;

    s3:   if (E == 0) next_state = s3;
         else if (F == 1) next_state = s0; else next_state = s2;
    default: next_state = s0;
endcase
end
endmodule

```

```

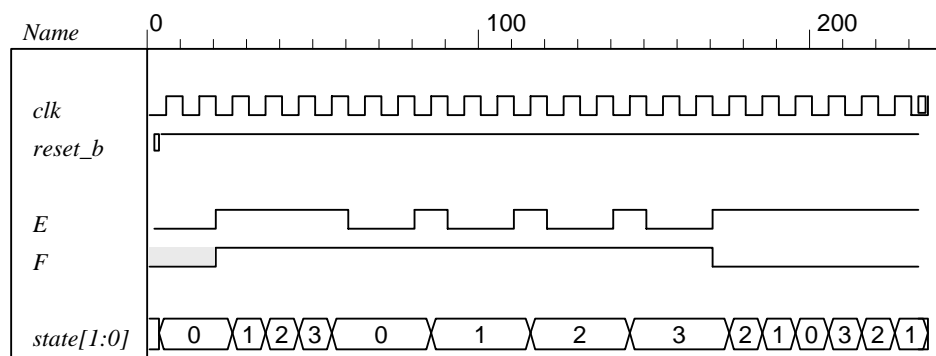
module t_Prob_5_40 ();

    reg E, F, clk, reset_b;

    Prob_5_40 M0 ( E, F, clk, reset_b);

    initial #350$finish;
    initial begin clk = 0; forever #5 clk = ~clk; end
    initial fork
        #2 reset_b = 1;
        #3 reset_b = 0;    // Initialize to s0
        #4 reset_b = 1;
        #2 E = 0;
        #20 begin E = 1; F = 1; end
        #60 E = 0;
        #80 E = 1;
        #90 E = 0;
        #110 E = 1;
        #120 E = 0;
        #140 E = 1;
        #150 E = 0;
        #170 E = 1;
        #170 F = 0;
    join
endmodule

```



```

module Prob_5_41 (output reg y_out, input x_in, clock, reset_b);
  parameter s0 = 3'b000, s1 = 3'b001, s2 = 3'b010, s3 = 3'b011, s4 = 3'b100;
  reg [2: 0] state, next_state;

  always @ (posedge clock, negedge reset_b)
    if (reset_b == 0) state <= s0;
    else state <= next_state;

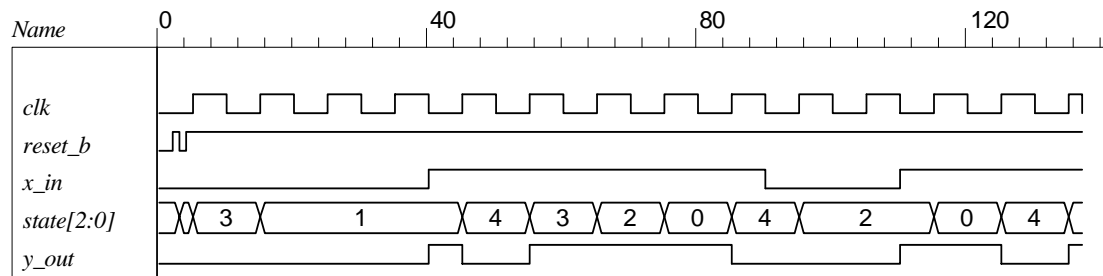
  always @ (state, x_in) begin
    y_out = 0;
    next_state = s0;
    case (state)
      s0:   if (x_in) begin next_state = s4; y_out = 1; end else begin next_state = s3; y_out = 0; end
      s1:   if (x_in) begin next_state = s4; y_out = 1; end else begin next_state = s1; y_out = 0; end
      s2:   if (x_in) begin next_state = s0; y_out = 1; end else begin next_state = s2; y_out = 0; end
      s3:   if (x_in) begin next_state = s2; y_out = 1; end else begin next_state = s1; y_out = 0; end
      s4:   if (x_in) begin next_state = s3; y_out = 0; end else begin next_state = s2; y_out = 0; end
      default: next_state = 3'bxxx;
    endcase
  end
endmodule

module t_Prob_5_41 ();
  wire y_out;
  reg x_in, clk, reset_b;

  Prob_5_41 M0 (y_out, x_in, clk, reset_b);

  initial #350$finish;
  initial begin clk = 0; forever #5 clk = ~clk; end
  initial fork
    #2 reset_b = 1;
    #3 reset_b = 0;    // Initialize to s0
    #4 reset_b = 1;
    // Trace the state diagram and monitor y_out
    x_in = 0;          // Drive from s0 to s3 to S1 and park
    #40 x_in = 1;       // Drive to s4 to s3 to s2 to s0 to s4 and loop
    #90 x_in = 0;       // Drive from s0 to s3 to s2 and part
    #110 x_in = 1;      // Drive s0 to s4 etc
  join
endmodule

```



## 5.42

```

module Prob_5_42 (output A, B, B_bar, y, input x, clk, reset_b);
// See Fig. 5.29
    wire w1, w2, w3, D1, D2;
    and (w1, A, x);
    and (w2, B, x);
    or (D_A, w1, w2);

    and (w3, B_bar, x);
    and (y, A, B);
    or (D_B, w1, w3);
    DFF M0_A (A, D_A, clk, reset_b);
    DFF M0_B (B, D_B, clk, reset_b);
    not (B_bar, B);
endmodule

module DFF (output reg Q, input data, clk, reset_b);
    always @ (posedge clk, negedge reset_b)
    if (reset_b == 0) Q <= 0; else Q <= data;
endmodule

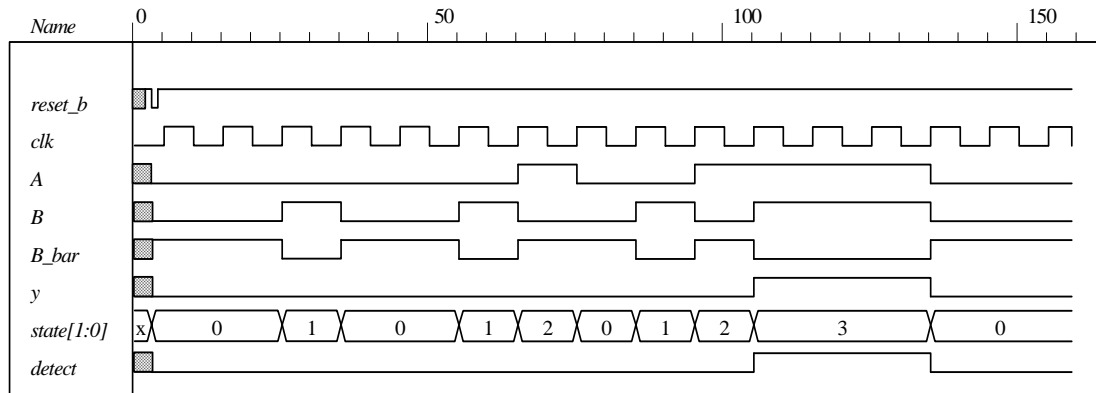
module t_Prob_5_42 ();
    wire A, B, B_bar, y;
    reg bit_in, clk, reset_b;
    wire [1:0] state;
    assign state = {A, B};
    wire detect = y;

    Prob_5_42 M0 (A, B, B_bar, y, bit_in, clk, reset_b);

    // Patterns from Problem 5.45.

    initial #350$finish;
    initial begin clk = 0; forever #5 clk = ~clk; end
    initial fork
        #2 reset_b = 1;
        #3 reset_b = 0;
        #4 reset_b = 1;
        // Trace the state diagram and monitor detect (assert in S3)
        bit_in = 0; // Park in S0
        #20 bit_in = 1; // Drive to S0
        #30 bit_in = 0; // Drive to S1 and back to S0 (2 clocks)
        #50 bit_in = 1;
        #70 bit_in = 0; // Drive to S2 and back to S0 (3 clocks)
        #80 bit_in = 1;
        #130 bit_in = 0; // Drive to S3, park, then and back to S0
    join
endmodule

```



### 5.43

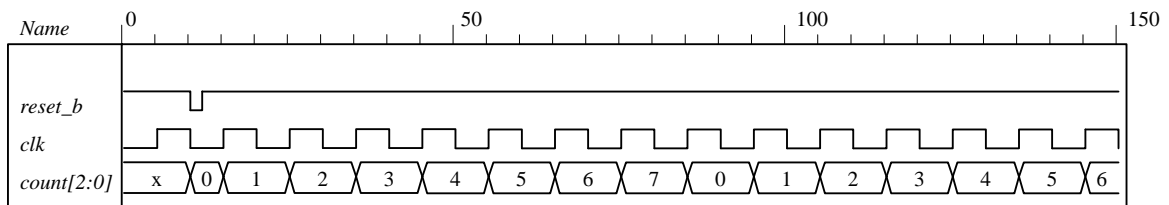
```

module Binary_Counter_3_bit (output [2: 0] count, input clk, reset_b)
always @ (posedge clk) if (reset_b == 0) count <= 0; else count <= next_count;
always @ (count) begin
    case (state)
        3'b000: count = 3'b001;
        3'b001: count = 3'b010;
        3'b010: count = 3'b011;
        3'b011: count = 3'b100;
        3'b100: count = 3'b001;
        3'b101: count = 3'b010;
        3'b110: count = 3'b011;
        3'b111: count = 3'b100;
        default: count = 3'b000;
    endcase
end
endmodule

module t_Binary_Counter_3_bit ()
wire [2: 0] count;
reg clk, reset_b;
    Binary_Counter_3_bit M0 ( count, clk, reset_b)

    initial #150 $finish;
    initial begin clk = 0; forever #5 clk = ~clk; end
    initial fork
        reset = 1;
        #10 reset = 0;
        #12 reset = 1;
    endmodule

```



Alternative: structural model.

```
module Prob_5_41 (output A2, A1, A0, input T, clk, reset_bar);
  wire toggle_A2;

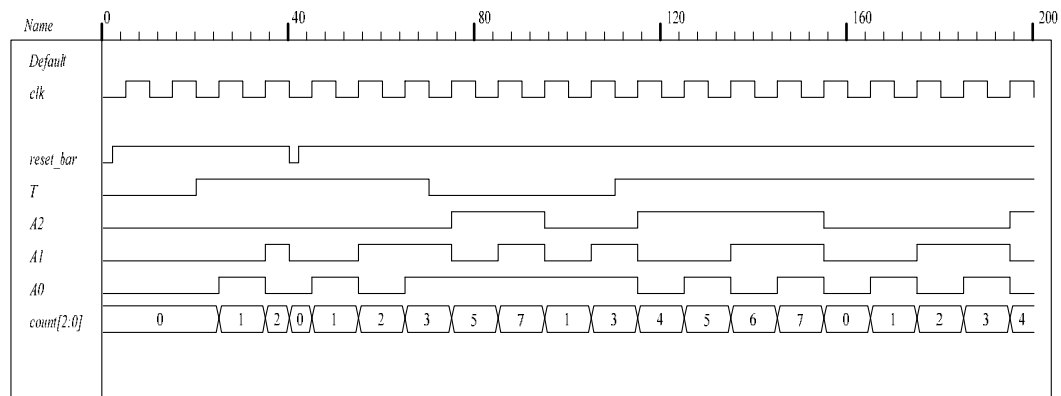
  T_flop M0 (A0, T, clk, reset_bar);
  T_flop M1 (A1, A0, clk, reset_bar);
  T_flop M2 (A2, toggle_A2, clk, reset_bar);
  and (toggle_A2, A0, A1);
endmodule
```

```
module T_flop (output reg Q, input T, clk, reset_bar);
  always @ (posedge clk, negedge reset_bar)
    if (!reset_bar) Q <= 0; else if (T) Q <= ~Q; else Q <= Q;
endmodule
```

```
module t_Prob_5_41;
  wire A2, A1, A0;
  wire [2: 0] count = {A2, A1, A0};
  reg T, clk, reset_bar;
  Prob_5_41 M0 (A2, A1, A0, T, clk, reset_bar);

  initial #200 $finish;
  initial begin clk = 0; forever #5 clk = ~clk; end
  initial fork reset_bar = 0; #2 reset_bar = 1; #40 reset_bar = 0; #42 reset_bar = 1; join
  initial fork T = 0; #20 T = 1; #70 T = 0; #110 T = 1; join
endmodule
```

If the input to A0 is changed to 0 the counter counts incorrectly. It resumes a correct counting sequence when *T* is changed back to 1.



#### 5.44

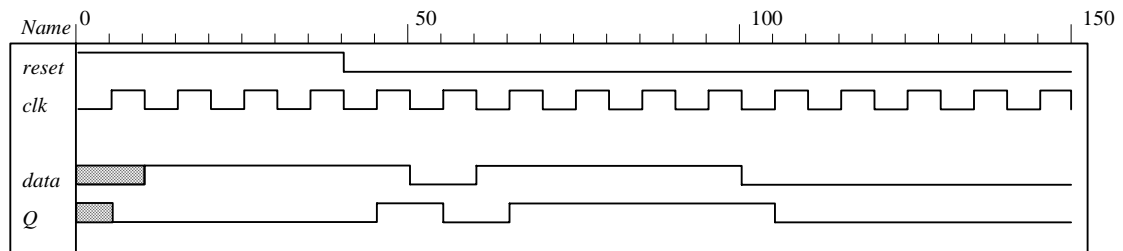
```
module DFF_synch_reset (output reg Q, input data, clk, reset);
  always @ (posedge clk)
    if (reset) Q <= 0; else Q <= data;
endmodule
```

```
module t_DFF_synch_reset ();
  reg data, clk, reset;
  wire Q;
```

```
DFF_synch_reset M0 (Q, data, clk, reset);
```

```
initial #150 $finish;
initial begin clk = 0; forever #5 clk = ~clk; end
initial fork
  reset = 1;
  #20 reset = 1;
  #40 reset = 0;

  #10 data = 1;
  #50 data = 0;
  #60 data = 1;
  #100 data = 0;
join
endmodule
```



#### 5.45

```
module Seq_Detector_Prob_5_45 (output detect, input bit_in, clk, reset_b);
  parameter S0 = 0, S1 = 1, S2 = 2, S3 = 3;
  reg [1: 0] state, next_state;
```

```
assign detect = (state == S3);
always @ (posedge clk, negedge reset_b)
  if (reset_b == 0) state <= S0; else state <= next_state;
```

```
always @ (state, bit_in) begin
  next_state = S0;
  case (state)
    0: if (bit_in) next_state = S1; else state = S0;
    1: if (bit_in) next_state = S2; else next_state = S0;
    2: if (bit_in) next_state = S3; else state = S0;
    3: if (bit_in) next_state = S3; else next_state = S0;
    default: next_state = S0;
  endcase
end
endmodule
```



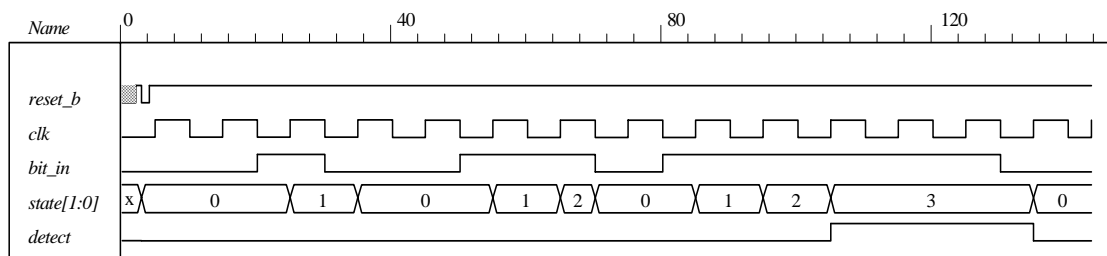
```

module t_Seq_Detector_Prob_5_45 ();
  wire detect;
  reg bit_in, clk, reset_b;

  Seq_Detector_Prob_5_45 M0 (detect, bit_in, clk, reset_b);

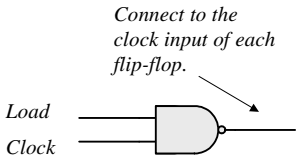
  initial #350$finish;
  initial begin clk = 0; forever #5 clk = ~clk; end
  initial fork
    #2 reset_b = 1;
    #3 reset_b = 0;
    #4reset_b = 1;
    // Trace the state diagram and monitor detect (assert in S3)
    bit_in = 0; // Park in S0
    #20 bit_in = 1; // Drive to S0
    #30 bit_in = 0; // Drive to S1 and back to S0 (2 clocks)
    #50 bit_in = 1;
    #70 bit_in = 0; // Drive to S2 and back to S0 (3 clocks)
    #80 bit_in = 1;
    #130 bit_in = 0; // Drive to S3, park, then and back to S0
  join
endmodule

```

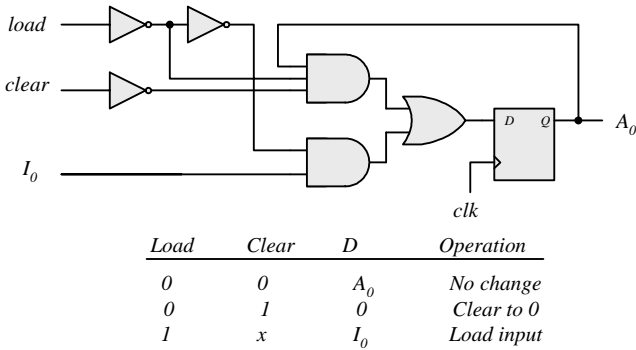


CHAPTER 6

6.1 The structure shown below gates the clock through a nand gate. In practice, the circuit can exhibit two problems if the load signal is asynchronous: (1) the gated clock arrives in the setup interval of the clock of the flip-flop, causing metastability, and (2) the load signal truncates the width of the clock pulse. Additionally, the propagation delay through the nand gate might compromise the synchronicity of the overall circuit.



6.2 Modify Fig. 6.2, with each stage replicating the first stage shown below:



Note: In this design, load has priority over clear.

6.3 Serial data is transferred one bit at a time. Parallel data is transferred n bits at a time ( $n > 1$ ).

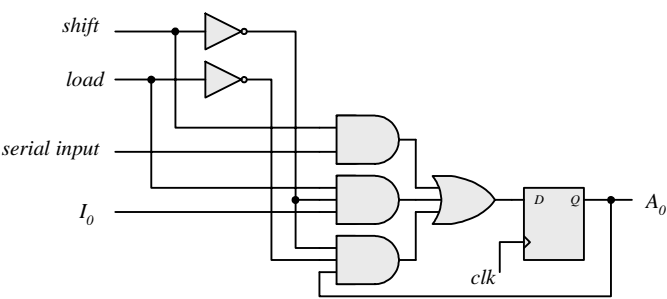
A shift register can convert serial data into parallel data by first shifting one bit a time into the register and then taking the parallel data from the register outputs.

A shift register with parallel load can convert parallel data to a serial format by first loading the data in parallel and then shifting the bits one at a time.

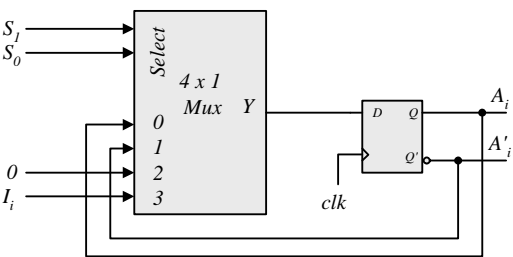
6.4  $101101 \Rightarrow 1101; 0110; 1011; 1101; 0110; 1011$

- 6.5 (a) See Fig. 11.19: IC 74194
- (b) See Fig. 11.20. Connect two 74194 ICs to form an 8-bit register.

6.6 First stage of register:



6.7 First stage of register:



6.8  $A = 0010, 0001, 1000, 1100$ . Carry = 1, 1, 1, 0

6.9 (a) In Fig. 6.5, complement the serial output of shift register B (with an inverter), and set the initial value of the carry to 1.

(b)

Present state	Inputs	Next state	Output	FF inputs
Q	x y	Q	D	J <sub>Q</sub> K <sub>Q</sub>
0	0 0	0	0	0 x
0	0 0	1	1	1 x
0	0 1	0	1	0 x
0	0 1	0	0	0 x
1	1 0	1	1	x 0
1	1 0	1	0	x 0
1	1 1	0	0	x 1
1	1 1	1	1	x 0

$J_Q = x'y$

$K_Q = xy' \oplus$

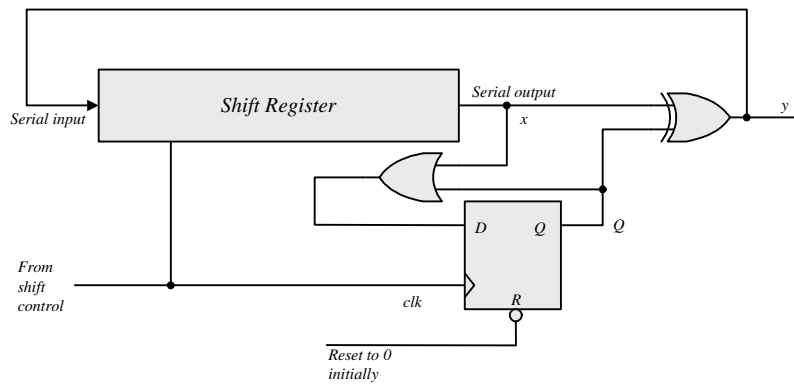
$D = Q \oplus x \oplus y$

**6.10**

See solution to Problem 5.7.

Note that  $y = x$  if  $Q = 0$ , and  $y = x'$  if  $Q = 1$ .  $Q$  is set on the first 1 from  $x$ .

Note that  $x \oplus 0 = x$ , and  $x \oplus 1 = x'$ .



**6.11**

(a) A count down counter.

(b) A count up counter.

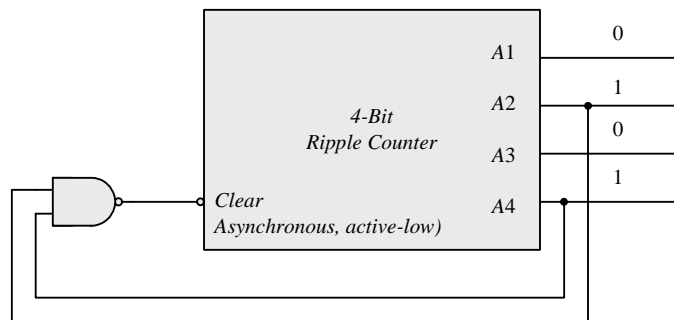
**6.12**

Similar to diagram of Fig. 6.8.

(a) With the bubbles in  $C$  removed (positive-edge).

(b) With complemented flip-flops connected to  $C$ .

**6.13**



**6.14**

(a) 4; (b) 9; (c) 10

**6.15**

The worst case is when all 10 flip-flops are complemented. The maximum delay is  $10 \times 3\text{ns} = 30\text{ ns}$ .

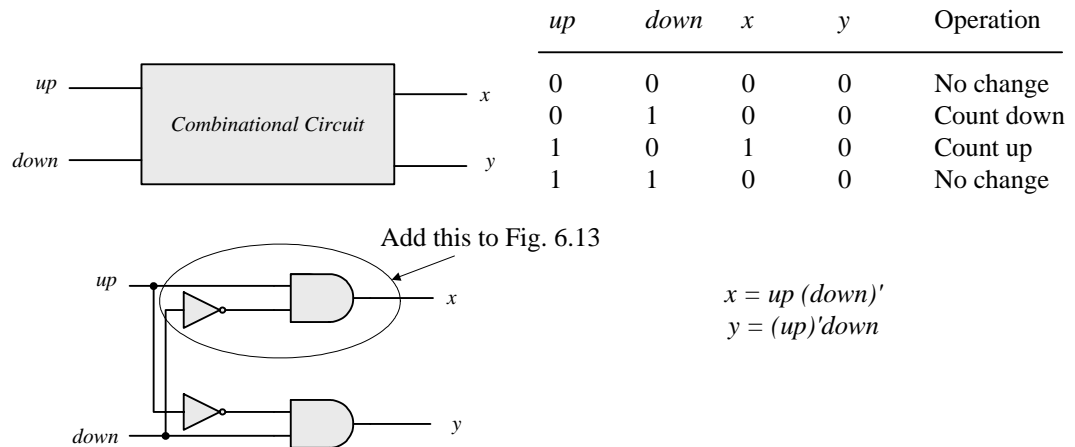
The maximum frequency is  $10^9/30 = 33.3\text{ MHz}$

**6.16** Q8 Q4 Q2 Q1 : 1010      1100      1110    Self correcting  
 Next state:      1011      1101      1111  
 Next state:      0100      0100      0000

1010 → 1011 → 0100  
 1100 → 1101 → 0100  
 1110 → 1111 → 0000

**6.17** With  $E$  denoting the count enable in Fig. 6.12 and D-flip-flops replacing the J-K flip-flops, the toggling action of the bits of the counter is determined by:  $T_0 = E$ ,  $T_1 = A_0E$ ,  $T_2 = A_0A_1E$ ,  $T_3 = A_0A_1A_2E$ . Since  $D_A = A \oplus T_A$  the inputs of the flip-flops of the counter are determined by:  $D_{A0} = A_0 \oplus E$ ;  $D_{A1} = A_1 \oplus (A_0E)$ ;  $D_{A2} = A_2 \oplus (A_0A_1E)$ ;  $D_{A3} = A_3 \oplus (A_0A_1A_2E)$ .

**6.18** When  $up = down = 1$  the circuit counts up.



**6.19** (b) From the state table in Table 6.5:

$D_{Q1} = Q_1'$   
 $D_{Q2} = \sum (1, 2, 5, 6)$   
 $D_{Q4} = \sum (3, 4, 5, 6)$   
 $D_{Q8} = \sum (7, 8)$   
 Don't care:  $d = \sum (10, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15)$

Simplifying with maps:

$D_{Q2} = Q_2Q_1' + Q_8Q_2'Q_1$   
 $D_{Q4} = Q_4Q_1' + Q_4Q_2' + Q_4Q_2Q_1$   
 $D_{Q8} = Q_8Q_1' + Q_4Q_2Q_1$

(a)

Present state	Next state	Flip-flop inputs			
$A_8 A_4 A_2 A_1$	$A_8 A_4 A_2 A_1$	$J_{A8} K_{A8}$	$J_{A4} K_{A4}$	$J_{A2} K_{A2}$	$J_{A1} K_{A1}$
0000	0001	0 x	0 x	0 x	1 x
0001	0010	0 x	0 x	1 x	x 1
0010	0011	0 x	0 x	x 0	1 x
0011	0100	0 x	1 x	x 1	x 1
0100	0101	0 x	x 0	0 x	1 x
0101	0110	0 x	x 0	1 x	x 1
0110	0111	0 x	x 0	x 0	1 x
0111	1000	1 x	x 1	x 1	x 1
1000	1001	x 0	0 x	0 x	1 x
1001	0000	x 1	0 x	0 x	x 1

$$\begin{aligned}
 J_{A1} &= I \\
 K_{A1} &= I \\
 J_{A2} &= A_1 A'_8 \\
 K_{A2} &= A_1 \\
 J_{A4} &= A_1 A_2 \\
 K_{A4} &= A_1 A_2 \\
 J_{A8} &= A_1 A_2 A_4 \\
 K_{A8} &= A_1
 \end{aligned}$$

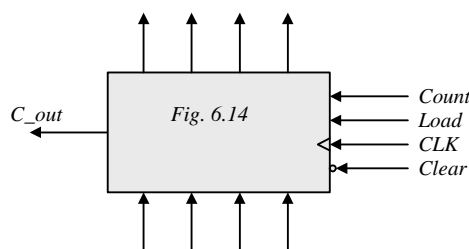
$$d(A_8, A_4, A_2, A_1) = \Sigma (10, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15)$$

6.20

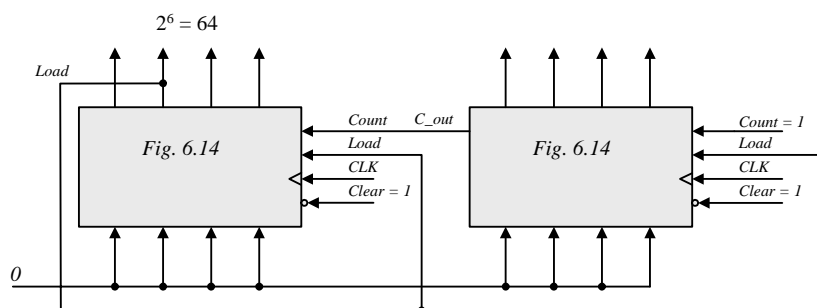
(a)

Block diagram of 4-bit circuit:

16-bit counter needs 4 circuits with output carry connected to the count input of the next stage.



(b)



6.21

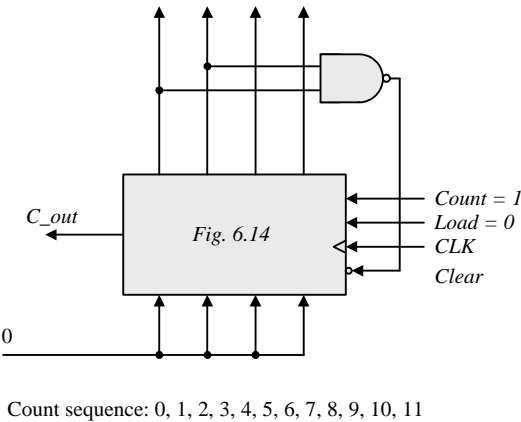
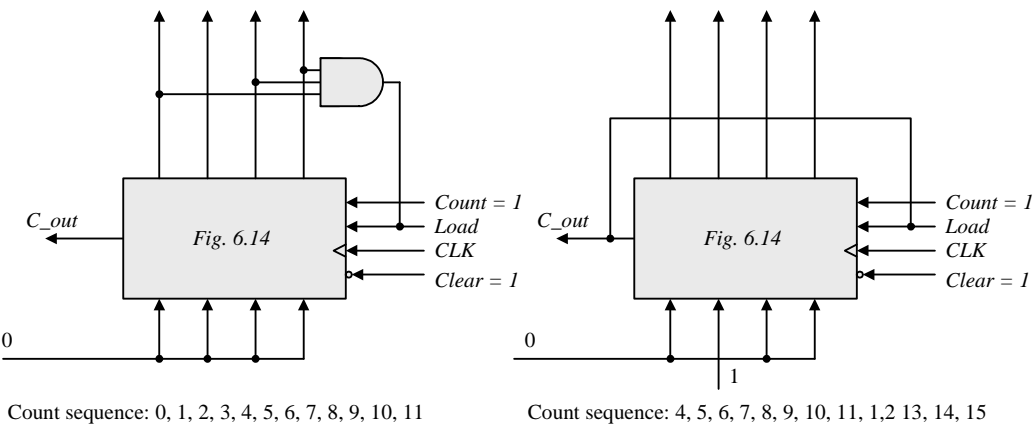
(a)

$$J_{A0} = LI_0 + L'C \quad KA_0 = LI'_0 + L'C$$

(b)

$$\begin{aligned}
 J &= [L(LI)'](L + C) = (L' + LI)(L + C) \\
 LI + L'C + LIC &= LI + L'C \text{ (use a map)} \\
 K &= (LI)'(L + C) = (L' + I')(L + C) = LI' + L'C
 \end{aligned}$$

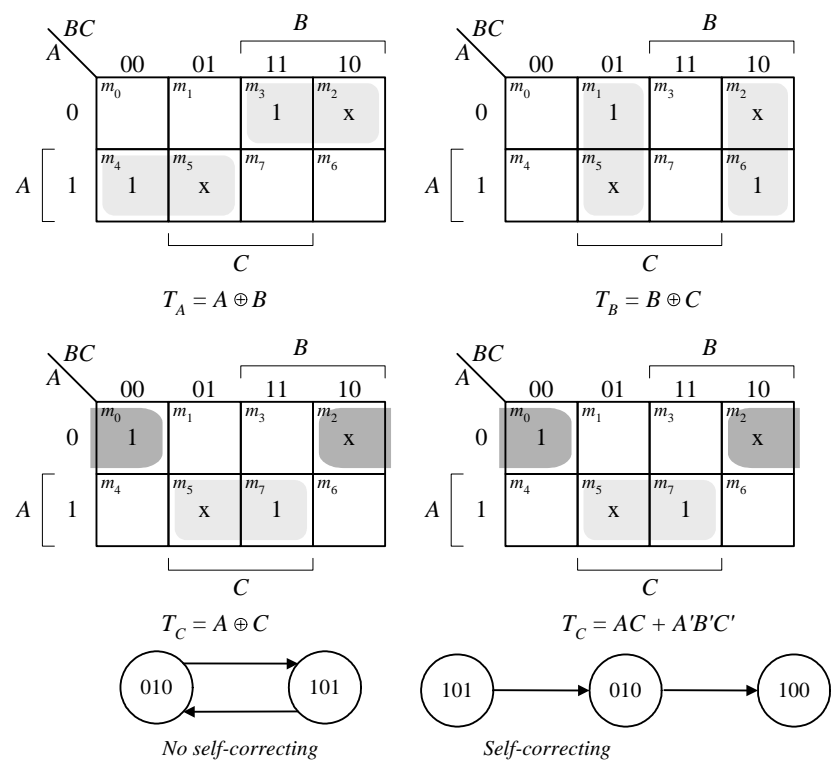
6.22



**6.23** Use a 3-bit counter and a flip-flop (initially at 0). A start signal sets the flip-flop, which in turn enables the counter. On the count of 7 (binary 111) reset the flip-flop to 0 to disable the count (with the value of 00 0).

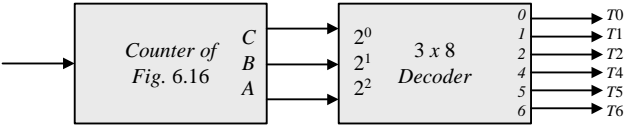
**6.24**

Present state <i>ABC</i>	Next state <i>ABC</i>	Flip-flop inputs		
		<i>T<sub>A</sub></i>	<i>T<sub>B</sub></i>	<i>T<sub>C</sub></i>
000	001	0	0	1
001	011	0	1	0
010	xxx	x	x	x
011	111	1	1	0
100	000	1	1	0
101	xxx	x	x	x
110	100	0	1	0
111	110	0	0	1



6.25 (a) Use a 6-bit ring counter.

(b)



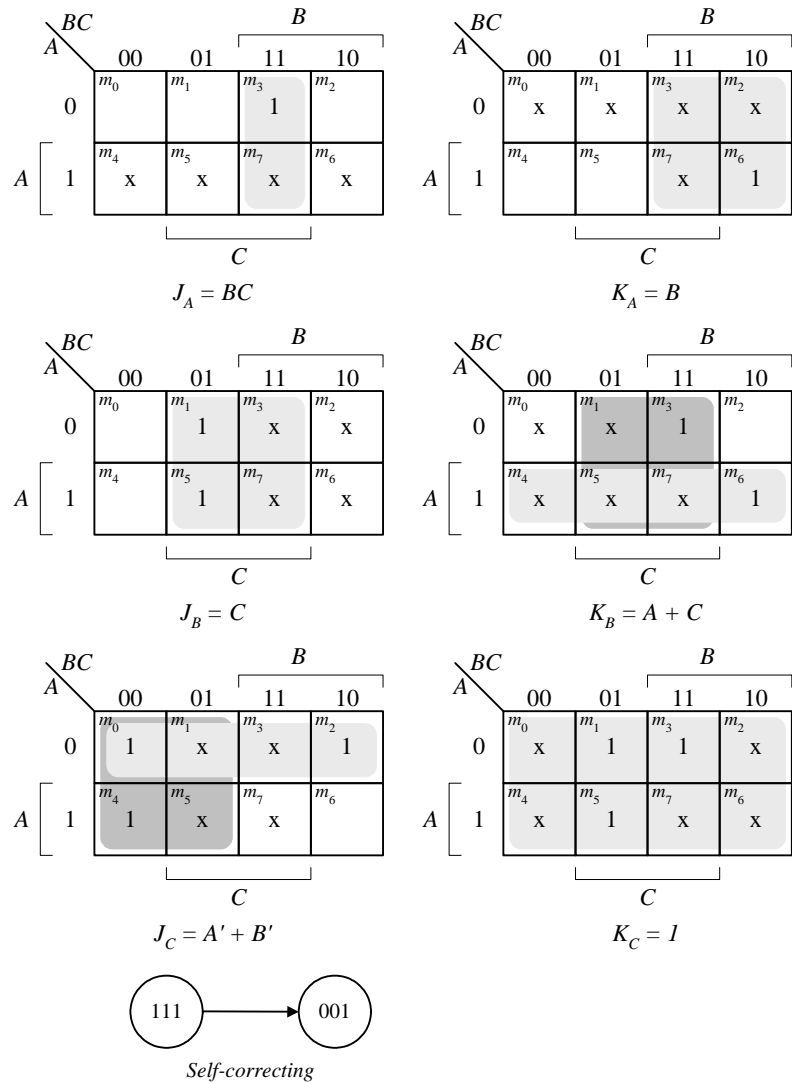
6.26 The clock generator has a period of 12.5 ns. Use a 2-bit counter to count four pulses.

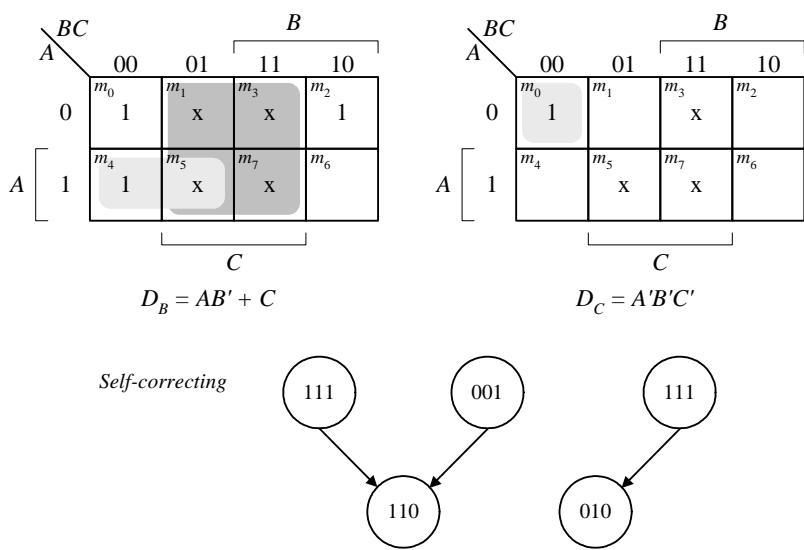
$80/4 = 20 \text{ MHz}$ ; cycle time =  $1000 \times 10^{-9} / 20 = 50 \text{ ns}$ .

6.27

Present state	Next state	Flip-flop inputs					
ABC	ABC	$J_A$	$K_A$	$J_B$	$K_B$	$J_C$	$K_C$
000	001	0	x	0	x	1	x
001	010	0	x	1	x	x	1
010	011	0	x	x	0	1	x
011	100	1	x	x	1	x	1
100	100	x	x	0	0	1	x
101	110	x	x	1	x	x	1
110	000	x	x	x	1	0	x
111	xxx	x	x	x	x	x	x







$111$

$001$

$110$

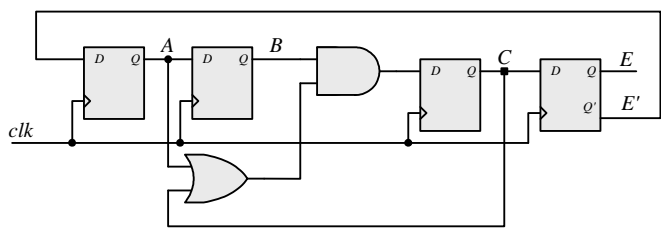
$111$

$010$

- 6.29 (a) The 8 valid states are listed in Fig. 8.18(b), with the sequence: 0, 8, 12, 14, 15, 7, 3, 1, 0, ....
- The 8 unused states and their next states are shown below:

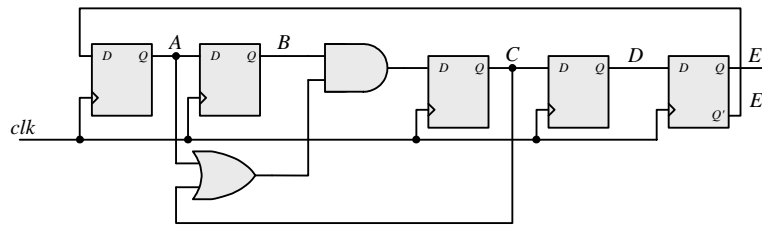
State		Next state	All invalid states
ABCE	ABCE	ABCE	
0000	1001	9	↖
0100	1010	10	
0101	0010	2	
0110	1011	11	
1001	0100	4	
1010	1101	13	
1011	0101	5	
1101	0110	6	

- (b) Modification:  $D_C = (A + C)B$ .

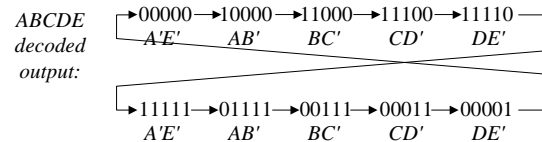


The valid states are the same as in (a). The unused states have the following sequences: 2→9→4→8 and 10→13→6→11→5→0. The final states, 0 and 8, are valid.

6.30



The 5-bit Johnson counter has the following state sequence:



6.31

```

module Reg_4_bit_beh (output reg A3, A2, A1, A0, input I3, I2, I1, I0, Clock, Clear);
  always @ (posedge Clock, negedge Clear)
    if (Clear == 0) {A3, A2, A1, A0} <= 4'b0;
    else {A3, A2, A1, A0} <= {I3, I2, I1, I0};
endmodule

```

```

module Reg_4_bit_Str (output A3, A2, A1, A0, input I3, I2, I1, I0, Clock, Clear);
  DFF M3DFF (A3, I3, Clock, Clear);
  DFF M2DFF (A2, I2, Clock, Clear);
  DFF M1DFF (A1, I1, Clock, Clear);
  DFF M0DFF (A0, I0, Clock, Clear);
endmodule

```

```

module DFF(output reg Q, input D, clk, clear);
  always @ (posedge clk, posedge clear)
    if (clear == 0) Q <= 0; else Q <= D;
endmodule

```

```

module t_Reg_4_bit ();
  wire A3_beh, A2_beh, A1_beh, A0_beh;
  wire A3_str, A2_str, A1_str, A0_str;
  reg I3, I2, I1, I0, Clock, Clear;
  wire [3: 0] I_data = {I3, I2, I1, I0};
  wire [3: 0] A_beh = {A3_beh, A2_beh, A1_beh, A0_beh};
  wire [3: 0] A_str = {A3_str, A2_str, A1_str, A0_str};

```

```

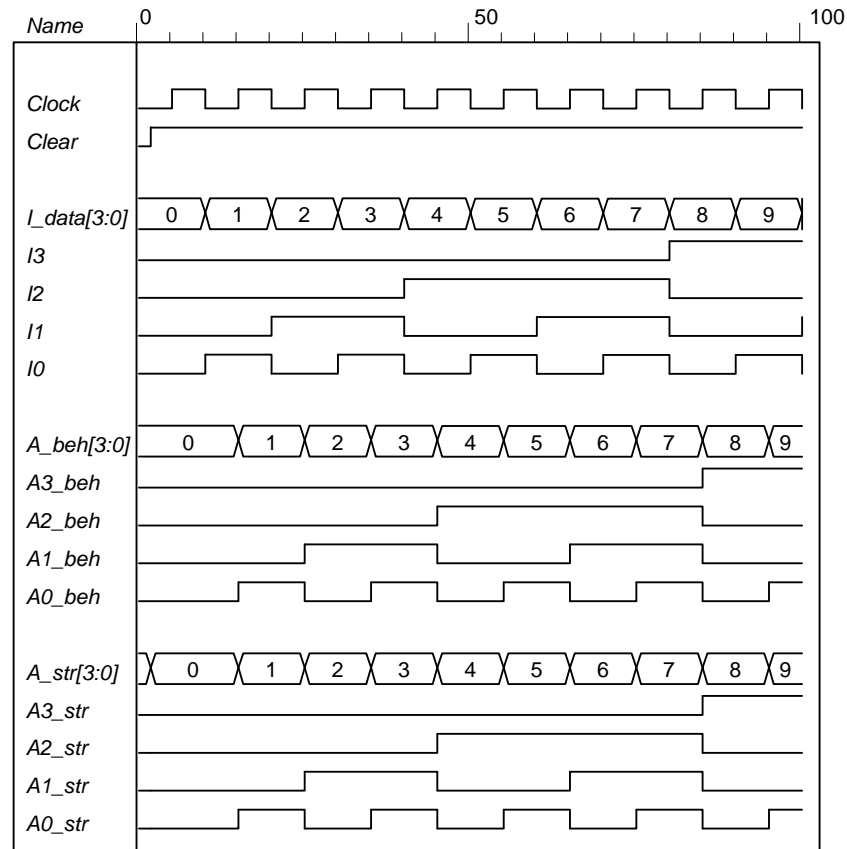
  Reg_4_bit_beh M_beh (A3_beh, A2_beh, A1_beh, A0_beh, I3, I2, I1, I0, Clock, Clear);
  Reg_4_bit_Str M_str (A3_str, A2_str, A1_str, A0_str, I3, I2, I1, I0, Clock, Clear);

```

```

  initial #100 $finish;
  initial begin Clock = 0; forever #5 Clock = ~Clock; end
  initial begin Clear = 0; #2 Clear = 1; end
  integer K;
  initial begin
    for (K = 0; K < 16; K = K + 1) begin {I3, I2, I1, I0} = K; #10 ; end
  end
endmodule

```



6.32 (a)

```

module Reg_4_bit_Load (output reg A3, A2, A1, A0, input I3, I2, I1, I0, Load, Clock, Clear);
  always @ (posedge Clock, negedge Clear)
    if (Clear == 0) {A3, A2, A1, A0} <= 4'b0;
    else if (Load) {A3, A2, A1, A0} <= {I3, I2, I1, I0};
endmodule

```

```

module t_Reg_4_Load ();
  wire A3_beh, A2_beh, A1_beh, A0_beh;
  reg I3, I2, I1, I0, Load, Clock, Clear;
  wire [3: 0] I_data = {I3, I2, I1, I0};
  wire [3: 0] A_beh = {A3_beh, A2_beh, A1_beh, A0_beh};

```

```

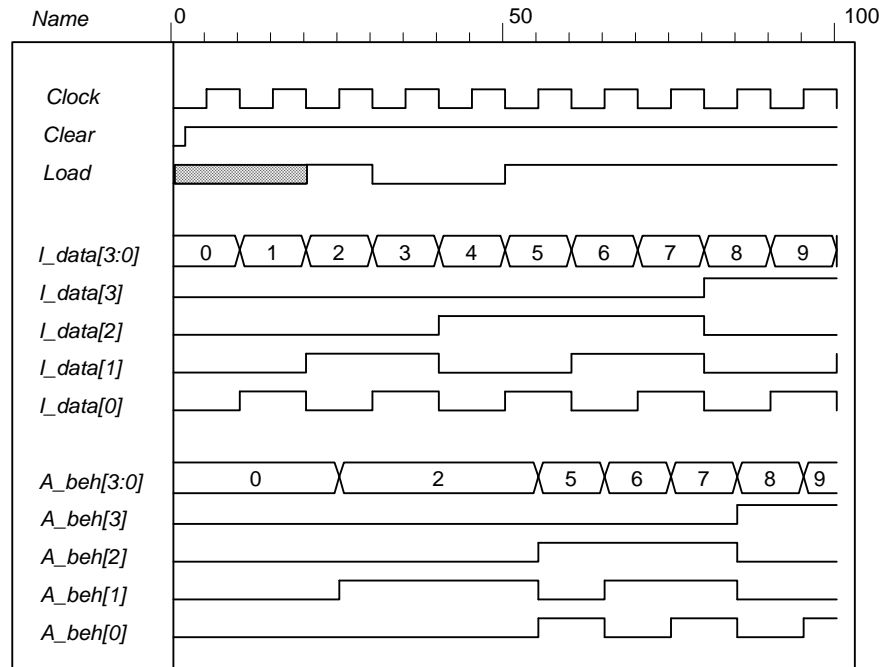
  Reg_4_bit_Load M0 (A3_beh, A2_beh, A1_beh, A0_beh, I3, I2, I1, I0, Load, Clock, Clear);

```

```

initial #100 $finish;
initial begin Clock = 0; forever #5 Clock = ~Clock; end
initial begin Clear = 0; #2 Clear = 1; end
integer K;
initial fork
  #20 Load = 1;
  #30 Load = 0;
  #50 Load = 1;
join
initial begin
  for (K = 0; K < 16; K = K + 1) begin {I3, I2, I1, I0} = K; #10 ; end
end
endmodule

```



(b)

```
module Reg_4_bit_Load_str (output A3, A2, A1, A0, input I3, I2, I1, I0, Load, Clock, Clear);
```

```
    wire y3, y2, y1, y0;
    mux_2 M3 (y3, A3, I3, Load);
    mux_2 M2 (y2, A2, I2, Load);
    mux_2 M1 (y1, A1, I1, Load);
    mux_2 M0 (y0, A0, I0, Load);
```

```
    DFF M3DFF (A3, y3, Clock, Clear);
    DFF M2DFF (A2, y2, Clock, Clear);
    DFF M1DFF (A1, y1, Clock, Clear);
    DFF M0DFF (A0, y0, Clock, Clear);
```

```
endmodule
```

```
module DFF(output reg Q, input D, clk, clear);
```

```
    always @ (posedge clk, posedge clear)
        if (clear == 0) Q <= 0; else Q <= D;
```

```
endmodule
```

```
module mux_2 (output y, input a, b, sel);
```

```
    assign y = sel ? a : b;
```

```
endmodule
```

```
module t_Reg_4_Load_str ();
```

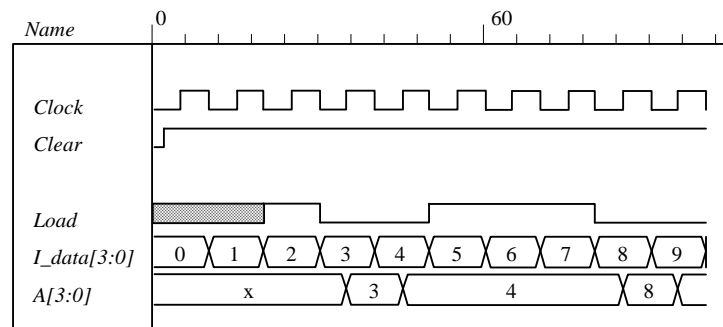
```
    wire A3, A2, A1, A0;
    reg I3, I2, I1, I0, Load, Clock, Clear;
    wire [3: 0] I_data = {I3, I2, I1, I0};
    wire [3: 0] A = {A3, A2, A1, A0};
```

```
    Reg_4_bit_Load_str M0 (A3, A2, A1, A0, I3, I2, I1, I0, Load, Clock, Clear);
```

```

initial #100 $finish;
initial begin Clock = 0; forever #5 Clock = ~Clock; end
initial begin Clear = 0; #2 Clear = 1; end
integer K;
initial fork
    #20 Load = 1;
    #30 Load = 0;
    #50 Load = 1;
    #80 Load = 0;
join
initial begin
    for (K = 0; K < 16; K = K + 1) begin {I3, I2, I1, I0} = K; #10 ; end
end
endmodule

```



(c)

```

module Reg_4_bit_Load_beh (output reg A3, A2, A1, A0, input I3, I2, I1, I0, Load, Clock, Clear);
    always @ (posedge Clock, negedge Clear)
        if (Clear == 0) {A3, A2, A1, A0} <= 4'b0;
        else if (Load) {A3, A2, A1, A0} <= {I3, I2, I1, I0};
endmodule

```

```

module Reg_4_bit_Load_str (output A3, A2, A1, A0, input I3, I2, I1, I0, Load, Clock, Clear);
    wire y3, y2, y1, y0;
    mux_2 M3 (y3, A3, I3, Load);
    mux_2 M2 (y2, A2, I2, Load);
    mux_2 M1 (y1, A1, I1, Load);
    mux_2 M0 (y0, A0, I0, Load);

```

```

    DFF M3DFF (A3, y3, Clock, Clear);
    DFF M2DFF (A2, y2, Clock, Clear);
    DFF M1DFF (A1, y1, Clock, Clear);
    DFF M0DFF (A0, y0, Clock, Clear);
endmodule

```

```

module DFF(output reg Q, input D, clk, clear);
    always @ (posedge clk, posedge clear)
        if (clear == 0) Q <= 0; else Q <= D;
endmodule

```

```

module mux_2 (output y, input a, b, sel);
    assign y = sel ? a: b;
endmodule

```

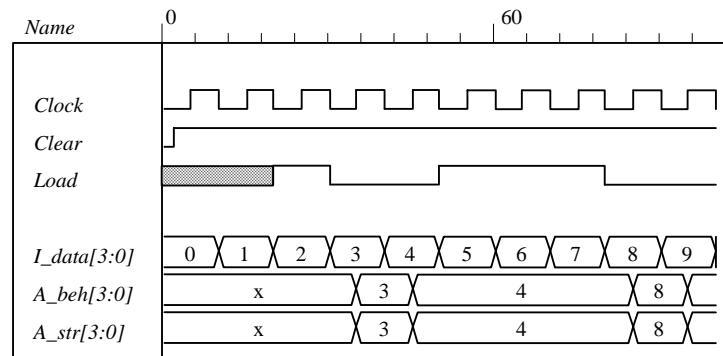
```

module t_Reg_4_Load_str ();
  wire A3_beh, A2_beh, A1_beh, A0_beh;
  wire A3_str, A2_str, A1_str, A0_str;
  reg I3, I2, I1, I0, Load, Clock, Clear;
  wire [3: 0] I_data, A_beh, A_str;
  assign I_data = {I3, I2, I1, I0};
  assign A_beh = {A3_beh, A2_beh, A1_beh, A0_beh};
  assign A_str = {A3_str, A2_str, A1_str, A0_str};

  Reg_4_bit_Load_str M0 (A3_beh, A2_beh, A1_beh, A0_beh, I3, I2, I1, I0, Load, Clock, Clear);
  Reg_4_bit_Load_str M1 (A3_str, A2_str, A1_str, A0_str, I3, I2, I1, I0, Load, Clock, Clear);

  initial #100 $finish;
  initial begin Clock = 0; forever #5 Clock = ~Clock; end
  initial begin Clear = 0; #2 Clear = 1; end
  integer K;
  initial fork
    #20 Load = 1;
    #30 Load = 0;
    #50 Load = 1;
    #80 Load = 0;
  join
  initial begin
    for (K = 0; K < 16; K = K + 1) begin {I3, I2, I1, I0} = K; #10 ; end
  end
endmodule

```



### 6.33

// Stimulus for testing the binary counter of Example 6-3

```

module testcounter;
  reg Count, Load, CLK, Clr;
  reg [3: 0] IN;
  wire C0;
  wire [3: 0] A;
  Binary_Counter_4_Par_Load M0 (
    A,      // Data output
    C0,     // Output carry
    IN,     // Data input
    Count,  // Active high to count
    Load,  // Active high to load
    CLK,    // Positive edge sensitive
    Clr     // Active low
  );

```

```

always
  #5 CLK = ~CLK;
initial
  begin
    Clr = 0;           // Clear de-asserted
    CLK = 1;           // Clock initialized high
    Load = 0; Count = 1; // Enable count
    #5 Clr = 1;         // Clears count, then counts for five cycles
    #50 Load = 1; IN = 4'b1100; // Count is set to 4'b1100 (1210)
    #10 Load = 0;
    #70 Count = 0;      // Count is deasserted at t = 135
    #20 $finish;        // Terminate simulation
  end
endmodule
// Four-bit binary counter with parallel load
// See Figure 6-14 and Table 6-6
module Binary_Counter_4_Par_Load (
  output reg [3:0] A_count, // Data output
  output C_out, // Output carry
  input [3:0] Data_in, // Data input
  input Count, // Active high to count
  Load, // Active high to load
  CLK, // Positive edge sensitive
  Clear // Active low
);

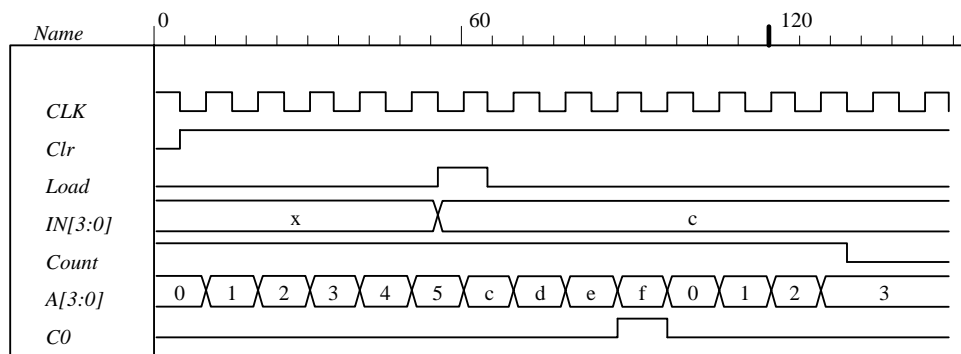
```

```

  assign C_out = Count & (~Load) & (A_count == 4'b1111);
  always @ (posedge CLK, negedge Clear)
    if (~Clear) A_count <= 4'b0000;
    else if (Load) A_count <= Data_in;
    else if (Count) A_count <= A_count + 1'b1;
    else A_count <= A_count; // redundant statement
endmodule

```

// Note: a preferred description if the clock is given by:  
 // **initial begin** CLK = 0; **forever** #5 CLK = ~CLK; **end**



## 6.34

```

module Shiftreg (SI, SO, CLK);
  input SI, CLK;
  output SO;
  reg [3:0] Q;
  assign SO = Q[0];
  always @ (posedge CLK)
    Q = {SI, Q[3:1]};
endmodule

```

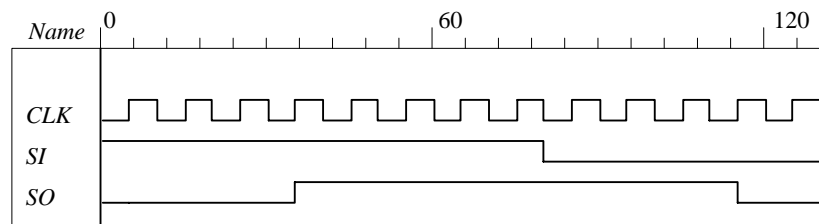


```
// Test plan
//
// Verify that data shift through the register
// Set SI =1 for 4 clock cycles
// Hold SI =1 for 4 clock cycles
// Set SI = 0 for 4 clock cycles
// Verify that data shifts out of the register correctly
```

```
module t_Shiftreg;
  reg SI, CLK;
  wire SO;

  Shiftreg M0 (SI, SO, CLK);

  initial #130 $finish;
  initial begin CLK = 0; forever #5 CLK = ~CLK; end
  initial fork
    SI = 1'b1;
    #80 SI = 0;
  join
endmodule
```



**6.35** (a) Note that *Load* has priority over *Clear*.

```
module Prob_6_35a (output [3: 0] A, input [3:0] I, input Load, Clock, Clear);
  Register_Cell R0 (A[0], I[0], Load, Clock, Clear);
  Register_Cell R1 (A[1], I[1], Load, Clock, Clear);
  Register_Cell R2 (A[2], I[2], Load, Clock, Clear);
  Register_Cell R3 (A[3], I[3], Load, Clock, Clear);
endmodule
```

```
module Register_Cell (output A, input I, Load, Clock, Clear);
  DFF M0 (A, D, Clock);
  not (Load_b, Load);
  not (w1, Load_b);
  not (Clear_b, Clear);
  and (w2, I, w1);
  and (w3, A, Load_b, Clear_b);
  or (D, w2, w3);
endmodule
```

```
module DFF (output reg Q, input D, clk);
  always @ (posedge clk) Q <= D;
endmodule
```

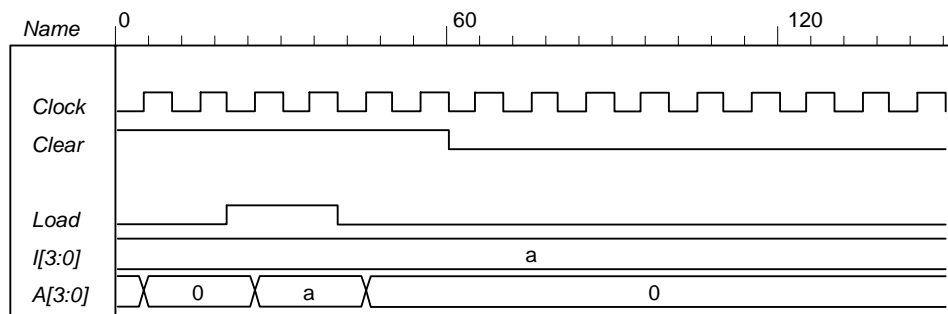
```
module t_Prob_6_35a ( );
```

```
  wire [3: 0] A;
  reg [3: 0] I;
  reg Clock, Clear, Load;
```

```

Prob_6_35a M0 ( A, I, Load, Clock, Clear);
initial #150 $finish;
initial begin Clock = 0; forever #5 Clock = ~Clock; end
initial fork
  I = 4'b1010; Clear = 1;
  #40 Clear = 0;
  Load = 0;
  #20 Load = 1;
  #40 Load = 0;
join
endmodule

```



(b) Note: The solution below replaces the solution given on the CD.

```

module Prob_6_35b (output reg [3: 0] A, input [3:0] I, input Load, Clock, Clear);
  always @ (posedge Clock)
    if (Load) A <= I;
    else if (Clear) A <= 4'b0;
    //else A <= A; // redundant statement
endmodule

```

```

module t_Prob_6_35b ( );

```

```

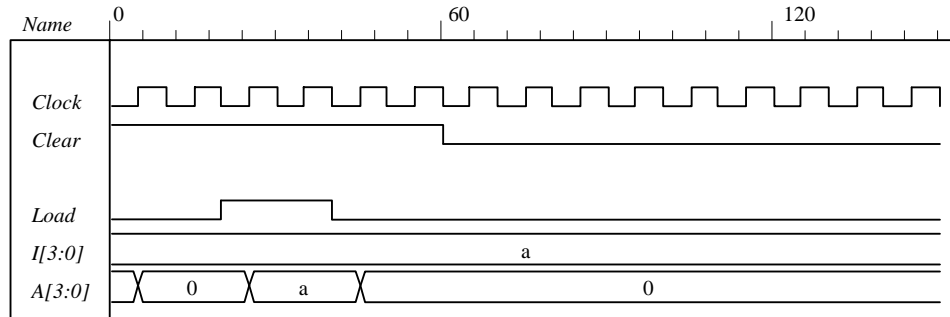
  wire [3: 0] A;
  reg [3: 0] I;
  reg Clock, Clear, Load;

```

```

Prob_6_35b M0 ( A, I, Load, Clock, Clear);
initial #150 $finish;
initial begin Clock = 0; forever #5 Clock = ~Clock; end
initial fork
  I = 4'b1010; Clear = 1;
  #60 Clear = 0;
  Load = 0;
  #20 Load = 1;
  #40 Load = 0;
join
endmodule

```



(c)

```

module Prob_6_35c (output [3: 0] A, input [3:0] I, input Shift, Load, Clock);
    Register_Cell R0 (A[0], I[0], A[1], Shift, Load, Clock);
    Register_Cell R1 (A[1], I[1], A[2], Shift, Load, Clock);
    Register_Cell R2 (A[2], I[2], A[3], Shift, Load, Clock);
    Register_Cell R3 (A[3], I[3], A[0], Shift, Load, Clock);
endmodule

```

```

module Register_Cell (output A, input I, Serial_in, Shift, Load, Clock);
    DFF M0 (A, D, Clock);
    not (Shift_b, Shift);
    not (Load_b, Load);
    and (w1, Shift, Serial_in);
    and (w2, Shift_b, Load, I);

    and (w3, A, Shift_b, Load_b);
    or (D, w1, w2, w3);
endmodule

```

```

module DFF (output reg Q, input D, clk);
always @ (posedge clk) Q <= D;
endmodule

```

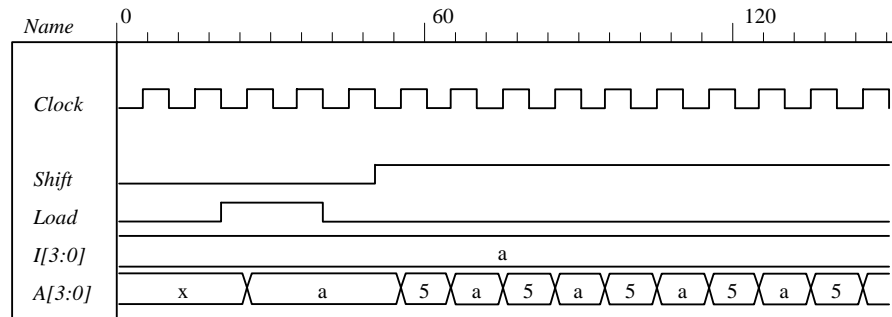
```

module t_Prob_6_35c ( );

    wire [3: 0] A;
    reg [3: 0] I;
    reg Clock, Shift, Load;

    Prob_6_35c M0 (A, I, Shift, Load, Clock);
    initial #150 $finish;
    initial begin Clock = 0; forever #5 Clock = ~Clock; end
    initial fork
        I = 4'b1010;
        Load = 0; Shift = 0;
        #20 Load = 1;
        #40 Load = 0;
        #50 Shift = 1;
    join
endmodule

```



(d)

```

module Prob_6_35d (output reg [3: 0] A, input [3:0] I, input Shift, Load, Clock, Clear);
always @ (posedge Clock)
    if (Shift) A <= {A[0], A[3:1]};
    else if (Load) A <= I;
    else if (Clear) A <= 4'b0;
    //else A <= A;           // redundant statement
endmodule

```

```

module t_Prob_6_35d ( );

```

```

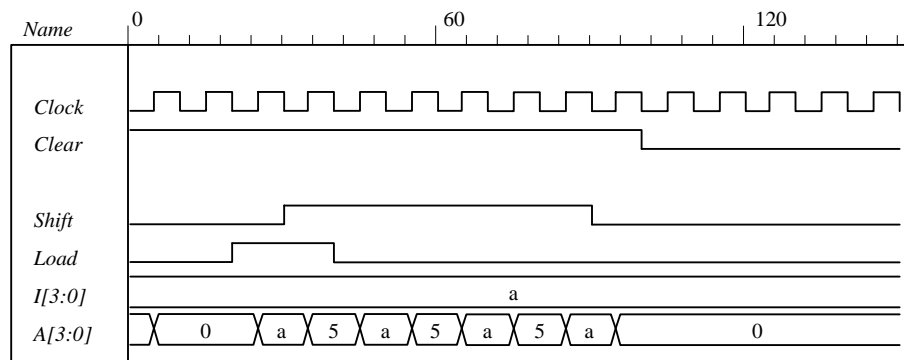
    wire [3: 0] A;
    reg [3: 0] I;
    reg Clock, Clear, Shift, Load;

```

```

    Prob_6_35d M0 ( A, I, Shift, Load, Clock, Clear);
    initial #150 $finish;
    initial begin Clock = 0; forever #5 Clock = ~Clock; end
    initial fork
        I = 4'b1010; Clear = 1;
        #100 Clear = 0;
        Load = 0;
        #20 Load = 1;
        #40 Load = 0;
        #30 Shift = 1;
        #90 Shift = 0;
    join
endmodule

```



(e)

```

module Shift_Register
  (output [3: 0] A_par, input [3: 0] I_par, input MSB_in, LSB_in, s1, s0, CLK, Clear);
  wire y3, y2, y1, y0;
  DFF D3 (A_par[3], y3, CLK, Clear);
  DFF D2 (A_par[2], y2, CLK, Clear);
  DFF D1 (A_par[1], y1, CLK, Clear);
  DFF D0 (A_par[0], y0, CLK, Clear);

  MUX_4x1 M3 (y3, I_par[3], A_par[2], MSB_in, A_par[3], s1, s0);
  MUX_4x1 M2 (y2, I_par[2], A_par[1], A_par[3], A_par[2], s1, s0);
  MUX_4x1 M1 (y1, I_par[1], A_par[0], A_par[2], A_par[1], s1, s0);
  MUX_4x1 M0 (y0, I_par[0], LSB_in, A_par[1], A_par[0], s1, s0);
endmodule

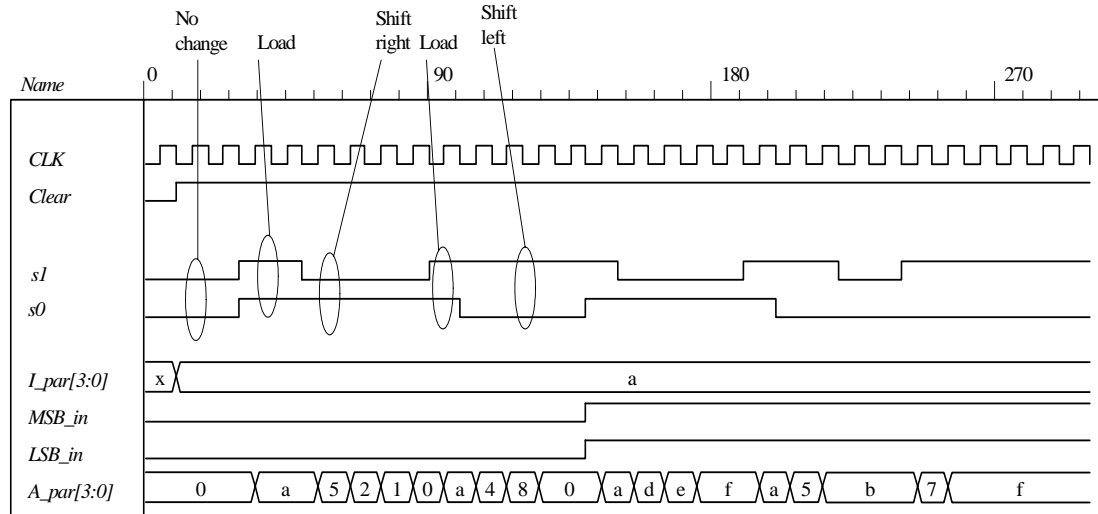
module MUX_4x1 (output reg y, input I3, I2, I1, I0, s1, s0);
  always @ (I3, I2, I1, I0, s1, s0)
    case ({s1, s0})
      2'b11: y = I3;
      2'b10: y = I2;
      2'b01: y = I1;
      2'b00: y = I0;
    endcase
endmodule

module DFF (output reg Q, input D, clk, reset_b);
  always @ (posedge clk, negedge reset_b) if (reset_b == 0) Q <= 0; else Q <= D;
endmodule

module t_Shift_Register ( );
  wire [3: 0] A_par;
  reg [3: 0] I_par;
  reg MSB_in, LSB_in, s1, s0, CLK, Clear;

  Shift_Register M_SR (A_par, I_par, MSB_in, LSB_in, s1, s0, CLK, Clear);
  initial #300 $finish;
  initial begin CLK = 0; forever #5 CLK = ~CLK; end
  initial fork
    MSB_in = 0; LSB_in = 0;
    Clear = 0;           // Active-low reset
    s1 = 0; s0 = 0;      // No change
    #10 Clear = 1;
    #10 I_par = 4'hA;
    #30 begin s1 = 1; s0 = 1; end // 00: load I_par into A_par
    #50 s1 = 0;           // 01: shift right (1010 to 0101 to 0010 to 0001 to 0000)
    #90 begin s1 = 1; s0 = 1; end // 11: reload A with 1010
    #100 s0 = 0;          // 10: shift left (1010 to 0100 to 1000 to 000)
    #140 begin s1 = 1; s0 = 1; MSB_in = 1; LSB_in = 1; end // Repeat with MSB and LSB
    #150 s1 = 0;
    #190 begin s1 = 1; s0 = 1; end // reload with A = 1010
    #200 s0 = 0;          // Shift left
    #220 s1 = 0;          // Pause
    #240 s1 = 1;          // Shift left
  join
endmodule

```



(f)

```
module Shift_Register_BEH
(output [3: 0] A_par, input [3: 0] I_par, input MSB_in, LSB_in, s1, s0, CLK, Clear);
```

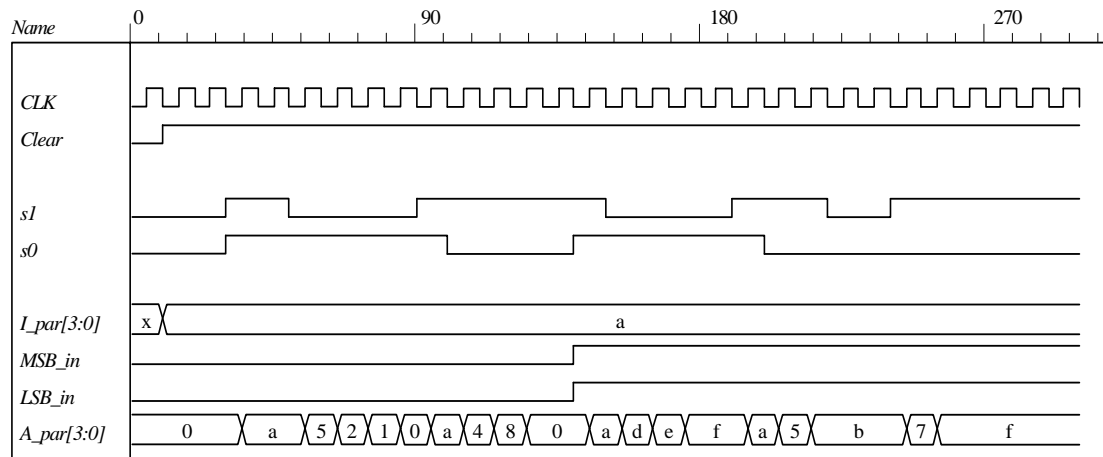
```
always @ (posedge CLK, negedge Clear) if (Clear == 0) A_par <= 4'b0;
else case ({s1, s0})
2'b11: A_par <= I_par;
2'b01: A_par <= {MSB_in, A_par[3: 1]};
2'b10: A_par <= {A_par[2: 0], LSB_in};
2'b00: A_par <= A_par;
```

```
endcase
endmodule
```

```
module t_Shift_Register ( );
wire [3: 0] A_par;
reg [3: 0] I_par;
reg MSB_in, LSB_in, s1, s0, CLK, Clear;
```

```
Shift_Register_BEH M_SR( A_par, I_par, MSB_in, LSB_in, s1, s0, CLK, Clear);
initial #300 $finish;
initial begin CLK = 0; forever #5 CLK = ~CLK; end
initial fork
MSB_in = 0; LSB_in = 0;
Clear = 0; // Active-low reset
s1 = 0; s0 = 0; // No change
#10 Clear = 1;
#10 I_par = 4'hA;
#30 begin s1 = 1; s0 = 1; end // 00: load I_par into A_par
#50 s1 = 0; // 01: shift right (1010 to 0101 to 0010 to 0001 to 0000)
#90 begin s1 = 1; s0 = 1; end // 11: reload A with 1010
#100 s0 = 0; // 10: shift left (1010 to 0100 to 1000 to 000)
#140 begin s1 = 1; s0 = 1; MSB_in = 1; LSB_in = 1; end // Repeat with MSB and LSB
#150 s1 = 0;
#190 begin s1 = 1; s0 = 1; end // reload with A = 1010
#200 s0 = 0; // Shift left
#220 s1 = 0; // Pause
#240 s1 = 1; // Shift left
```

```
join
endmodule
```



(g)

```

module Ripple_Counter_4bit (output [3: 0] A, input Count, reset_b);
    reg A0, A1, A2, A3;
    assign A = {A3, A2, A1, A0};
    always @ (negedge Count, negedge reset_b)
        if (reset_b == 0) A0 <= 0; else A0 <= ~A0;

    always @ (negedge A0, negedge reset_b)
        if (reset_b == 0) A1 <= 0; else A1 <= ~A1;

    always @ (negedge A1, negedge reset_b)
        if (reset_b == 0) A2 <= 0; else A2 <= ~A2;

    always @ (negedge A2, negedge reset_b)
        if (reset_b == 0) A3 <= 0; else A3 <= ~A3;
endmodule

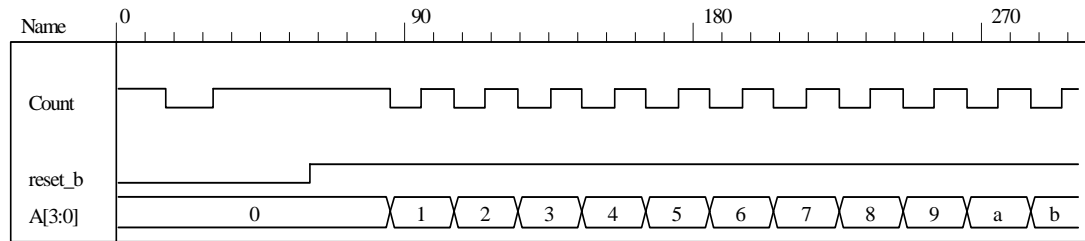
module t_Ripple_Counter_4bit ();
    wire [3: 0] A;
    reg Count, reset_b;

    Ripple_Counter_4bit M0 (A, Count, reset_b);

    initial #300 $finish;
    initial fork
        reset_b = 0;           // Active-low reset
        #60 reset_b = 1;

        Count = 1;
        #15 Count = 0;
        #30 Count = 1;
        #85 begin Count = 0; forever #10 Count = ~Count; end
    join
endmodule

```



- (h) Note: This version of the solution situates the data shift registers in the test bench.

```
module Serial_Subtractor (output SO, input SI_A, SI_B, shift_control, clock, reset_b);
// See Fig. 6.5 and Problem 6.9a (2s complement serial subtractor)
reg [1: 0] sum;
wire mem = sum[1];
assign SO = sum[0];
```

```
always @ (posedge clock, negedge reset_b)
if (reset_b == 0) begin
sum <= 2'b10;
end
else if (shift_control) begin
sum <= SI_A + (!SI_B) + sum[1];
end
endmodule
```

```
module t_Serial_Subtractor ();
wire SI_A, SI_B;
reg shift_control, clock, reset_b;
```

```
Serial_Subtractor M0 (SO, SI_A, SI_B, shift_control, clock, reset_b);
```

```
initial #250 $finish;
initial begin clock = 0; forever #5 clock = ~clock; end
initial fork
shift_control = 0;
#10 reset_b = 0;
#20 reset_b = 1;
#22 shift_control = 1;
#105 shift_control = 0;
#112 reset_b = 0;
#114 reset_b = 1;
#122 shift_control = 1;
#205 shift_control = 0;
join
reg [7: 0] A, B, SO_reg;
wire s7;
assign s7 = SO_reg[7];
assign SI_A = A[0];
assign SI_B = B[0];
wire SI_B_bar = ~SI_B;
initial fork
A = 8'h5A;
B = 8'h0A;
#122 A = 8'h0A;
#122 B = 8'h5A;
join
```



```
always @ (negedge clock, negedge reset_b)
  if (reset_b == 0) SO_reg <= 0;
  else if (shift_control == 1) begin
    SO_reg <= {SO, SO_reg[7: 1]};
    A <= A >> 1;
    B <= B >> 1;
  end
  wire negative = !M0.sum[1];
  wire [7: 0] magnitude = (!negative)? SO_reg: 1'b1 + ~SO_reg;
endmodule
```

Simulation results are shown for  $5Ah - 0Ah = 50h = 80d$  and  $0Ah - 5Ah = -80$ . The magnitude of the result is also shown.



(i) See Prob. 6.35h.

(j)

```

module Serial_Twos_Comp (output y, input [7: 0] data, input load, shift_control, Clock, reset_b);
  reg [7: 0] SReg;
  reg Q;
  wire SO = SReg [0];
  assign y = SO ^ Q;
  always @ (posedge Clock, negedge reset_b)
  if (reset_b == 0) begin
    SReg <= 0;
    Q <= 0;
  end
  else begin
    if (load) SReg = data;
    else if (shift_control) begin
      Q <= Q | SO;
      SReg <= {y, SReg[7: 1]};
    end
  end
endmodule

module t_Serial_Twos_Comp ();
  wire y;
  reg [7: 0] data;
  reg load, shift_control, Clock, reset_b;

  Serial_Twos_Comp M0 (y, data, load, shift_control, Clock, reset_b);

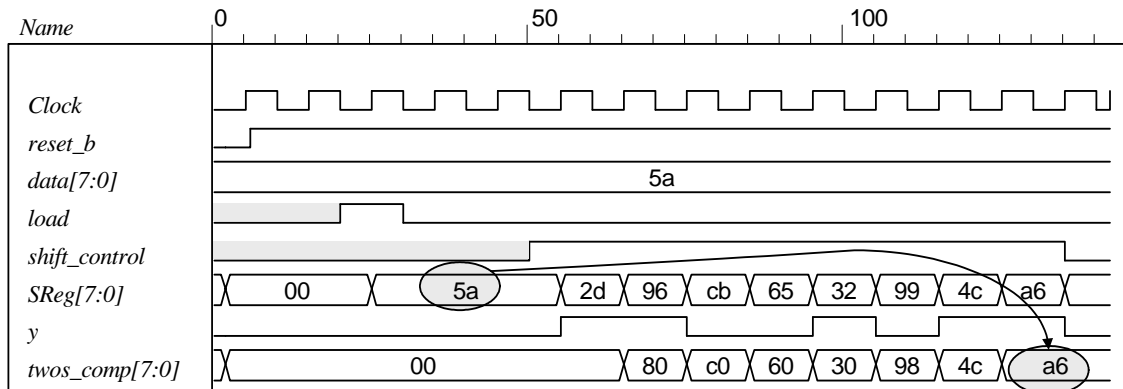
  reg [7: 0] twos_comp;

  always @ (posedge Clock, negedge reset_b)
  if (reset_b == 0) twos_comp <= 0;
  else if (shift_control && !load) twos_comp <= {y, twos_comp[7: 1]};

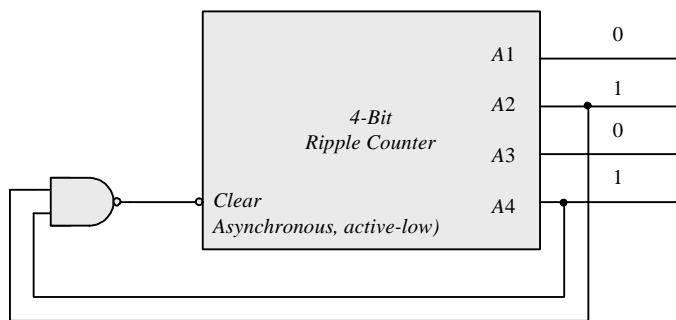
  initial #200 $finish;
  initial begin Clock = 0; forever #5 Clock = ~Clock; end
  initial begin #2 reset_b = 0; #4 reset_b = 1; end

  initial fork
    data = 8'h5A;
    #20 load = 1;
    #30 load = 0;
    #50 shift_control = 1;
    #50 begin repeat (9) @ (posedge Clock) ;
      shift_control = 0;
    end
  join
endmodule

```



(k) From the solution to Problem 6.13:



```
module Prob_6_35k_BCD_Counter (output A1, A2, A3, A4, input clk, reset_b);
    wire {A1, A2, A3, A4} = A;
    nand (Clear, A2, A4);
    Ripple_Counter_4bit M0 (A, Clear, reset_b);
endmodule
```

```
module Ripple_Counter_4bit (output [3: 0] A, input Count, reset_b);
    reg A0, A1, A2, A3;
    assign A = {A3, A2, A1, A0};
    always @ (negedge Count, negedge reset_b)
        if (reset_b == 0) A0 <= 0; else A0 <= ~A0;
    always @ (negedge A0, negedge reset_b)
        if (reset_b == 0) A1 <= 0; else A1 <= ~A1;
    always @ (negedge A1, negedge reset_b)
        if (reset_b == 0) A2 <= 0; else A2 <= ~A2;
    always @ (negedge A2, negedge reset_b)
        if (reset_b == 0) A3 <= 0; else A3 <= ~A3;
endmodule
module t_Prob_6_35k_BCD_Counter ();
    wire [3: 0] A;
    reg Count, reset_b;
```

```
    Prob_6_35k_BCD_Counter M0 (A1, A2, A3, A4, reset_b);
    initial #300 $finish;
    initial fork
        reset_b = 0;          // Active-low reset
        #60 reset_b = 1;
    /*
    Count = 1;
    #15 Count = 0;
    #30 Count = 1;
```

```
#85 begin Count = 0; forever #10 Count = ~Count; end*/
join
endmodule
```

(I)

```
module Prob_6_35l_Up_Dwn_Beh (output reg [3: 0] A, input CLK, Up, Down, reset_b);
```

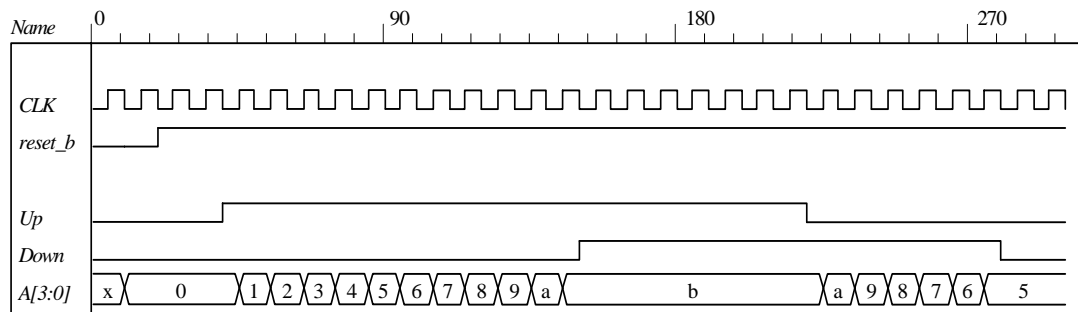
```
always @ (posedge CLK, negedge reset_b)
if (reset_b ==0) A <= 4'b0000;
else case ({Up, Down})
2'b10: A <= A + 4'b0001; // Up
2'b01: A <= A - 4'b0001; // Down
default: A <= A; // Suspend (Redundant statement)
endcase
endmodule
```

```
module t_Prob_6_35l_Up_Dwn_Beh ();
```

```
wire [3: 0] A;
reg CLK, Up, Down, reset_b;
```

```
Prob_6_35l_Up_Dwn_Beh M0 (A, CLK, Up, Down, reset_b);
```

```
initial #300 $finish;
initial begin CLK = 0; forever #5 CLK = ~CLK; end
initial fork
Down = 0; Up= 0;
#10 reset_b = 0;
#20 reset_b = 1;
#40 Up = 1;
#150 Down = 1;
#220 Up = 0;
#280 Down = 0;
join
endmodule
```



6.36 (a)

```
// See Fig. 6.13., 4-bit Up-Down Binary Counter
```

```
module Prob_6_36_Up_Dwn_Beh (output reg [3: 0] A, input CLK, Up, Down, reset_b);
```

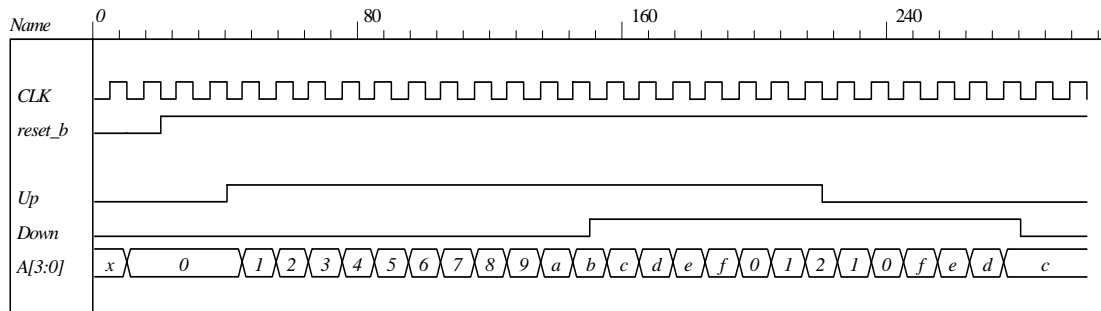
```
always @ (posedge CLK, negedge reset_b)
if (reset_b ==0) A <= 4'b0000;
else if (Up) A <= A + 4'b0001;
else if (Down) A <= A - 4'b0001;
endmodule
```

```
module t_Prob_6_36_Up_Dwn_Beh ();
```

```
wire [3: 0] A;
reg CLK, Up, Down, reset_b;
```

Prob\_6\_36\_Up\_Dwn\_Beh M0 (A, CLK, Up, Down, reset\_b);

```
initial #300 $finish;
initial begin CLK = 0; forever #5 CLK = ~CLK; end
initial fork
    Down = 0; Up = 0;
    #10 reset_b = 0;
    #20 reset_b = 1;
    #40 Up = 1;
    #150 Down = 1;
    #220 Up = 0;
    #280 Down = 0;
join
endmodule
```



(b)

```
module Prob_6_36_Up_Dwn_Str (output [3: 0] A, input CLK, Up, Down, reset_b);
    wire Down_3, Up_3, Down_2, Up_2, Down_1, Up_1;
    wire A_0b, A_1b, A_2b, A_3b;
```

```
    stage_register SR3 (A[3], A_3b, Down_3, Up_3, Down_2, Up_2, A[2], A_2b, CLK, reset_b);
    stage_register SR2 (A[2], A_2b, Down_2, Up_2, Down_1, Up_1, A[1], A_1b, CLK, reset_b);
    stage_register SR1 (A[1], A_1b, Down_1, Up_1, Down_not_Up, Up, A[0], A_0b, CLK, reset_b);
    not (Up_b, Up);
    and (Down_not_Up, Down, Up_b);
    or (T, Up, Down_not_Up);
    Toggle_flop TF0 (A[0], A_0b, T, CLK, reset_b);
endmodule
```

```
module stage_register (output A, A_b, Down_not_Up_out, Up_out, input Down_not_Up, Up, A_in,
    A_in_b, CLK, reset_b);
```

```
    Toggle_flop T0 (A, A_b, T, CLK, reset_b);
    or (T, Down_not_Up_out, Up_out);
    and (Down_not_Up_out, Down_not_Up, A_in_b);
    and (Up_out, Up, A_in);
endmodule
```

```
module Toggle_flop (output reg Q, output Q_b, input T, CLK, reset_b);
    always @ (posedge CLK, negedge reset_b) if (reset_b == 0) Q <= 0; else Q <= Q ^ T;
    assign Q_b = ~Q;
```

```
endmodule
```

```
module t_Prob_6_36_Up_Dwn_Str ();
    wire [3: 0] A;
    reg CLK, Up, Down, reset_b;
```

```

wire T3 = M0.SR3.T;
wire T2 = M0.SR2.T;
wire T1 = M0.SR1.T;
wire T0 = M0.T;

```

```

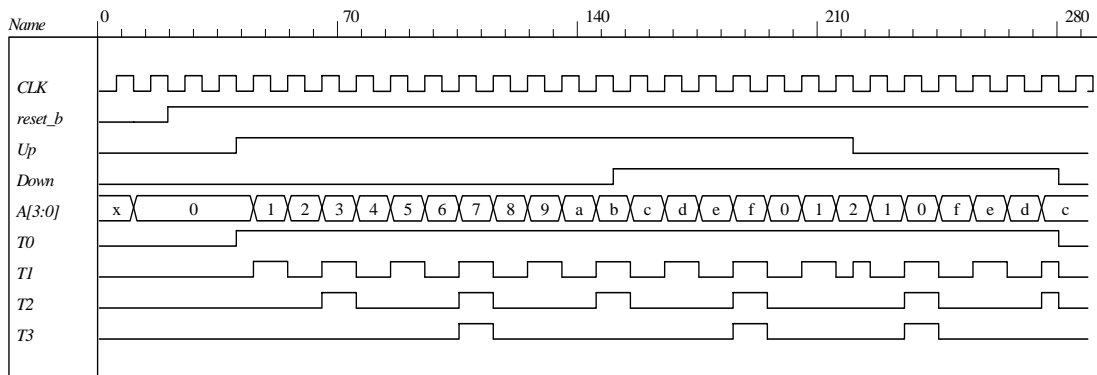
Prob_6_36_Up_Dwn_Str M0 (A, CLK, Up, Down, reset_b);

```

```

initial #150 $finish;
initial begin CLK = 0; forever #5 CLK = ~CLK; end
initial fork
    Down = 0; Up = 0;
    #10 reset_b = 0;
    #20 reset_b = 1;
    #50 Up = 1;
    #140 Down = 1;
    #120 Up = 0;
    #140 Down = 0;
join
endmodule

```



### 6.37

```

module Counter_if (output reg [3: 0] Count, input clock, reset);
always @ (posedge clock , posedge reset)
    if (reset)Count <= 0;
    else if (Count == 0) Count <= 1;
    else if (Count == 1) Count <= 3;    // Default interpretation is decimal
    else if (Count == 3) Count <= 7;
    else if (Count == 4) Count <= 0;
    else if (Count == 6) Count <= 4;
    else if (Count == 7) Count <= 6;
    else Count <= 0;
endmodule

```

```

module Counter_case (output reg [3: 0] Count, input clock, reset);
always @ (posedge clock , posedge reset)
    if (reset)Count <= 0;
    else begin
        Count <= 0;
        case (Count)
            0:    Count <= 1;
            1:    Count <= 3;
            3:    Count <= 7;
            4:    Count <= 0;
            6:    Count <= 4;
            7:    Count <= 6;
            default:    Count <= 0;
        endcase
    end
endmodule

```

```

end
endmodule

module Counter_FSM (output reg [3: 0] Count, input clock, reset);
    reg [2: 0] state, next_state;
    parameter s0 = 0, s1 = 1, s2 = 2, s3 = 3, s4 = 4, s5 = 5, s6 = 6, s7 = 7;

    always @ (posedge clock , posedge reset)
        if (reset) state <= s0; else state <= next_state;

    always @ (state) begin
        Count = 0;
        case (state)
            s0:    begin next_state = s1; Count = 0; end
            s1:    begin next_state = s2; Count = 1; end
            s2:    begin next_state = s3; Count = 3; end
            s3:    begin next_state = s4; Count = 7; end
            s4:    begin next_state = s5; Count = 6; end
            s5:    begin next_state = s6; Count = 4; end
            default: begin next_state = s0; Count = 0; end
        endcase
    end
endmodule

```

6.38 (a)

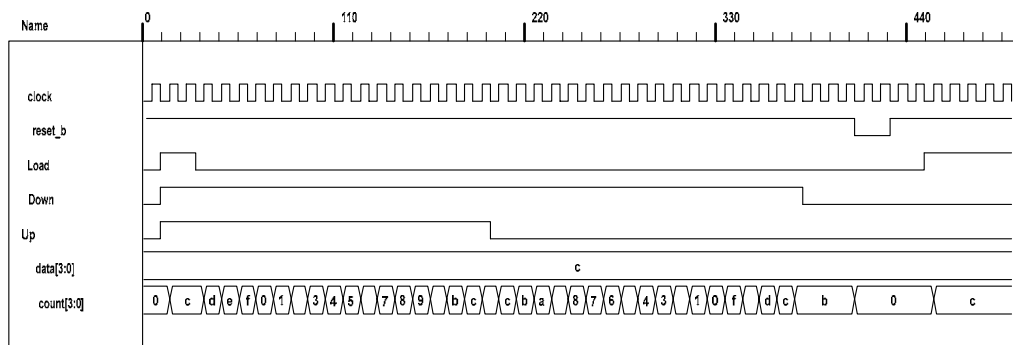
```

module Prob_6_38a_Updown (OUT, Up, Down, Load, IN, CLK); // Verilog 1995
    output [3: 0] OUT;
    input [3: 0] IN;
    input Up, Down, Load, CLK;
    reg [3:0] OUT;

    always @ (posedge CLK)
        if (Load) OUT <= IN;
        else if (Up) OUT <= OUT + 4'b0001;
        else if (Down) OUT <= OUT - 4'b0001;
        else OUT <= OUT;
endmodule

module updown ( // Verilog 2001, 2005
    output reg[3: 0] OUT,
    input [3: 0] IN,
    input Up, Down, Load, CLK
);

```



(b)



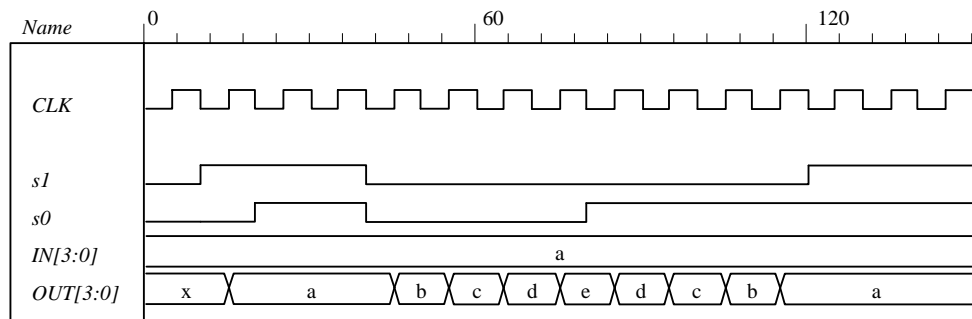
```
module Prob_6_38b_Updown (output reg [3: 0] OUT, input [3: 0] IN, input s1, s0, CLK);
```

```
    always @ (posedge CLK)
    case ({s1, s0})
        2'b00: OUT <= OUT + 4'b0001;
        2'b01: OUT <= OUT - 4'b0001;
        2'b10: OUT <= IN;
        2'b11: OUT <= OUT;
    endcase
endmodule
```

```
module t_Prob_6_38b_Updown ();
    wire [3: 0] OUT;
    reg [3: 0] IN;
    reg s1, s0, CLK;
    Prob_6_38b_Updown M0 (OUT, IN, s1, s0, CLK);

    initial #150 $finish;
    initial begin CLK = 0; forever #5 CLK = ~CLK; end
    initial fork
        IN = 4'b1010;

    #10 begin s1 = 1; s0 = 0; end    // Load IN
    #20 begin s1 = 1; s0 = 1; end    // no change
    #40 begin s1 = 0; s0 = 0; end    // UP;
    #80 begin s1 = 0; s0 = 1; end    // DOWN
    #120 begin s1 = 1; s0 = 1; end
    join
endmodule
```



### 6.39

```
module Prob_6_39_Counter_BEH (output reg [2: 0] Count, input Clock, reset_b);
    always @ (posedge Clock, negedge reset_b) if (reset_b == 0) Count <= 0;
    else case (Count)
        0: Count <= 1;
        1: Count <= 2;
        2: Count <= 4;
        4: Count <= 5;
        5: Count <= 6;
        6: Count <= 0;
    endcase
endmodule
```

```
module Prob_6_39_Counter_STR (output [2: 0] Count, input Clock, reset_b);
    supply1 PWR;
    wire Count_1_b = ~Count[1];
```

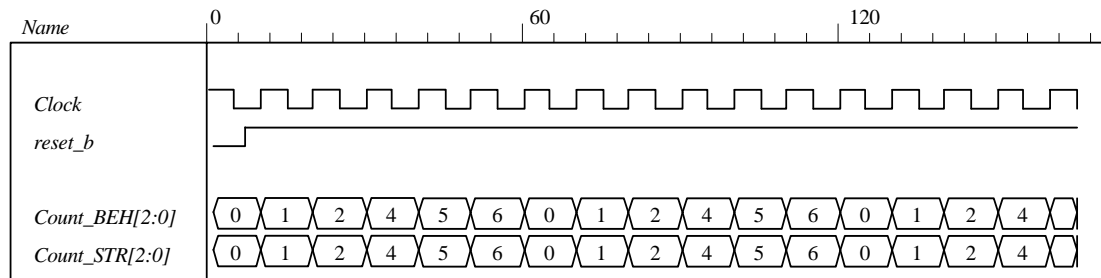
```
JK_FF M2 (Count[2], Count[1], Count[1], Clock, reset_b);
JK_FF M1 (Count[1], Count[0], PWR, Clock, reset_b);
JK_FF M0 (Count[0], Count_1_b, PWR, Clock, reset_b);
endmodule
```

```
module JK_FF (output reg Q, input J, K, clk, reset_b);
  always @ (posedge clk, negedge reset_b) if (reset_b == 0) Q <= 0; else
  case ({J,K})
    2'b00: Q <= Q;
    2'b01: Q <= 0;
    2'b10: Q <= 1;
    2'b11: Q <= ~Q;
  endcase
endmodule
```

```
module t_Prob_6_39_Counter ();
  wire [2: 0] Count_BEH, Count_STR;
  reg Clock, reset_b;

  Prob_6_39_Counter_BEH M0_BEH (Count_STR, Clock, reset_b);
  Prob_6_39_Counter_STR M0_STR (Count_BEH, Clock, reset_b);

  initial #250 $finish;
  initial fork #1 reset_b = 0; #7 reset_b = 1; join
  initial begin Clock = 1; forever #5 Clock = ~Clock; end
endmodule
```



#### 6.40

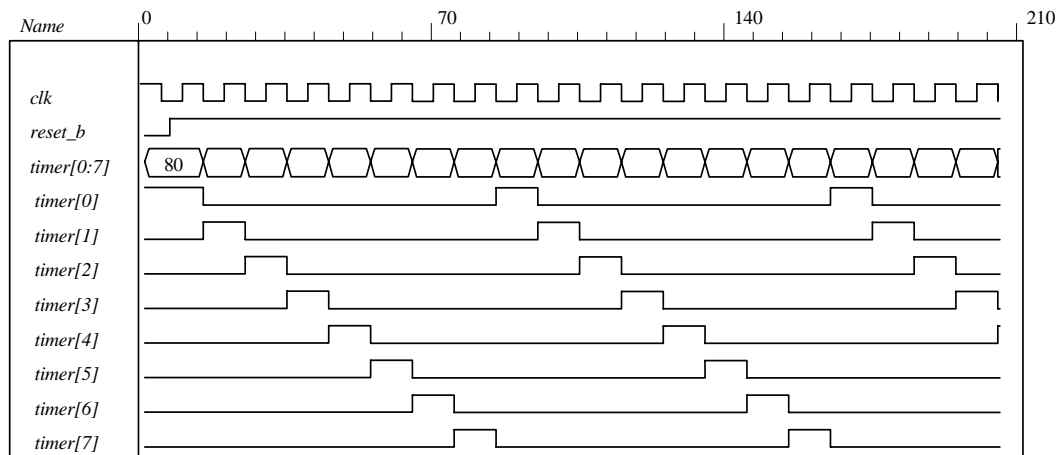
```
module Prob_6_40 (output reg [0: 7] timer, input clk, reset_b);
```

```
  always @ (negedge clk, negedge reset_b)
  if (reset_b == 0) timer <= 8'b1000_0000; else
  case (timer)
    8'b1000_0000: timer <= 8'b0100_0000;
    8'b0100_0000: timer <= 8'b0010_0000;
    8'b0010_0000: timer <= 8'b0001_0000;
    8'b0001_0000: timer <= 8'b0000_1000;
    8'b0000_1000: timer <= 8'b0000_0100;
    8'b0000_0100: timer <= 8'b0000_0010;
    8'b0000_0010: timer <= 8'b0000_0001;
    8'b0000_0001: timer <= 8'b1000_0000;
    default:      timer <= 8'b1000_0000;
  endcase
endmodule
```

```
module t_Prob_6_40 ();
  wire [0: 7] timer;
  reg clk, reset_b;
```

```
Prob_6_40 M0 (timer, clk, reset_b);
```

```
initial #250 $finish;
initial fork #1 reset_b = 0; #7 reset_b = 1; join
initial begin clk = 1; forever #5 clk = ~clk; end
endmodule
```



#### 6.41

```
module Prob_6_41_Switched_Tail_Johnson_Counter (output [0: 3] Count, input CLK, reset_b);
wire Q_0b, Q_1b, Q_2b, Q_3b;
```

```
DFF M3 (Count[3], Q_3b, Count[2], CLK, reset_b);
DFF M2 (Count[2], Q_2b, Count[1], CLK, reset_b);
DFF M1 (Count[1], Q_1b, Count[0], CLK, reset_b);
DFF M0 (Count[0], Q_0b, Q_3b, CLK, reset_b);
```

```
endmodule
```

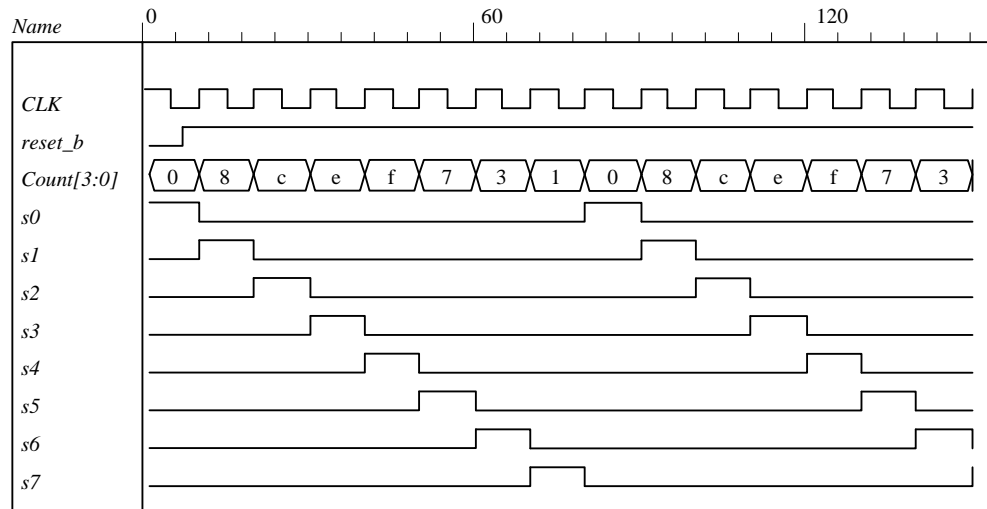
```
module DFF (output reg Q, output Q_b, input D, clk, reset_b);
assign Q_b = ~Q;
always @ (posedge clk, negedge reset_b) if (reset_b == 0) Q <= 0; else Q <= D;
endmodule
```

```
module t_Prob_6_41_Switched_Tail_Johnson_Counter ();
```

```
wire [3: 0] Count;
reg CLK, reset_b;
wire s0 = ~ M0.Count[0] && ~M0.Count[3];
wire s1 = M0.Count[0] && ~M0.Count[1];
wire s2 = M0.Count[1] && ~M0.Count[2];
wire s3 = M0.Count[2] && ~M0.Count[3];
wire s4 = M0.Count[0] && M0.Count[3];
wire s5 = ~ M0.Count[0] && M0.Count[1];
wire s6 = ~ M0.Count[1] && M0.Count[2];
wire s7 = ~ M0.Count[2] && M0.Count[3];
```

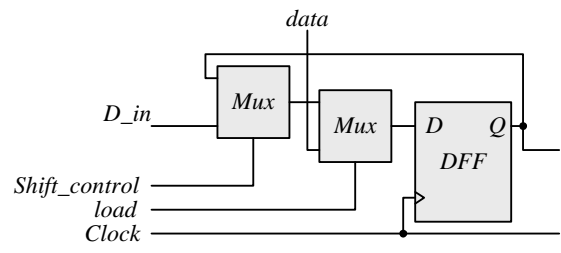
```
Prob_6_41_Switched_Tail_Johnson_Counter M0 (Count, CLK, reset_b);
```

```
initial #150 $finish;
initial fork #1 reset_b = 0; #7 reset_b = 1; join
initial begin CLK = 1; forever #5 CLK = ~CLK; end
endmodule
```



**6.42** Because A is a register variable, it retains whatever value has been assigned to it until a new value is assigned. Therefore, the statement  $A \leq A$  has the same effect as if the statement was omitted.

**6.43**



```
module Prob_6_43_Str (output SO, input [7: 0] data, input load, Shift_control, Clock, reset_b);
    supply0 gnd;
    wire SO_A;
```

```
    Shift_with_Load M_A (SO_A, SO_A, data, load, Shift_control, Clock, reset_b);
    Shift_with_Load M_B (SO, SO_A, data, gnd, Shift_control, Clock, reset_b);
```

```
endmodule
```

```
module Shift_with_Load (output SO, input D_in, input [7: 0] data, input load, select, Clock, reset_b);
    wire [7: 0] Q;
    assign SO = Q[0];
    SR_cell M7 (Q[7], D_in, data[7], load, select, Clock, reset_b);
    SR_cell M6 (Q[6], Q[7], data[6], load, select, Clock, reset_b);
    SR_cell M5 (Q[5], Q[6], data[5], load, select, Clock, reset_b);
    SR_cell M4 (Q[4], Q[5], data[4], load, select, Clock, reset_b);
    SR_cell M3 (Q[3], Q[4], data[3], load, select, Clock, reset_b);
    SR_cell M2 (Q[2], Q[3], data[2], load, select, Clock, reset_b);
    SR_cell M1 (Q[1], Q[2], data[1], load, select, Clock, reset_b);
    SR_cell M0 (Q[0], Q[1], data[0], load, select, Clock, reset_b);
```

**endmodule**

**module** SR\_cell (**output** Q, **input** D, data, load, select, Clock, reset\_b);

**wire** y;

DFF\_with\_load M0 (Q, y, data, load, Clock, reset\_b);

Mux\_2 M1 (y, Q, D, select);

**endmodule**

**module** DFF\_with\_load (**output reg** Q, **input** D, data, load, Clock, reset\_b);

**always @ (posedge Clock, negedge reset\_b)**

**if** (reset\_b == 0) Q <= 0; **else if** (load) Q <= data; **else** Q <= D;

**endmodule**

**module** Mux\_2 (**output reg** y, **input** a, b, sel);

**always @ (a, b, sel) if** (sel ==1) y = b; **else** y = a;

**endmodule**

**module** t\_Fig\_6\_4\_Str ();

**wire** SO;

**reg** load, Shift\_control, Clock, reset\_b;

**reg** [7: 0] data, Serial\_Data;

Prob\_6\_43\_Str M0 (SO, data, load, Shift\_control, Clock, reset\_b);

**always @ (posedge Clock, negedge reset\_b)**

**if** (reset\_b == 0) Serial\_Data <= 0;

**else if** (Shift\_control ) Serial\_Data <= {M0.SO\_A, Serial\_Data [7: 1]};

**initial** #200 \$finish;

**initial begin** Clock = 0; **forever** #5 Clock = ~Clock; **end**

**initial begin** #2 reset\_b = 0; #4 reset\_b = 1; **end**

**initial fork**

data = 8'h5A;

#20 load = 1;

#30 load = 0;

#50 Shift\_control = 1;

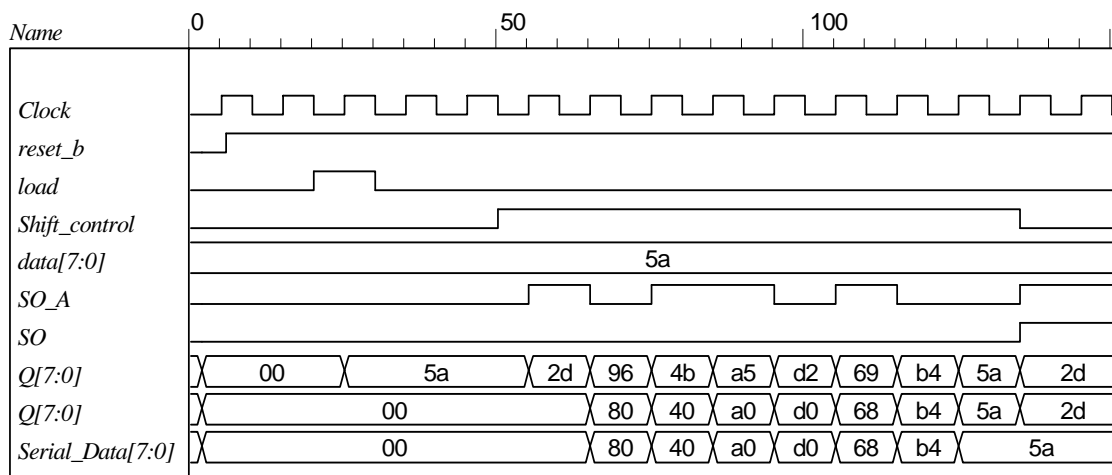
#50 **begin** repeat (9) @ (posedge Clock) ;

Shift\_control = 0;

**end**

**join**

**endmodule**



Alternative: a behavioral model for synthesis is given below. The behavioral description implies the need for a mux at the input to a D-type flip-flop.

```

module Fig_6_4_Beh (output SO, input [7: 0] data, input load, Shift_control, Clock, reset_b);
  reg [7: 0] Shift_Reg_A, Shift_Reg_B;
  assign SO = Shift_Reg_B[0];
  always @ (posedge Clock, negedge reset_b)
    if (reset_b == 0) begin
      Shift_Reg_A <= 0;
      Shift_Reg_B <= 0;
    end
    else if (load) Shift_Reg_A <= data;
    else if (Shift_control) begin
      Shift_Reg_A <= { Shift_Reg_A[0], Shift_Reg_A[7: 1]};
      Shift_Reg_B <= {Shift_Reg_A[0], Shift_Reg_B[7: 1]};
    end

```

**endmodule**

```

module t_Fig_6_4_Beh ();
  wire SO;
  reg load, Shift_control, Clock, reset_b;
  reg [7: 0] data, Serial_Data;

```

Fig\_6\_4\_Beh M0 (SO, data, load, Shift\_control, Clock, reset\_b);

```

always @ (posedge Clock, negedge reset_b)
  if (reset_b == 0) Serial_Data <= 0;
  else if (Shift_control ) Serial_Data <= {M0.Shift_Reg_A[0], Serial_Data [7: 1]};

```

```

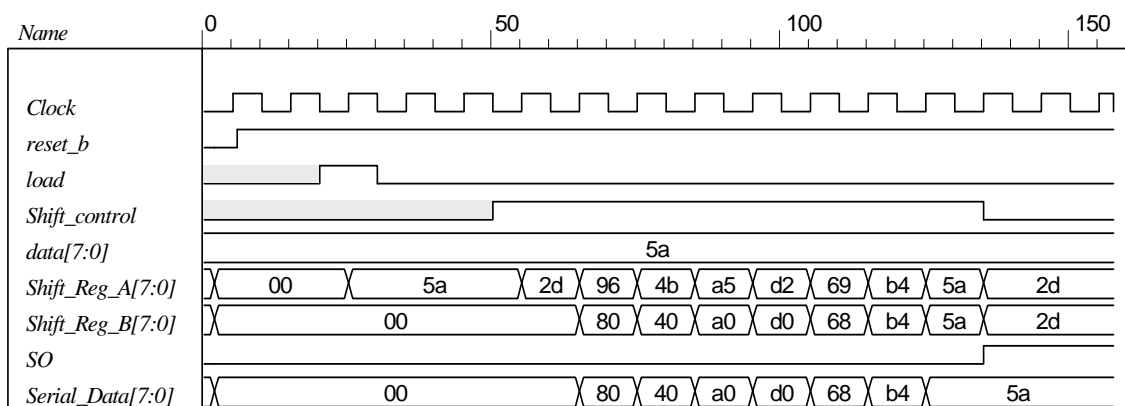
initial #200 $finish;
initial begin Clock = 0; forever #5 Clock = ~Clock; end
initial begin #2 reset_b = 0; #4 reset_b = 1; end

```

```

initial fork
  data = 8'h5A;
  #20 load = 1;
  #30 load = 0;
  #50 Shift_control = 1;
  #50 begin repeat (9) @ (posedge Clock) ;
    Shift_control = 0;
  end
join
endmodule

```



## 6.44

```
// See Figure 6.5
// Note: Sum is stored in shift register A; carry is stored in Q
// Note: Clear is active-low.

module Prob_6_44_Str (output SO, input [7: 0] data_A, data_B, input S_in, load, Shift_control, CLK,
    Clear);
    supply0 gnd;
    wire sum, carry;
    assign SO = sum;
    wire SO_A, SO_B;

    Shift_Reg_gated_clock M_A (SO_A, sum, data_A, load, Shift_control, CLK, Clear);
    Shift_Reg_gated_clock M_B (SO_B, S_in, data_B, load, Shift_control, CLK, Clear);
    FA M_FA (carry, sum, SO_A, SO_B, Q);
    DFF_gated M_FF (Q, carry, Shift_control, CLK, Clear);

endmodule

module Shift_Reg_gated_clock (output SO, input S_in, input [7: 0] data, input load, Shift_control,
    Clock, reset_b);
    reg [7: 0] SReg;
    assign SO = SReg[0];

    always @ (posedge Clock, negedge reset_b)
        if (reset_b == 0) SReg <= 0;
        else if (load) SReg <= data;
        else if (Shift_control) SReg <= {S_in, SReg[7: 1]};
endmodule

module DFF_gated (output Q, input D, Shift_control, Clock, reset_b);
    DFF M_DFF (Q, D_internal, Clock, reset_b);
    Mux_2 M_Mux (D_internal, Q, D, Shift_control);
endmodule

module DFF (output reg Q, input D, Clock, reset_b);
    always @ (posedge Clock, negedge reset_b)
        if (reset_b == 0) Q <= 0; else Q <= D;
endmodule

module Mux_2 (output reg y, input a, b, sel);
    always @ (a, b, sel) if (sel == 1) y = b; else y = a;
endmodule

module FA (output reg carry, sum, input a, b, C_in);
    always @ (a, b, C_in) {carry, sum} = a + b + C_in;
endmodule

module t_Prob_6_44_Str ();
    wire SO;
    reg SI, load, Shift_control, Clock, Clear;
    reg [7: 0] data_A, data_B;

    Prob_6_44_Str M0 (SO, data_A, data_B, SI, load, Shift_control, Clock, Clear);

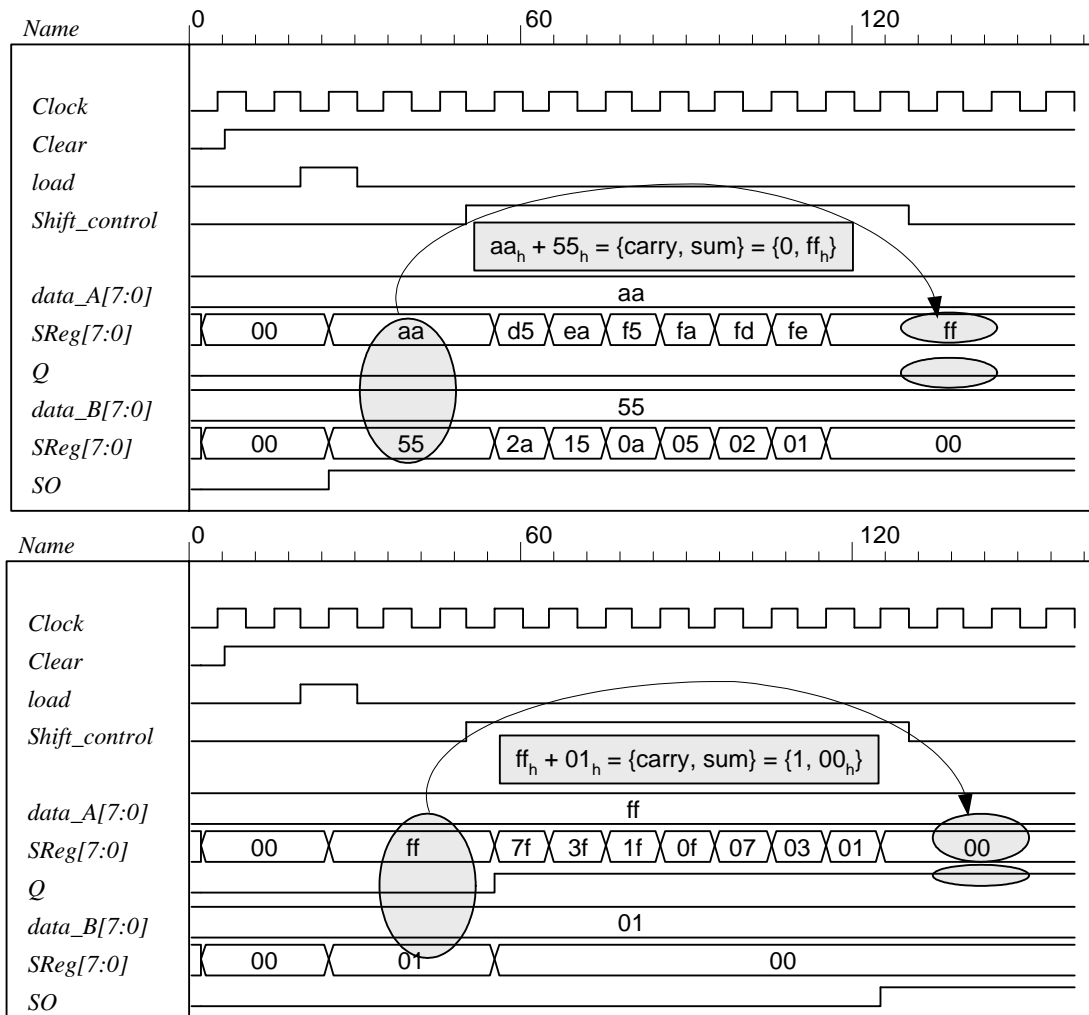
    initial #200 $finish;
    initial begin Clock = 0; forever #5 Clock = ~Clock; end
    initial begin #2 Clear = 0; #4 Clear = 1; end
```

### initial fork

```

data_A = 8'hAA; //8'h ff;
data_B = 8'h55; //8'h01;
SI = 0;
#20 load = 1;
#30 load = 0;
#50 Shift_control = 1;
#50 begin repeat (8) @ (posedge Clock) ;
    #5 Shift_control = 0;
end
join
endmodule

```



6.45

```

module Prob_6_45 (output reg y_out, input start, clock, reset_bar);
parameter    s0 = 4'b0000,
    s1 = 4'b0001,
    s2 = 4'b0010,
    s3 = 4'b0011,
    s4 = 4'b0100,
    s5 = 4'b0101,

```



```

        s6 = 4'b0110,
        s7 = 4'b0111,
        s8 = 4'b1000;
    reg [3: 0] state, next_state;

    always @ (posedge clock, negedge reset_bar)
        if (!reset_bar) state <= s0; else state <= next_state;

    always @ (state, start) begin
        y_out = 1'b0;
        case (state)
            s0: if (start) next_state = s1; else next_state = s0;
            s1: begin next_state = s2; y_out = 1; end
            s2: begin next_state = s3; y_out = 1; end
            s3: begin next_state = s4; y_out = 1; end
            s4: begin next_state = s5; y_out = 1; end
            s5: begin next_state = s6; y_out = 1; end
            s6: begin next_state = s7; y_out = 1; end
            s7: begin next_state = s8; y_out = 1; end
            s8: begin next_state = s0; y_out = 1; end
            default: next_state = s0;
        endcase
    end
endmodule

// Test plan

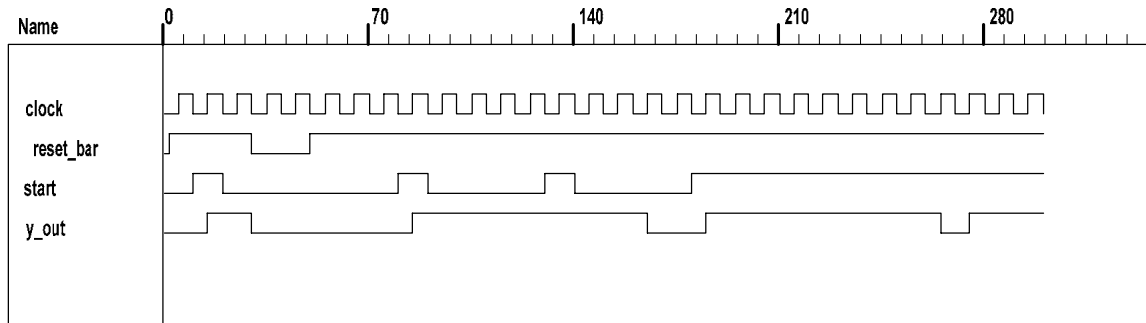
// Verify the following:
// Power-up reset
// Response to start in initial state
// Reset on-the-fly
// Response to re-assertion of start after reset on-the-fly
// 8-cycle counting sequence
// Ignore start during counting sequence
// Return to initial state after 8 cycles and await start
// Remain in initial state for one clock if start is asserted when the state is entered

module t_Prob_6_45;
    wire y_out;
    reg start, clock, reset_bar;

    Prob_6_45 M0 (y_out, start, clock, reset_bar);

    initial #300 $finish;
    initial begin clock = 0; forever #5 clock = ~clock; end
    initial fork
        reset_bar = 0;
        #2 reset_bar = 1;
        #10 start = 1;
        #20 start = 0;
        #30 reset_bar = 0;
        #50 reset_bar = 1;
        #80 start = 1;
        #90 start = 0;
        #130 start = 1;
        #140 start = 0;
        #180 start = 1;
    join
endmodule

```



## 6.46

```
module Prob_6_46 (output reg [0: 3] timer, input clk, reset_b);
```

```
always @ (negedge clk, negedge reset_b)
```

```
if (reset_b == 0) timer <= 4'b1000; else
```

```
case (timer)
```

```
4'b1000: timer <= 4'b0100;
```

```
4'b0100: timer <= 4'b0010;
```

```
4'b0010: timer <= 4'b0001;
```

```
4'b0001: timer <= 4'b1000;
```

```
default: timer <= 4'b1000;
```

```
endcase
```

```
endmodule
```

```
module t_Prob_6_46 ();
```

```
wire [0: 3] timer;
```

```
reg clk, reset_b;
```

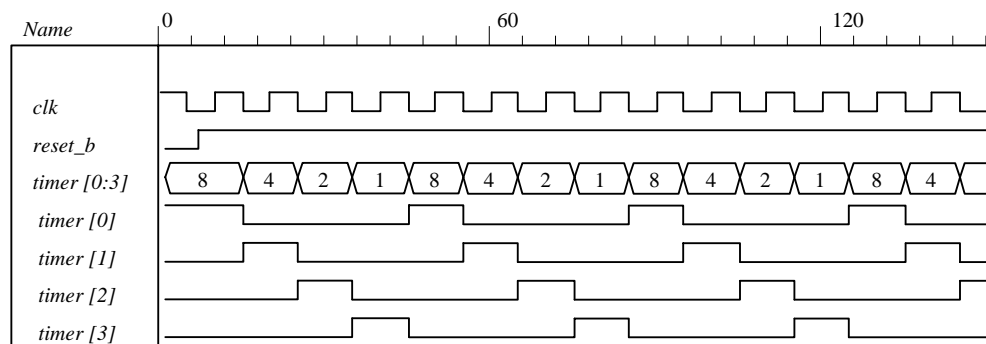
```
Prob_6_46 M0 (timer, clk, reset_b);
```

```
initial #150 $finish;
```

```
initial fork #1 reset_b = 0; #7 reset_b = 1; join
```

```
initial begin clk = 1; forever #5 clk = ~clk; end
```

```
endmodule
```



## 6.47

```
module Prob_6_47 (
```

```
output reg P_odd,
```

```
input D_in, CLK, reset
```

```
);
```

```
wire D;
```

```
assign D = D_in ^ P_odd;
```

```
always @ (posedge CLK, posedge reset)
```

```

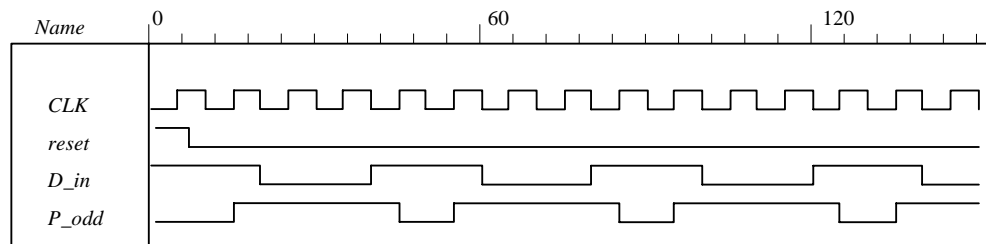
    if (reset)    P_odd <= 0;
    else        P_odd <= D;
endmodule

module t_Prob_6_47 ();
    wire P_odd;
    reg D_in, CLK, reset;

    Prob_6_47 M0 (P_odd, D_in, CLK, reset);

    initial #150 $finish;
    initial fork #1 reset = 1; #7 reset = 0; join
    initial begin CLK = 0; forever #5 CLK = ~CLK; end
    initial begin D_in = 1; forever #20 D_in = ~D_in; end
endmodule

```



#### 6.48 (a)

```

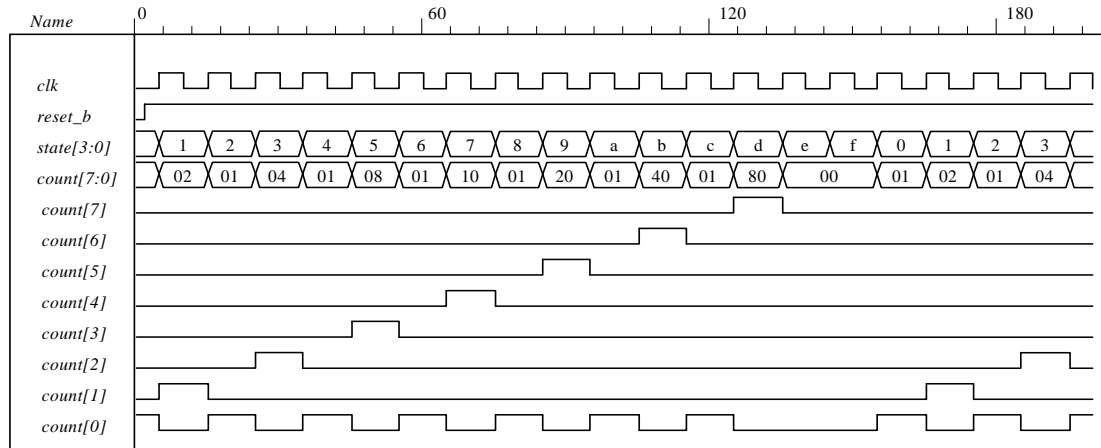
module Prob_6_48a (output reg [7: 0] count, input clk, reset_b);
    reg [3: 0] state;
    always @ (posedge clk, negedge reset_b)
        if (reset_b == 0) state <= 0; else state <= state + 1;
    always @ (state)
        case (state)
            0, 2, 4, 6, 8, 10, 12: count = 8'b0000_0001;
            1: count = 8'b0000_0010;
            3: count = 8'b0000_0100;
            5: count = 8'b0000_1000;
            7: count = 8'b0001_0000;
            9: count = 8'b0010_0000;
            11: count = 8'b0100_0000;
            13: count = 8'b1000_0000;
            default: count = 8'b0000_0000;
        endcase
endmodule

module t_Prob_6_48a ();
    wire [7: 0] count;
    reg clk, reset_b;

    Prob_6_48a M0 (count, clk, reset_b);

    initial #200 $finish;
    initial begin clk = 0; forever #5 clk = ~clk; end
    initial begin reset_b = 0; #2 reset_b = 1; end
endmodule

```



(b)

```

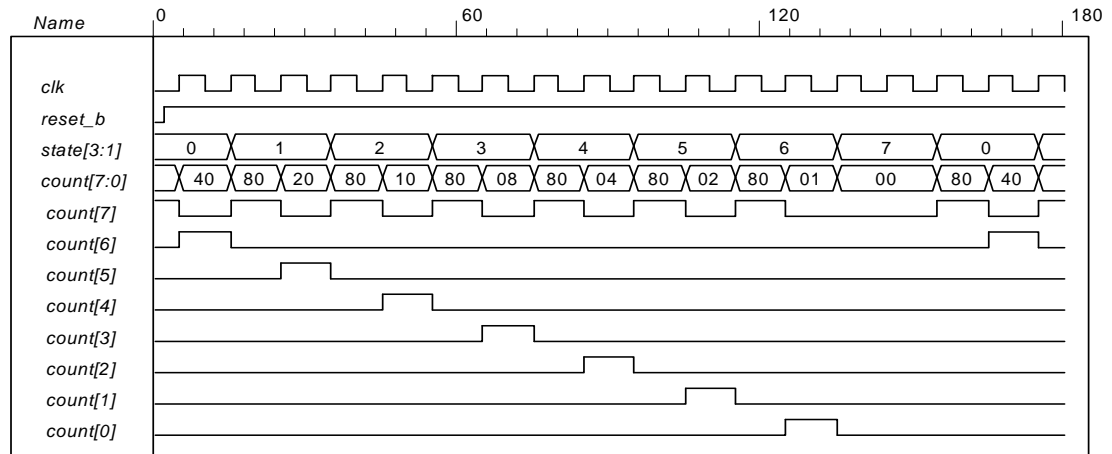
module Prob_6_48b (output reg [7: 0] count, input clk, reset_b);
    reg [3: 0] state;
    always @ (posedge clk, negedge reset_b)
        if (reset_b == 0) state <= 0; else state <= state + 1;
    always @ (state)
        case (state)
            0, 2, 4, 6, 8, 10, 12: count = 8'b1000_0000;
            1: count = 8'b0100_0000;
            3: count = 8'b0010_0000;
            5: count = 8'b0001_0000;
            7: count = 8'b0000_1000;
            9: count = 8'b0000_0100;
            11: count = 8'b0000_0010;
            13: count = 8'b0000_0001;
            default: count = 8'b0000_0000;
        endcase
    endmodule

module t_Prob_6_48b ();
    wire [7: 0] count;
    reg clk, reset_b;

    Prob_6_48b M0 (count, clk, reset_b);

    initial #180 $finish;
    initial begin clk = 0; forever #5 clk = ~clk; end
    initial begin reset_b = 0; #2 reset_b = 1; end
endmodule

```



## 6.49

```
// Behavioral description of a 4-bit universal shift register
// Fig. 6.7 and Table 6.3
module Shift_Register_4_beh (           // V2001, 2005
    output reg [3:0] A_par,           // Register output
    input [3:0] I_par,               // Parallel input
    input s1, s0,                   // Select inputs
    MSB_in, LSB_in,                // Serial inputs
    CLK, Clear                      // Clock and Clear
);
    always @ (posedge CLK, negedge Clear) // V2001, 2005
        if (~Clear) A_par <= 4'b0000;
    else
        case ({s1, s0})
            2'b00: A_par <= A_par;           // No change
            2'b01: A_par <= {MSB_in, A_par[3: 1]}; // Shift right
            2'b10: A_par <= {A_par[2: 0], LSB_in}; // Shift left
            2'b11: A_par <= I_par;           // Parallel load of input
        endcase
endmodule
```

```
// Test plan:
// test reset action load
// test parallel load
// test shift right
// test shift left
// test circulation of data
// test reset on the fly

module t_Shift_Register_4_beh ();
    reg  s1, s0,          // Select inputs
        MSB_in, LSB_in,  // Serial inputs
        clk, reset_b;    // Clock and Clear
    reg  [3: 0]  I_par;    // Parallel input
    wire [3: 0]  A_par;    // Register output

    Shift_Register_4_beh M0 (A_par, I_par, s1, s0, MSB_in, LSB_in, clk, reset_b);

    initial #200 $finish;
    initial begin clk = 0; forever #5 clk = ~clk; end

    initial fork
        // test reset action load
        #3 reset_b = 1;
        #4 reset_b = 0;
        #9 reset_b = 1;

        // test parallel load
        #10 I_par = 4'hA;
        #10 {s1, s0} = 2'b11;

        // test shift right
        #30 MSB_in = 1'b0;
        #30 {s1, s0} = 2'b01;

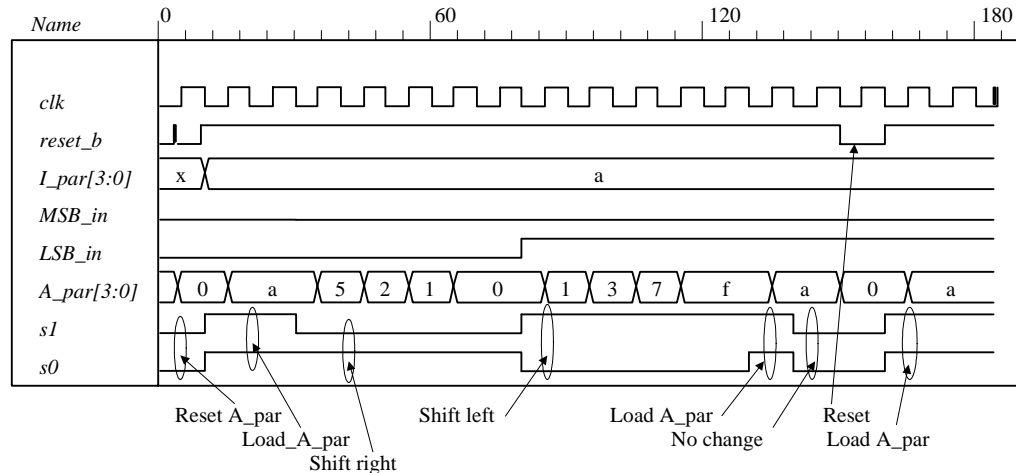
        // test shift left
        #80 LSB_in = 1'b1;
        #80 {s1, s0} = 2'b10;

        // test circulation of data
        #130 {s1, s0} = 2'b11;
        #140 {s1, s0} = 2'b00;

        // test reset on the fly

        #150 reset_b = 1'b0;
        #160 reset_b = 1'b1;
        #160 {s1, s0} = 2'b11;

    join
endmodule
```



6.50 (a) See problem 6.27.

```

module Prob_8_50a (output reg [2: 0] count, input clk, reset_b);
always @ (posedge clk, negedge reset_b)
if (!reset_b) count <= 0;
else case (count)
  3'd0: count <= 3'd1;
  3'd1: count <= 3'd2;
  3'd2: count <= 3'd3;
  3'd3: count <= 3'd4;
  3'd4: count <= 3'd5;
  3'd5: count <= 3'd6;
  3'd6: count <= 3'd0;
default: count <= 3'd0;
endcase
endmodule

```

```

module t_Prob_8_50a;
wire [2: 0] count;
reg clock, reset_b ;

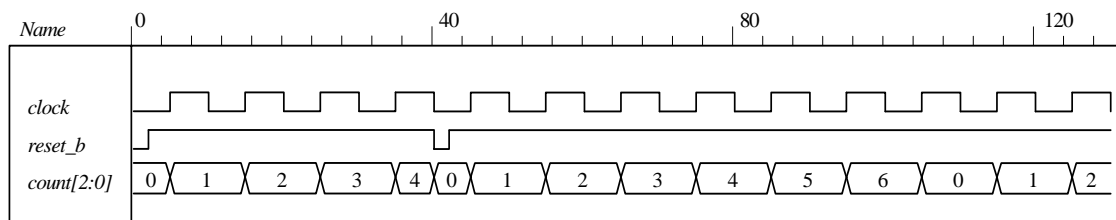
```

Prob\_8\_50a M0 (count, clock, reset\_b);

```

initial #130 $finish;
initial begin clock = 0; forever #5 clock = ~clock; end
initial fork
  reset_b = 0;
  #2 reset_b = 1;
  #40 reset_b = 0;
  #42 reset_b = 1;
join
endmodule

```



(b) See problem 6.28.

```

module Prob_8_50b (output reg [2: 0] count, input clk, reset_b);
  always @ (posedge clk, negedge reset_b)
    if (!reset_b) count <= 0;
    else case (count)
      3'd0: count <= 3'd1;
      3'd1: count <= 3'd2;
      3'd2: count <= 3'd4;
      3'd4: count <= 3'd6;
      3'd6: count <= 3'd0;
      default: count <= 3'd0;
    endcase
endmodule

```

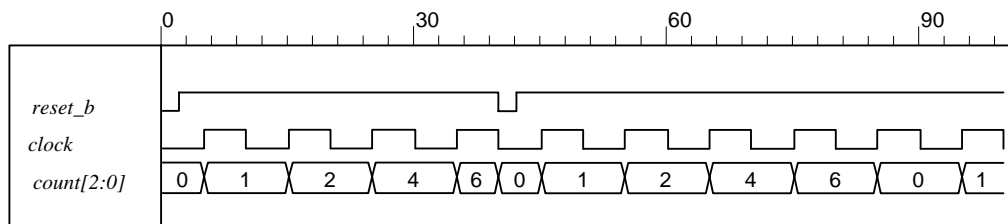
```

module t_Prob_8_50b;
  wire [2: 0] count;
  reg clock, reset_b ;

  Prob_8_50b M0 (count, clock, reset_b);

  initial #100 $finish;
  initial begin clock = 0; forever #5 clock = ~clock; end
  initial fork
    reset_b = 0;
    #2 reset_b = 1;
    #40 reset_b = 0;
    #42 reset_b = 1;
  join
endmodule

```



6.51

```

module Seq_Detector_Prob_5_51 (output detect, input bit_in, clk, reset_b);
  reg [2: 0] sample_reg;
  assign detect = (sample_reg == 3'b111);
  always @ (posedge clk, negedge reset_b) if (reset_b == 0) sample_reg <= 0;
  else sample_reg <= {bit_in, sample_reg [2: 1]};
endmodule

```

```

module Seq_Detector_Prob_5_45 (output detect, input bit_in, clk, reset_b);
  parameter S0 = 0, S1 = 1, S2 = 2, S3 = 3;
  reg [1: 0] state, next_state;

  assign detect = (state == S3);
  always @ (posedge clk, negedge reset_b)
    if (reset_b == 0) state <= S0; else state <= next_state;

```

```

  always @ (state, bit_in) begin
    next_state = S0;
    case (state)

```



```

0:    if (bit_in) next_state = S1; else state = S0;
1:    if (bit_in) next_state = S2; else next_state = S0;
2:    if (bit_in) next_state = S3; else state = S0;
3:    if (bit_in) next_state = S3; else next_state = S0;
default: next_state = S0;
endcase
end
endmodule

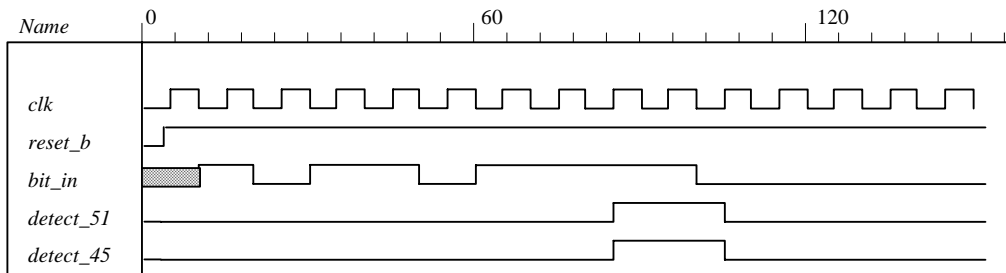
module t_Seq_Detector_Prob_6_51 ();
wire detect_45, detect_51;
reg bit_in, clk, reset_b;

Seq_Detector_Prob_5_51 M0 (detect_51, bit_in, clk, reset_b);
Seq_Detector_Prob_5_45 M1 (detect_45, bit_in, clk, reset_b);

initial #350$finish;
initial begin clk = 0; forever #5 clk = ~clk; end
initial fork

    reset_b = 0;
    #4 reset_b = 1;
    #10 bit_in = 1;
    #20 bit_in = 0;
    #30 bit_in = 1;
    #50 bit_in = 0;
    #60 bit_in = 1;
    #100 bit_in = 0;
join
endmodule

```



The circuit using a shift register uses less hardware.

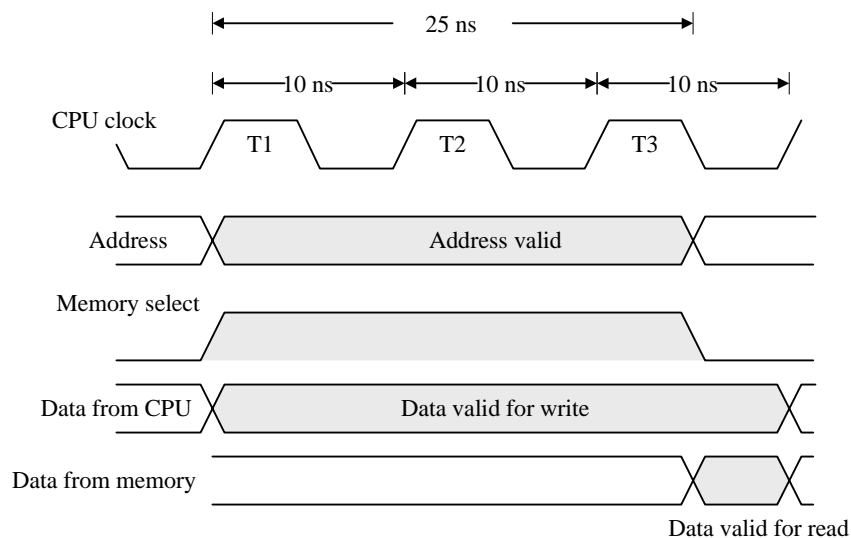
## Chapter 7

- 7.1** (a)  $8\text{ K} \times 32 = 2^{13} \times 16$        $A = 13$      $D = 16$   
 (b)  $2\text{ G} \times 8 = 2^{31} \times 8$        $A = 31$      $D = 8$   
 (c)  $16\text{ M} \times 32 = 2^{24} \times 32$        $A = 24$      $D = 32$   
 (d)  $256\text{ K} \times 64 = 2^{18} \times 64$        $A = 18$      $D = 64$   
 (e)

- 7.2** (a)  $2^{13}$  (b)  $2^{31}$  (c)  $2^{26}$  (d)  $2^{21}$

- 7.3**  $723 = 512 + 128 + 64 + 16 + 2 + 1$   
 $3451 = 2048 + 1024 + 256 + 64 + 32 + 16 + 8 + 2 + 1$   
 Address:  $10\ 1101\ 0011 = 2D3_{16}$   
 Data:  $0000\ 1101\ 0111\ 1011 = 0D7B_{16}$

- 7.4**  $f_{\text{CPU}} = 100\text{ MHz}$ ,  $T_{\text{CPU}} = 1/f_{\text{CPU}} = 10^{-8}\text{ Hz}^{-1} = 10 \times 10^{-9}\text{ Hz}^{-1} = 10\text{ ns}$



- 7.5** // Testing the memory of HDL Example 7.1.

```

module t_memory ();
  reg      Enable, ReadWrite;
  reg [3: 0] DataIn;
  reg [5: 0] Address;
  wire [3: 0] DataOut;

  memory M0 (Enable, ReadWrite, Address, DataIn, DataOut);
  initial #200 $finish;
  initial begin
    Enable = 0; ReadWrite = 0; Address = 3; DataIn = 5;
    repeat (8) #5 Enable = ~Enable;
  end
  initial begin

```

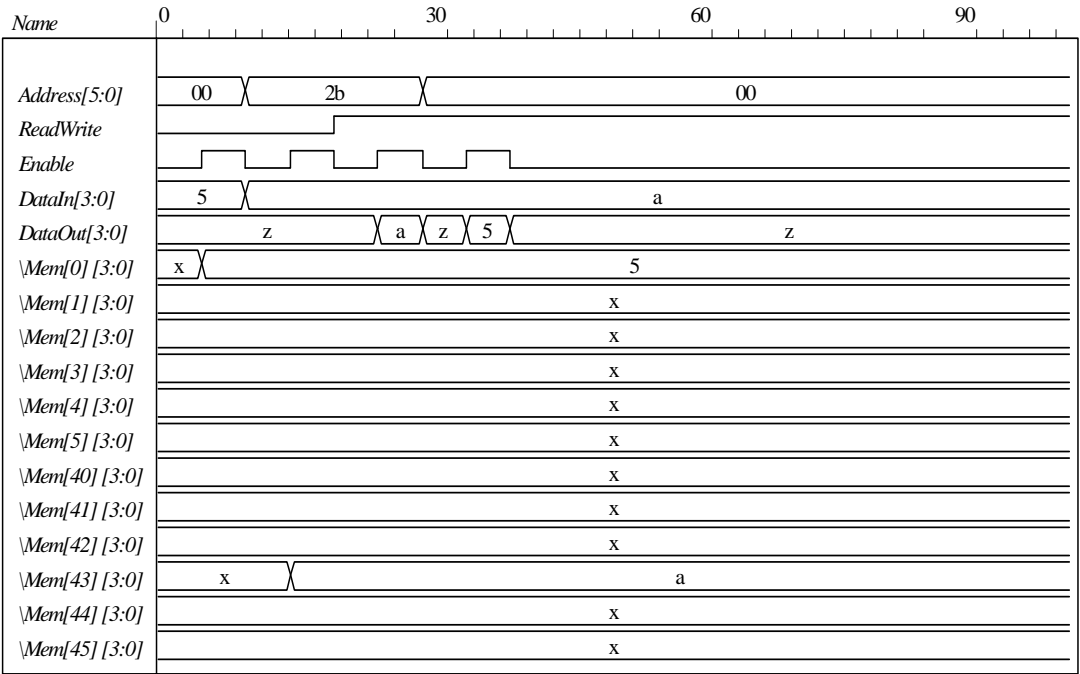
```

#10 Address = 43; DataIn = 10;
#10 ReadWrite = 1;
#10 Address = 0;
end
initial
    $monitor ("E = %b RW = %b Add = %b D_in = %b D_out = %b T = %d",
        Enable, ReadWrite, Address, DataIn, DataOut, $time);

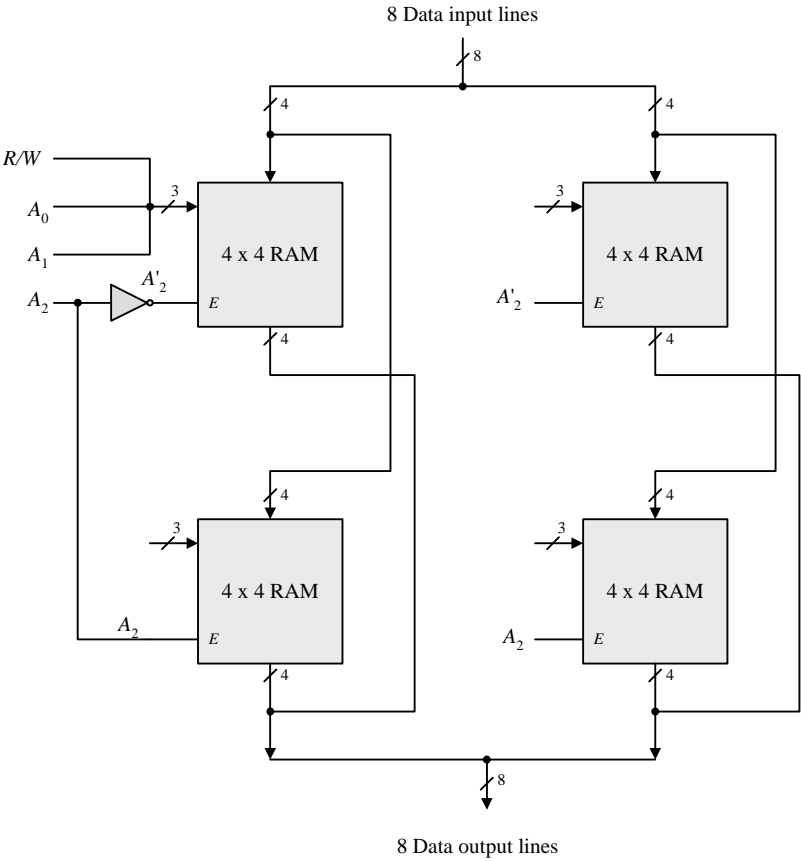
wire mem0 = M0.Mem[0];
wire mem1 = M0.Mem[1];
wire mem2 = M0.Mem[2];
wire mem3 = M0.Mem[3];
wire mem4 = M0.Mem[4];
wire mem5 = M0.Mem[5];
wire mem40 = M0.Mem[40];
wire mem41 = M0.Mem[41];
wire mem42 = M0.Mem[42];
wire mem43 = M0.Mem[43];
wire mem44 = M0.Mem[44];
wire mem45 = M0.Mem[45];
endmodule

//Read and write operations of Mem
//Mem size is 64 words of 4 bits each.
module memory (Enable, ReadWrite, Address, DataIn, DataOut);
    input Enable, ReadWrite;
    input [3: 0] DataIn;
    input [5: 0] Address;
    output [3:0] DataOut;
    reg [3: 0] DataOut;
    reg [3: 0] Mem [0: 63]; //64 x 4 Mem
    always @ (Enable or ReadWrite)
        if (Enable)
            if (ReadWrite) DataOut = Mem[Address]; //Read
            else Mem[Address] = DataIn; //Write
            else DataOut = 4'bz; //High impedance state
endmodule

```



7.6



**7.7** (a)  $16\text{ K} = 2^{14} = 2^7 \times 2^7 = 128 \times 128$

Each decoder is  $7 \times 128$

Decoders require 256 AND gates, each with 7 inputs

(b)  $6,000 = 0101110\_1110000$   
 $x = 46 \quad y = 112$

**7.8** (a)  $256\text{ K} / 32\text{ K} = 8\text{ chips}$

(b)  $256\text{ K} = 2^{18}$  (18 address lines for memory);  $32\text{ K} = 2^{15}$  (15 address pins / chip)

(c)  $18 - 15 = 3\text{ lines}$  ; must decode with  $3 \times 8$  decoder

**7.9**  $13 + 12 = 25\text{ address lines}$ . Memory capacity =  $2^{25}$  words.

**7.10**  $01011011 = 1 \quad 2 \quad 3 \quad 4 \quad 5 \quad 6 \quad 7 \quad 8 \quad 9 \quad 10 \quad 11 \quad 12 \quad 13$   
 $P_1 \quad P_2 \quad 0 \quad P_4 \quad 1 \quad 0 \quad 1 \quad P_8 \quad 1 \quad 0 \quad 1 \quad 1 \quad P_{13}$

$P_1 = \text{Xor of bits } (3, 5, 7, 9, 11) = 0, 1, 1, 1, 1 = 0$  (Note: even # of 0s)

$P_2 = \text{Xor of bits } (3, 6, 7, 10, 11) = 0, 0, 1, 0, 1 = 0$

$P_4 = \text{Xor of bits } (5, 6, 7, 12) = 1, 0, 1, 1 = 1$  (Note: odd # of 0s)

$P_8 = \text{Xor of bits } (9, 10, 11, 12) = 1, 0, 1, 1 = 1$

Composite 13-bit code word: 0001 1011 1011 1

**7.11**  $11001001010 = 1 \quad 2 \quad 3 \quad 4 \quad 5 \quad 6 \quad 7 \quad 8 \quad 9 \quad 10 \quad 11 \quad 12 \quad 13 \quad 14 \quad 15$   
 $P_1 \quad P_2 \quad 1 \quad P_4 \quad 1 \quad 0 \quad 0 \quad P_8 \quad 1 \quad 0 \quad 0 \quad 1 \quad 0 \quad 1 \quad 0$

$P_1 = \text{Xor of bits } (3, 5, 7, 9, 11, 13, 15) = 1, 1, 0, 1, 0, 0, 0 = 1$  (Note: odd # of 0s)

$P_2 = \text{Xor of bits } (3, 6, 7, 10, 11, 14, 15) = 1, 0, 0, 0, 0, 1, 0 = 0$  (Note: even # of 0s)

$P_4 = \text{Xor of bits } (5, 6, 7, 12, 13, 14, 15) = 1, 0, 0, 1, 0, 1, 0 = 1$

$P_8 = \text{Xor of bits } (9, 10, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15) = 1, 0, 0, 1, 0, 1, 0 = 1$

Composite 15-bit code word: 101 110 011 001 010

**7.12** (a)  $1 \quad 2 \quad 3 \quad 4 \quad 5 \quad 6 \quad 7 \quad 8 \quad 9 \quad 10 \quad 11 \quad 12$   
 $0 \quad 0 \quad 0 \quad 0 \quad 1 \quad 1 \quad 1 \quad 0 \quad 1 \quad 0 \quad 1 \quad 0$

$C_1 (1, 3, 5, 7, 9, 11) = 0, 0, 1, 1, 1, 1 = 0$

$C_2 (2, 3, 6, 7, 10, 11) = 0, 0, 1, 1, 0, 1 = 1$

$C_4 (4, 5, 6, 7, 12) = 0, 1, 1, 1, 0 = 1$

$C_8 (8, 9, 10, 11, 12) = 0, 1, 0, 1, 0 = 0$

$C = 0110$

Error in bit 6.

Correct data: 0101 1010

(b)  $1 \quad 2 \quad 3 \quad 4 \quad 5 \quad 6 \quad 7 \quad 8 \quad 9 \quad 10 \quad 11 \quad 12$   
 $1 \quad 0 \quad 1 \quad 1 \quad 1 \quad 0 \quad 0 \quad 0 \quad 0 \quad 1 \quad 1 \quad 0$

$C_1 (1, 3, 5, 7, 9, 11) = 1, 1, 1, 0, 0, 1 = 0$

$C_2 (2, 3, 6, 7, 10, 11) = 0, 1, 0, 0, 1, 1 = 1$

$C_4 (4, 5, 6, 7, 12) = 1, 1, 0, 0, 0 = 0$

$C_8 (8, 9, 10, 11, 12) = 0, 0, 1, 1, 0 = 0$

$$C = 0010$$

Error in bit 2 = Parity bit  $P_2$ .

	3	5	6	7	9	10	11	12
Correct 8-bit data:	1	1	0	0	0	1	1	0

(c) 

1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12
1	0	1	1	1	1	1	1	0	1	0	0

$C = 0000$  )No errors)

$$C_1 (1, 3, 5, 7, 9, 11) = 1, 1, 1, 0, 0, 1 = 0$$

$$C_2 (2, 3, 6, 7, 10, 11) = 0, 1, 0, 0, 1, 1 = 1$$

$$C_4 (4, 5, 6, 7, 12) = 1, 1, 0, 0, 0 = 0$$

$$C_8 (8, 9, 10, 11, 12) = 0, 0, 1, 1, 0 = 0$$

	3	5	6	7	9	10	11	12
Correct 8-bit data:	1	1	1	1	0	1	0	0

**7.13** (a) 16-bit data (From Table 7.2): 5 Check bits  
1 bit

-----  
6 parity bits

(b) 32-bit data (From Table 7.2): 6 Check bits  
1 bit

-----  
7 parity bits

(6) 16-bit data (From Table 7.2): 5 Check bits  
1 bit

-----  
6 parity bits

**7.14** (a) 

1	2	3	4	5	6	7
$P_1$	$P_2$	0	$P_4$	0	1	0

  
 $P_1 = \text{Xor}(3, 5, 7) = 0, 0, 0 = 1$   
 $P_2 = \text{Xor}(3, 6, 7) = 0, 1, 0 = 0$   
 $P_4 = \text{Xor}(5, 6, 7) = 0, 1, 0 = 1$

7-bit word: 0101010

(b) No error:

$$C_1 = \text{Xor}(1, 3, 5, 7) = 0, 0, 0, 0 = 0$$

$$C_2 = \text{Xor}(2, 3, 6, 7) = 1, 0, 1, 0 = 0$$

$$C_4 = \text{Xor}(4, 5, 6, 7) = 1, 0, 1, 0 = 0$$

(c) Error in bit 5: 

1	2	3	4	5	6	7
0	1	0	1	1	1	0

$$C_1 = \text{Xor}(0, 0, 1, 0) = 1$$

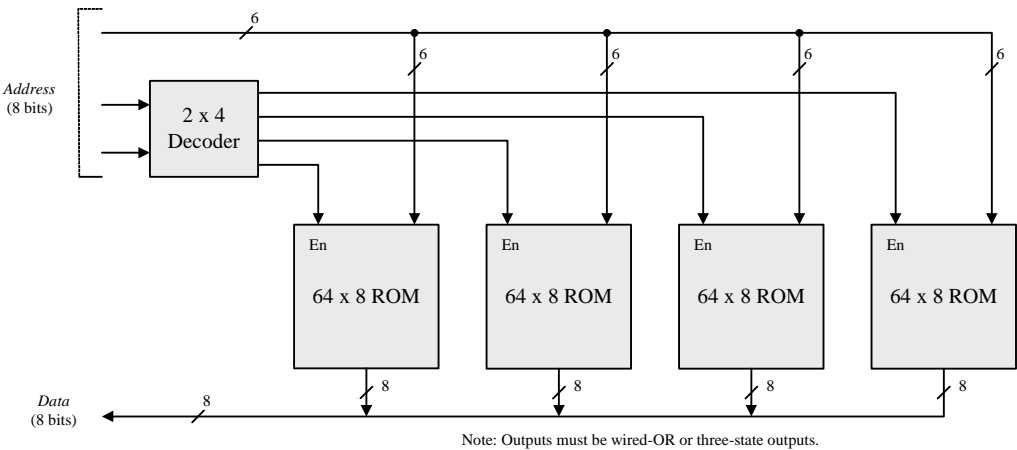
$$C_2 = \text{Xor}(1, 0, 1, 0) = 0$$

$$C_4 = \text{Xor}(1, 1, 1, 0) = 1$$

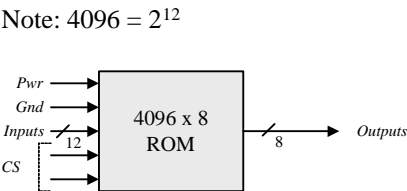
Error in bit 5:  $C = 101$

(d) 8-bit word                    1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8  
                                      0 1 0 1 0 1 0 1  
Error in bits 2 and 5: 0 0 0 1 1 1 0 1  
 $C_1 = \text{Xor}(0, 0, 1, 0) = 1$   
 $C_2 = \text{Xor}(0, 0, 1, 0) = 1$   
 $C_4 = \text{Xor}(1, 1, 1, 0) = 1$   
 $P = 0$   
 $C = (1, 1, 1) \neq 0$  and  $P = 0$  indicates double error.

7.15



7.16



16 inputs + 8 outputs requires a 24-pin IC.

7.18    (a)  $256 \times 8$     (b)  $512 \times 5$     (c)  $1024 \times 4$     (d)  $32 \times 7$

7.17

Input Address					Output of ROM		
$I_5 I_4 I_3 I_2 I_1$	$D_6 D_5 D_4$	$D_3 D_2 D_1$	$D_0 (2^0)$	Decimal			
0 0 0 0 0	0 0 0	0 0 0	0, 1	0, 1			
0 0 0 0 1	0 0 0	0 0 1	0, 1	2, 3			
...	...	...	...	...			
...	...	...	...	...			
0 1 0 0 0	0 0 1	0 1 1	0, 1	16, 17			
0 1 0 0 1	0 0 1	1 0 0	0, 1	18, 19			
...	...	...	...	...			
...	...	...	...	...			
1 1 1 1 0	1 1 0	0 0 0	0, 1	60, 61			
1 1 1 1 1	1 1 0	0 0 1	0, 1	62, 63			

7.18    (a) 8 inputs    8 outputs     $2^8 \times 8$     256 x 8 ROM  
      (b) 9 inputs    5 outputs     $2^9 \times 5$     512 x 5 ROM

(c) 10 inputs    4 outputs     $2^{10} \times 4$  1024 x 4 ROM

(d) 5 inputs    7 outputs     $2^5 \times 7$     32 x 7 ROM

7.19

yz

x

00

01

11

10

m<sub>0</sub>

m<sub>1</sub>

m<sub>3</sub>

m<sub>2</sub>

0

1

0

1

1

0

0

1

A = yz' + xz' + x'y'z

A' = yz + xz + x'y'z'

yz

x

00

01

11

10

m<sub>0</sub>

m<sub>1</sub>

m<sub>3</sub>

m<sub>2</sub>

0

1

1

1

0

0

0

1

B = xy + x'y'

B' = x'y' + x'y

yz

x

00

01

11

10

m<sub>0</sub>

m<sub>1</sub>

m<sub>3</sub>

m<sub>2</sub>

0

1

0

0

0

0

1

1

C = yz'

C' = y' + z

yz

x

00

01

11

10

m<sub>0</sub>

m<sub>1</sub>

m<sub>3</sub>

m<sub>2</sub>

0

1

0

1

1

1

1

0

D = z + x'y

D' = y'z' + xz'

		Product Inputs			Outputs			
		term    x y z			A	B	C	D
yz'	1	-	1	0	1	-	1	-
xz'	2	1	-	0	1	-	-	-
x'y'z	3	0	0	1	1	-	-	-
xy'	4	1	0	-	-	1	-	-
x'y	5	0	1	-	-	1	-	1
z	6	-	-	1	-	-	-	1
					T	C	T	T

7.20

Inputs		Outputs	
x y z		A, B, C, D	
0 0 0		1 1 0 1	M[001] = 0111
0 0 1		0 1 1 1	
0 1 0		0 0 0 0	
0 1 1		1 0 0 0	
1 0 0		1 0 0 1	M[100] = 1001
1 0 1		0 0 1 1	
1 1 0		1 1 0 0	
1 1 1		0 1 0 1	



**7.21** Note: See truth table in Fig. 7.12(b).

		$A_1A_0$		$A_1$	
		00	01	11	10
$A_2$	0	$m_0$ 0	$m_1$ 0	$m_3$ 0	$m_2$ 0
	1	$m_4$ 0	$m_5$ 0	$m_7$ 1	$m_6$ 1
		$A_0$			
		$F_1 = A_2A_1$ $F_1' = A_2' + A_1'$			

		$A_1A_0$		$A_1$	
		00	01	11	10
$A_2$	0	$m_0$ 0	$m_1$ 0	$m_3$ 0	$m_2$ 0
	1	$m_4$ 1	$m_5$ 1	$m_7$ 1	$m_6$ 0
		$A_0$			
		$F_2 = A_2A_1' + A_2A_0$ $F_2' = A_2' + A_1A_0'$			

		$A_1A_0$		$A_1$	
		00	01	11	10
$A_2$	0	$m_0$ 0	$m_1$ 0	$m_3$ 1	$m_2$ 0
	1	$m_4$ 0	$m_5$ 1	$m_7$ 0	$m_6$ 0
		$A_0$			
		$F_3 = A_2'A_1A_0 + A_2A_1'A_0$ $F_3' = A_2' + A_1'A_0' + A_2A_1$			

		$A_1A_0$		$A_1$	
		00	01	11	10
$A_2$	0	$m_0$ 0	$m_1$ 0	$m_3$ 0	$m_2$ 1
	1	$m_4$ 0	$m_5$ 0	$m_7$ 0	$m_6$ 1
		$A_0$			
		$F_4 = A_1A_0'$ $F_4' = A_1' + A_0$			

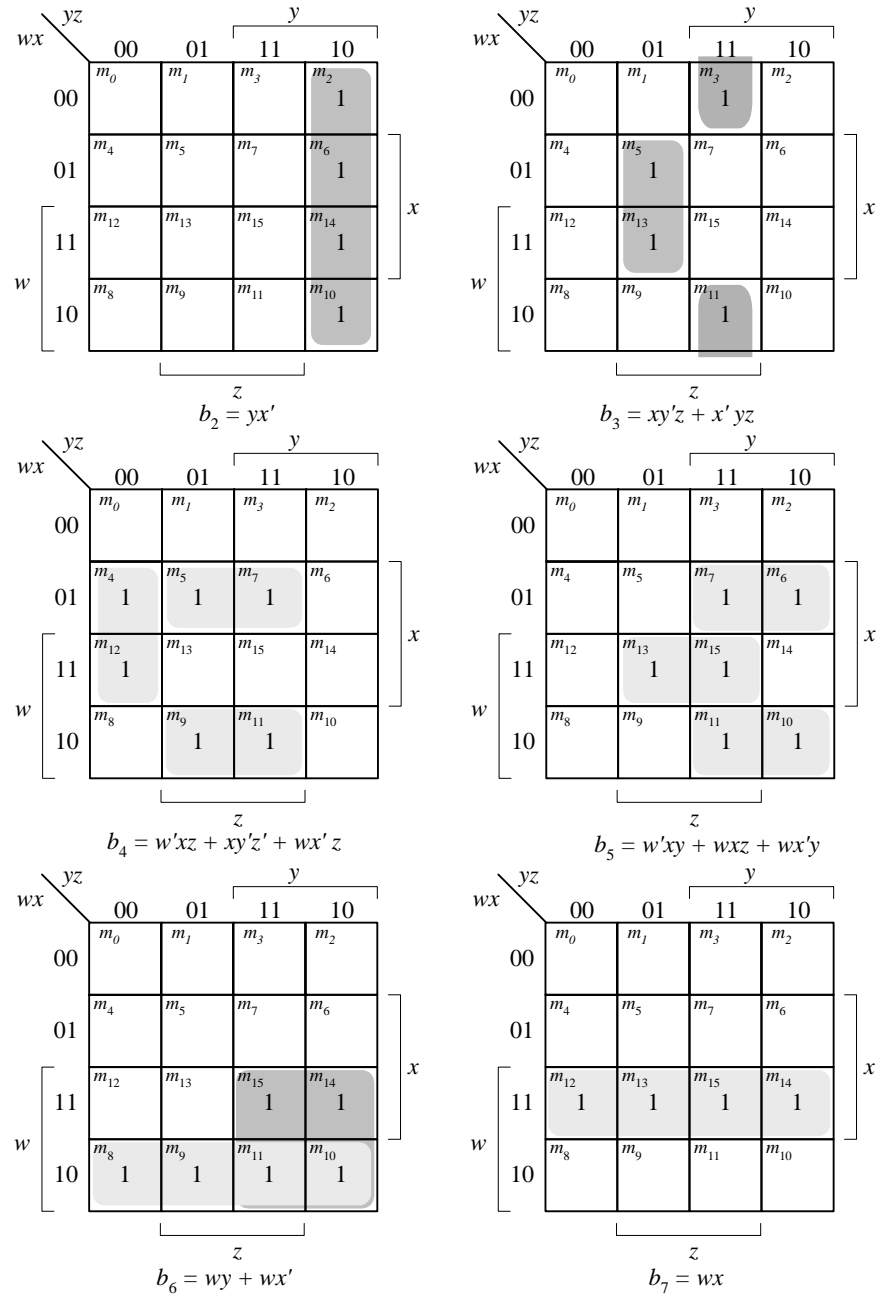
Product term	Inputs			Outputs			
	$A_2A_1A_0$	$F_1$	$F_2$	$F_3$	$F_4$		
$A_2A_1$	1 1 1	1	-	-	-		
$A_2'$	0 - -	-	1	-	-		
$A_1A_0'$	- 1 0	-	1	-	1		
$A_2'A_1A_0$	4 - 1 1	-	-	1	-		
$A_2A_1'$	5 1 0 1	-	-	1	-		
<hr/>							
		$T$	$C$	$T$	$T$		

Alternative:  $F_1', F_2', F_3', F_4$   
(5 terms)

**7.22**

Decimal	w	x	y	z	$b_7$	$b_6$	$b_5$	$b_4$	$b_3$	$b_2$	$b_1$	$b_0$
0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
1	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1
2	4	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0
3	9	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	1
4	16	0	1	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0
5	25	0	1	0	0	0	1	1	0	0	0	1
6	36	0	1	1	0	0	1	0	0	1	0	0
7	49	0	1	1	0	0	1	1	0	0	0	1
8	64	1	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0
9	81	1	0	0	1	0	1	0	0	0	0	1
10	100	1	0	1	0	0	1	1	0	0	1	0
11	121	1	0	1	1	0	1	1	1	0	0	1
12	144	1	1	0	0	1	0	0	1	0	0	0
13	169	1	1	0	1	1	0	1	0	1	0	0
14	196	1	1	1	0	1	1	0	0	0	1	0
15	225	1	1	1	1	1	1	0	0	0	0	1

Note:  $b_0 = z$ , and  $b_1 = 0$ .  
ROM would have 4 inputs  
and 6 outputs. A 4 x 8  
ROM would waste two  
outputs.



### 7.23

From Fig. 4-3:

$$w = A + BC + BD$$

$$w' = A'B' + A'C'D'$$

$$x = B'C + B'D + BC'D'$$

$$x' = B'C'D' + BC \quad BD$$

$$y = CD + C'D'$$

$$y' = C'D + CD'$$

$$z = D'$$

$$z' = D$$

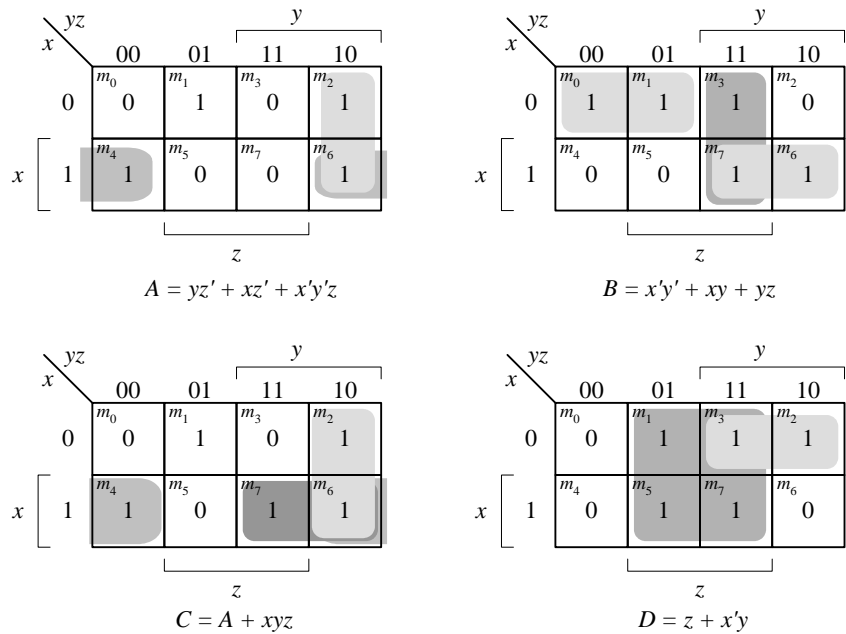
Use  $w, x', y, z$  (7 terms)

Product term	Inputs				Outputs			
	A	B	C	D	$F_1$	$F_2$	$F_3$	$F_4$
A	1	1	-	-	1	-	-	-
BC	2	-	1	1	1	1	-	-
BD	3	-	1	-	1	1	-	-
$B'C'D'$	4	-	0	0	0	-	1	-
CD	5	-	-	1	1	-	-	1
$C'D'$	6	-	-	0	0	-	-	1
D'	7	-	-	-	0	-	-	1
					<hr/>			
					T	C	T	T

### 7.24

AND					Outputs
Product term	A	B	C	D	
1	1	-	-	-	$w = A + BC + BD$
2	-	1	1	-	
3	-	1	-	1	
4	-	0	1	-	$x = B'C + B'D + BC'D'$
5	-	0	-	1	
6	-	1	0	0	
7	-	-	1	1	$y = CD + C'D'$
8	-	-	0	0	
9	-	-	-	-	
10	-	-	-	0	$z = D'$
11	-	-	-	-	
12	-	-	-	-	

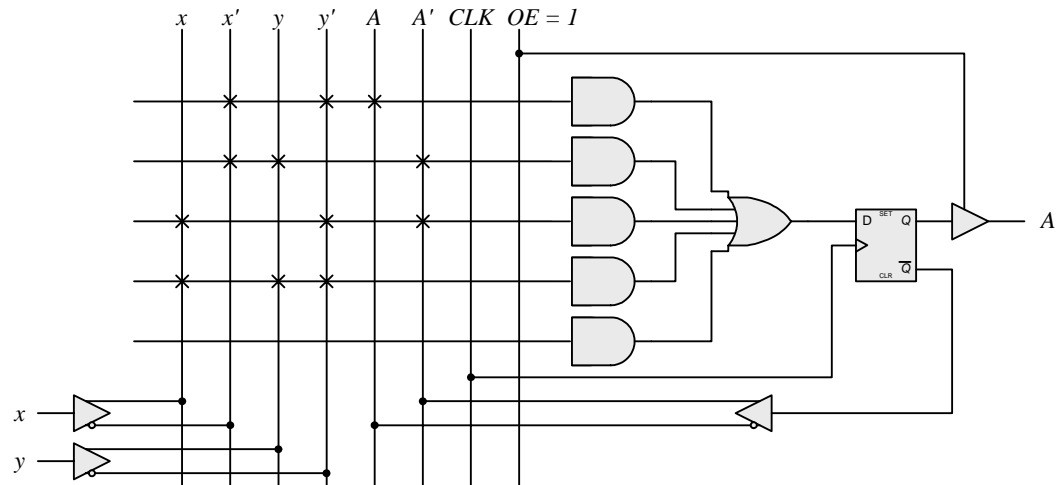
7.25



AND				
Product term	Inputs			Outputs
	x	y	z	A
1	-	1	0	-
2	1	-	0	-
3	0	0	1	-
4	0	0	-	-
5	1	1	-	-
6	0	1	1	-
7	0	-	-	1
8	1	1	1	-
9	0	-	-	-
10	0	-	1	-
11	0	1	-	-
12	-	-	-	-

A = yz' + xz' + x'y'z  
B = x'y' + xy + yz  
C = A + xyz  
D = z + x'y

7.26



7.27

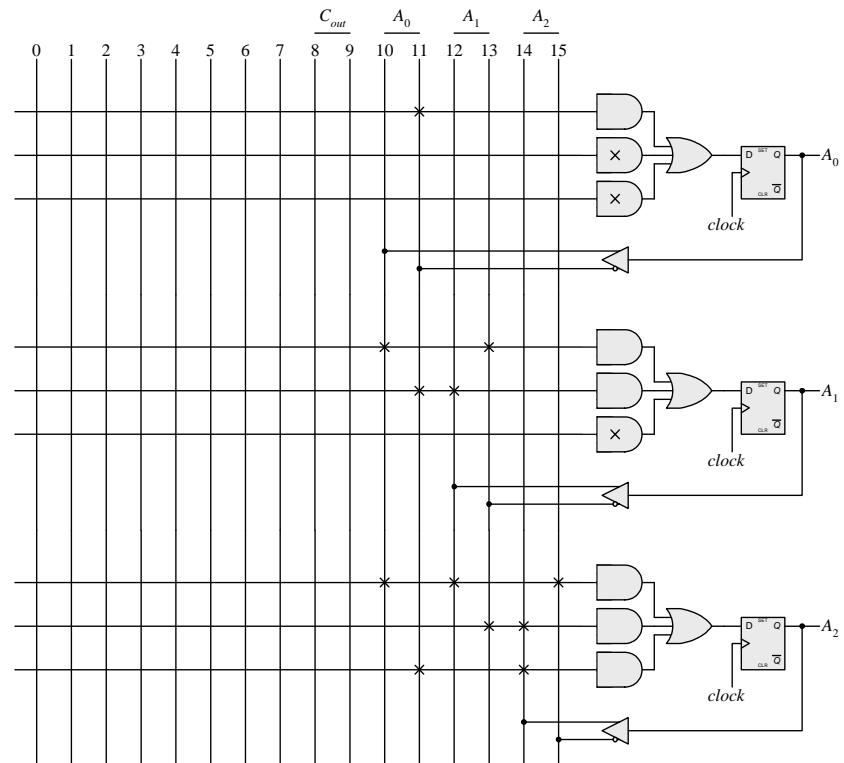
The results of Prob. 6.17 can be used to develop the equations for a three-bit binary counter with D-type flip-flops.

$$DA_0 = A'_0$$

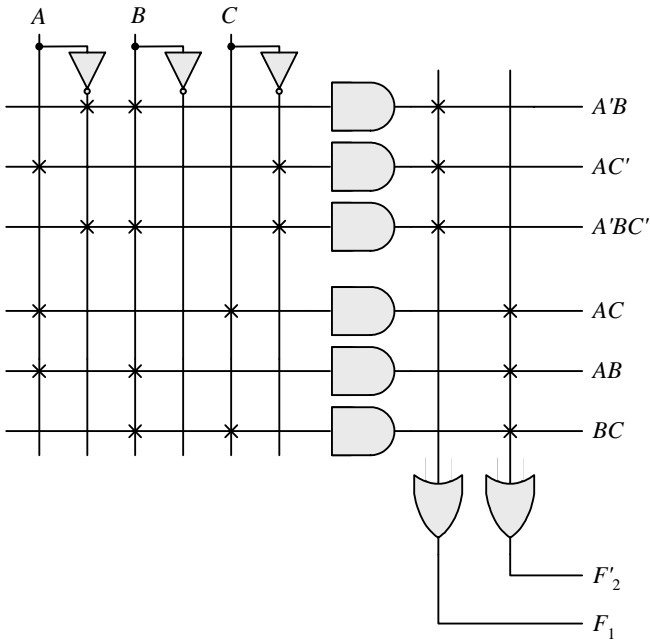
$$DA_1 = A'_1A_0 + A_1A'_0$$

$$DA_2 = A'_2A_1A_0 + A_2A'_1 + A_2A'_0$$

$$C_{out} = A_2A_1A_0$$



7.28



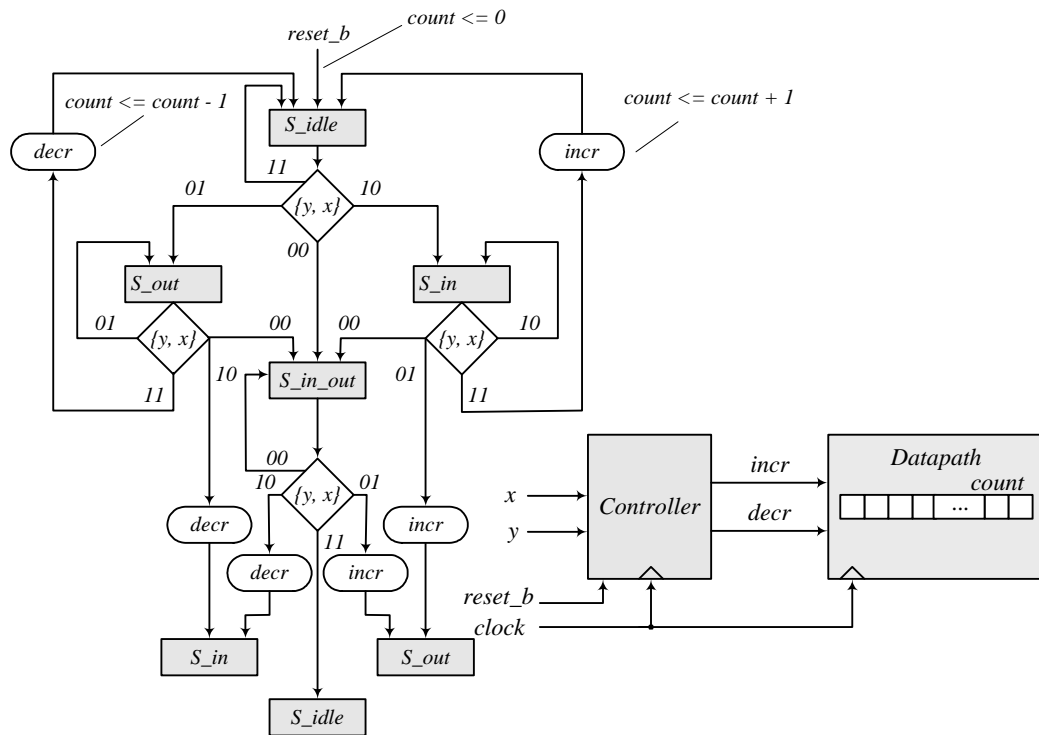
7.29

Product term	Inputs			Output
	$x$	$y$	$A$	$D_A$
$x'y'A$	1	0	0	1
$x'yA'$	2	0	1	1
$xy'A'$	3	1	0	1
$xyA$	4	1	1	1



## 8.6

Note: In practice, the asynchronous inputs  $x$  and  $y$  should be synchronized to the clock to avoid metastable conditions in the flip-flops..



Note: To avoid counting a person more than once, the machine waits until  $x$  or  $y$  is de-asserted before incrementing or decrementing the counter. The machine also accounts for persons entering and leaving simultaneously.

## 8.7

RTL notation:

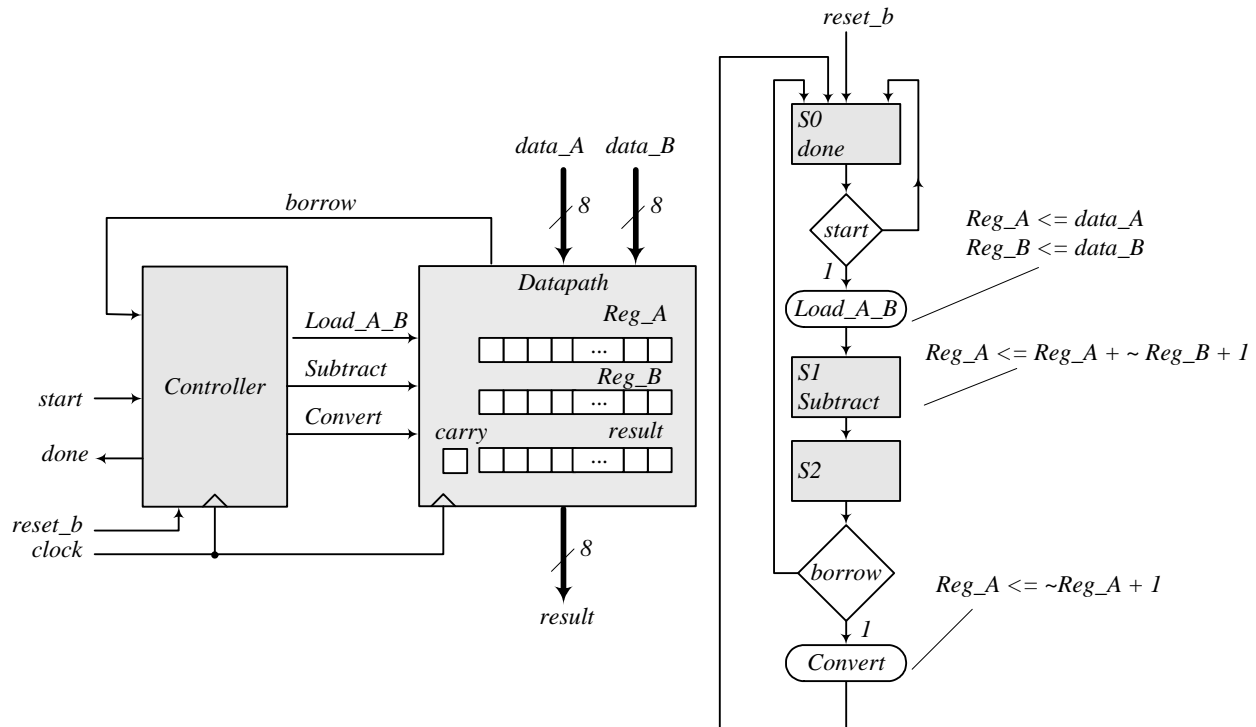
$S0$ : Initial state: if (start = 1) then ( $RA \leftarrow data\_A$ ,  $RB \leftarrow data\_B$ , go to  $S1$ ).

$S1$ :  $\{Carry, RA\} \leftarrow RA + (2's \text{ complement of } RB)$ , go to  $S2$ .

$S2$ : If (borrow = 0) go to  $S0$ . If (borrow = 1) then  $RA \leftarrow (2's \text{ complement of } RA)$ , go to  $S0$ .

Block diagram and ASMD chart:





```

module Subtractor_P8_7
  (output done, output [7:0] result, input [7:0] data_A, data_B, input start, clock, reset_b);

  Controller_P8_7 M0 (Load_A_B, Subtract, Convert, done, start, borrow, clock, reset_b);
  Datapath_P8_7 M1 (result, borrow, data_A, data_B, Load_A_B, Subtract, Convert, clock, reset_b);
endmodule

```

```

module Controller_P8_7 (output reg Load_A_B, Subtract, output reg Convert, output done,
  input start, borrow, clock, reset_b);
  parameter S0 = 2'b00, S1 = 2'b01, S2 = 2'b10;
  reg [1:0] state, next_state;
  assign done = (state == S0);

```

```

always @ (posedge clock, negedge reset_b)
  if (!reset_b) state <= S0; else state <= next_state;

```

```

always @ (state, start, borrow) begin

```

```

  Load_A_B = 0;
  Subtract = 0;
  Convert = 0;

```

```

case (state)

```

```

  S0: if (start) begin Load_A_B = 1; next_state = S1; end
  S1: begin Subtract = 1; next_state = S2; end
  S2: begin next_state = S0; if (borrow) Convert = 1; end
  default: next_state = S0;
endcase

```

```

end
endmodule

```

```

module Datapath_P8_7 (output [7:0] result, output borrow, input [7:0] data_A, data_B,
  input Load_A_B, Subtract, Convert, clock, reset_b);
  reg carry;
  reg [8:0] diff;
  reg [7:0] RA, RB;

```

```

assign    borrow = carry;
assign result = RA;

always @ (posedge clock, negedge reset_b)
if (!reset_b) begin carry <= 1'b0; RA <= 8'b0000_0000; RB <= 8'b0000_0000; end
else begin
    if (Load_A_B) begin RA <= data_A; RB <= data_B; end
    else if (Subtract) {carry, RA} <= RA + ~RB + 1;

    // In the statement above, the math of the LHS is done to the wordlength of the LHS
    // The statement below is more explicit about how the math for subtraction is done:
    // else if (Subtract) {carry, RA} <= {1'b0, RA} + {1'b1, ~RB } + 9'b0000_0001;
    // If the 9-th bit is not considered, the 2s complement operation will generate a carry bit,
    // and borrow must be formed as borrow = ~carry.

    else if (Convert) RA <= ~RA + 8'b0000_0001;
end
endmodule

// Test plan – Verify;
// Power-up reset
// Subtraction with data_A > data_B
// Subtraction with data_A < data_B
// Subtraction with data_A = data_B
// Reset on-the-fly: left as an exercise

module t_Subtractor_P8_7;
    wire    done;
    wire    [7:0] result;
    reg     [7:0] data_A, data_B;
    reg     start, clock, reset_b;

    Subtractor_P8_7 M0 (done, result, data_A, data_B, start, clock, reset_b);

    initial #200 $finish;
    initial begin clock = 0; forever #5 clock = ~clock; end
    initial fork
        reset_b = 0;
        #2 reset_b = 1;
        #90 reset_b = 1;
        #92 reset_b = 1;
    join

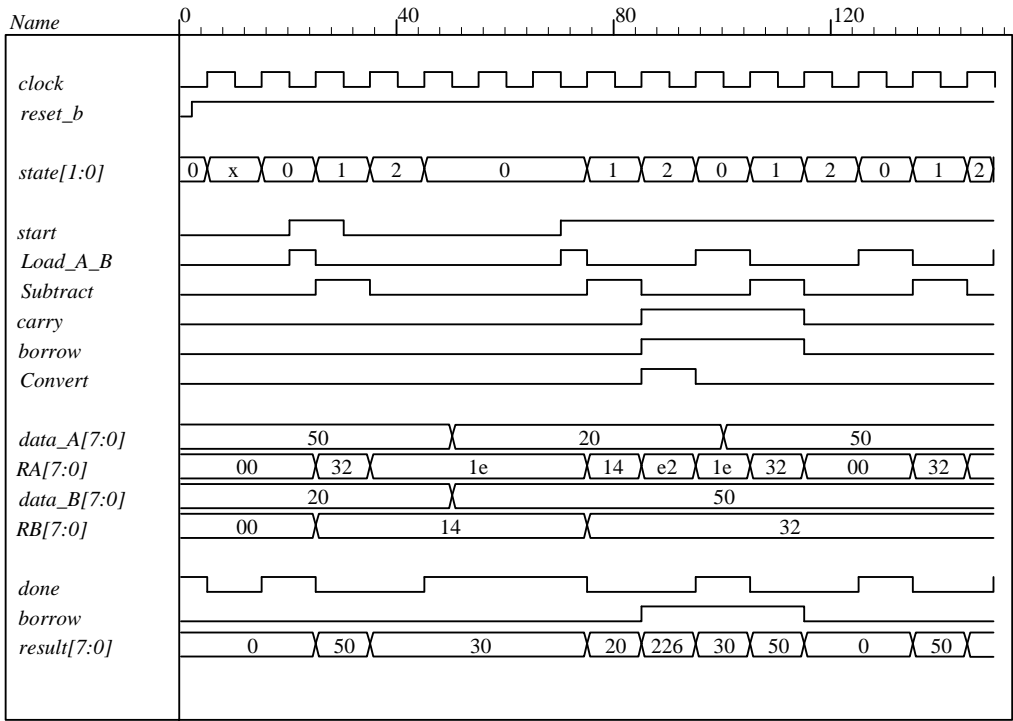
    initial fork
        #20 start = 1;
        #30 start = 0;
        #70 start = 1;
        #110 start = 1;
    join

    initial fork
        data_A = 8'd50;
        data_B = 8'd20;

        #50 data_A = 8'd20;
        #50 data_B = 8'd50;

        #100 data_A = 8'd50;
        #100 data_B = 8'd50;
    join
endmodule

```



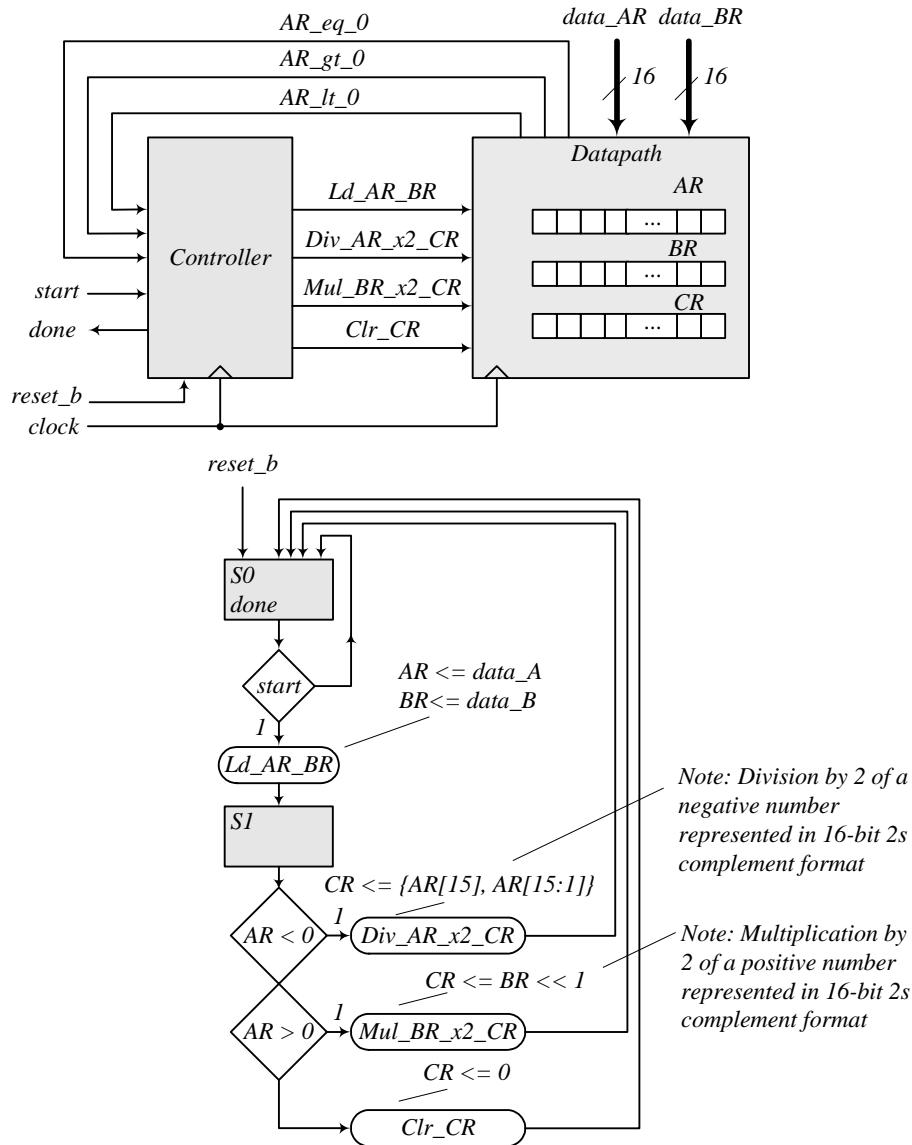
**8.8** RTL notation:

*S0*: if (start = 1) *AR* ← input data, *BR* ← input data, go to *S1*.

*S1*: if (*AR* [15]) = 1 (sign bit negative) then *CR* ← *AR*(shifted right, sign extension).

else if (positive non-zero) then (Overflow ← *BR*[(15) ⊕ (14)], *CR* ← *BR*(shifted left)

else if (*AR* = 0) then (*CR* ← 0).



```
module Prob_8_8 (output done, input [15: 0] data_AR, data_BR, input start, clock, reset_b);
```

```
Controller_P8_8 M0 (
    Ld_AR_BR, Div_AR_x2_CR, Mul_BR_x2_CR, Clr_CR, done,
    start, AR_lt_0, AR_gt_0, AR_eq_0, clock, reset_b
);
```

```
Datapath_P8_8 M1 (
    Overflow, AR_lt_0, AR_gt_0, AR_eq_0, data_AR, data_BR,
    Ld_AR_BR, Div_AR_x2_CR, Mul_BR_x2_CR, Clr_CR, clock, reset_b
);
endmodule
```

```

module Controller_P8_8 (
    output reg Ld_AR_BR, Div_AR_x2_CR, Mul_BR_x2_CR, Clr_CR,
    output done, input start, AR_lt_0, AR_gt_0, AR_eq_0, clock, reset_b
);
    parameter S0 = 1'b0, S1 = 1'b1;
    reg state, next_state;
    assign done = (state == S0);

    always @ (posedge clock, negedge reset_b)
        if (!reset_b) state <= S0; else state <= next_state;

    always @ (state, start, AR_lt_0, AR_gt_0, AR_eq_0) begin
        Ld_AR_BR = 0;
        Div_AR_x2_CR = 0;
        Mul_BR_x2_CR = 0;
        Clr_CR = 0;

        case (state)
            S0: if (start) begin Ld_AR_BR = 1; next_state = S1; end
            S1: begin
                    next_state = S0;
                    if (AR_lt_0) Div_AR_x2_CR = 1;
                    else if (AR_gt_0) Mul_BR_x2_CR = 1;
                    else if (AR_eq_0) Clr_CR = 1;
                end
            default: next_state = S0;
        endcase
    end
endmodule

module Datapath_P8_8 (
    output reg Overflow, output AR_lt_0, AR_gt_0, AR_eq_0, input [15: 0] data_AR, data_BR,
    input Ld_AR_BR, Div_AR_x2_CR, Mul_BR_x2_CR, Clr_CR, clock, reset_b
);
    reg [15: 0] AR, BR, CR;
    assign AR_lt_0 = AR[15];
    assign AR_gt_0 = (!AR[15]) && (! AR[14:0]); // Reduction-OR
    assign AR_eq_0 = (AR == 16'b0);

    always @ (posedge clock, negedge reset_b)
        if (!reset_b) begin AR <= 8'b0; BR <= 8'b0; CR <= 16'b0; end
        else begin
            if (Ld_AR_BR) begin AR <= data_AR; BR <= data_BR; end
            else if (Div_AR_x2_CR) CR <= {AR[15], AR[15:1]}; // For compiler without arithmetic right shift
            else if (Mul_BR_x2_CR) {Overflow, CR} <= (BR << 1);
            else if (Clr_CR) CR <= 16'b0;
        end
    endmodule

// Test plan – Verify;
// Power-up reset
// If AR < 0 divide AR by 2 and transfer to CR
// If AR > 0 multiply AR by 2 and transfer to CR
// If AR = 0 clear CR
// Reset on-the-fly

```

```

module t_Prob_P8_8;
  wire      done;
  reg [15: 0] data_AR, data_BR;
  reg      start, clock, reset_b;
  reg [15: 0] AR_mag, BR_mag, CR_mag;  // To illustrate 2s complement math

  // Probes for displaying magnitude of numbers
  always @ (M0.M1.AR)           // Hierarchical dereferencing
    if (M0.M1.AR[15]) AR_mag = ~M0.M1.AR+ 16'd1; else AR_mag = M0.M1.AR;
  always @ (M0.M1.BR )
    if (M0.M1.BR[15]) BR_mag = ~M0.M1.BR+ 16'd1; else BR_mag = M0.M1.BR;
  always @ (M0.M1.CR)
    if (M0.M1.CR[15]) CR_mag = ~M0.M1.CR + 16'd1; else CR_mag = M0.M1.CR;

  Prob_8_8 M0 (done, data_AR, data_BR, start, clock, reset_b);

  initial #250 $finish;
  initial begin clock = 0; forever #5 clock = ~clock; end
  initial fork
    reset_b = 0;    // Power-up reset
    #2 reset_b = 1;
    #50 reset_b = 0; // Reset on-the-fly
    #52 reset_b = 1;
    #90 reset_b = 1;
    #92 reset_b = 1;
  join

  initial fork
    #20 start = 1;
    #30 start = 0;
    #70 start = 1;
    #110 start = 1;
  join

  initial fork
    data_AR = 16'd50;    // AR > 0
    data_BR = 16'd20;    // Result should be 40

    #50 data_AR = 16'd20;
    #50 data_BR = 16'd50; // Result should be 100

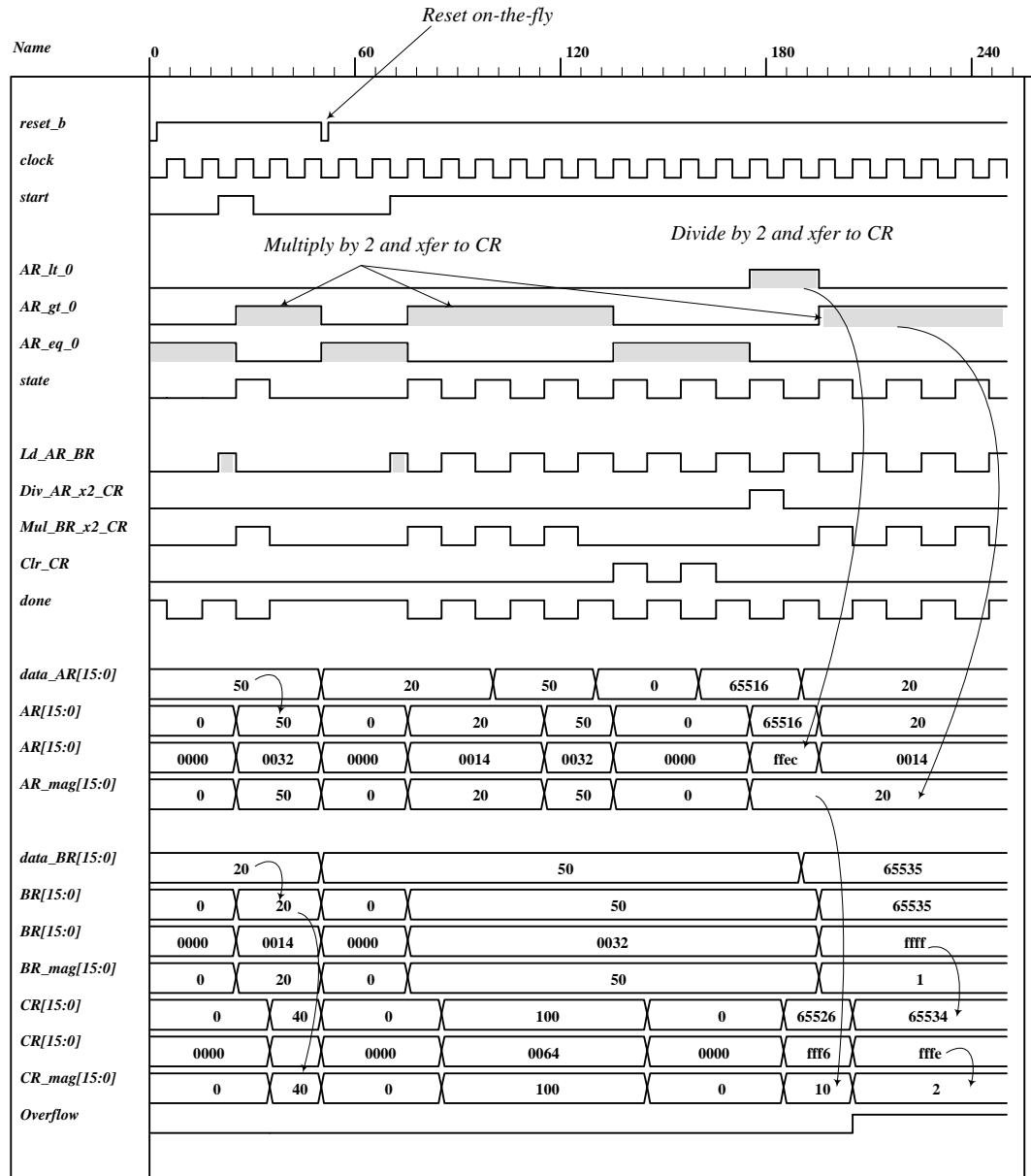
    #100 data_AR = 16'd50;
    #100 data_BR = 16'd50;

    #130 data_AR = 16'd0; // AR = 0, result should clear CR

    #160 data_AR = -16'd20; // AR < 0, Verilog stores 16-bit 2s complement
    #160 data_BR = 16'd50; // Result should have magnitude 10

    #190 data_AR = 16'd20; // AR < 0, Verilog stores 16-bit 2s complement
    #190 data_BR = 16'hffff; // Result should have overflow
  join
endmodule

```



## 8.9

Design equations:

$$D_{S\_idle} = S\_2 + S\_idle \text{ Start'}$$

$$D_{S\_1} = S\_idle \text{ Start} + S\_1 (A2 \ A3)'$$

$$D_{S\_2} = A2 \ A3 \ S\_1$$

HDL description:

```
module Prob_8_9 (output E, F, output [3: 0] A, output A2, A3, input Start, clock, reset_b);
```

```
    Controller_Prob_8_9 M0 (set_E, clr_E, set_F, clr_A_F, incr_A, Start, A2, A3, clock, reset_b);
```

```
    Datapath_Prob_8_9 M1 (E, F, A, A2, A3, set_E, clr_E, set_F, clr_A_F, incr_A, clock, reset_b);
```

```
endmodule
```

```
// Structural version of the controller (one-hot)
```

```
// Note that the flip-flop for S_idle must have a set input and reset_b is wire to the set
```

```
// Simulation results match Fig. 8-13
```

```
module Controller_Prob_8_9 (
```

```
    output    set_E, clr_E, set_F, clr_A_F, incr_A,
```

```
    input     Start, A2, A3, clock, reset_b
```

```
);
```

```
    wire      D_S_idle, D_S_1, D_S_2;
```

```
    wire      q_S_idle, q_S_1, q_S_2;
```

```
    wire      w0, w1, w2, w3;
```

```
    wire [2:0] state = {q_S_2, q_S_1, q_S_idle};
```

```
// Next-State Logic
```

```
or (D_S_idle, q_S_2, w0);    // input to D-type flip-flop for q_S_idle
```

```
and (w0, q_S_idle, Start_b);
```

```
not (Start_b, Start);
```

```
or (D_S_1, w1, w2, w3);    // input to D-type flip-flop for q_S_1
```

```
and (w1, q_S_idle, Start);
```

```
and (w2, q_S_1, A2_b);
```

```
not (A2_b, A2);
```

```
and (w3, q_S_1, A2, A3_b);
```

```
not (A3_b, A3);
```

```
and (D_S_2, A2, A3, q_S_1);    // input to D-type flip-flop for q_S_2
```

```
D_flop_S M0 (q_S_idle, D_S_idle, clock, reset_b);
```

```
D_flop M1 (q_S_1, D_S_1, clock, reset_b);
```

```
D_flop M2 (q_S_2, D_S_2, clock, reset_b);
```

```
// Output Logic
```

```
and (set_E, q_S_1, A2);
```

```
and (clr_E, q_S_1, A2_b);
```

```
buf (set_F, q_S_2);
```

```
and (clr_A_F, q_S_idle, Start);
```

```
buf (incr_A, q_S_1);
```

```
endmodule
```

```
module D_flop (output reg q, input data, clock, reset_b);
```

```
    always @ (posedge clock, negedge reset_b)
```

```
        if (!reset_b) q <= 1'b0; else q <= data;
```

```
endmodule
```



```

module D_flop_S (output reg q, input data, clock, set_b);
    always @ (posedge clock, negedge set_b)
        if (!set_b) q <= 1'b1; else q <= data;
endmodule

/*
// RTL Version of the controller
// Simulation results match Fig. 8-13

module Controller_Prob_8_9 (
    output reg set_E, clr_E, set_F, clr_A_F, incr_A,
    input Start, A2, A3, clock, reset_b
);
    parameter S_idle = 3'b001, S_1 = 3'b010, S_2 = 3'b100; // One-hot
    reg [2: 0] state, next_state;

    always @ (posedge clock, negedge reset_b)
        if (!reset_b) state <= S_idle; else state <= next_state;

    always @ (state, Start, A2, A3) begin
        set_E = 1'b0;
        clr_E = 1'b0;
        set_F = 1'b0;
        clr_A_F = 1'b0;
        incr_A = 1'b0;
        case (state)
            S_idle: if (Start) begin next_state = S_1; clr_A_F = 1; end
                     else next_state = S_idle;

            S_1: begin
                    incr_A = 1;
                    if (!A2) begin next_state = S_1; clr_E = 1; end
                    else begin
                        set_E = 1;
                        if (A3) next_state = S_2; else next_state = S_1;
                    end
                end

            S_2: begin next_state = S_idle; set_F = 1; end
            default: next_state = S_idle;
        endcase
    end
endmodule
*/

module Datapath_Prob_8_9 (
    output reg E, F, output reg [3: 0] A, output A2, A3,
    input set_E, clr_E, set_F, clr_A_F, incr_A, clock, reset_b
);
    assign A2 = A[2];
    assign A3 = A[3];

    always @ (posedge clock, negedge reset_b) begin
        if (!reset_b) begin E <= 0; F <= 0; A <= 0; end
        else begin
            if (set_E) E <= 1;
            if (clr_E) E <= 0;
            if (set_F) F <= 1;
            if (clr_A_F) begin A <= 0; F <= 0; end
            if (incr_A) A <= A + 1;
        end
    end
endmodule

```

// Test Plan - Verify: (1) Power-up reset, (2) match ASMD chart in Fig. 8-9 (d),  
// (3) recover from reset on-the-fly

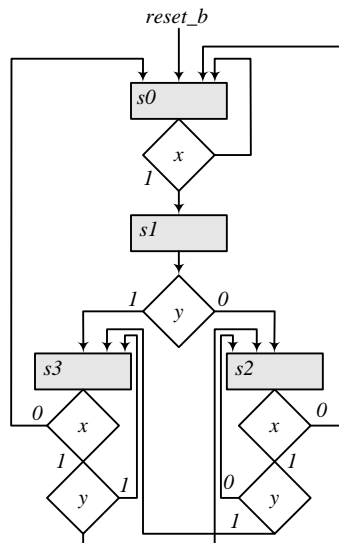
```

module t_Prob_8_9;
wire E, F;
wire [3: 0] A;
wire A2, A3;
reg Start, clock, reset_b;

Prob_8_9 M0 (E, F, A, A2, A3, Start, clock, reset_b);

initial #500 $finish;
initial begin clock = 0; forever #5 clock = ~clock; end
initial begin reset_b = 0; #2 reset_b = 1; end
initial fork
    #20 Start = 1;
    #40 reset_b = 0;
    #62 reset_b = 1;
join
endmodule
    
```

## 8.10



```

module Prob_8_10 (input x, y, clock, reset_b);
reg [ 1: 0] state, next_state;
parameter s0 = 2'b00, s1 = 2'b01, s2 = 2'b10, s3 = 2'b11;
always @ (posedge clock, negedge reset_b)
    if (reset_b == 0) state <= s0; else state <= next_state;

always @ (state, x, y) begin
    next_state = s0;
    case (state)
        s0: if (x == 0) next_state = s0; else next_state = s1;
        s1: if (y == 0) next_state = s2; else next_state = s3;
        s2: if (x == 0) next_state = s0; else if (y == 0) next_state = s2; else next_state = s3;
        s3: if (x == 0) next_state = s0; else if (y == 0) next_state = s2; else next_state = s3;
    endcase
end
endmodule
    
```

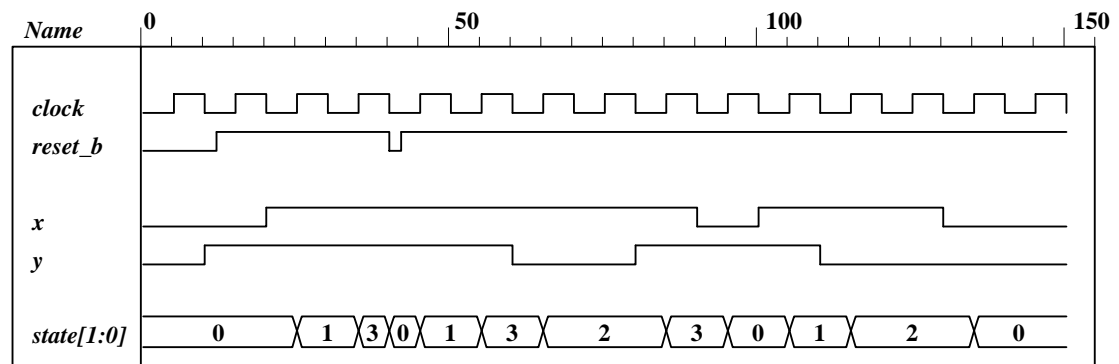
```

module t_Prob_8_10 ();
  reg x, y, clock, reset_b;

  Prob_8_10 M0 (x, y, clock, reset_b);

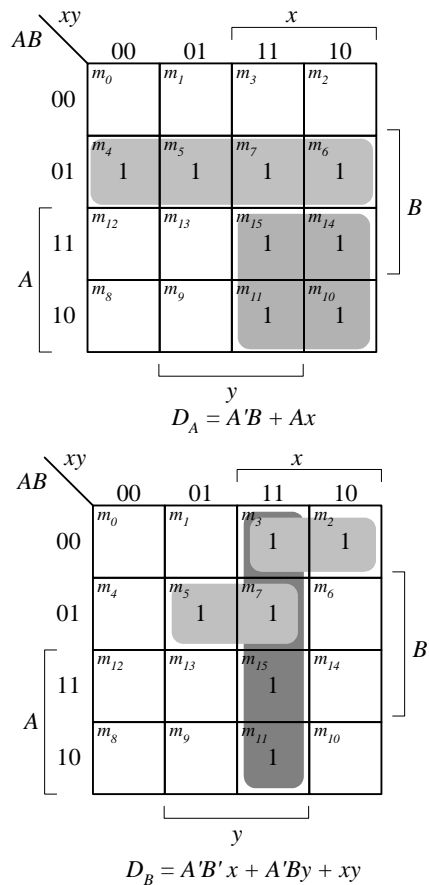
  initial #150 $finish;
  initial begin clock = 0; forever #5 clock = ~clock; end
  initial fork
    reset_b = 0;
    #12 reset_b = 1;
    x = 0; y = 0;      // Remain in s0
    #10 y = 1;         // Remain in s0
    #20 x = 1;         // Go to s1 to s3
    #40 reset_b = 0;   // Go to s0
    #42 reset_b = 1;   // Go to s2 to s3
    #60 y = 0;         // Go to s2
    #80 y = 1;         // Go to s3
    #90 x = 0;         // Go to s0
    #100 x = 1;        // Go to s1
    #110 y = 0;        // Go to s2
    #130 x = 0;        // Go to s0
  join
endmodule

```

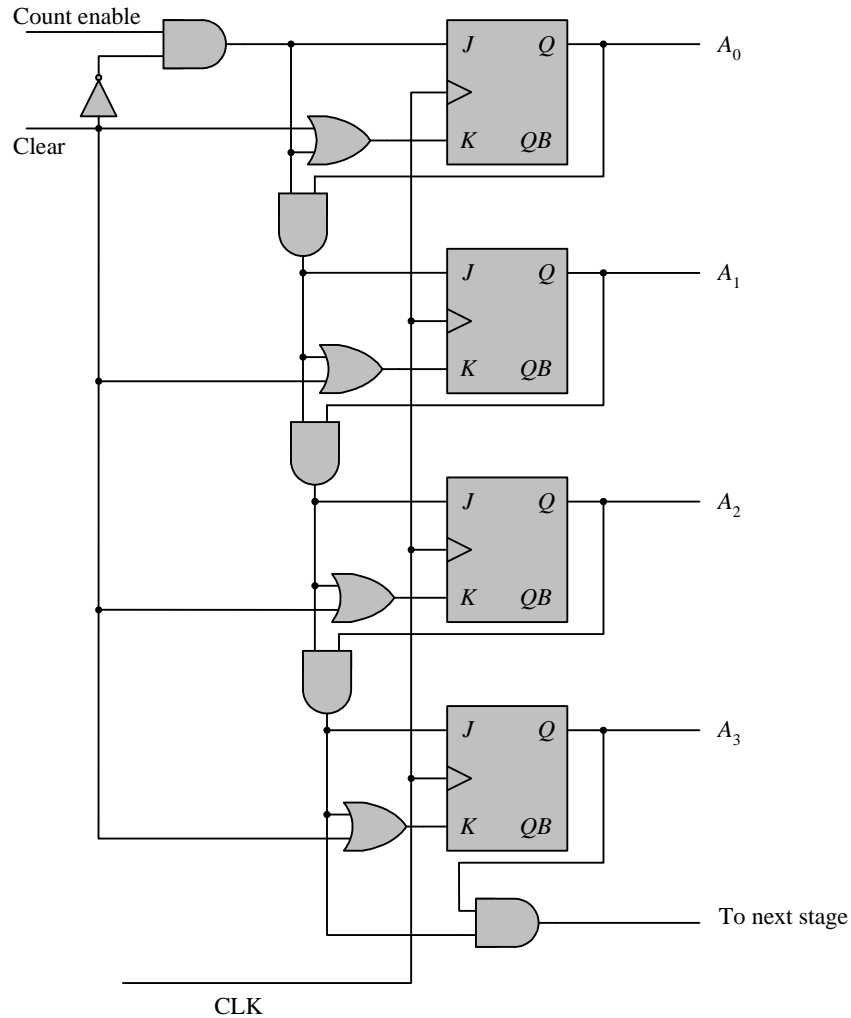


8.11  $D_A = A'B + Ax$   
 $D_B = A'B'x + A'By + xy$

state	inputs	next state
0 0	0 0	0 0
0 0	0 1	0 0
0 0	1 0	0 1
0 0	1 1	0 1
0 1	0 0	1 0
0 1	0 1	1 1
0 1	1 0	1 0
0 1	1 1	1 1
1 0	0 0	0 0
1 0	0 1	0 0
1 0	1 0	1 0
1 0	1 1	1 1
1 1	0 0	0 0
1 1	0 1	0 0
1 1	1 0	1 0
1 1	1 1	1 1



8.12 Modify the counter in Fig. 6.12 to add a signal, Clear, to clear the counter synchronously, as shown in the circuit diagram below.



```

module Counter_4bit_Synch_Clr (output [3: 0] A, output next_stage, input Count_enable, Clear, CLK);
  wire A0, A1, A2, A3;
  assign A[3: 0] = {A3, A2, A1, A0};
  JK_FF M0 (A0, J0, K0, CLK);
  JK_FF M1 (A1, J1, K1, CLK);
  JK_FF M2 (A2, J2, K2, CLK);
  JK_FF M3 (A3, J3, K3, CLK);

  not (Clear_b, Clear);
  and (J0, Count_enable, Clear_b);
  and (J1, J0, A0);
  and (J2, J1, A1);
  and (J3, J2, A2);

  or (K0, Clear, J0);
  or (K1, Clear, J1);
  or (K2, Clear, J2);
  or (K3, Clear, J3);

  and (next_stage, A3, J3);

endmodule

```

```

module JK_FF (output reg Q, input J, K, clock);
  always @ (posedge clock)
    case ({J,K})
      2'b00: Q <= Q;
      2'b01: Q <= 0;
      2'b10: Q <= 1;
      2'b11: Q <= ~Q;
    endcase
endmodule

```

```

module t_Counter_4bit_Synch_Clr ();
  wire [3: 0] A;
  wire next_stage;
  reg Count_enable, Clear, clock;

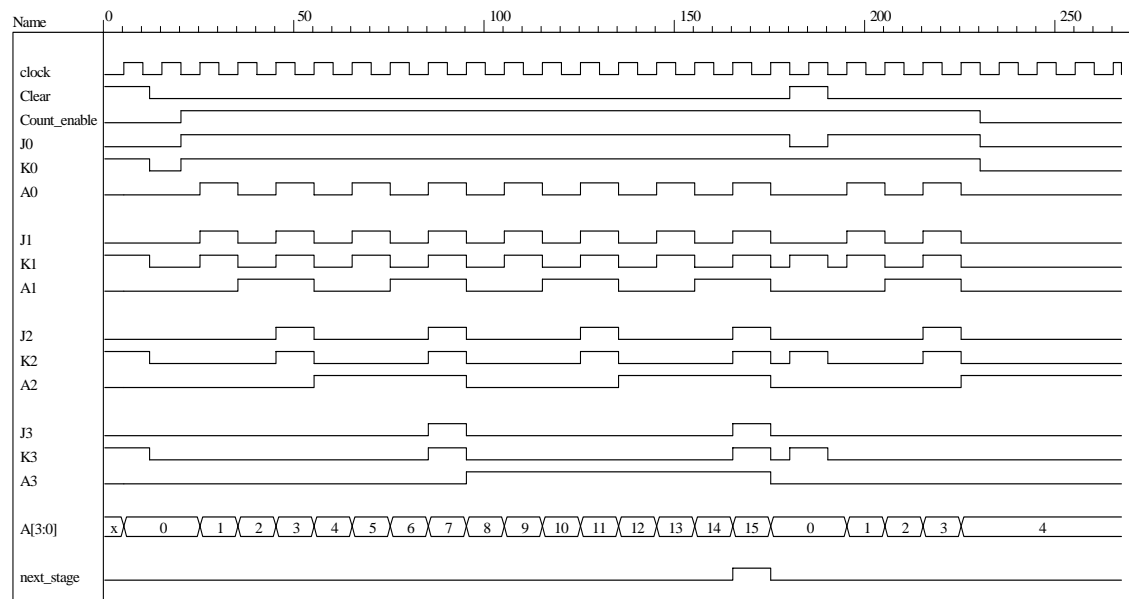
```

Counter\_4bit\_Synch\_Clr M0 (A, next\_stage, Count\_enable, Clear, clock);

```

initial #300 $finish;
initial begin clock = 0; forever #5 clock = ~clock; end
initial fork
  Clear = 1;
  Count_enable = 0;
  #12 Clear = 0;
  #20 Count_enable = 1;
  #180 Clear = 1;
  #190 Clear = 0;
  #230 Count_enable = 0;
join
endmodule

```



### 8.13

// Structural description of design example (Fig. 8-10, 8-12)

```

module Design_Example_STR
  ( output [3:0] A,
    output      E, F,
    input      Start, clock, reset_b
  );

```

```

    Controller_STR M0 (clr_A_F, set_E, clr_E, set_F, incr_A, Start, A[2], A[3], clock, reset_b);
    Datapath_STR M1 (A, E, F, clr_A_F, set_E, clr_E, set_F, incr_A, clock);
endmodule

```

```

module Controller_STR
( output clr_A_F, set_E, clr_E, set_F, incr_A,
  input Start, A2, A3, clock, reset_b
);

    wire      G0, G1;
    parameter S_idle = 2'b00, S_1 = 2'b01, S_2 = 2'b11;
    wire      w1, w2, w3;

    not (G0_b, G0);
    not (G1_b, G1);
    buf (incr_A, w2);
    buf (set_F, G1);
    not (A2_b, A2);
    or (D_G0, w1, w2);
    and (w1, Start, G0_b);
    and (clr_A_F, G0_b, Start);
    and (w2, G0, G1_b);
    and (set_E, w2, A2);
    and (clr_E, w2, A2_b);
    and (D_G1, w3, w2);
    and (w3, A2, A3);
    D_flip_flop_AR M0 (G0, D_G0, clock, reset_b);
    D_flip_flop_AR M1 (G1, D_G1, clock, reset_b);
endmodule

```

// datapath unit

```

module Datapath_STR
( output [3: 0] A,
  output      E, F,
  input      clr_A_F, set_E, clr_E, set_F, incr_A, clock
);

    JK_flip_flop_2 M0 (E, E_b, set_E, clr_E, clock);
    JK_flip_flop_2 M1 (F, F_b, set_F, clr_A_F, clock);
    Counter_4 M2 (A, incr_A, clr_A_F, clock);

endmodule

module Counter_4 (output reg [3: 0] A, input incr, clear, clock);
    always @ (posedge clock)
        if (clear)    A <= 0; else if (incr) A <= A + 1;
endmodule

module D_flip_flop_AR (Q, D, CLK, RST);
    output  Q;
    input  D, CLK, RST;
    reg  Q;

    always @ (posedge CLK, negedge RST)
        if (RST == 0) Q <= 1'b0;
        else Q <= D;
endmodule

module JK_flip_flop_2 (Q, Q_not, J, K, CLK);

```

```

output    Q, Q_not;
input J, K, CLK;
reg    Q;

assign    Q_not = ~Q
;
always @ (posedge CLK)
  case ({J, K})
    2'b00: Q <= Q;
    2'b01: Q <= 1'b0;
    2'b10: Q <= 1'b1;
    2'b11: Q <= ~Q;
  endcase
endmodule

module t_Design_Example_STR;
  reg      Start, clock, reset_b;
  wire [3: 0]  A;
  wire      E, F;
  wire [1:0] state_STR = {M0.M0.G1, M0.M0.G0};

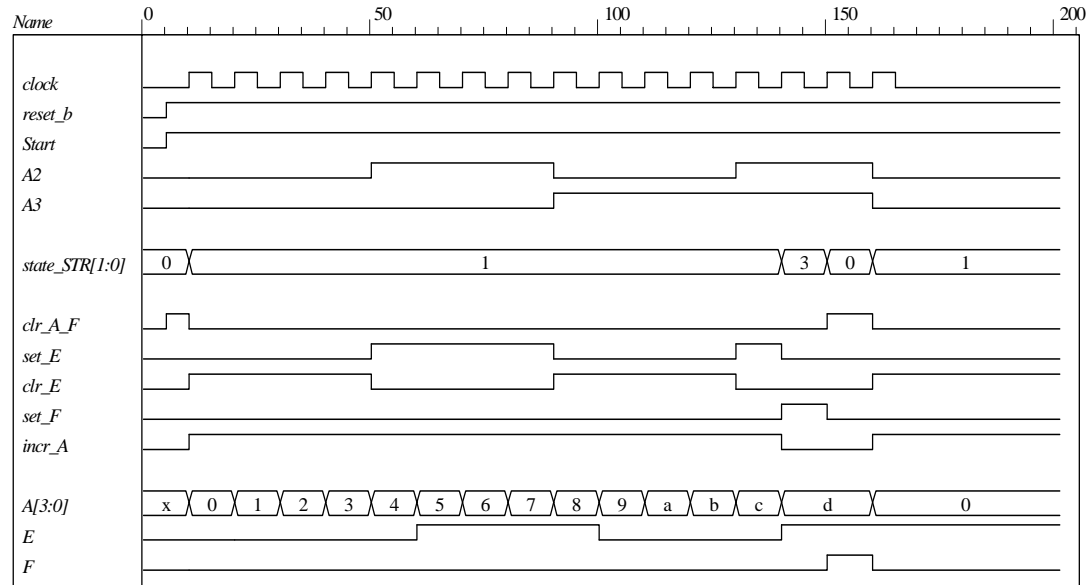
  Design_Example_STR M0 (A, E, F, Start, clock, reset_b);

  initial #500 $finish;
  initial
    begin
      reset_b = 0;
      Start = 0;
      clock = 0;
      #5 reset_b = 1; Start = 1;
      repeat (32)
        begin
          #5 clock = ~ clock;
        end
      end
    initial
      $monitor ("A = %b E = %b F = %b time = %0d", A, E, F, $time);
endmodule

```

The simulation results shown below match Fig. 8.13.





**8.14** The state code 2'b10 is unused. If the machine enters an unused state, the controller is written with default assignment to *next\_state*. The default assignment forces the state to *S\_idle*, so the machine recovers from the condition.

**8.15** Modify the test bench to insert a reset event and extend the clock.

// RTL description of design example (see Fig.8-11)

**module** Design\_Example\_RTL (A, E, F, Start, clock, reset\_b);

// Specify ports of the top-level module of the design

// See block diagram Fig. 8-10

**output** [3: 0] A;

**output** E, F;

**input** Start, clock, reset\_b;

// Instantiate controller and datapath units

Controller\_RTL M0 (set\_E, clr\_E, set\_F, clr\_A\_F, incr\_A, A[2], A[3], Start, clock, reset\_b );

Datapath\_RTL M1 (A, E, F, set\_E, clr\_E, set\_F, clr\_A\_F, incr\_A, clock);

**endmodule**

**module** Controller\_RTL (set\_E, clr\_E, set\_F, clr\_A\_F, incr\_A, A2, A3, Start, clock, reset\_b);

**output reg** set\_E, clr\_E, set\_F, clr\_A\_F, incr\_A;

**input** Start, A2, A3, clock, reset\_b;

**reg** [1:0] state, next\_state;

**parameter** S\_idle = 2'b00, S\_1 = 2'b01, S\_2 = 2'b11; // State codes

**always @ (posedge clock or negedge reset\_b)** // State transitions (edge-sensitive)

if (reset\_b == 0) state <= S\_idle;

else state <= next\_state;

// Code next state logic directly from ASMD chart (Fig. 8-9d)

**always @ (state, Start, A2, A3 ) begin** // Next state logic (level-sensitive)

next\_state = S\_idle;

```

case (state)
    S_idle: if (Start) next_state = S_1; else next_state = S_idle;
    S_1:    if (A2 & A3) next_state = S_2; else next_state = S_1;
    S_2:    next_state = S_idle;
    default: next_state = S_idle;
endcase
end

// Code output logic directly from ASMD chart (Fig. 8-9d)

always @ (state, Start, A2) begin
    set_E = 0;      // default assignments; assign by exception
    clr_E = 0;
    set_F = 0;
    clr_A_F = 0;
    incr_A = 0;
    case (state)
        S_idle:      if (Start) clr_A_F = 1;
        S_1:         begin incr_A = 1; if (A2) set_E = 1; else clr_E = 1; end
        S_2:         set_F = 1;
    endcase
end
endmodule

module Datapath_RTL (A, E, F, set_E, clr_E, set_F, clr_A_F, incr_A, clock);
    output reg [3: 0] A;      // register for counter
    output reg E, F;        // flags
    input set_E, clr_E, set_F, clr_A_F, incr_A, clock;

    // Code register transfer operations directly from ASMD chart (Fig. 8-9d)

    always @ (posedge clock) begin
        if (set_E)      E <= 1;
        if (clr_E)      E <= 0;
        if (set_F)      F <= 1;
        if (clr_A_F)    begin A <= 0; F <= 0; end
        if (incr_A)    A <= A + 1;
    end
endmodule

module t_Design_Example_RTL;
    reg Start, clock, reset_b;
    wire [3: 0] A;
    wire E, F;

    // Instantiate design example

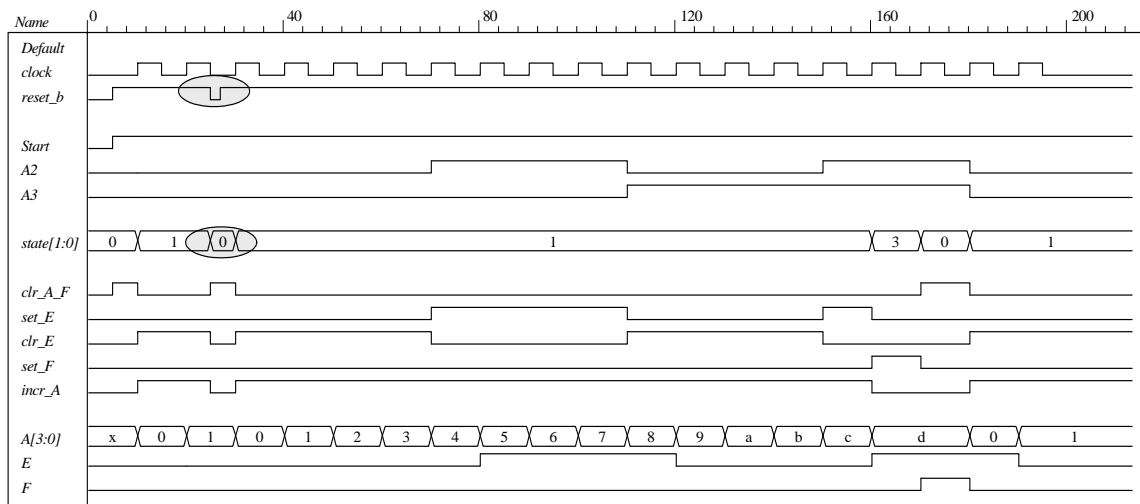
    Design_Example_RTL M0 (A, E, F, Start, clock, reset_b);

    // Describe stimulus waveforms

    initial #500 $finish;    // Stopwatch
    initial fork
        #25 reset_b = 0;    // Test for recovery from reset on-the-fly.
        #27 reset_b = 1;
    join
    initial
        begin
            reset_b = 0;
            Start = 0;
            clock = 0;

```

```
#5 reset_b = 1; Start = 1;
//repeat (32)
repeat (38)          // Modify for test of reset_b on-the-fly
begin
    #5 clock = ~ clock;    // Clock generator
end
end
initial
$monitor ("A = %b E = %b F = %b time = %0d", A, E, F, $time);
endmodule
```



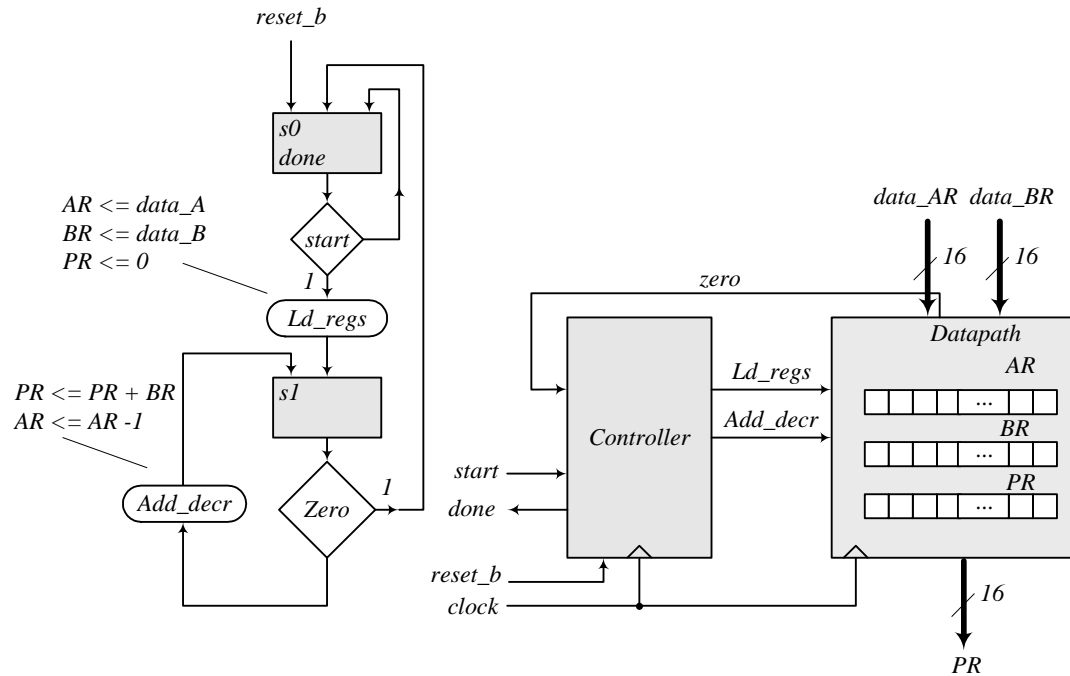
## 8.16

RTL notation:

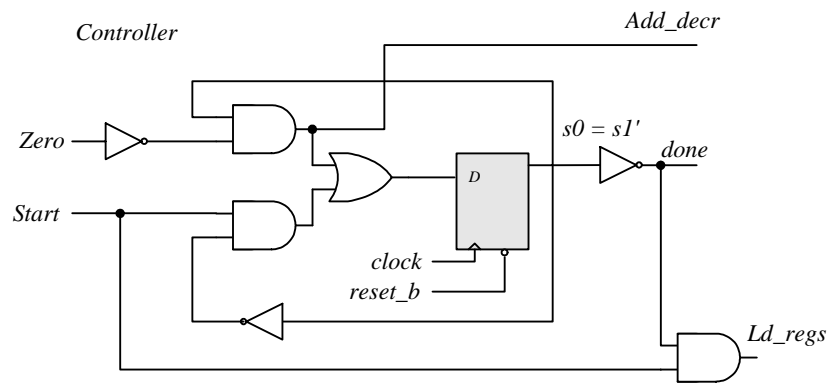
*s0*: (initial state) If *start* = 0 go back to state *s0*, If (*start* = 1) then *BR* ← *multiplicand*, *AR* ← *multiplier*, *PR* ← 0, go to *s1*.

*s1*: (check *AR* for Zero) *Zero* = 1 if *AR* = 0, if (*Zero* = 1) then go back to *s0* (done) If (*Zero* = 0) then go to *s1*, *PR* ← *PR* + *BR*, *AR* ← *AR* - 1.

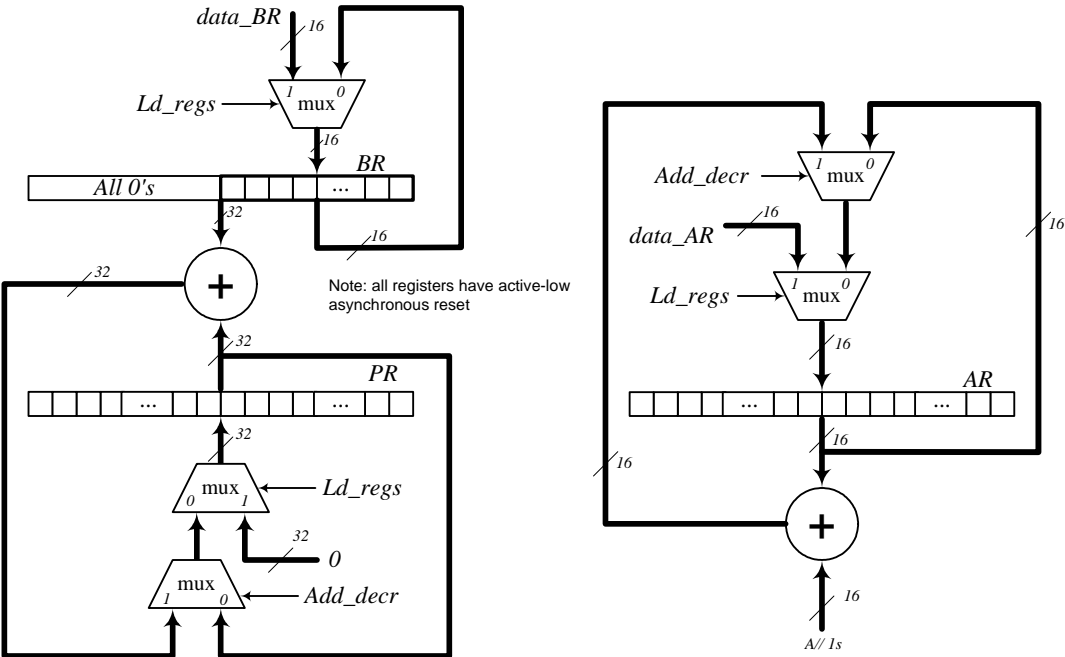
The internal architecture of the datapath consists of a double-width register to hold the product (*PR*), a register to hold the multiplier (*AR*), a register to hold the multiplicand (*BR*), a double-width parallel adder, and single-width parallel adder. The single-width adder is used to implement the operation of decrementing the multiplier unit. Adding a word consisting entirely of 1s to the multiplier accomplishes the 2's complement subtraction of 1 from the multiplier. Figure 8.16 (a) below shows the ASMD chart, block diagram, and controller of the circuit. Figure 8.16 (b) shows the internal architecture of the datapath. Figure 8.16 (c) shows the results of simulating the circuit.



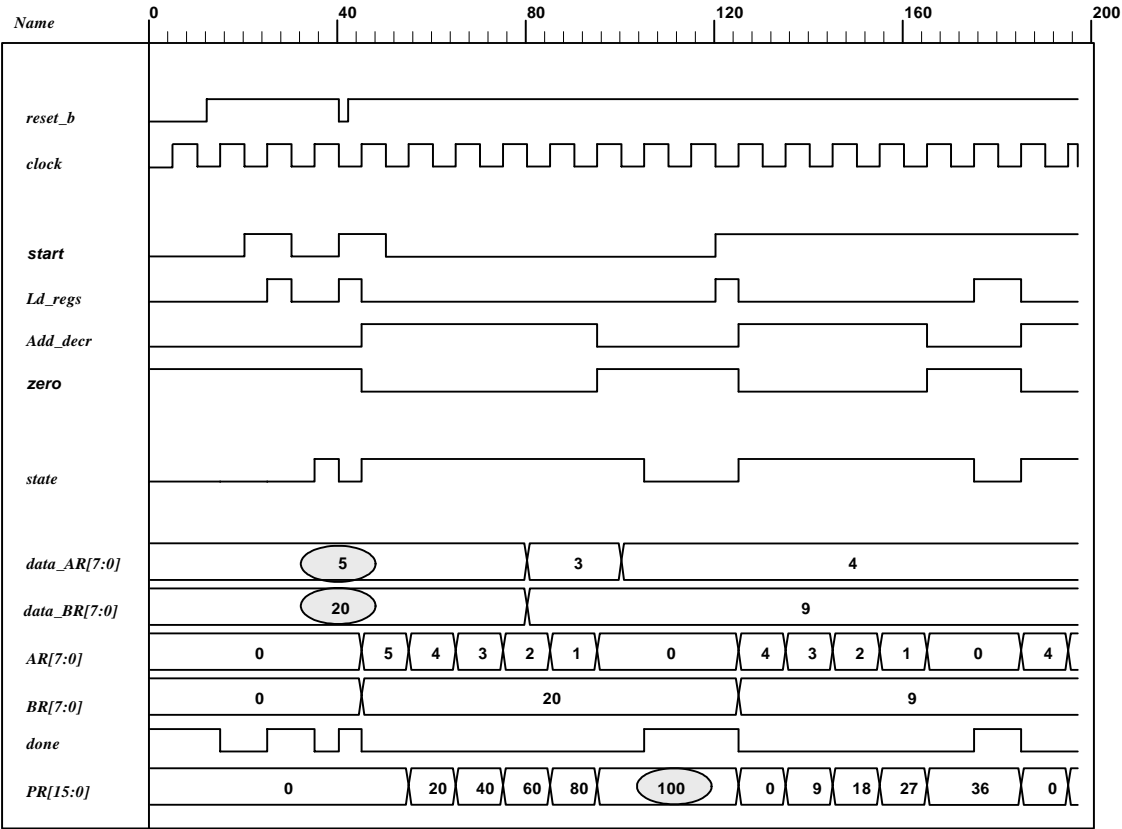
Note: Form Zero as the output of an OR gate whose inputs are the bits of the register AR.



(a) ASMD chart, block diagram, and controller



(b) Datapath



(c) Simulation results

```
module Prob_8_16_STR (  
  output [15: 0] PR, output done,  
  input [7: 0] data_AR, data_BR, input start, clock, reset_b  
);
```

```
  Controller_P8_16 M0 (done, Ld_regs, Add_decr, start, zero, clock, reset_b);
```

```
  Datapath_P8_16 M1 (PR, zero, data_AR, data_BR, Ld_regs, Add_decr, clock, reset_b);  
endmodule
```

```
module Controller_P8_16 (output done, output reg Ld_regs, Add_decr, input start, zero, clock, reset_b);  
parameter s0 = 1'b0, s1 = 1'b1;  
reg state, next_state;  
assign done = (state == s0);
```

```
always @ (posedge clock, negedge reset_b)  
if (!reset_b) state <= s0; else state <= next_state;
```

```
always @ (state, start, zero) begin  
  Ld_regs = 0;  
  Add_decr = 0;  
  case (state)  
s0:   if (start) begin Ld_regs = 1; next_state = s1; end  
s1:   if (zero) next_state = s0; else begin next_state = s1; Add_decr = 1; end  
default: next_state = s0;  
endcase  
end  
endmodule
```

```
module Register_32 (output [31: 0] data_out, input [31: 0] data_in, input clock, reset_b);  
  Register_8 M3 (data_out [31: 24] , data_in [31: 24], clock, reset_b);  
  Register_8 M2 (data_out [23: 16] , data_in [23: 16], clock, reset_b);  
  Register_8 M1 (data_out [15: 8] , data_in [15: 8], clock, reset_b);  
  Register_8 M0 (data_out [7: 0] , data_in [7: 0], clock, reset_b);  
endmodule
```

```
module Register_16 (output [15: 0] data_out, input [15: 0] data_in, input clock, reset_b);  
  Register_8 M1 (data_out [15: 8] , data_in [15: 8], clock, reset_b);  
  Register_8 M0 (data_out [7: 0] , data_in [7: 0], clock, reset_b);  
endmodule
```

```
module Register_8 (output [7: 0] data_out, input [7: 0] data_in, input clock, reset_b);  
  D_flop M7 (data_out[7] data_in[7], clock, reset_b);  
  D_flop M6 (data_out[6] data_in[6], clock, reset_b);  
  D_flop M5 (data_out[5] data_in[5], clock, reset_b);  
  D_flop M4 (data_out[4] data_in[4], clock, reset_b);  
  D_flop M3 (data_out[3] data_in[3], clock, reset_b);  
  D_flop M2 (data_out[2] data_in[2], clock, reset_b);  
  D_flop M1 (data_out[1] data_in[1], clock, reset_b);  
  D_flop M0 (data_out[0] data_in[0], clock, reset_b);  
endmodule
```

```
module Adder_32 (output c_out, output [31: 0] sum, input [31: 0] a, b);  
assign {c_out, sum} = a + b;  
endmodule
```

```
module Adder_16 (output c_out, output [15: 0] sum, input [15: 0] a, b);  
assign {c_out, sum} = a + b;  
endmodule
```

```

module D_flop (output q, input data, clock, reset_b);
always @ (posedge clock, negedge reset_b)
if (!reset_b) q <= 0; else q <= data;
endmodule

module Datapath_P8_16 (
output reg [15: 0] PR, output zero,
input [7: 0] data_AR, data_BR, input Ld_regs, Add_decr, clock, reset_b
);

reg [7: 0] AR, BR;
assign zero = ~( | AR);

always @ (posedge clock, negedge reset_b)
if (!reset_b) begin AR <= 8'b0; BR <= 8'b0; PR <= 16'b0; end
else begin
if (Ld_regs) begin AR <= data_AR; BR <= data_BR; PR <= 0; end
else if (Add_decr) begin PR <= PR + BR; AR <= AR -1; end
end
endmodule

// Test plan – Verify;
// Power-up reset
// Data is loaded correctly
// Control signals assert correctly
// Status signals assert correctly
// start is ignored while multiplying
// Multiplication is correct
// Recovery from reset on-the-fly

module t_Prob_P8_16;
wire done;
wire [15: 0] PR;
reg [7: 0] data_AR, data_BR;
reg start, clock, reset_b;

Prob_8_16_STR M0 (PR, done, data_AR, data_BR, start, clock, reset_b);

initial #500 $finish;
initial begin clock = 0; forever #5 clock = ~clock; end
initial fork
reset_b = 0;
#12 reset_b = 1;
#40 reset_b = 0;
#42 reset_b = 1;
#90 reset_b = 1;
#92 reset_b = 1;
join

initial fork
#20 start = 1;
#30 start = 0;
#40 start = 1;
#50 start = 0;
#120 start = 1;
#120 start = 0;
join

```

```

initial fork
data_AR = 8'd5;      // AR > 0
data_BR = 8'd20;

#80 data_AR = 8'd3;
#80 data_BR = 8'd9;

#100 data_AR = 8'd4;
#100 data_BR = 8'd9;
join
endmodule

```

**8.17**  $(2^n - 1)(2^n - 1) < (2^{2n} - 1)$  for  $n \geq 1$

- 8.18**
- (a) The maximum product size is 32 bits available in registers  $A$  and  $Q$ .
  - (b)  $P$  counter must have 5 bits to load 16 (binary 10000) initially.
  - (c)  $Z$  (zero) detection is generated with a 5-input NOR gate.

**8.19**

**Multiplicand**  $B = 11011_2 = 27_{10}$

**Multiplier**  $Q = 10111_2 = 23_{10}$

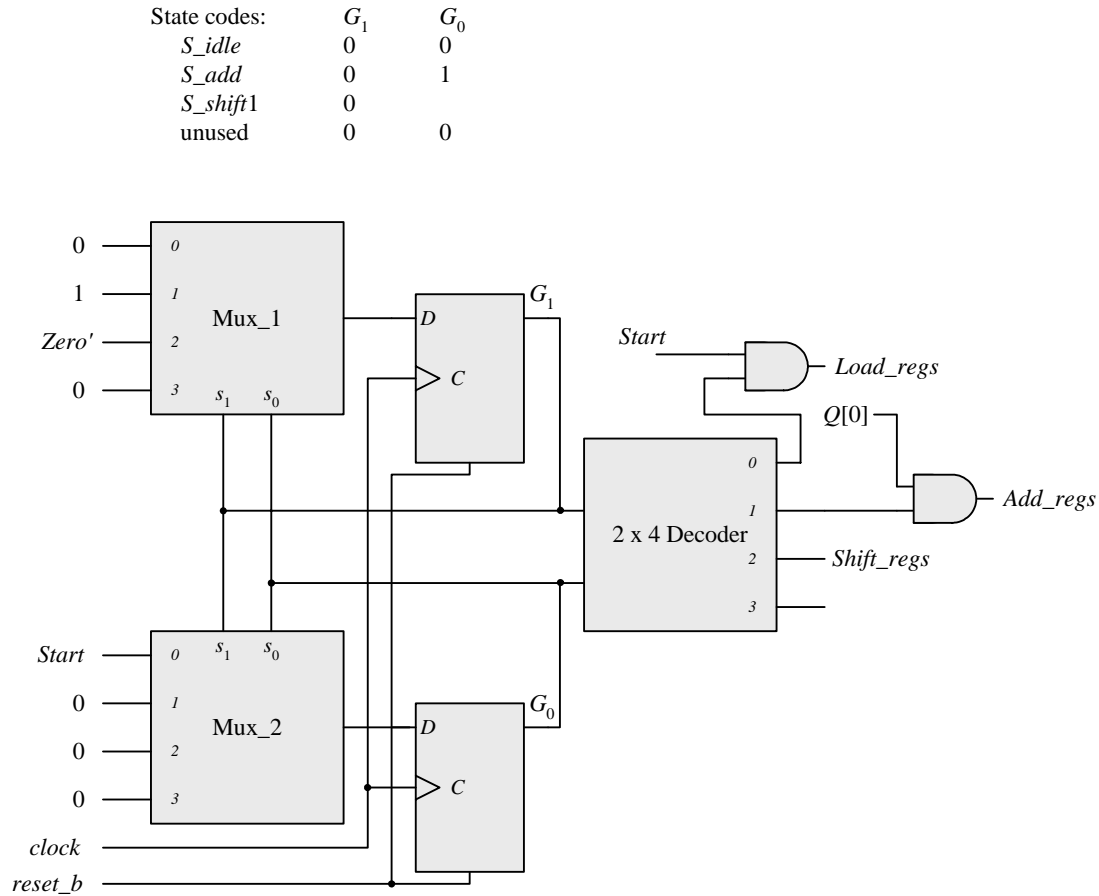
**Product:**  $CAQ = 621_{10}$

	<i>C</i>	<i>A</i>	<i>Q</i>	<i>P</i>
Multiplier in $Q$	0	00000	10111	101
$Q0 = 1$ ; add $B$		11011		
First partial product	0	11011	10111	100
Shift right $CAQ$	0	01101	11011	
$Q0 = 1$ ; add $B$		11011		
Second partial product	1	01000	11011	011
Shift right $CAQ$	0	10100	01101	
$Q0 = 1$ ; add $B$		11011		
Third partial product	1	01111	01101	010
Shift right $CAQ$	0	10111	10110	
Shift right $CAQ$	0	01011	11011	
Fourth partial product	0	01011	11011	001
$Q0 = 1$ ; add $B$		11011		
Fifth partial product	1	00110	11011	000
Shift right $CAQ$	0	10011	01101	
Final product in $AQ$ :				
$AQ = 10011\_01101 = 621_{10}$				

- 8.20**
- $S\_idle = 1t$  ns  
 The loop between  $S\_add$  and  $S\_shift$  takes  $2nt$  ns)  
 Total time to multiply:  $(2n + 1)t$

**8.21**





- 8.22** Note that the machine described by Fig. P8.22 requires four states, but the machine described by Fig. 8.15 (b) requires only three. Also, observe that the sample simulation results show a case where the carry bit register, C, is needed to support the addition operation. The datapath is 8 bits wide.

```
module Prob_8_22 # (parameter m_size = 9)
```

```
(
    output [2*m_size-1: 0] Product,
    output Ready,
    input [m_size-1: 0] Multiplicand, Multiplier,
    input Start, clock, reset_b
);
```

```
    wire [m_size-1: 0] A, Q;
```

```
    assign Product = {A, Q};
    wire Q0, Zero, Load_regs, Decr_P, Add_regs, Shift_regs;
```

```
Datapath_Unit M0 (A, Q, Q0, Zero, Multiplicand, Multiplier, Load_regs, Decr_P, Add_regs, Shift_regs,
    clock, reset_b);
```

```
Control_Unit M1 (Ready, Decr_P, Load_regs, Add_regs, Shift_regs, Start, Q0, Zero, clock, reset_b);
endmodule
```

```

module Datapath_Unit # (parameter m_size = 9, BC_size = 4)
(
    output reg [m_size -1: 0] A, Q,
    output Q0, Zero,
    input [m_size -1: 0] Multiplicand, Multiplier,
    input Load_regs, Decr_P, Add_regs, Shift_regs, clock, reset_b
);
    reg C;
    reg [BC_size -1: 0] P;
    reg [m_size -1: 0] B;

    assign Q0 = Q[0];
    assign Zero = (P == 0);

    always @ (posedge clock, negedge reset_b)
        if (reset_b == 0) begin
            B <= 0; C <= 0;
            A <= 0;
            Q <= 0;
            P <= m_size;
        end
        else begin
            if (Load_regs) begin
                A <= 0;
                C <= 0;
                Q <= Multiplier;
                B <= Multiplicand;
                P <= m_size;
            end
            if (Decr_P) P <= P -1;
            if (Add_regs) {C, A} <= A + B;
            if (Shift_regs) {C, A, Q} <= {C, A, Q} >> 1;
        end
    endmodule

module Control_Unit (
    output Ready, Decr_P, output reg Load_regs, Add_regs, Shift_regs, input Start, Q0, Zero, clock,
    reset_b
);
    reg [ 1: 0] state, next_state;
    parameter S_idle = 2'b00, S_loaded = 2'b01, S_sum = 2'b10, S_shifted = 2'b11;
    assign Ready = (state == S_idle);
    assign Decr_P = (state == S_loaded);

    always @ (posedge clock, negedge reset_b)
        if (reset_b == 0) state <= S_idle; else state <= next_state;

    always @ (state, Start, Q0, Zero) begin
        next_state = S_idle;
        Load_regs = 0;
        Add_regs = 0;
        Shift_regs = 0;
        case (state)
            S_idle: if (Start == 0) next_state = S_idle; else begin next_state = S_loaded; Load_regs = 1; end
            S_loaded: if (Q0) begin next_state = S_sum; Add_regs = 1; end
            else begin next_state = S_shifted; Shift_regs = 1; end
            S_sum: begin next_state = S_shifted; Shift_regs = 1; end
            S_shifted: if (Zero) next_state = S_idle; else next_state = S_loaded;
        endcase
    end
endmodule

```

```

module t_Prob_8_22 ();
  parameter          m_size = 9;           // Width of datapath
  wire [2 * m_size - 1: 0] Product;
  wire Ready;
  reg [m_size - 1: 0] Multiplicand, Multiplier;
  reg Start, clock, reset_b;
  integer Exp_Value;
  reg Error;

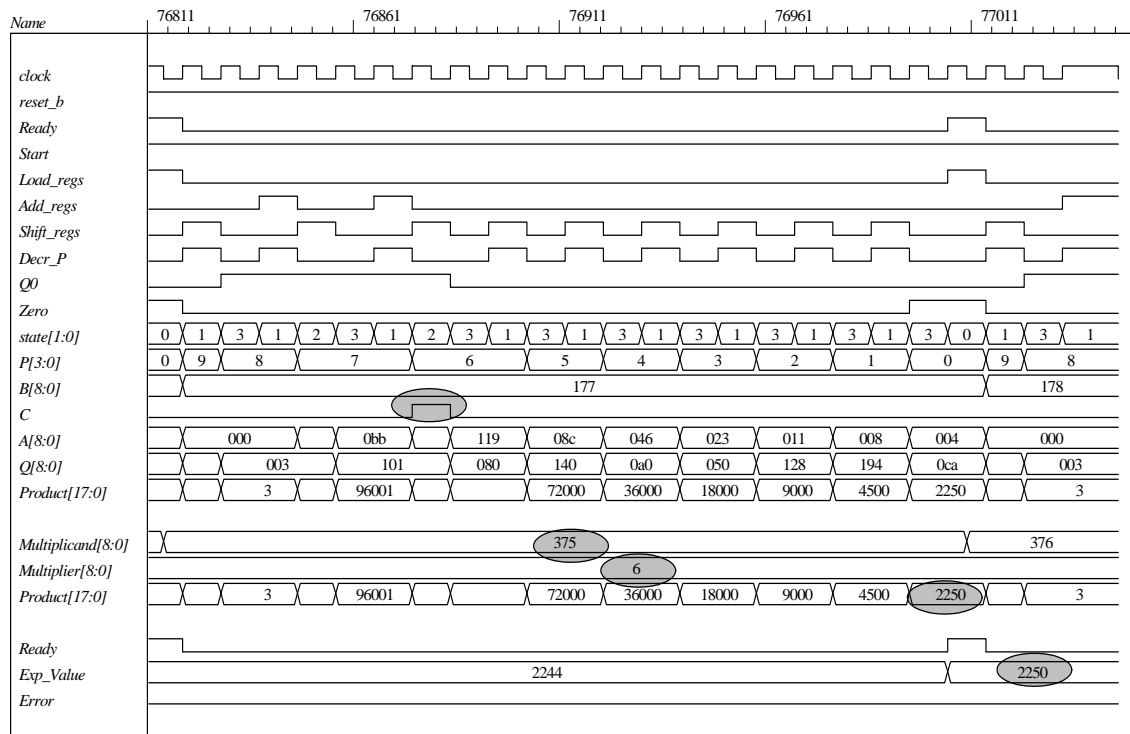
  Prob_8_22 M0 (Product, Ready, Multiplicand, Multiplier, Start, clock, reset_b);

  initial #140000 $finish;
  initial begin clock = 0; #5 forever #5 clock = ~clock; end
  initial fork
    reset_b = 1;

    #2 reset_b = 0;
    #3 reset_b = 1;
  join
  initial begin #5 Start = 1; end
  always @ (posedge Ready) begin
    Exp_Value = Multiplier * Multiplicand;
    //Exp_Value = Multiplier * Multiplicand + 1; // Inject error to confirm detection
  end
  always @ (negedge Ready) begin
    Error = (Exp_Value ^ Product) ;
  end

  initial begin
    #5 Multiplicand = 0;
    Multiplier = 0;
    repeat (64) #10 begin Multiplier = Multiplier + 1;
      repeat (64) @ (posedge M0.Ready) #5 Multiplicand = Multiplicand + 1;
    end
  end
endmodule

```



**8.23** As shown in Fig. P8.23 the machine asserts *Load\_regs* in state *S\_load*. This will cause the machine to operate incorrectly. Once *Load\_regs* is removed from *S\_load* the machine operates correctly. The state *S\_load* is a wasted state. Its removal leads to the same machine as shown in Fig. P8.15b.

**module** Prob\_8\_23 # (parameter m\_size = 9)

```
(
    output [2*m_size -1: 0] Product,
    output Ready,
    input [m_size -1: 0] Multiplicand, Multiplier,
    input Start, clock, reset_b
);
    wire [m_size -1: 0] A, Q;
```

```
    assign Product = {A, Q};
    wire Q0, Zero, Load_regs, Decr_P, Add_regs, Shift_regs;
```

Datapath\_Unit M0 (A, Q, Q0, Zero, Multiplicand, Multiplier, Load\_regs, Decr\_P, Add\_regs, Shift\_regs, clock, reset\_b);

Control\_Unit M1 (Ready, Decr\_P, Shift\_regs, Add\_regs, Load\_regs, Start, Q0, Zero, clock, reset\_b);

**endmodule**

**module** Datapath\_Unit # (parameter m\_size = 9, BC\_size = 4)

```
(
    output reg [m_size -1: 0] A, Q,
    output Q0, Zero,
    input [m_size -1: 0] Multiplicand, Multiplier,
    input Load_regs, Decr_P, Add_regs, Shift_regs, clock, reset_b
);
    reg C;
    reg [BC_size -1: 0] P;
    reg [m_size -1: 0] B;
```

```

assign Q0 = Q[0];
assign Zero = (P == 0);

always @ (posedge clock, negedge reset_b)
if (reset_b == 0) begin
    A <= 0;
    C <= 0;
    Q <= 0;
    B <= 0;
    P <= m_size;
end
else begin
    if (Load_regs) begin
        A <= 0;
        C <= 0;
        Q <= Multiplier;
        B <= Multiplicand;
        P <= m_size;
    end
    if (Decr_P) P <= P - 1;
    if (Add_regs) {C, A} <= A + B;
    if (Shift_regs) {C, A, Q} <= {C, A, Q} >> 1;
end
endmodule

module Control_Unit (
    output Ready, Decr_P, Shift_regs, output reg Add_regs, Load_regs, input Start, Q0, Zero, clock,
    reset_b
);
    reg [ 1: 0]    state, next_state;
    parameter    S_idle = 2'b00, S_load = 2'b01, S_decr = 2'b10, S_shift = 2'b11;

    assign Ready = (state == S_idle);
    assign Shift_regs = (state == S_shift);
    assign Decr_P = (state == S_decr);

    always @ (posedge clock, negedge reset_b)
        if (reset_b == 0) state <= S_idle; else state <= next_state;

    always @ (state, Start, Q0, Zero) begin
        next_state = S_idle;
        Load_regs = 0;
        Add_regs = 0;
        case (state)
            S_idle: if (Start == 0) next_state = S_idle; else begin next_state = S_load; Load_regs = 1; end
            S_load:  begin next_state = S_decr; end
            S_decr:  begin next_state = S_shift; if (Q0) Add_regs = 1; end
            S_shift: if (Zero) next_state = S_idle; else next_state = S_load;
        endcase
    end
endmodule

module t_Prob_8_23 ();
    parameter    m_size = 9;           // Width of datapath
    wire [2 * m_size - 1: 0]    Product;
    wire         Ready;
    reg [m_size - 1: 0]         Multiplicand, Multiplier;
    reg           Start, clock, reset_b;
    integer       Exp_Value;
    reg           Error;

```

Prob\_8\_23 M0 (Product, Ready, Multiplicand, Multiplier, Start, clock, reset\_b);

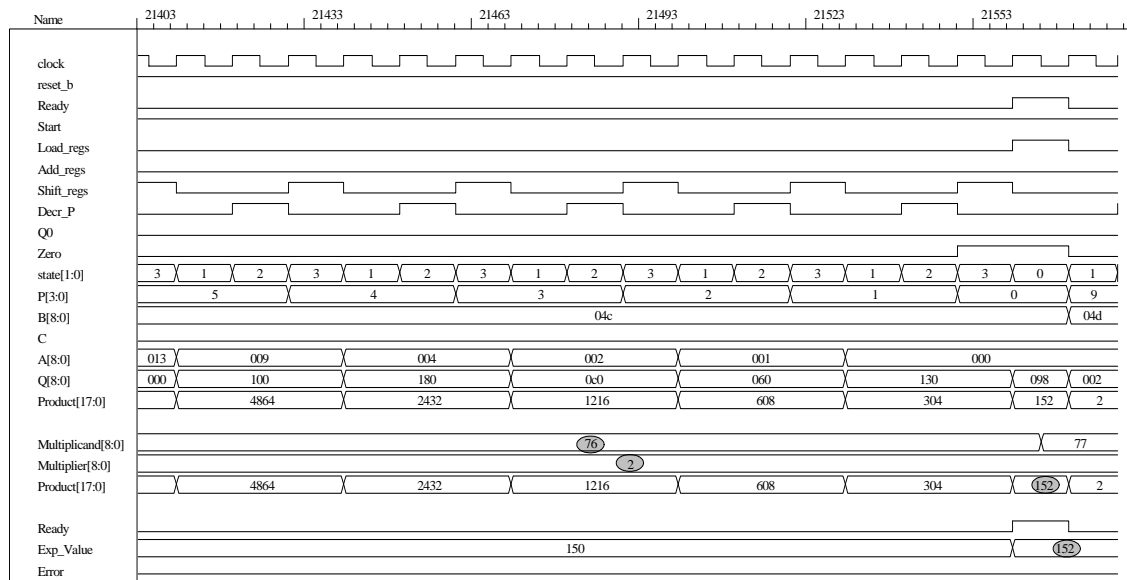
```

initial #140000 $finish;
initial begin clock = 0; #5 forever #5 clock = ~clock; end
initial fork
    reset_b = 1;

    #2 reset_b = 0;
    #3 reset_b = 1;
join
initial begin #5 Start = 1; end
always @ (posedge Ready) begin
    Exp_Value = Multiplier * Multiplicand;
    //Exp_Value = Multiplier * Multiplicand + 1; // Inject error to confirm detection
end
always @ (negedge Ready) begin
    Error = (Exp_Value ^ Product) ;
end

initial begin
    #5 Multiplicand = 0;
    Multiplier = 0;
    repeat (64) #10 begin Multiplier = Multiplier + 1;
        repeat (64) @ (posedge M0.Ready) #5 Multiplicand = Multiplicand + 1;
    end
end
endmodule

```



## 8.24

```

module Prob_8_24 # (parameter dp_width = 5)
(
    output    [2*dp_width - 1: 0]    Product,
    output    Ready,
    input     [dp_width - 1: 0]     Multiplicand, Multiplier,
    input     Start, clock, reset_b
);
wire Load_regs, Decr_P, Add_regs, Shift_regs, Zero, Q0;

    Controller M0 (
        Ready, Load_regs, Decr_P, Add_regs, Shift_regs, Start, Zero, Q0,
        clock, reset_b
    );

    Datapath M1(Product, Q0, Zero, Multiplicand, Multiplier,
        Start, Load_regs, Decr_P, Add_regs, Shift_regs, clock, reset_b);
endmodule

module Controller (
    output Ready,
    output reg Load_regs, Decr_P, Add_regs, Shift_regs,
    input Start, Zero, Q0, clock, reset_b
);

    parameter    S_idle = 3'b001,        // one-hot code
                 S_add = 3'b010,
                 S_shift = 3'b100;

    reg [2: 0]    state, next_state;    // sized for one-hot
    assign        Ready = (state == S_idle);

    always @ (posedge clock, negedge reset_b)
        if (~reset_b) state <= S_idle; else state <= next_state;

    always @ (state, Start, Q0, Zero) begin
        next_state = S_idle;
        Load_regs = 0;
        Decr_P = 0;
        Add_regs = 0;
        Shift_regs = 0;
        case (state)
            S_idle: if (Start) begin next_state = S_add; Load_regs = 1; end
            S_add: begin next_state = S_shift; Decr_P = 1; if (Q0) Add_regs = 1; end
            S_shift: begin
                Shift_regs = 1;
                if (Zero) next_state = S_idle;
                else next_state = S_add;
            end
            default: next_state = S_idle;
        endcase
    end
endmodule

```

```

module Datapath #(parameter dp_width = 5, BC_size = 3) (
    output [2*dp_width - 1: 0] Product, output Q0, output Zero,
    input [dp_width - 1: 0] Multiplicand, Multiplier,
    input Start, Load_regs, Decr_P, Add_regs, Shift_regs, clock, reset_b
);
// Default configuration: 5-bit datapath
reg [dp_width - 1: 0] A, B, Q; // Sized for datapath
reg C;
reg [BC_size - 1: 0] P; // Bit counter

assign Q0 = Q[0];
assign Zero = (P == 0); // Counter is zero
assign Product = {C, A, Q};
always @ (posedge clock, negedge reset_b)
    if (reset_b == 0) begin // Added to this solution, but
        P <= dp_width; // not really necessary since Load_regs
        B <= 0; // initializes the datapath
        C <= 0;
        A <= 0;
        Q <= 0;
    end
    else begin
        if (Load_regs) begin
            P <= dp_width;
            A <= 0;
            C <= 0;
            B <= Multiplicand;
            Q <= Multiplier;
        end
        if (Add_regs) {C, A} <= A + B;
        if (Shift_regs) {C, A, Q} <= {C, A, Q} >> 1;
        if (Decr_P) P <= P - 1;
    end
endmodule

module t_Prob_8_24;
    parameter dp_width = 5; // Width of datapath
    wire [2 * dp_width - 1: 0] Product;
    wire Ready;
    reg [dp_width - 1: 0] Multiplicand, Multiplier;
    reg Start, clock, reset_b;
    integer Exp_Value;
    reg Error;

    Prob_8_24 M0(Product, Ready, Multiplicand, Multiplier, Start, clock, reset_b);

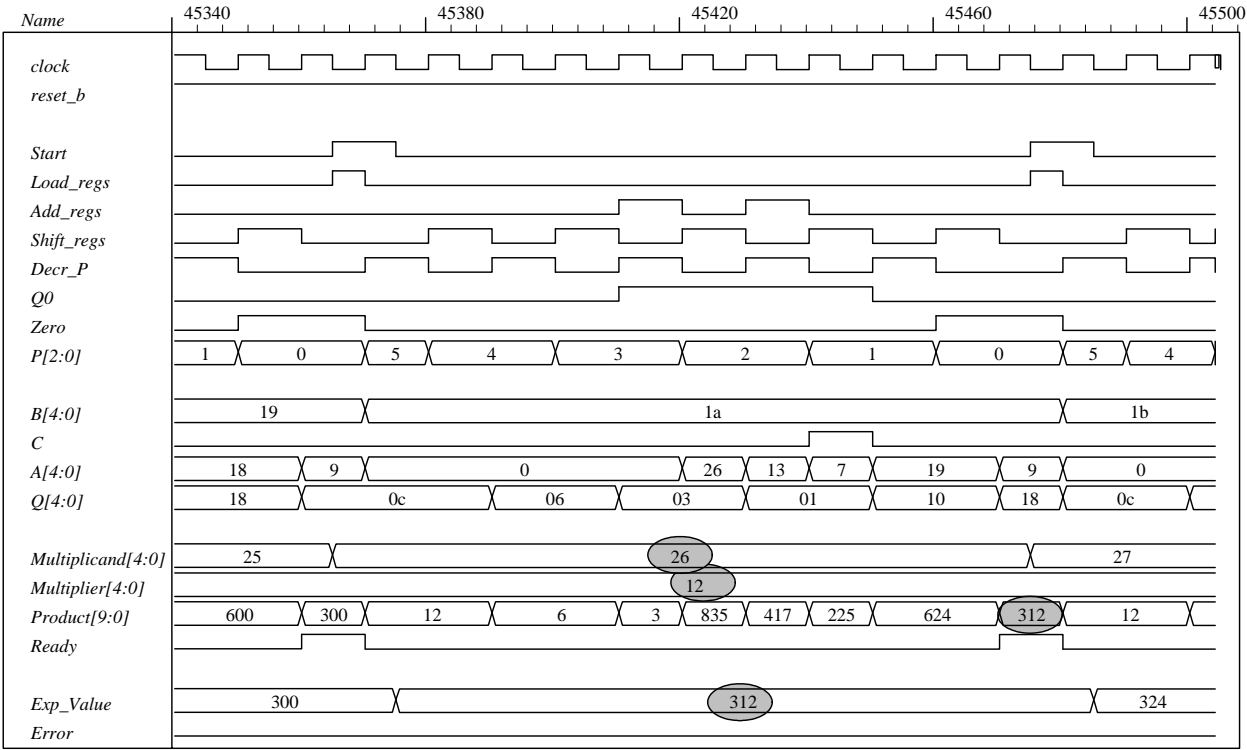
    initial #115000 $finish;
    initial begin clock = 0; #5 forever #5 clock = ~clock; end
    initial fork
        reset_b = 1;
        #2 reset_b = 0;
        #3 reset_b = 1;
    join
    always @ (negedge Start) begin
        Exp_Value = Multiplier * Multiplicand;
        //Exp_Value = Multiplier * Multiplicand + 1; // Inject error to confirm detection
    end
    always @ (posedge Ready) begin
        # 1 Error <= (Exp_Value ^ Product) ;
    end

```



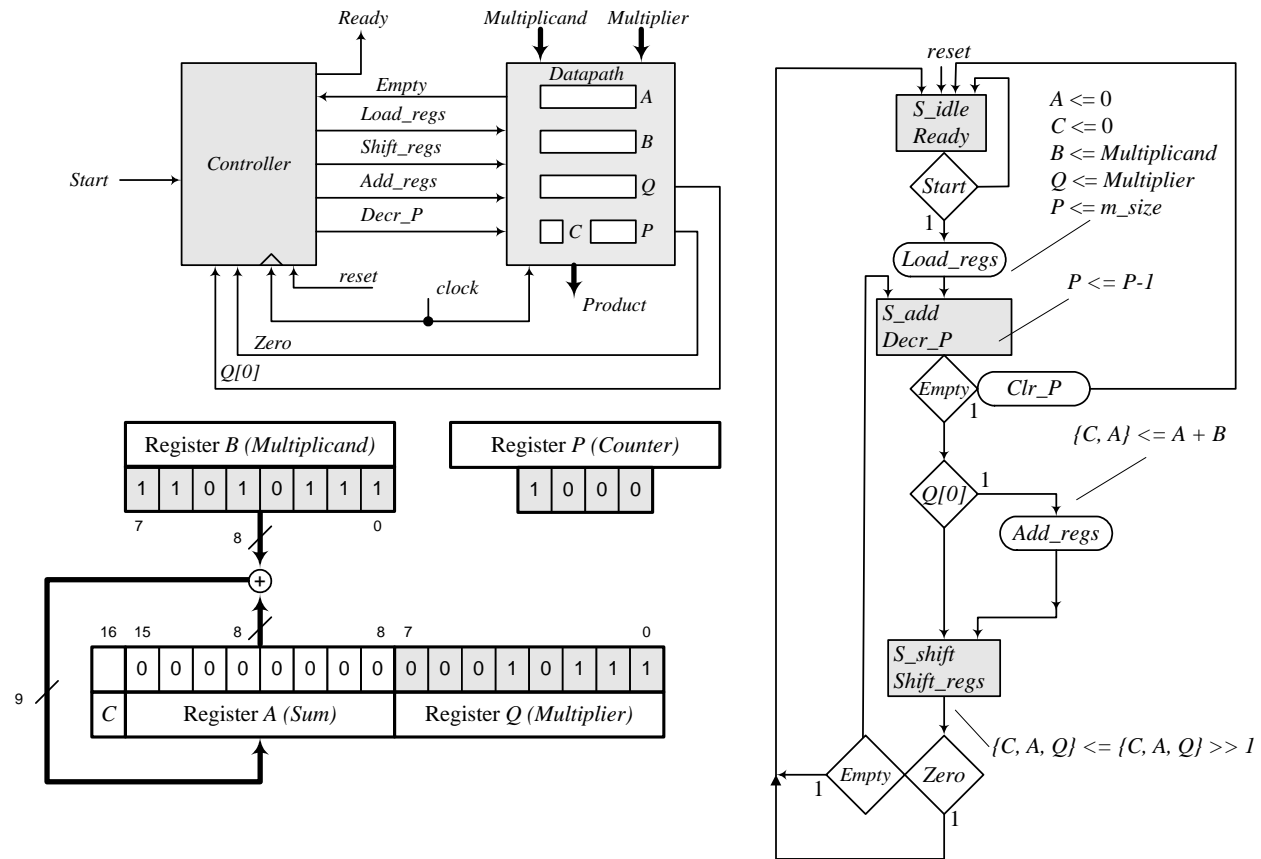
```
initial begin
  #5 Multiplicand = 0;
  Multiplier = 0;

  repeat (32) #10 begin
    Start = 1;
    #10 Start = 0;
    repeat (32) begin
      Start = 1;
      #10 Start = 0;
      #100 Multiplicand = Multiplicand + 1;
    end
    Multiplier = Multiplier + 1;
  end
end
endmodule
```



8.25

(a)



(b)

// The multiplier of Fig. 8.15 is modified to detect whether the multiplier or multiplicand are initially zero, and to detect whether the multiplier becomes zero before the entire multiplier has been applied to the multiplicand. Signal empty is generated by the datapath unit and used by the controller. Note that the bits of the product must be selected according to the stage at which termination occurs. The test for the condition of an empty multiplier is hardwired here for //  $dp\_width = 5$  because the range bounds of a vector must be defined by integer constants. // This prevents development of a fully parameterized model. // Note: the test bench has been modified.

```

module Prob_8_25 #(parameter dp_width = 5)
(
  output [2*dp_width - 1: 0] Product,
  output Ready,
  input [dp_width - 1: 0] Multiplicand, Multiplier,
  input Start, clock, reset_b
);
  wire Load_regs, Decr_P, Add_regs, Shift_regs, Empty, Zero, Q0;
  Controller M0 (
    Ready, Load_regs, Decr_P, Add_regs, Shift_regs, Start, Empty, Zero, Q0,
    clock, reset_b
  );

  Datapath M1(Product, Q0, Empty, Zero, Multiplicand, Multiplier,
    Start, Load_regs, Decr_P, Add_regs, Shift_regs, clock, reset_b);

endmodule

```

```

module Controller (
    output Ready,
    output reg Load_regs, Decr_P, Add_regs, Shift_regs,
    input Start, Empty, Zero, Q0, clock, reset_b
);

    parameter    BC_size =    3;    // Size of bit counter
    parameter    S_idle =   3'b001,    // one-hot code
                S_add =   3'b010,
                S_shift =  3'b100;

    reg [2: 0]    state, next_state;    // sized for one-hot
    assign        Ready = (state == S_idle);

    always @ (posedge clock, negedge reset_b)
        if (~reset_b) state <= S_idle; else state <= next_state;

    always @ (state, Start, Q0, Empty, Zero) begin
        next_state = S_idle;
        Load_regs = 0;
        Decr_P = 0;
        Add_regs = 0;
        Shift_regs = 0;
        case (state)
            S_idle:    if (Start) begin next_state = S_add; Load_regs = 1; end
            S_add:     begin next_state = S_shift; Decr_P = 1; if (Q0) Add_regs = 1; end
            S_shift:   begin
                        Shift_regs = 1;
                        if (Zero) next_state = S_idle;
                        else if (Empty) next_state = S_idle;
                        else next_state = S_add;
                    end
            default:  next_state = S_idle;
        endcase
    end
endmodule

module Datapath #(parameter dp_width = 5, BC_size = 3) (
    output reg [2*dp_width - 1: 0] Product, output Q0, output Empty, output Zero,
    input [dp_width - 1: 0] Multiplicand, Multiplier,
    input Start, Load_regs, Decr_P, Add_regs, Shift_regs, clock, reset_b
);
// Default configuration: 5-bit datapath
    parameter    S_idle =   3'b001,    // one-hot code
                S_add =   3'b010,
                S_shift =  3'b100;

    reg [dp_width - 1: 0]    A, B, Q;    // Sized for datapath
    reg                    C;
    reg [BC_size - 1: 0]    P;           // Bit counter
    wire [2*dp_width -1: 0] Internal_Product = {C, A, Q};

    assign        Q0 = Q[0];
    assign        Zero = (P == 0);    // Bit counter is zero

    always @ (posedge clock, negedge reset_b)
        if (reset_b == 0) begin    // Added to this solution, but
            P <= dp_width;        // not really necessary since Load_regs
            B <= 0;                // initializes the datapath
            C <= 0;
            A <= 0;
            Q <= 0;
        end

```

```

else begin
if (Load_regs) begin
P <= dp_width;
A <= 0;
C <= 0;
B <= Multiplicand;
Q <= Multiplier;
end
if (Add_regs) {C, A} <= A + B;
if (Shift_regs) {C, A, Q} <= {C, A, Q} >> 1;
if (Decr_P) P <= P -1;
end
// Status signals
reg Empty_multiplier;
wire Empty_multiplicand = (Multiplicand == 0);
assign Empty = Empty_multiplicand || Empty_multiplier;

always @ (P, Internal_Product) begin// Note: hardwired for dp_width 5
Product = 0;
case (P) // Examine multiplier bits
0: Product = Internal_Product;
1: Product = Internal_Product [2*dp_width -1: 1];
2: Product = Internal_Product [2*dp_width -1: 2];
3: Product = Internal_Product [2*dp_width -1: 3];
4: Product = Internal_Product [2*dp_width -1: 4];
5: Product = 0;
endcase
end

always @ (P, Q) begin // Note: hardwired for dp_width 5
Empty_multiplier = 0;
case (P)
0: Empty_multiplier = 1;
1: if (Q[1] == 0) Empty_multiplier = 1;
2: if (Q[2: 1] == 0) Empty_multiplier = 1;
3: if (Q[3: 1] == 0) Empty_multiplier = 1;
4: if (Q[4: 1] == 0) Empty_multiplier = 1;
5: if (Q[5: 1] == 0) Empty_multiplier = 1;
default: Empty_multiplier = 1'bx;
endcase
end
endmodule

module t_Prob_8_25;
parameter dp_width = 5; // Width of datapath
wire [2 * dp_width - 1: 0] Product;
wire Ready;
reg [dp_width - 1: 0] Multiplicand, Multiplier;
reg Start, clock, reset_b;
integer Exp_Value;
reg Error;

Prob_8_25 M0(Product, Ready, Multiplicand, Multiplier, Start, clock, reset_b);

initial #115000 $finish;
initial begin clock = 0; #5 forever #5 clock = ~clock; end
initial fork
reset_b = 1;
#2 reset_b = 0;
#3 reset_b = 1;
join

```

```

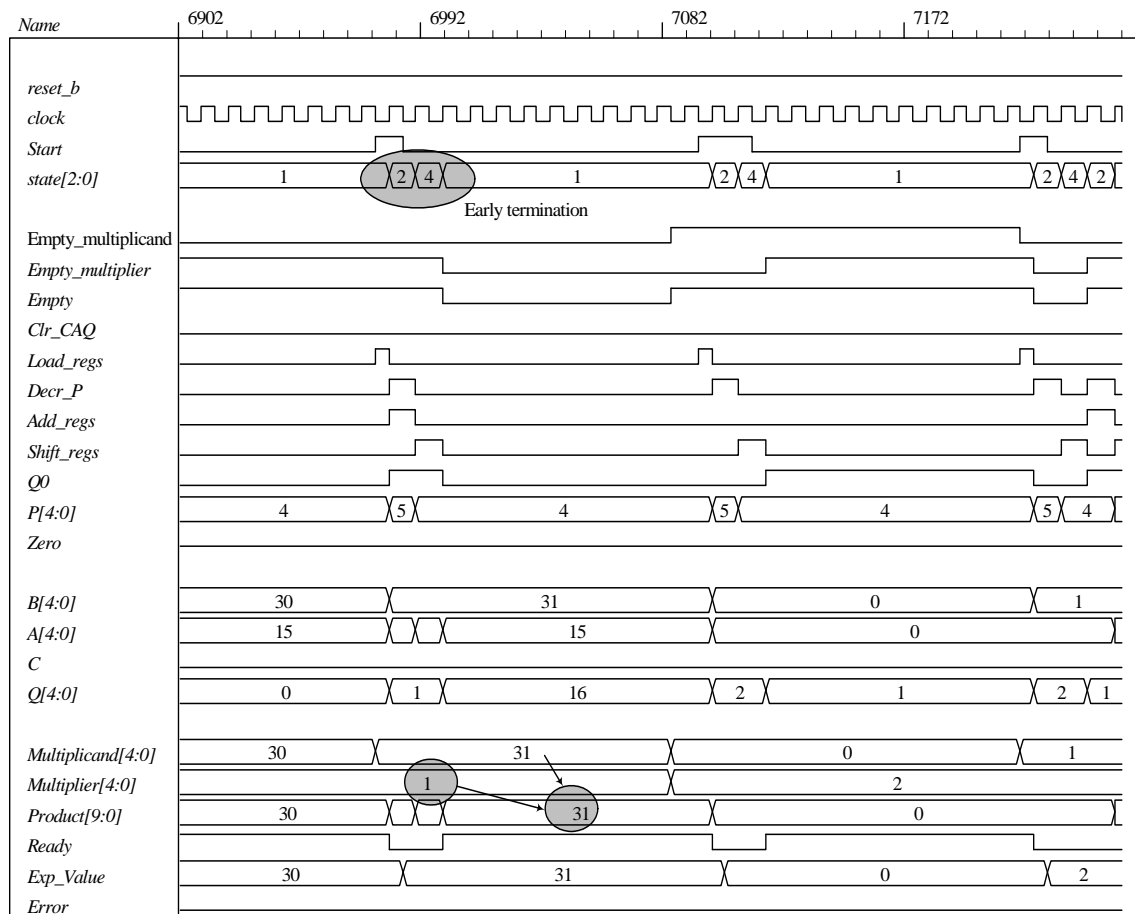
always @ (negedge Start) begin
    Exp_Value = Multiplier * Multiplicand;
    //Exp_Value = Multiplier * Multiplicand + 1;    // Inject error to confirm detection
end
always @ (posedge Ready) begin
    # 1 Error <= (Exp_Value ^ Product) ;
end

initial begin
    #5 Multiplicand = 0;
    Multiplier = 0;

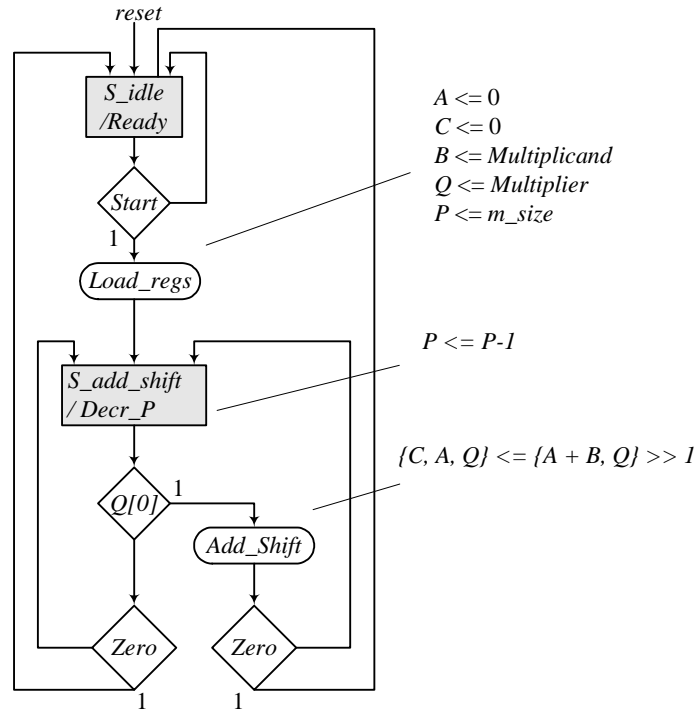
repeat (32) #10 begin
    Start = 1;
    #10 Start = 0;
    repeat (32) begin
        Start = 1;
        #10 Start = 0;
        #100 Multiplicand = Multiplicand + 1;
    end
    Multiplier = Multiplier + 1;
end
end
endmodule

```

(c) Test plan: Exhaustively test all combinations of multiplier and multiplicand, using automatic error checking. Verify that early termination is implemented. Sample of simulation results is shown below.



8.26



**module** Prob\_8\_26 (Product, Ready, Multiplicand, Multiplier, Start, clock, reset\_b);

// Default configuration: 5-bit datapath

```

parameter dp_width = 5; // Set to width of datapath
output [2*dp_width - 1: 0] Product;
output Ready;
input [dp_width - 1: 0] Multiplicand, Multiplier;
input Start, clock, reset_b;
parameter BC_size = 3; // Size of bit counter
parameter S_idle = 2'b01, // one-hot code
            S_add_shift = 2'b10;
    
```

```

reg [2: 0] state, next_state;
reg [dp_width - 1: 0] A, B, Q; // Sized for datapath
reg C;
reg [BC_size - 1: 0] P;
reg Load_regs, Decr_P, Add_shift, Shift;
assign Product = {C, A, Q};
wire Zero = (P == 0); // counter is zero
wire Ready = (state == S_idle); // controller status
    
```

// control unit

```

always @ (posedge clock, negedge reset_b)
    if (~reset_b) state <= S_idle; else state <= next_state;
    
```

**always** @ (state, Start, Q[0], Zero) **begin**

next\_state = S\_idle;

Load\_regs = 0;

Decr\_P = 0;

Add\_shift = 0;

Shift = 0;

**case** (state)

S\_idle:

**begin** **if** (Start) next\_state = S\_add\_shift; Load\_regs = 1; **end**

```

        S_add_shift:      begin
                            Decr_P = 1;
                            if (Zero) next_state = S_idle;
                            else begin
                                next_state = S_add_shift;
                                if (Q[0]) Add_shift = 1; else Shift = 1;
                            end
                            end
        default:          next_state = S_idle;
    endcase
end

// datapath unit
always @ (posedge clock) begin
    if (Load_regs) begin
        P <= dp_width;
        A <= 0;
        C <= 0;
        B <= Multiplicand;
        Q <= Multiplier;
    end
    if (Decr_P) P <= P - 1;
    if (Add_shift) {C, A, Q} <= {C, A+B, Q} >> 1;
    if (Shift) {C, A, Q} <= {C, A, Q} >> 1;
end
endmodule

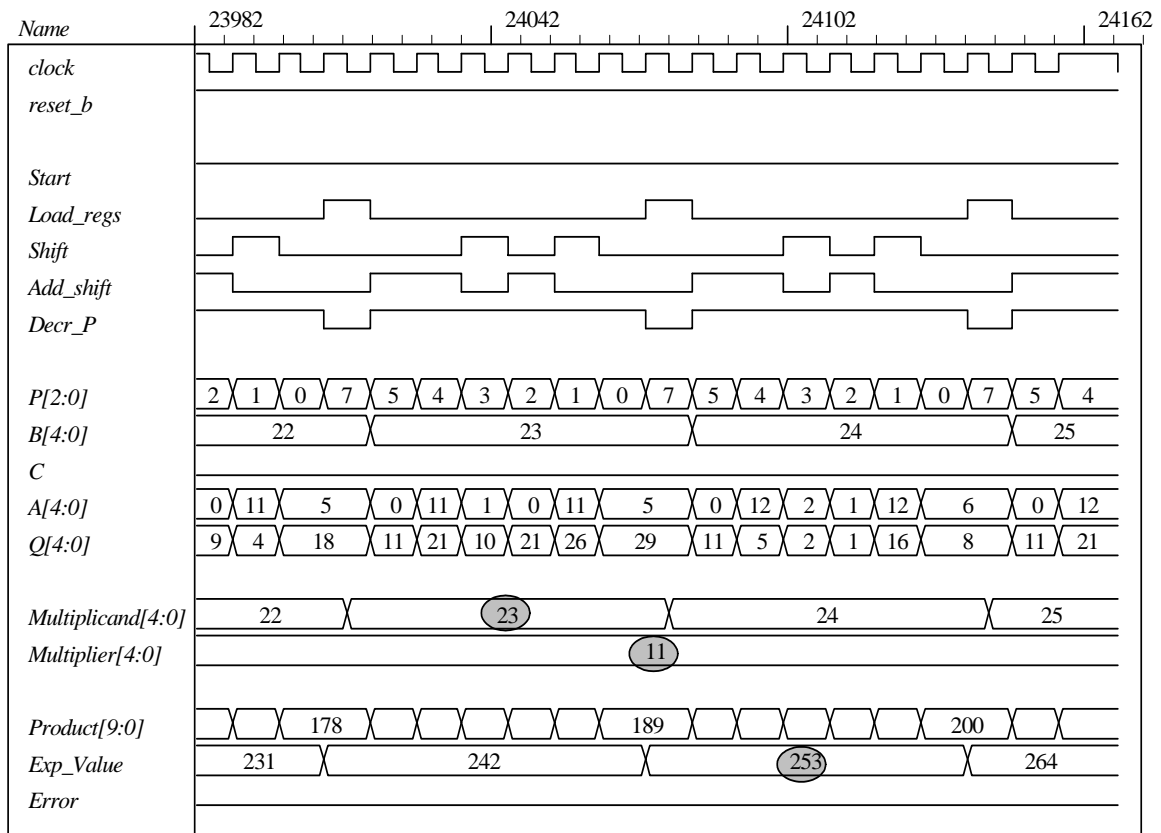
module t_Prob_8_26;
    parameter dp_width = 5;           // Width of datapath
    wire [2 * dp_width - 1: 0] Product;
    wire Ready;
    reg [dp_width - 1: 0] Multiplicand, Multiplier;
    reg Start, clock, reset_b;
    integer Exp_Value;
    wire Error;

    Prob_8_26 M0 (Product, Ready, Multiplicand, Multiplier, Start, clock, reset_b);

    initial #70000 $finish;
    initial begin clock = 0; #5 forever #5 clock = ~clock; end
    initial fork
        reset_b = 1;
        #2 reset_b = 0;
        #3 reset_b = 1;
    join
    initial begin #5 Start = 1; end
    always @ (posedge Ready) begin
        Exp_Value = Multiplier * Multiplicand;
    end
    assign Error = Ready & (Exp_Value ^ Product);
    initial begin
        #5 Multiplicand = 0;
        Multiplier = 0;
        repeat (32) #10 begin Multiplier = Multiplier + 1;
            repeat (32) @ (posedge M0.Ready) #5 Multiplicand = Multiplicand + 1;
        end
    end
endmodule

```

### Sample of simulation results.



### 8.27

#### (a)

```
// Test bench for exhaustive simulation
module t_Sequential_Binary_Multiplier;
    parameter dp_width = 5; // Width of datapath
    wire [2 * dp_width - 1: 0] Product;
    wire Ready;
    reg [dp_width - 1: 0] Multiplicand, Multiplier;
    reg Start, clock, reset_b;

    Sequential_Binary_Multiplier M0 (Product, Ready, Multiplicand, Multiplier, Start, clock, reset_b);

    initial #109200 $finish;
    initial begin clock = 0; #5 forever #5 clock = ~clock; end
    initial fork
        reset_b = 1;
        #2 reset_b = 0;
        #3 reset_b = 1;
    join
    initial begin #5 Start = 1; end
    initial begin
        #5 Multiplicand = 0;
        Multiplier = 0;
        repeat (31) #10 begin Multiplier = Multiplier + 1;
        repeat (32) @ (posedge M0.Ready) #5 Multiplicand = Multiplicand + 1;
        end
        Start = 0;
    end
end

// Error Checker
```



```

reg Error;
reg [2*dp_width - 1: 0] Exp_Value;
always @ (posedge Ready) begin
    Exp_Value = Multiplier * Multiplicand;
    //Exp_Value = Multiplier * Multiplicand + 1;    // Inject error to verify detection
    Error = (Exp_Value ^ Product);
end
endmodule

module Sequential_Binary_Multiplier (Product, Ready, Multiplicand, Multiplier, Start, clock, reset_b);
// Default configuration: 5-bit datapath
parameter dp_width = 5;    // Set to width of datapath
output [2*dp_width - 1: 0] Product;
output Ready;
input [dp_width - 1: 0] Multiplicand, Multiplier;
input Start, clock, reset_b;

parameter BC_size = 3; // Size of bit counter
parameter S_idle = 3'b001, // one-hot code
           S_add = 3'b010,
           S_shift = 3'b100;

reg [2: 0] state, next_state;
reg [dp_width - 1: 0] A, B, Q;    // Sized for datapath
reg C;
reg [BC_size - 1: 0] P;
reg Load_regs, Decr_P, Add_regs, Shift_regs;

// Miscellaneous combinational logic

assign Product = {C, A, Q};
wire Zero = (P == 0);    // counter is zero
wire Ready = (state == S_idle);    // controller status

// control unit

always @ (posedge clock, negedge reset_b)
    if (~reset_b) state <= S_idle; else state <= next_state;

always @ (state, Start, Q[0], Zero) begin
    next_state = S_idle;
    Load_regs = 0;
    Decr_P = 0;
    Add_regs = 0;
    Shift_regs = 0;
    case (state)
        S_idle: begin if (Start) next_state = S_add; Load_regs = 1; end
        S_add: begin next_state = S_shift; Decr_P = 1; if (Q[0]) Add_regs = 1; end
        S_shift: begin Shift_regs = 1; if (Zero) next_state = S_idle;
        else next_state = S_add; end
        default: next_state = S_idle;
    endcase
end
end

```

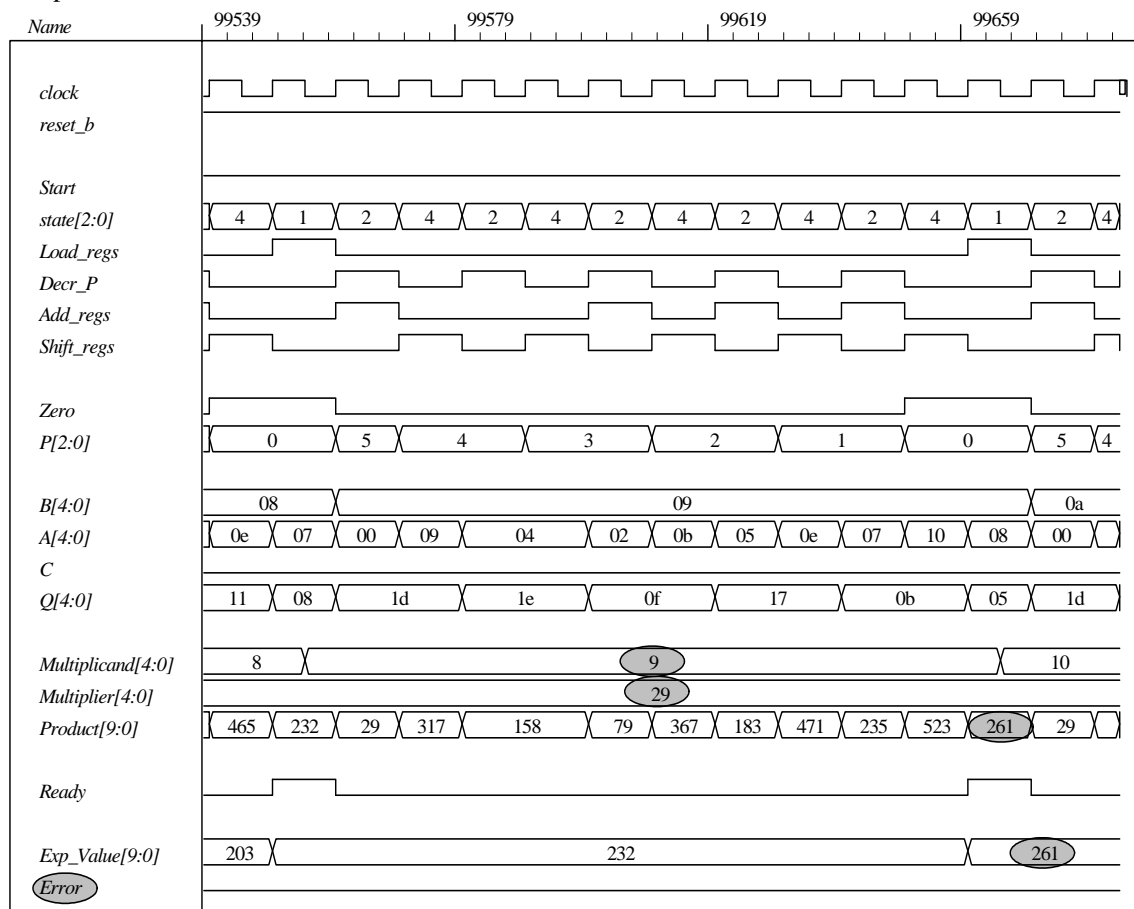
// datapath unit

```

always @ (posedge clock) begin
  if (Load_regs) begin
    P <= dp_width;
    A <= 0;
    C <= 0;
    B <= Multiplicand;
    Q <= Multiplier;
  end
  if (Add_regs) {C, A} <= A + B;
  if (Shift_regs) {C, A, Q} <= {C, A, Q} >> 1;
  if (Decr_P) P <= P - 1;
end
endmodule

```

Sample of simulation results:



- (b) In this part the controller is described by Fig. 8.18. The test bench includes probes to display the state of the controller.

```
// Test bench for exhaustive simulation
module t_Sequential_Binary_Multiplier;
parameter dp_width = 5; // Width of datapath
wire [2 * dp_width - 1: 0] Product;
wire Ready;
reg [dp_width - 1: 0] Multiplicand, Multiplier;
reg Start, clock, reset_b;

Sequential_Binary_Multiplier M0 (Product, Ready, Multiplicand, Multiplier, Start, clock, reset_b);

initial #109200 $finish;
initial begin clock = 0; #5 forever #5 clock = ~clock; end
initial fork
    reset_b = 1;
    #2 reset_b = 0;
    #3 reset_b = 1;
join
initial begin #5 Start = 1; end
initial begin
    #5 Multiplicand = 0;
    Multiplier = 0;
    repeat (31) #10 begin Multiplier = Multiplier + 1;
    repeat (32) @ (posedge M0.Ready) #5 Multiplicand = Multiplicand + 1;
    end
    Start = 0;
end

// Error Checker
reg Error;
reg [2*dp_width -1: 0] Exp_Value;
always @ (posedge Ready) begin
    Exp_Value = Multiplier * Multiplicand;
    //Exp_Value = Multiplier * Multiplicand + 1; // Inject error to verify detection
    Error = (Exp_Value ^ Product);
end

wire [2: 0] state = {M0.G2, M0.G1, M0.G0};
endmodule

module Sequential_Binary_Multiplier (Product, Ready, Multiplicand, Multiplier, Start, clock, reset_b);
// Default configuration: 5-bit datapath
parameter dp_width = 5; // Set to width of datapath
output [2*dp_width - 1: 0] Product;
output Ready;
input [dp_width - 1: 0] Multiplicand, Multiplier;
input Start, clock, reset_b;

parameter BC_size = 3; // Size of bit counter
reg [dp_width - 1: 0] A, B, Q; // Sized for datapath
reg C;
reg [BC_size - 1: 0] P;
wire Load_regs, Decr_P, Add_regs, Shift_regs;
```

```
// Status signals

assign      Product = {C, A, Q};
wire       Zero = (P == 0);      // counter is zero
wire       Q0 = Q[0];

// One-Hot Control unit (See Fig. 8.18)
DFF_S M0 (G0, D0, clock, Set);
DFF M1 (G1, D1, clock, reset_b);
DFF M2 (G2, G1, clock, reset_b);
or (D0, w1, w2);
and (w1, G0, Start_b);
and (w2, Zero, G2);
not (Start_b, Start);
not (Zero_b, Zero);
or (D1, w3, w4);
and (w3, Start, G0);
and (w4, Zero_b, G2);

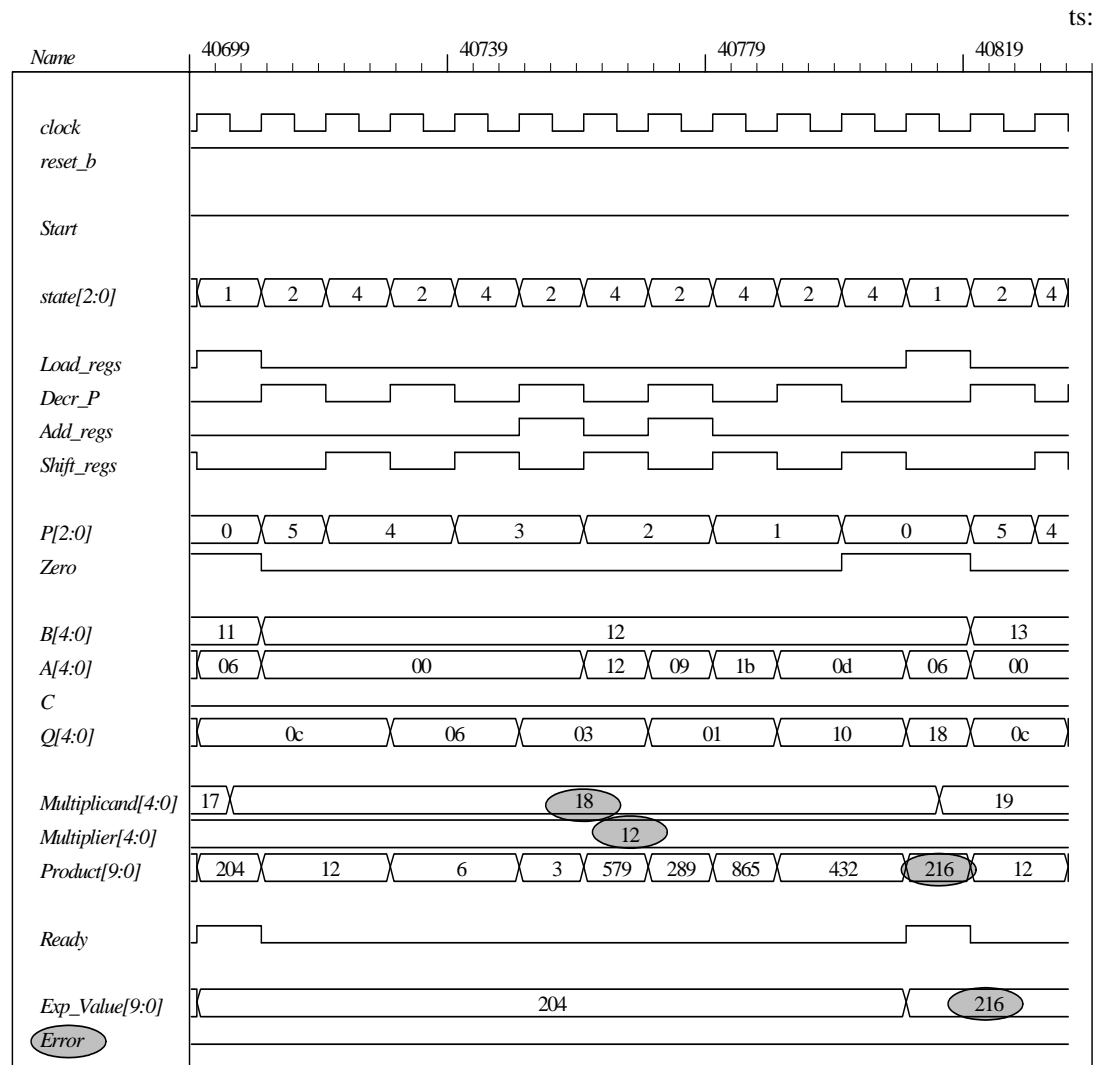
and (Load_regs, G0, Start);
and (Add_regs, Q0, G1);
assign Ready = G0;
assign Decr_P = G1;
assign Shift_regs = G2;
not (Set, reset_b);

// datapath unit

always @ (posedge clock) begin
  if (Load_regs) begin
    P <= dp_width;
    A <= 0;
    C <= 0;
    B <= Multiplicand;
    Q <= Multiplier;
  end
  if (Add_regs) {C, A} <= A + B;
  if (Shift_regs) {C, A, Q} <= {C, A, Q} >> 1;
  if (Decr_P) P <= P -1;
end
endmodule

module DFF_S (output reg Q, input data, clock, Set);
  always @ ( posedge clock, posedge Set)
    if (Set) Q <= 1'b1; else Q<= data;
endmodule
module DFF (output reg Q, input data, clock, reset_b);
  always @ ( posedge clock, negedge reset_b)
    if (reset_b == 0) Q <= 1'b0; else Q<= data;
endmodule
```

Sample of simulation results:



## 8.28

```
// Test bench for exhaustive simulation
module t_Sequential_Binary_Multiplier;
parameter dp_width = 5;           // Width of datapath
wire [2 * dp_width - 1: 0] Product;
wire Ready;
reg [dp_width - 1: 0] Multiplicand, Multiplier;
reg Start, clock, reset_b;
```

Sequential\_Binary\_Multiplier M0 (Product, Ready, Multiplicand, Multiplier, Start, clock, reset\_b);

```
initial #109200 $finish;
initial begin clock = 0; #5 forever #5 clock = ~clock; end
initial fork
    reset_b = 1;
    #2 reset_b = 0;
    #3 reset_b = 1;
join
```

```

initial begin #5 Start = 1; end
initial begin
    #5 Multiplicand = 0;
    Multiplier = 0;
    repeat (31) #10 begin Multiplier = Multiplier + 1;
    repeat (32) @ (posedge M0.Ready) #5 Multiplicand = Multiplicand + 1;
    end
    Start = 0;
end

// Error Checker
reg Error;
reg [2*dp_width -1: 0] Exp_Value;
always @ (posedge Ready) begin
    Exp_Value = Multiplier * Multiplicand;
    //Exp_Value = Multiplier * Multiplicand + 1;    // Inject error to verify detection
    Error = (Exp_Value ^ Product);
end
wire [2: 0] state = {M0.M0.G2, M0.M0.G1, M0.M0.G0}; // Watch state
endmodule

module Sequential_Binary_Multiplier
    #(parameter dp_width = 5)
    (
        output [2*dp_width -1: 0] Product,
        output Ready,
        input [dp_width -1: 0] Multiplicand, Multiplier,
        input Start, clock, reset_b
    );
    wire Load_regs, Decr_P, Add_regs, Shift_regs, Zero, Q0;

    Controller M0 (Ready, Load_regs, Decr_P, Add_regs, Shift_regs, Start, Zero, Q0, clock, reset_b);
    Datapath M1(Product, Q0, Zero, Multiplicand, Multiplier, Start, Load_regs, Decr_P, Add_regs,
        Shift_regs, clock, reset_b);
endmodule

module Controller (
    output Ready,
    output Load_regs, Decr_P, Add_regs, Shift_regs,
    input Start, Zero, Q0, clock, reset_b
);
// One-Hot Control unit (See Fig. 8.18)
DFF_S M0 (G0, D0, clock, Set);
DFF M1 (G1, D1, clock, reset_b);
DFF M2 (G2, G1, clock, reset_b);
or (D0, w1, w2);
and (w1, G0, Start_b);
and (w2, Zero, G2);
not (Start_b, Start);
not (Zero_b, Zero);
or (D1, w3, w4);
and (w3, Start, G0);
and (w4, Zero_b, G2);

and (Load_regs, G0, Start);
and (Add_regs, Q0, G1);
assign Ready = G0;
assign Decr_P = G1;
assign Shift_regs = G2;
not (Set, reset_b);
endmodule

```

```

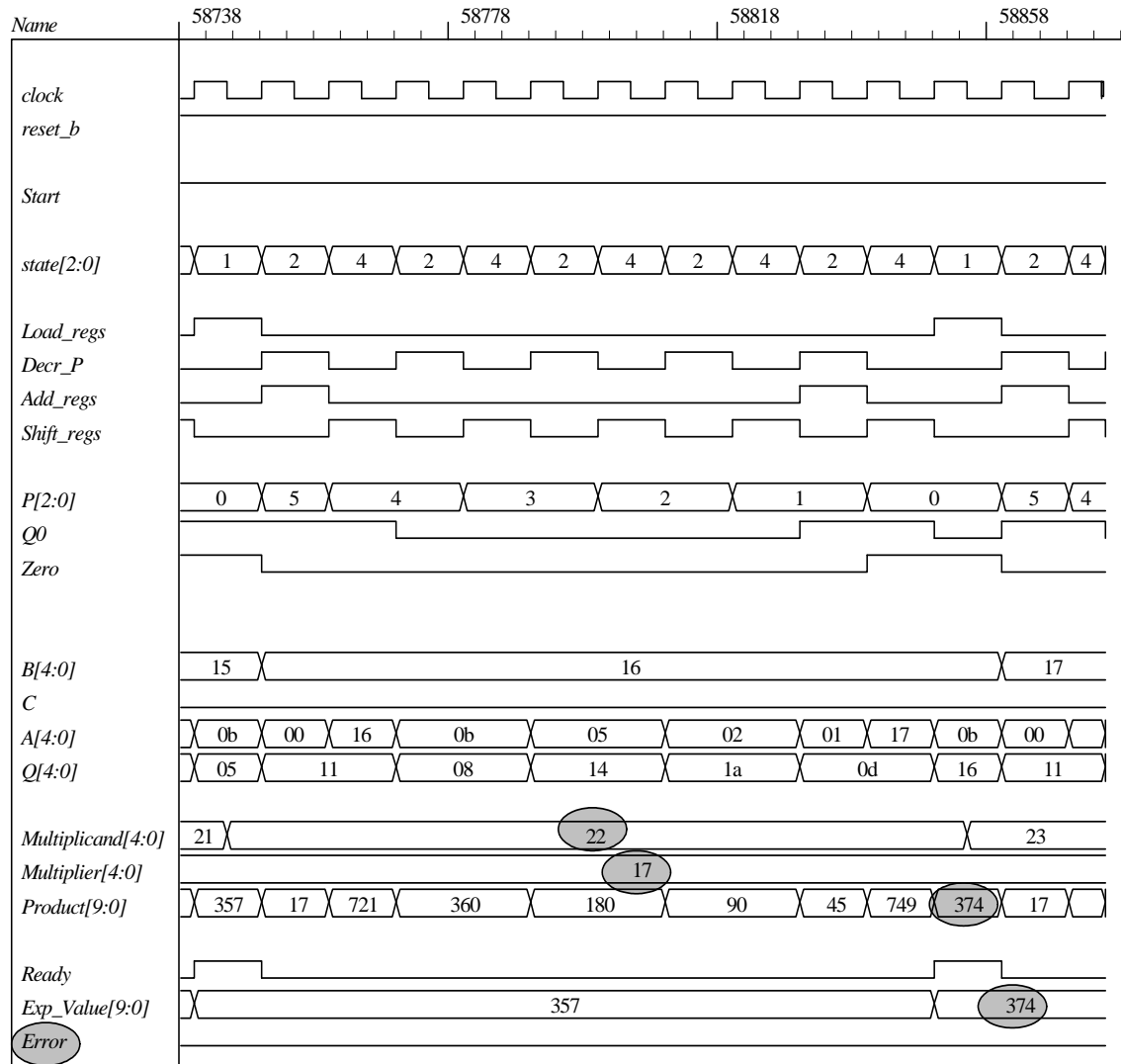
module Datapath #(parameter dp_width = 5, BC_size = 3) (
    output [2*dp_width - 1: 0] Product, output Q0, output Zero,
    input [dp_width - 1: 0] Multiplicand, Multiplier,
    input Start, Load_regs, Decr_P, Add_regs, Shift_regs, clock, reset_b
);
    reg [dp_width - 1: 0] A, B, Q; // Sized for datapath
    reg C;
    reg [BC_size - 1: 0] P;
    assign Product = {C, A, Q};
    // Status signals
    assign Zero = (P == 0); // counter is zero
    assign Q0 = Q[0];

    always @ (posedge clock) begin
        if (Load_regs) begin
            P <= dp_width;
            A <= 0;
            C <= 0;
            B <= Multiplicand;
            Q <= Multiplier;
        end
        if (Add_regs) {C, A} <= A + B;
        if (Shift_regs) {C, A, Q} <= {C, A, Q} >> 1;
        if (Decr_P) P <= P - 1;
    end
endmodule

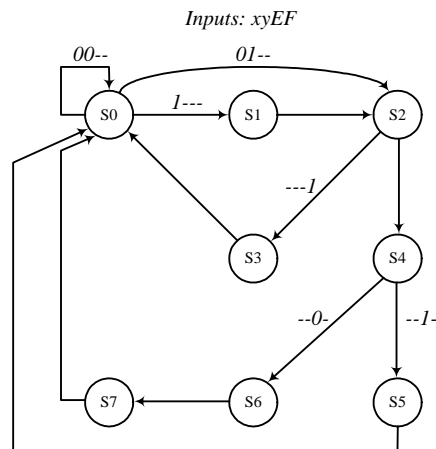
module DFF_S (output reg Q, input data, clock, Set);
    always @ ( posedge clock, posedge Set)
        if (Set) Q <= 1'b1; else Q<= data;
endmodule

module DFF (output reg Q, input data, clock, reset_b);
    always @ ( posedge clock, negedge reset_b)
        if (reset_b == 0) Q <= 1'b0; else Q<= data;
endmodule

```



8.29 (a)





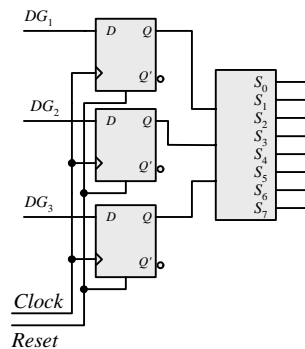
(b)

$$\begin{aligned}DS_0 &= x'y'S_0 + S_3 + S_5 + S_7 \\DS_1 &= xS_0 \\DS_2 &= x'yS_0 + S_1 \\DS_3 &= FS_2 \\DS_4 &= F'S_2 \\DS_5 &= E'S_5 \\DS_6 &= E'S_4 \\DS_7 &= S_6\end{aligned}$$

(c)

Output	Present state $G_1 G_2 G_3$	Inputs $x y E F$	Next state $G_1 G_2 G_3$
$S_0$	0 0 0	0 0 x x	0 0 0
$S_0$	0 0 0	1 x x x	0 0 1
$S_0$	0 0 0	0 1 x x	0 1 0
$S_1$	0 0 1	x x x x	0 1 0
$S_2$	0 1 0	x x 0 x	1 0 0
$S_2$	0 1 0	x x 1 x	0 1 1
$S_3$	0 1 1	x x x x	0 0 0
$S_4$	1 0 0	x x x 0	1 1 0
$S_4$	1 0 0	x x x 1	1 0 1
$S_5$	1 0 1	x x x x	0 0 0
$S_6$	1 1 0	x x x x	1 1 0
$S_7$	1 1 1	x x x x	0 0 0

(d)

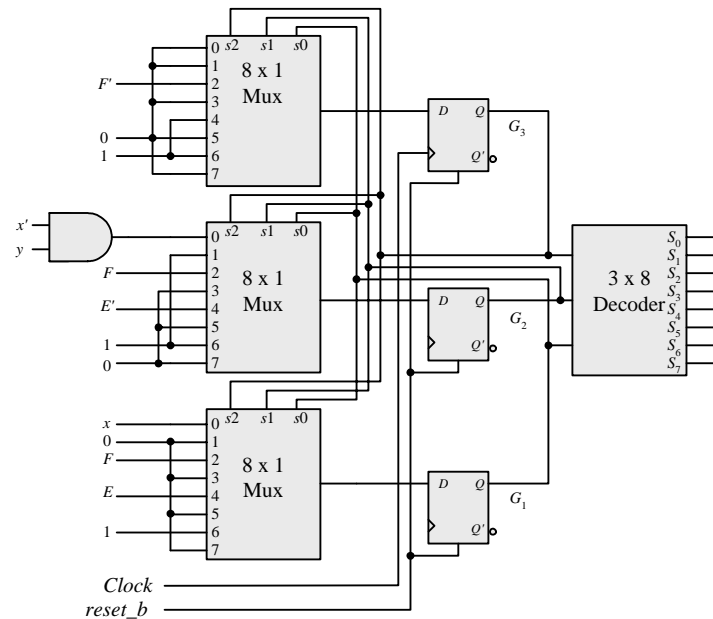


$$\begin{aligned}DG_1 &= F'S_2 + S_4 + S_6 \\DG_2 &= x'yS_0 + S_1 + FS_2 + E'S_4 + S_6 \\DG_3 &= xS_0 + FS_2 + ES_4 + S_6\end{aligned}$$

(e)

Present state $G_1 G_2 G_3$	Next state $G_1 G_2 G_3$	Input conditions	Mux1	Mux2	Mux3
0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0	0 0 0 0 0 1 0 1 0	$x'y'$ $x$ $x'y$	0	$x'y$	$x$
0 0 1	0 1 0	None	0	1	0
0 1 0 0 1 0	1 0 0 0 1 1	$F'$ $F'$	$F'$	$F$	$F$
0 1 1	0 0 0	None	0	0	0
1 0 0 1 0 0	1 1 0 1 0 1	$E'$ $E'$	1	$E'$	$E$
1 0 1	0 0 0	None	0	0	0
1 1 0	1 1 0	None	1	1	1
1 1 1	0 0 0	None	0	0	0

(f)



(g)

**module** Controller\_8\_29g (input x, y, E, F, clock, reset\_b);

supply0 GND;

supply1 VCC;

mux\_8x1 M3 (m3, GND, GND, F\_bar, GND, VCC, GND, VCC, GND, G3, G2, G1);

mux\_8x1 M2 (m2, w1, VCC, F, GND, E\_bar, GND, VCC, GND, G3, G2, G1);

mux\_8x1 M1 (m1, x, GND, F, GND, E, GND, VCC, GND, G3, G2, G1);

DFF\_8\_28g DM3 (G3, m3, clock, reset\_b);

DFF\_8\_28g DM2 (G2, m2, clock, reset\_b);

DFF\_8\_28g DM1 (G1, m1, clock, reset\_b);

decoder\_3x8 M0\_D (y0, y1, y2, y3, y4, y5, y6, y7, G3, G2, G1);

```

and (w1, x_bar, y);
not (F_bar, F);
not (E_bar, E);
not (x_bar, x);
endmodule

```

// Test plan: Exercise all paths of the ASM chart

```

module t_Controller_8_29g ();
  reg x, y, E, F, clock, reset_b;
  Controller_8_29g M0 (x, y, E, F, clock, reset_b);
  wire [2: 0] state = {M0.G3, M0.G2, M0.G1};

  initial #500 $finish;
  initial begin clock = 0; forever #5 clock = ~clock; end
  initial begin end
  initial fork
    reset_b = 0; #2 reset_b = 1;
    #0 begin x = 1; y = 1; E = 1; F = 1; end // Path: S_0, S_1, S_2, S_34
    #80 reset_b = 0; #92 reset_b = 1;
    #90 begin x = 1; y = 1; E = 1; F = 0; end
    #150 reset_b = 0;
    #152 reset_b = 1;
    #150 begin x = 1; y = 1; E = 0; F = 0; end // Path: S_0, S_1, S_2, S_4, S_5
    #200 reset_b = 0;
    #202 reset_b = 1;
    #190 begin x = 1; y = 1; E = 0; F = 0; end // Path: S_0, S_1, S_2, S_4, S_6, S_7
    #250 reset_b = 0;
    #252 reset_b = 1;
    #240 begin x = 0; y = 0; E = 0; F = 0; end // Path: S_0
    #290 reset_b = 0;
    #292 reset_b = 1;
    #280 begin x = 0; y = 1; E = 0; F = 0; end // Path: S_0, S_2, S_4, S_6, S_7
    #360 reset_b = 0;
    #362 reset_b = 1;
    #350 begin x = 0; y = 1; E = 1; F = 0; end // Path: S_0, S_2, S_4, S_5
    #420 reset_b = 0;
    #422 reset_b = 1;
    #410 begin x = 0; y = 1; E = 0; F = 1; end // Path: S_0, S_2, S_3
  join
endmodule

```

```

module mux_8x1 (output reg y, input x0, x1, x2, x3, x4, x5, x6, x7, s2, s1, s0);
  always @ (x0, x1, x2, x3, x4, x5, x6, x7, s0, s1, s2)
    case ({s2, s1, s0})
      3'b000: y = x0;
      3'b001: y = x1;
      3'b010: y = x2;
      3'b011: y = x3;
      3'b100: y = x4;
      3'b101: y = x5;
      3'b110: y = x6;
      3'b111: y = x7;
    endcase
endmodule

```

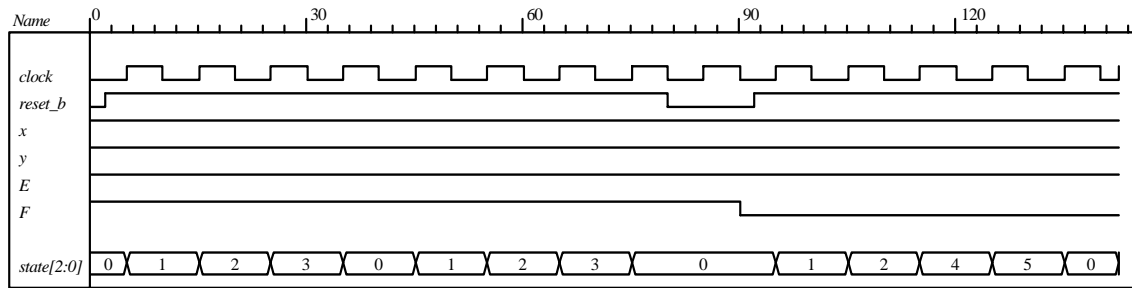
```

module DFF_8_28g (output reg q, input data, clock, reset_b);
  always @ (posedge clock, negedge reset_b)
    if (!reset_b) q <= 1'b0; else q <= data;
endmodule

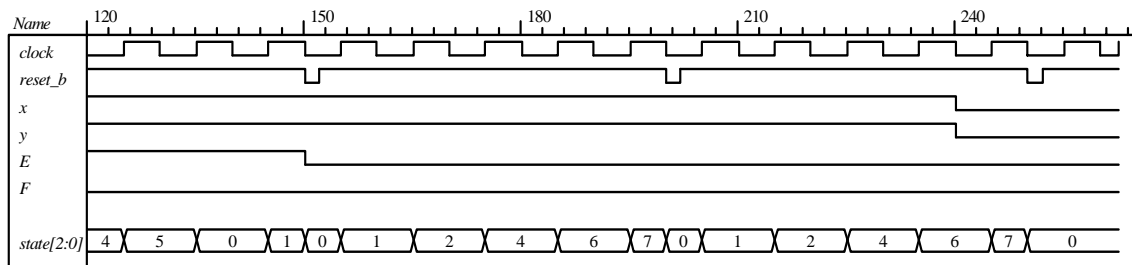
```

```
module decoder_3x8 (output reg y0, y1, y2, y3, y4, y5, y6, y7, input x2, x1, x0);  
  always @ (x0, x1, x2) begin  
    {y7, y6, y5, y4, y3, y2, y1, y0} = 8'b0;  
    case ({x2, x1, x0})  
      3'b000: y0= 1'b1;  
      3'b001: y1= 1'b1;  
      3'b010: y2= 1'b1;  
      3'b011: y3= 1'b1;  
      3'b100: y4= 1'b1;  
      3'b101: y5= 1'b1;  
      3'b110: y6= 1'b1;  
      3'b111: y7= 1'b1;  
    endcase  
  end  
endmodule
```

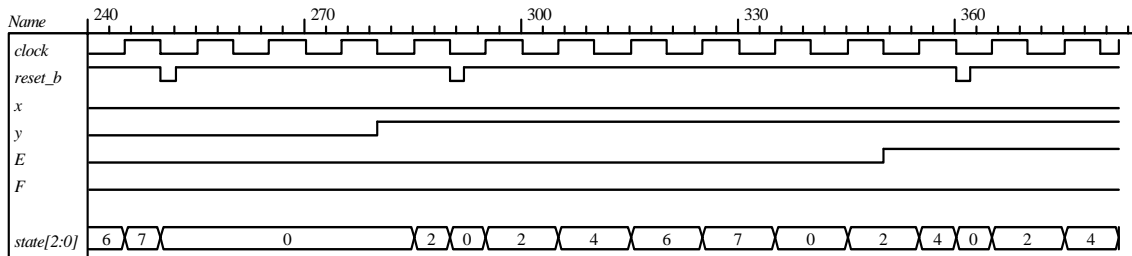
Path: S\_0, S\_1, S\_2, S\_3 and Path: S\_0, S\_1, S\_2, S\_4, S\_5



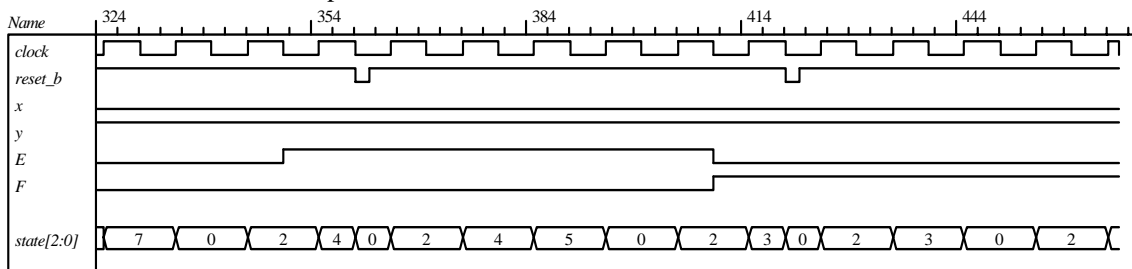
Path: S\_0, S\_1, S\_2, S\_4, S\_6, S\_7



Path: S\_0 and Path , S\_0, S\_2, S\_4, S\_6, S\_7



Path: S\_0, S\_2, S\_4, S\_5 and path S\_0, S\_2, S\_3



(h)

```

module Controller_8_29h (input x, y, E, F, clock, reset_b);
  parameter S_0 = 3'b000, S_1 = 3'b001, S_2 = 3'b010,
    S_3 = 3'b011, S_4 = 3'b100, S_5 = 3'b101, S_6 = 3'b110, S_7 = 3'b111;
  reg [2: 0] state, next_state;

  always @ (posedge clock, negedge reset_b)
    if (!reset_b) state <= S_0; else state <= next_state;

```

```

always @ (state, x, y, E, F) begin
  case (state)
    S_0:      if (x) next_state = S_1;
              else next_state = y ? S_2: S_0;
    S_1:      next_state = S_2;
    S_2:      if (F) next_state = S_3; else next_state = S_4;
    S_3, S_5, S_7: next_state = S_0;
    S_4:      if (E) next_state = S_5; else next_state = S_6;
    S_6:      next_state = S_7;
    default: next_state = S_0;
  endcase
end
endmodule

// Test plan: Exercise all paths of the ASM chart

module t_Controller_8_29h ();
  reg x, y, E, F, clock, reset_b;

  Controller_8_29h M0 (x, y, E, F, clock, reset_b);

  initial #500 $finish;
  initial begin clock = 0; forever #5 clock = ~clock; end
  initial begin end
  initial fork
    reset_b = 0; #2 reset_b = 1;
    #20 begin x = 1; y = 1; E = 1; F = 1; end // Path: S_0, S_1, S_2, S_34
    #80 reset_b = 0; #92 reset_b = 1;
    #90 begin x = 1; y = 1; E = 1; F = 0; end
    #150 reset_b = 0;
    #152 reset_b = 1;
    #150 begin x = 1; y = 1; E = 0; F = 0; end // Path: S_0, S_1, S_2, S_4, S_5
    #200 reset_b = 0;
    #202 reset_b = 1;
    #190 begin x = 1; y = 1; E = 0; F = 0; end // Path: S_0, S_1, S_2, S_4, S_6, S_7
    #250 reset_b = 0;
    #252 reset_b = 1;
    #240 begin x = 0; y = 0; E = 0; F = 0; end // Path: S_0
    #290 reset_b = 0;
    #292 reset_b = 1;
    #280 begin x = 0; y = 1; E = 0; F = 0; end // Path: S_0, S_2, S_4, S_6, S_7
    #360 reset_b = 0;
    #362 reset_b = 1;
    #350 begin x = 0; y = 1; E = 1; F = 0; end // Path: S_0, S_2, S_4, S_5
    #420 reset_b = 0;
    #422 reset_b = 1;
    #410 begin x = 0; y = 1; E = 0; F = 1; end // Path: S_0, S_2, S_3
  join
endmodule

```

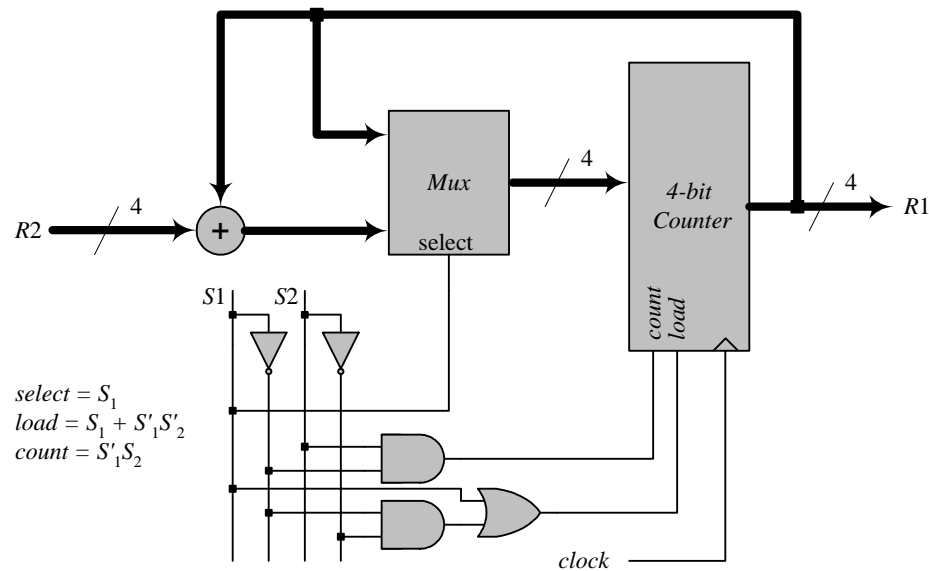
Note: Simulation results match those for 8.39g.

**8.30** (a)  $E = 1$  (b)  $E = 0$

**8.31**  $A = 0110$ ,  $B = 0010$ ,  $C = 0000$ .

$A * B = 1100$	$A / B = 0110$	$A \&\& C = 0$
$A + B = 1000$	$A \wedge B = 0100$	$/ A = 1$
$A - B = 0100$	$\&A = 0$	$A < B = 0$
$\sim C = 1111$	$\sim / C = 1$	$A > B = 1$
$A \& B = 0010$	$A // B = 1$	$A ! B = 1$

8.32



8.33

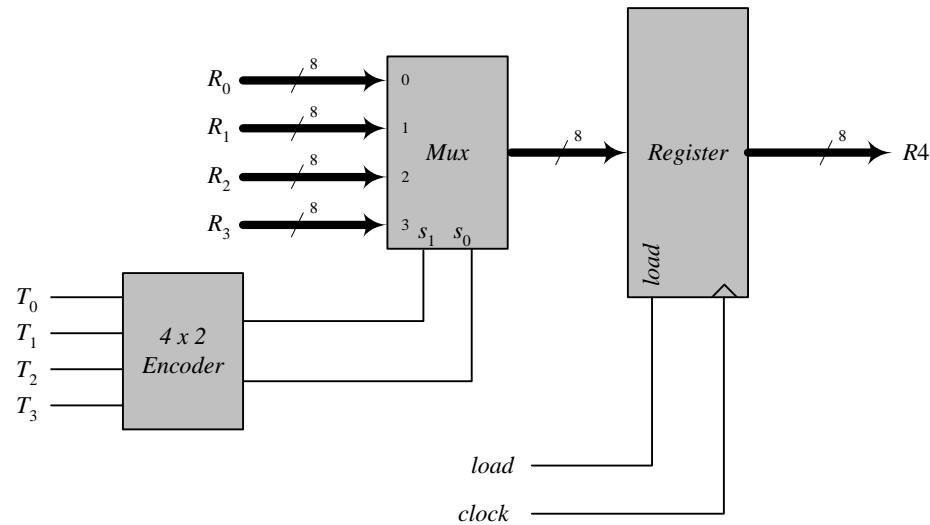
Assume that the states are encoded one-hot as  $T_0, T_1, T_2, T_3$ . The select lines of the mux are generated as:

$$s_1 = T_2 + T_3$$

$$s_0 = T_1 + T_3$$

The signal to load  $R_4$  can be generated by the host processor or by:

$$load = T_0 + T_1 + T_2 + T_3$$



8.34 (a)

```

module Datapath_BEH
#(parameter dp_width = 8, R2_width = 4)
(
    output [R2_width - 1: 0] count, output reg E, output Zero, input [dp_width - 1: 0] data,
    input Load_regs, Shift_left, Incr_R2, clock, reset_b);
    
```

```

reg [dp_width -1: 0] R1;
reg [R2_width -1: 0] R2;

assign count = R2;
assign Zero = ~(| R1);
always @ (posedge clock) begin
    E <= R1[dp_width -1] & Shift_left;
    if (Load_regs) begin R1 <= data; R2 <= {R2_width{1'b1}}; end
    if (Shift_left) {E, R1} <= {E, R1} << 1;
    if (Incr_R2) R2 <= R2 + 1;
end
endmodule

// Test Plan for Datapath Unit:
// Demonstrate action of Load_regs
//   R1 gets data, R2 gets all ones
// Demonstrate action of Incr_R2
// Demonstrate action of Shift_left and detect E

// Test bench for datapath

module t_Datapath_Unit
#(parameter dp_width = 8, R2_width = 4)
();
    wire [R2_width -1: 0] count;
    wire E, Zero;
    reg [dp_width -1: 0] data;
    reg Load_regs, Shift_left, Incr_R2, clock, reset_b;

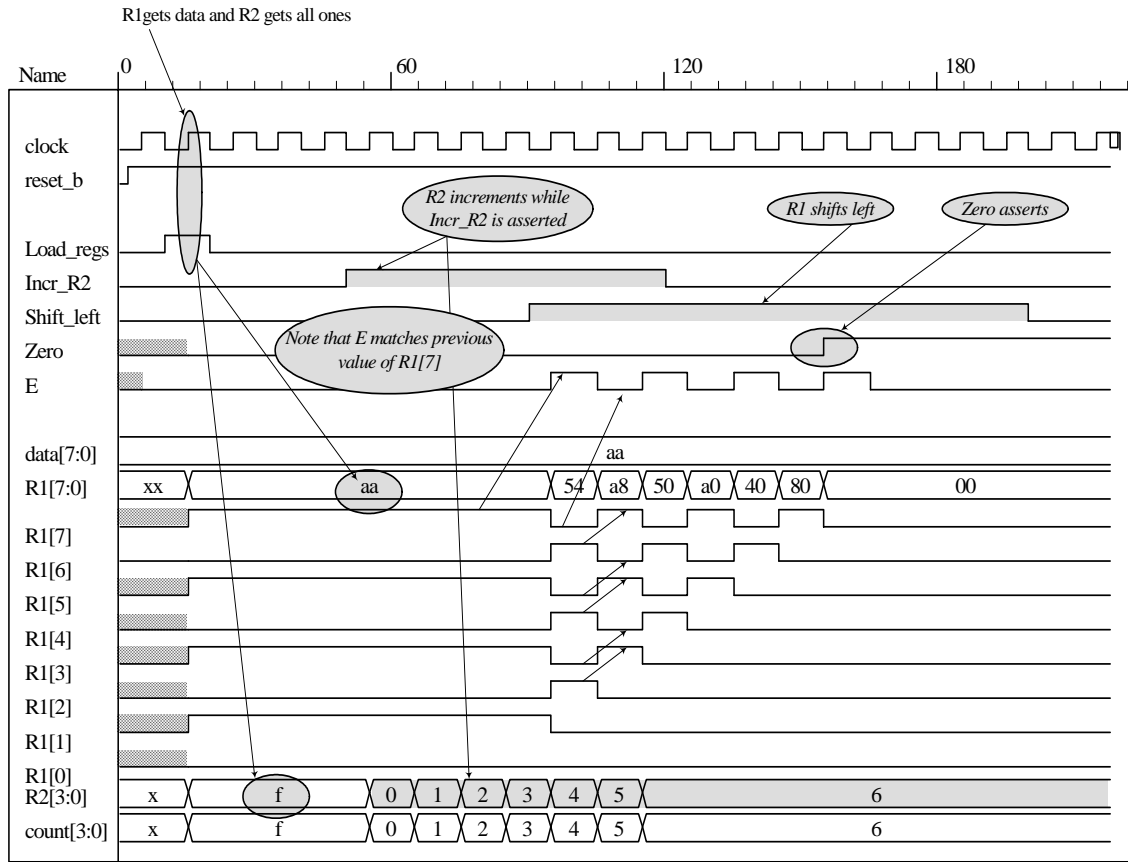
    Datapath_BEH M0 (count, E, Zero, data, Load_regs, Shift_left, Incr_R2, clock, reset_b);

    initial #250 $finish;
    initial begin clock = 0; forever #5 clock = ~clock; end
    initial begin reset_b = 0; #2 reset_b = 1; end
    initial fork
        data = 8'haa;
        Load_regs = 0;
        Incr_R2 = 0;
        Shift_left = 0;
        #10 Load_regs = 1;
        #20 Load_regs = 0;
        #50 Incr_R2 = 1;
        #120 Incr_R2 = 0;
        #90 Shift_left = 1;
        #200 Shift_left = 0;
    join
endmodule

```

Note: The simulation results show tests of the operations of the datapath independent of the control unit, so *count* does not represent the number of ones in the *data*.





```
(b) // Control Unit
module Controller_BEH (
    output Ready,
    output reg Load_regs,
    output Incr_R2, Shift_left,
    input Start, Zero, E, clock, reset_b
);
    parameter S_idle = 0, S_1 = 1, S_2 = 2, S_3 = 3;
    reg [1:0] state, next_state;

    assign Ready = (state == S_idle);
    assign Incr_R2 = (state == S_1);
    assign Shift_left = (state == S_2);

    always @ (posedge clock, negedge reset_b)
        if (reset_b == 0) state <= S_idle;
        else state <= next_state;

    always @ (state, Start, Zero, E) begin
        Load_regs = 0;
        case (state)
            S_idle: if (Start) begin Load_regs = 1; next_state = S_1; end
                    else next_state = S_idle;
            S_1: if (Zero) next_state = S_idle; else next_state = S_2;

            S_2: next_state = S_3;
            S_3: if (E) next_state = S_1; else next_state = S_2;
        endcase
    end
```

**endmodule**

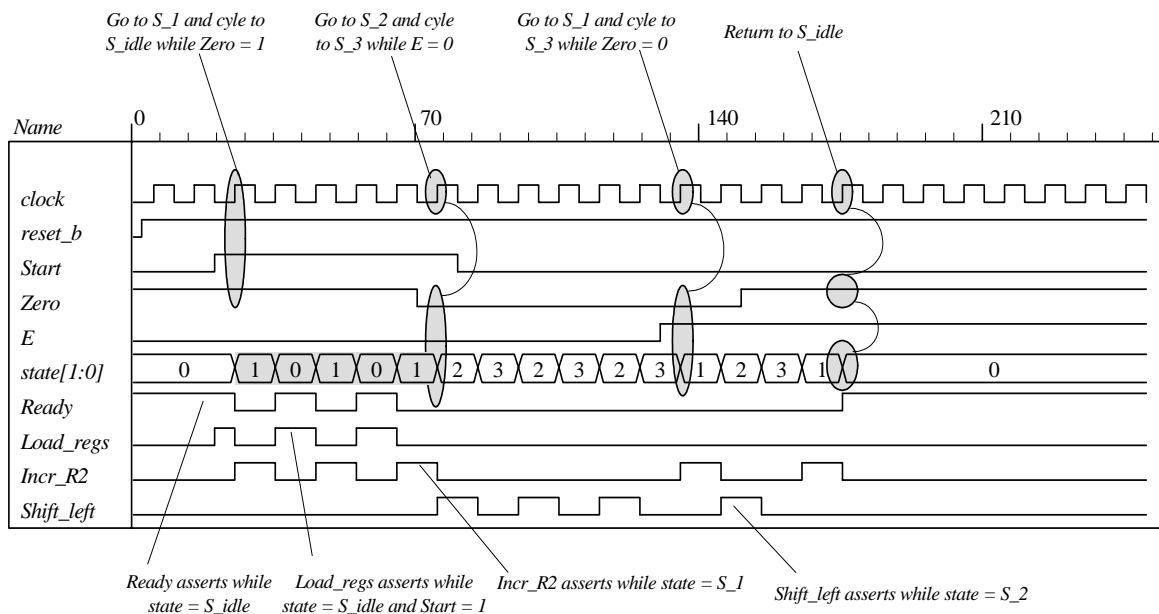
```
// Test plan for Control Unit
// Verify that state enters S_idle with reset_b asserted.
// With reset_b de-asserted, verify that state enters S_1 and asserts Load_Regs when
// Start is asserted.
// Verify that Incr_R2 is asserted in S_1.
// Verify that state returns to S_idle from S_1 if Zero is asserted.
// Verify that state goes to S_2 if Zero is not asserted.
// Verify that Shift_left is asserted in S_2.
// Verify that state goes to S_3 from S_2 unconditionally.
// Verify that state returns to S_2 from S_3 if E is not asserted.
// Verify that state goes to S_1 from S_3 if E is asserted.
```

// Test bench for Control Unit

```
module t_Control_Unit ();
wire Ready, Load_regs, Incr_R2, Shift_left;
reg Start, Zero, E, clock, reset_b;

Controller_BEH M0 (Ready, Load_regs, Incr_R2, Shift_left, Start, Zero, E, clock, reset_b);

initial #250 $finish;
initial begin clock = 0; forever #5 clock = ~clock; end
initial begin reset_b = 0; #2 reset_b = 1; end
initial fork
  Zero = 1;
  E = 0;
  Start = 0;
  #20 Start = 1; // Cycle from S_idle to S_1
  #80 Start = 0;
  #70 Zero = 0; // S_idle to S_1 to S_2 to S_3 and cycle to S_2.
  #130 E = 1; // Cycle to S_3 to S_1 to S_2 to S_3
  #150 Zero = 1; // Return to S_idle
join
endmodule
```



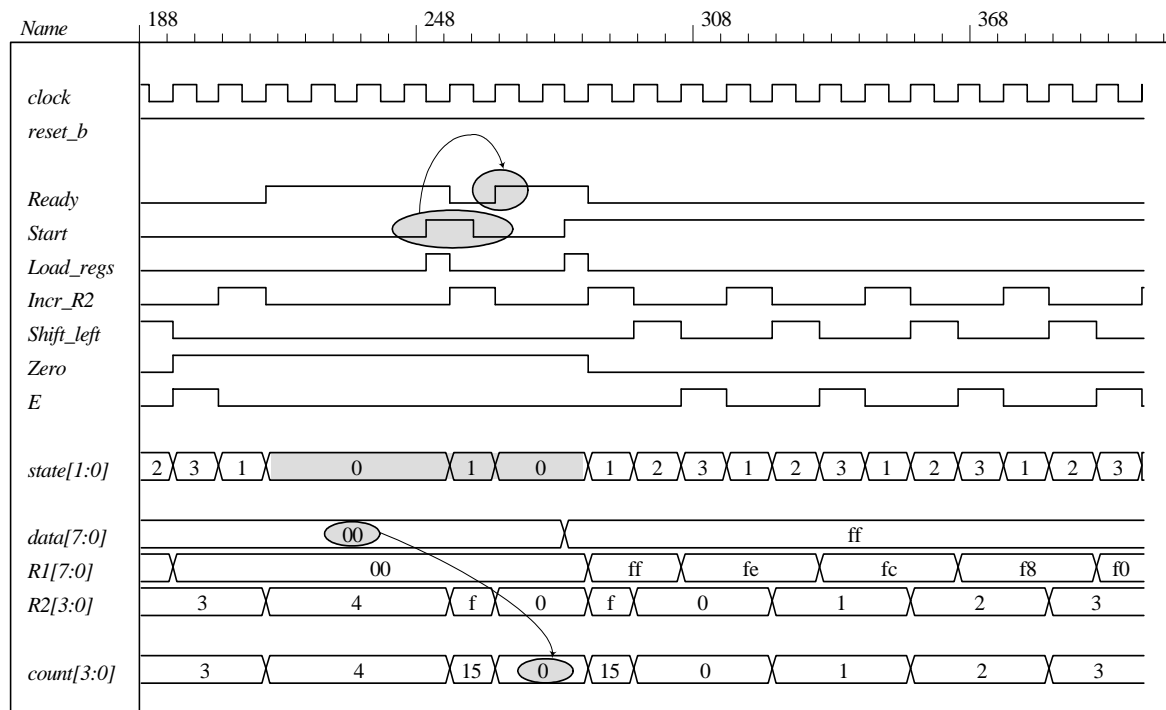
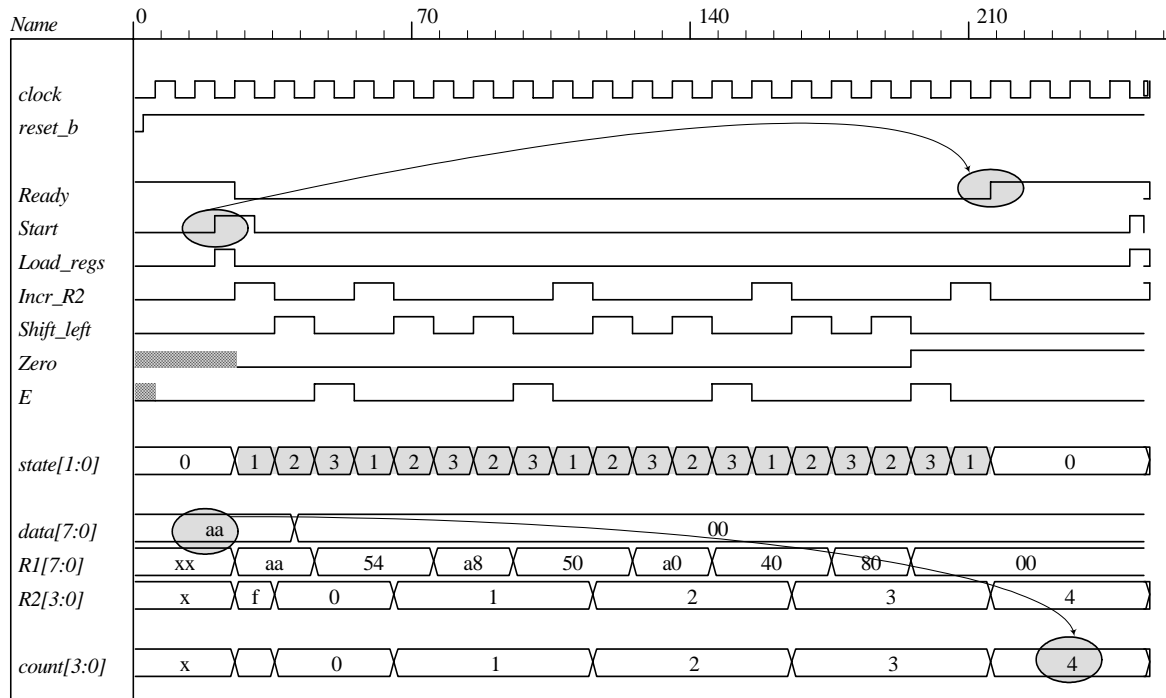
```
(c)
// Integrated system
module Count_Ones_BEH_BEH
# (parameter dp_width = 8, R2_width = 4)
(
    output [R2_width -1: 0]    count,
    input [dp_width -1: 0]    data,
    input                      Start, clock, reset_b
);
    wire Load_regs, Incr_R2, Shift_left, Zero, E;
    Controller_BEH M0 (Ready, Load_regs, Incr_R2, Shift_left, Start, Zero, E, clock, reset_b);
    Datapath_BEH M1 (count, E, Zero, data, Load_regs, Shift_left, Incr_R2, clock, reset_b);
endmodule

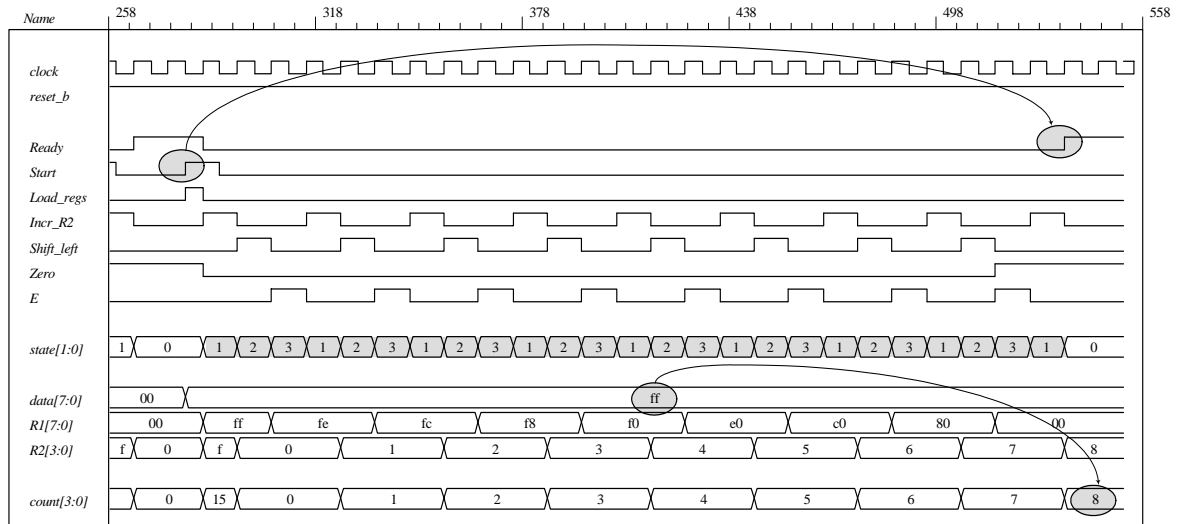
// Test plan for integrated system
// Test for data values of 8'haa, 8'h00, 8'hff.

// Test bench for integrated system

module t_count_Ones_BEH_BEH ();
    parameter dp_width = 8, R2_width = 4;
    wire [R2_width -1: 0] count;
    reg [dp_width -1: 0] data;
    reg Start, clock, reset_b;

    Count_Ones_BEH_BEH M0 (count, data, Start, clock, reset_b);
    initial #700 $finish;
    initial begin clock = 0; forever #5 clock = ~clock; end
    initial begin reset_b = 0; #2 reset_b = 1; end
    initial fork
        data = 8'haa;      // Expect count = 4
        Start = 0;
        #20 Start = 1;
        #30 Start = 0;
        #40 data = 8'b00; // Expect count = 0
        #250 Start = 1;
        #260 Start = 0;
        #280 data = 8'hff;
        #280 Start = 1;
        #290 Start = 0;
    join
endmodule
```





(d)

// One-Hot Control unit

```

module Controller_BEH_1Hot
(
    output      Ready,
    output reg  Load_regs,
    output      Incr_R2, Shift_left,
    input       Start, Zero, E, clock, reset_b
);
    parameter S_idle = 4'b0001, S_1 = 4'b0010, S_2 = 4'b0100, S_3 = 4'b1000;
    reg [3:0] state, next_state;

    assign Ready = (state == S_idle);
    assign Incr_R2 = (state == S_1);
    assign Shift_left = (state == S_2);

    always @ (posedge clock, negedge reset_b)
        if (reset_b == 0) state <= S_idle;
        else state <= next_state;

    always @ (state, Start, Zero, E) begin
        Load_regs = 0;
        case (state)
            S_idle: if (Start) begin Load_regs = 1; next_state = S_1; end
                   else next_state = S_idle;
            S_1:   if (Zero) next_state = S_idle; else next_state = S_2;

            S_2:   next_state = S_3;
            S_3:   if (E) next_state = S_1; else next_state = S_2;
        endcase
    end
endmodule
    
```

Note: Test plan, test bench and simulation results are same as (b), but with states numbered with one-hot codes.

(e)

// Integrated system with one-hot controller

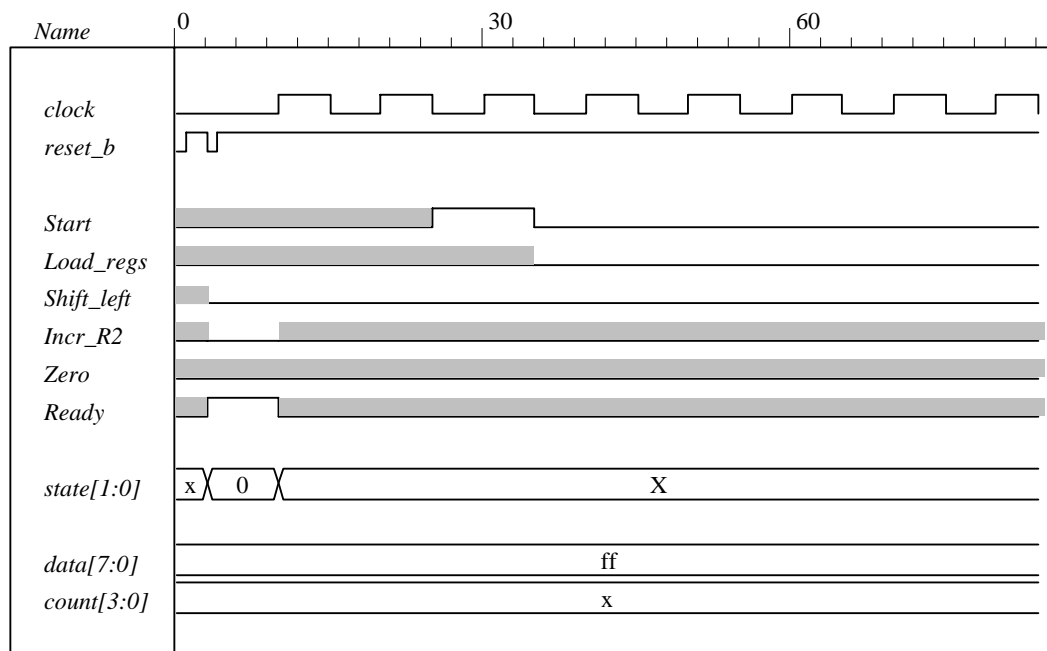
```

module Count_Ones_BEH_1Hot
# (parameter dp_width = 8, R2_width = 4)
(
  output [R2_width -1: 0]    count,
  input [dp_width -1: 0]    data,
  input                      Start, clock, reset_b
);
  wire Load_regs, Incr_R2, Shift_left, Zero, E;
  Controller_BEH_1Hot M0 (Ready, Load_regs, Incr_R2, Shift_left, Start, Zero, E, clock, reset_b);
  Datapath_BEH M1 (count, E, Zero, data, Load_regs, Shift_left, Incr_R2, clock, reset_b);
endmodule

```

Note: Test plan, test bench and simulation results are same as (c), but with states numbered with one-hot codes.

- 8.35** Note: Signal *Start* is initialized to 0 when the simulation begins. Otherwise, the state of the structural model will become X at the first clock after the reset condition is deasserted, with *Start* and *Load\_Regs* having unknown values. In this condition the structural model cannot operate correctly.



```

module Count_Ones_STR_STR (count, Ready, data, Start, clock, reset_b);
// Mux – decoder implementation of control logic
// controller is structural
// datapath is structural

```

```

  parameter R1_size = 8, R2_size = 4;
  output [R2_size -1: 0]    count;
  output                      Ready;
  input [R1_size -1: 0]    data;
  input                      Start, clock, reset_b;
  wire                      Load_regs, Shift_left, Incr_R2, Zero, E;

```

```

  Controller_STR M0 (Ready, Load_regs, Shift_left, Incr_R2, Start, E, Zero, clock, reset_b);
  Datapath_STR M1 (count, E, Zero, data, Load_regs, Shift_left, Incr_R2, clock);

```

```

endmodule

```

```

module Controller_STR (Ready, Load_regs, Shift_left, Incr_R2, Start, E, Zero, clock, reset_b);
  output      Ready;
  output      Load_regs, Shift_left, Incr_R2;
  input       Start;
  input       E, Zero;
  input       clock, reset_b;
  supply0     GND;
  supply1     PWR;
  parameter   S0 = 2'b00, S1 = 2'b01, S2 = 2'b10, S3 = 2'b11; // Binary code
  wire        Load_regs, Shift_left, Incr_R2;
  wire        G0, G0_b, D_in0, D_in1, G1, G1_b;
  wire        Zero_b = ~Zero;

  wire        E_b = ~E;
  wire [1:0]   select = {G1, G0};
  wire [0:3]   Decoder_out;

  assign      Ready = ~Decoder_out[0];
  assign      Incr_R2 = ~Decoder_out[1];
  assign      Shift_left = ~Decoder_out[2];
  and         (Load_regs, Ready, Start);
  mux_4x1_beh  Mux_1 (D_in1, GND, Zero_b, PWR, E_b, select);
  mux_4x1_beh  Mux_0 (D_in0, Start, GND, PWR, E, select);
  D_flip_flop_AR_b M1 (G1, G1_b, D_in1, clock, reset_b);
  D_flip_flop_AR_b M0 (G0, G0_b, D_in0, clock, reset_b);
  decoder_2x4_df M2 (Decoder_out, G1, G0, GND);

endmodule

module Datapath_STR (count, E, Zero, data, Load_regs, Shift_left, Incr_R2, clock);
  parameter   R1_size = 8, R2_size = 4;
  output [R2_size -1: 0] count;
  output      E, Zero;
  input [R1_size -1: 0] data;
  input      Load_regs, Shift_left, Incr_R2, clock;
  wire [R1_size -1: 0] R1;
  supply0     Gnd;
  supply1     Pwr;
  assign      Zero = (R1 == 0);

  Shift_Reg    M1 (R1, data, Gnd, Shift_left, Load_regs, clock, Pwr);
  Counter      M2 (count, Load_regs, Incr_R2, clock, Pwr);
  D_flip_flop_AR M3 (E, w1, clock, Pwr);
  and         (w1, R1[R1_size -1], Shift_left);
endmodule

module Shift_Reg (R1, data, SI_0, Shift_left, Load_regs, clock, reset_b);
  parameter   R1_size = 8;
  output [R1_size -1: 0] R1;
  input [R1_size -1: 0] data;
  input      SI_0, Shift_left, Load_regs;
  input      clock, reset_b;
  reg [R1_size -1: 0] R1;

  always @ (posedge clock, negedge reset_b)
    if (reset_b == 0) R1 <= 0;
    else begin
      if (Load_regs) R1 <= data; else
        if (Shift_left) R1 <= {R1[R1_size -2:0], SI_0}; end
  endmodule

```

```

module Counter (R2, Load_regs, Incr_R2, clock, reset_b);
  parameter      R2_size = 4;
  output [R2_size -1: 0] R2;
  input          Load_regs, Incr_R2;
  input          clock, reset_b;
  reg [R2_size -1: 0] R2;

  always @ (posedge clock, negedge reset_b)
    if (reset_b == 0) R2 <= 0;
    else if (Load_regs) R2 <= {R2_size {1'b1}}; // Fill with 1
    else if (Incr_R2 == 1) R2 <= R2 + 1;
endmodule

module D_flip_flop_AR (Q, D, CLK, RST);
  output Q;
  input D, CLK, RST;
  reg Q;

  always @ (posedge CLK, negedge RST)
    if (RST == 0) Q <= 1'b0;
    else Q <= D;
endmodule

module D_flip_flop_AR_b (Q, Q_b, D, CLK, RST);
  output Q, Q_b;
  input D, CLK, RST;
  reg Q;
  assign Q_b = ~Q;
  always @ (posedge CLK, negedge RST)
    if (RST == 0) Q <= 1'b0;
    else Q <= D;
endmodule

// Behavioral description of 4-to-1 line multiplexer
// Verilog 2005 port syntax

module mux_4x1_beh
( output reg m_out,
  input in_0, in_1, in_2, in_3,
  input [1: 0] select
);

  always @ (in_0, in_1, in_2, in_3, select) // Verilog 2005 syntax
    case (select)
      2'b00: m_out = in_0;
      2'b01: m_out = in_1;
      2'b10: m_out = in_2;
      2'b11: m_out = in_3;
    endcase
endmodule

// Dataflow description of 2-to-4-line decoder
// See Fig. 4.19. Note: The figure uses symbol E, but the
// Verilog model uses enable to clearly indicate functionality.

module decoder_2x4_df (D, A, B, enable);
  output [0: 3] D;

  input A, B;
  input enable;

```



```

assign D[0] = ~(~A & ~B & ~enable),
        D[1] = ~(~A & B & ~enable),
        D[2] = ~(A & ~B & ~enable),
        D[3] = ~(A & B & ~enable);
endmodule

module t_Count_Ones;
parameter R1_size = 8, R2_size = 4;
wire [R2_size-1: 0] R2;

wire [R2_size-1: 0] count;
wire Ready;
reg [R1_size-1: 0] data;
reg Start, clock, reset_b;
wire [1: 0] state; // Use only for debug
assign state = {M0.M0.G1, M0.M0.G0};

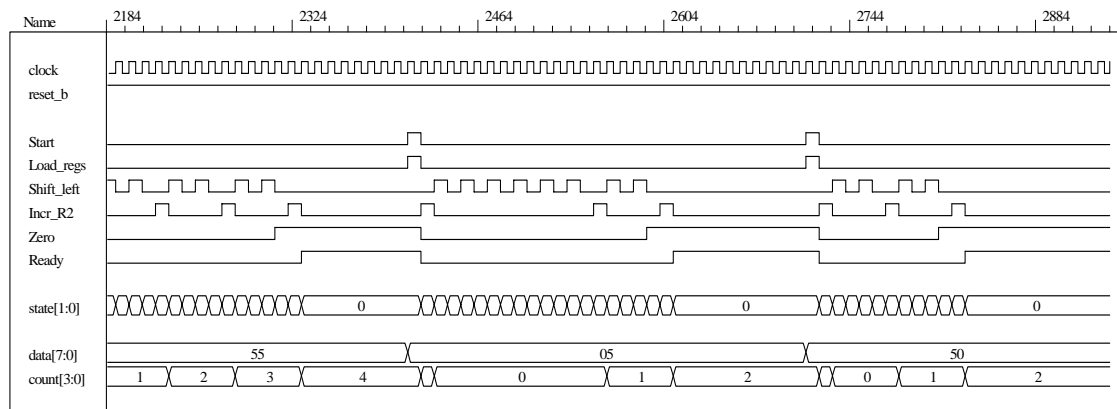
Count_Ones_STR_STR M0 (count, Ready, data, Start, clock, reset_b);

initial #4000 $finish;
initial begin clock = 0; #5 forever #5 clock = ~clock; end
initial fork
    Start = 0;

    #1 reset_b = 1;
    #3 reset_b = 0;
    #4 reset_b = 1;
    data = 8'Hff;
    # 25 Start = 1;
    # 35 Start = 0;
    #310 data = 8'h0f;
    #310 Start = 1;
    #320 Start = 0;
    #610 data = 8'hf0;
    #610 Start = 1;
    #620 Start = 0;
    #910 data = 8'h00;
    #910 Start = 1;
    #920 Start = 0;
    #1210 data = 8'haa;
    #1210 Start = 1;
    #1220 Start = 0;
    #1510 data = 8'h0a;
    #1510 Start = 1;
    #1520 Start = 0;
    #1810 data = 8'ha0;
    #1810 Start = 1;
    #1820 Start = 0;
    #2110 data = 8'h55;
    #2110 Start = 1;
    #2120 Start = 0;
    #2410 data = 8'h05;
    #2410 Start = 1;
    #2420 Start = 0;
    #2710 data = 8'h50;
    #2710 Start = 1;
    #2720 Start = 0;
    #3010 data = 8'ha5;
    #3010 Start = 1;
    #3020 Start = 0;
    #3310 data = 8'h5a;
    #3310 Start = 1;

```

```
#3320 Start = 0;
join
endmodule
```



**8.36** Note: See Prob. 8.35 for a behavioral model of the datapath unit, Prob. 8.36d for a one-hot control unit.

- (a)  $T_0, T_1, T_2, T_3$  be asserted when the state is in  $S\_idle, S\_1, S\_2$ , and  $S\_3$ , respectively. Let  $D_0, D_1, D_2$ , and  $D_3$  denote the inputs to the one-hot flip-flops.

$$D_0 = T_0 Start' + T_1 Zero$$

$$D_1 = T_0 Start + T_3 E$$

$$D_2 = T_1 Zero' + T_3 E'$$

$$D_3 = T_2$$

- (b) Gate-level one-hot controller

```
module Controller_Gates_1Hot
(
  output Ready,
  output Load_regs, Incr_R2, Shift_left,
  input Start, Zero, E, clock, reset_b
);
  wire w1, w2, w3, w4, w5, w6;
  wire T0, T1, T2, T3;
  wire set;
  assign Ready = T0;
  assign Incr_R2 = T1;
  assign Shift_left = T2;
  and (Load_regs, T0, Start);
  not (set, reset_b);
  DFF_S M0 (T0, D0, clock, set); // Note: reset action must initialize S_idle = 4'b0001
  DFF M1 (T1, D1, clock, reset_b);
  DFF M2 (T2, D2, clock, reset_b);
  DFF M3 (T3, D3, clock, reset_b);

  not (Start_b, Start);
  and (w1, T0, Start_b);
  and (w2, T1, Zero);
  or (D0, w1, w2);
```

```

and (w3, T0, Start);
and (w4, T3, E);
or (D1, w3, w4);

not (Zero_b, Zero);
not (E_b, E);
and (w5, T1, Zero_b);
and (w6, T3, E_b);
or (D2, w5, w6);

buf (D3, T2);
endmodule

module DFF (output reg Q, input D, clock, reset_b);
  always @ (posedge clock, negedge reset_b)
    if (reset_b == 0) Q <= 0;
    else Q <= D;
endmodule

module DFF_S (output reg Q, input D, clock, set);
  always @ (posedge clock, posedge set)
    if (set == 1) Q <= 1;
    else Q <= D;
endmodule

```

**(c)**

```

// Test plan for Control Unit
// Verify that state enters S_idle with reset_b asserted.
// With reset_b de-asserted, verify that state enters S_1 and asserts Load_Regs when
// Start is asserted.
// Verify that Incr_R2 is asserted in S_1.
// Verify that state returns to S_idle from S_1 if Zero is asserted.
// Verify that state goes to S_2 if Zero is not asserted.
// Verify that Shift_left is asserted in S_2.
// Verify that state goes to S_3 from S_2 unconditionally.
// Verify that state returns to S_2 from S_3 if E is not asserted.
// Verify that state goes to S_1 from S_3 if E is asserted.

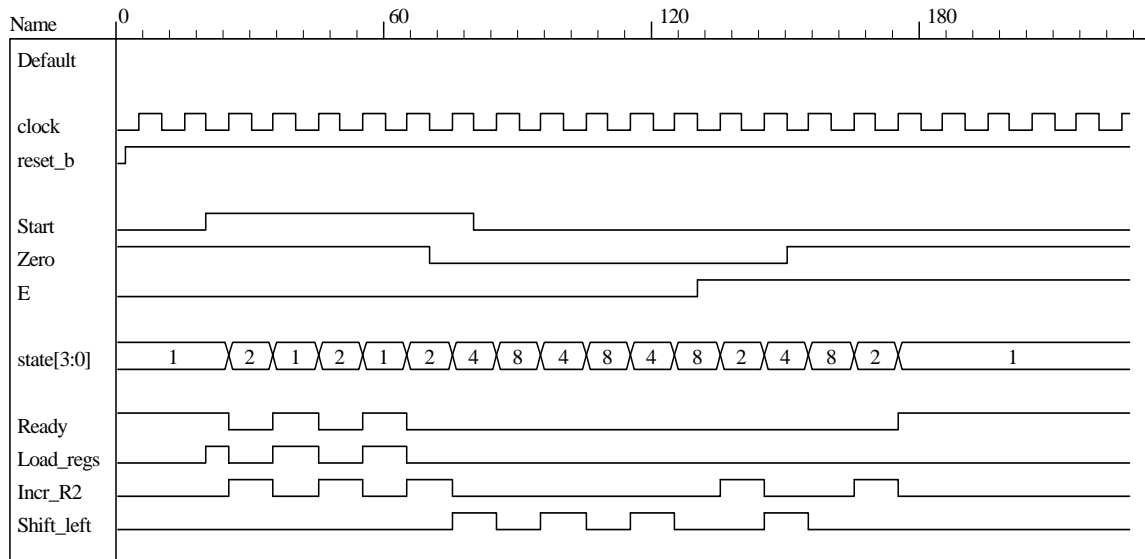
// Test bench for One-Hot Control Unit

module t_Control_Unit ();
  wire Ready, Load_regs, Incr_R2, Shift_left;
  reg Start, Zero, E, clock, reset_b;
  wire [3: 0] state = {M0.T3, M0.T2, M0.T1, M0.T0}; // Observe one-hot state bits
  Controller_Gates_1Hot M0 (Ready, Load_regs, Incr_R2, Shift_left, Start, Zero, E, clock, reset_b);

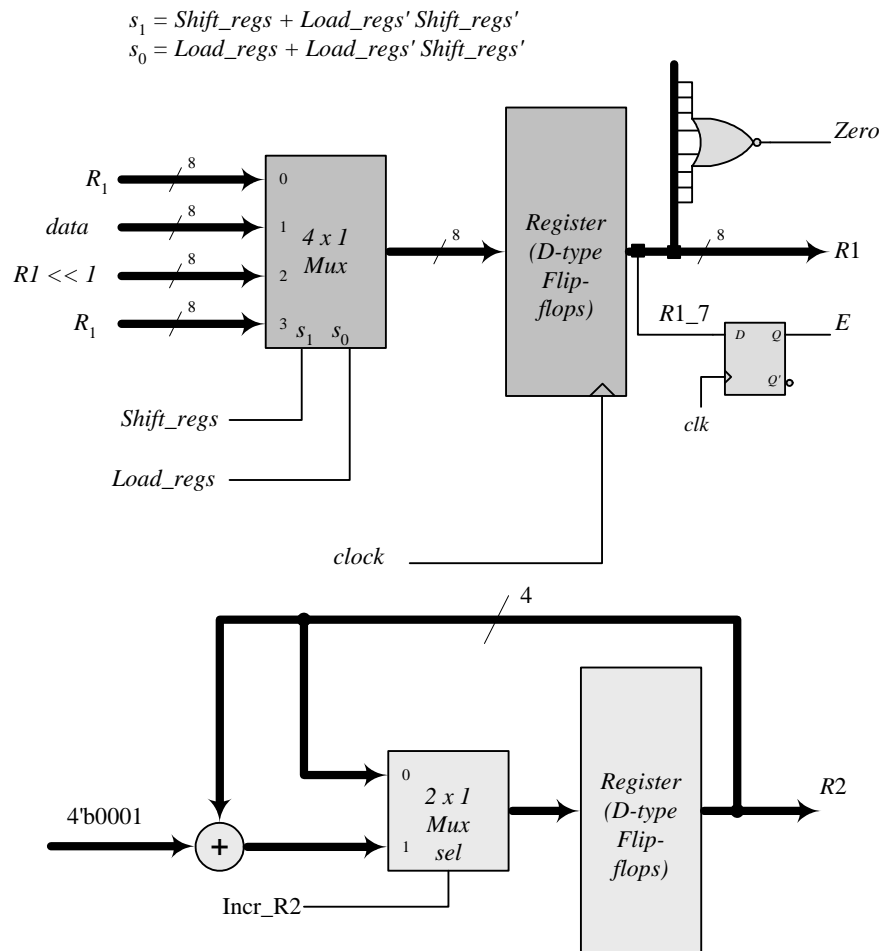
  initial #250 $finish;
  initial begin clock = 0; forever #5 clock = ~clock; end
  initial begin reset_b = 0; #2 reset_b = 1; end
  initial fork
    Zero = 1;
    E = 0;
    Start = 0;
    #20 Start = 1; // Cycle from S_idle to S_1
    #80 Start = 0;
    #70 Zero = 0; // S_idle to S_1 to S_2 to S_3 and cycle to S_2.
    #130 E = 1; // Cycle to S_3 to S_1 to S_2 to S_3
    #150 Zero = 1; // Return to S_idle
  join
endmodule

```

Note: simulation results match those for Prob. 8.34(d). See Prob. 8.34(c) for annotations.



(d) Datapath unit detail:



```
// Datapath unit – structural model
module Datapath_STR
#(parameter dp_width = 8, R2_width = 4)
(
    output [R2_width-1: 0] count, output E, output Zero, input [dp_width-1: 0] data,
    input Load_regs, Shift_left, Incr_R2, clock, reset_b);
    supply1 pwr;
    supply0 gnd;
    wire [dp_width-1: 0] R1_Dbus, R1;
    wire [R2_width-1: 0] R2_Dbus;
    wire DR1_0, DR1_1, DR1_2, DR1_3, DR1_4, DR1_5, DR1_6, DR1_7;
    wire R1_0, R1_1, R1_2, R1_3, R1_4, R1_5, R1_6, R1_7;
    wire R2_0, R2_1, R2_2, R2_3;
    wire [R2_width-1: 0] R2 = {R2_3, R2_2, R2_1, R2_0};
    assign count = {R2_3, R2_2, R2_1, R2_0};
    assign R1 = { R1_7, R1_6, R1_5, R1_4, R1_3, R1_2, R1_1, R1_0};
    assign DR1_0 = R1_Dbus[0];
    assign DR1_1 = R1_Dbus[1];
    assign DR1_2 = R1_Dbus[2];
    assign DR1_3 = R1_Dbus[3];
    assign DR1_4 = R1_Dbus[4];
    assign DR1_5 = R1_Dbus[5];
    assign DR1_6 = R1_Dbus[6];
    assign DR1_7 = R1_Dbus[7];

    nor (Zero, R1_0, R1_1, R1_2, R1_3, R1_4, R1_5, R1_6, R1_7);
    DFF D_E (E, R1_7, clock, pwr);

    DFF DF_0 (R1_0, DR1_0, clock, pwr);    // Disable reset
    DFF DF_1 (R1_1, DR1_1, clock, pwr);
    DFF DF_2 (R1_2, DR1_2, clock, pwr);
    DFF DF_3 (R1_3, DR1_3, clock, pwr);
    DFF DF_4 (R1_4, DR1_4, clock, pwr);
    DFF DF_5 (R1_5, DR1_5, clock, pwr);
    DFF DF_6 (R1_6, DR1_6, clock, pwr);
    DFF DF_7 (R1_7, DR1_7, clock, pwr);

    DFF_S DR_0 (R2_0, DR2_0, clock, Load_regs); // Load_regs (set) drives R2 to all ones
    DFF_S DR_1 (R2_1, DR2_1, clock, Load_regs);
    DFF_S DR_2 (R2_2, DR2_2, clock, Load_regs);
    DFF_S DR_3 (R2_3, DR2_3, clock, Load_regs);

    assign DR2_0 = R2_Dbus[0];
    assign DR2_1 = R2_Dbus[1];
    assign DR2_2 = R2_Dbus[2];
    assign DR2_3 = R2_Dbus[3];

    wire [1: 0] sel = {Shift_left, Load_regs};
    wire [dp_width-1: 0] R1_shifted = {R1_6, R1_5, R1_4, R1_3, R1_2, R1_1, R1_0, 1'b0};
    wire [R2_width-1: 0] sum = R2 + 4'b0001;

    Mux8_4_x_1 M0 (R1_Dbus, R1, data, R1_shifted, R1, sel);
    Mux4_2_x_1 M1 (R2_Dbus, R2, sum, Incr_R2);
endmodule
```

```

module Mux8_4_x_1 #(parameter dp_width = 8) (output reg [dp_width -1: 0] mux_out,
input [dp_width -1: 0] in0, in1, in2, in3, input [1: 0] sel);
always @ (in0, in1, in2, in3, sel)
    case (sel)
        2'b00: mux_out = in0;
        2'b01: mux_out = in1;
        2'b10: mux_out = in2;
        2'b11: mux_out = in3;
    endcase
endmodule

module Mux4_2_x_1 #(parameter dp_width = 4) (output [dp_width -1: 0] mux_out,
input [dp_width -1: 0] in0, in1, input sel);
assign mux_out = sel ? in1: in0;
endmodule

// Test Plan for Datapath Unit:
// Demonstrate action of Load_regs
// R1 gets data, R2 gets all ones
// Demonstrate action of Incr_R2
// Demonstrate action of Shift_left and detect E

// Test bench for datapath
module t_Datapath_Unit
#(parameter dp_width = 8, R2_width = 4)
();
wire [R2_width -1: 0] count;
wire E, Zero;
reg [dp_width -1: 0] data;
reg Load_regs, Shift_left, Incr_R2, clock, reset_b;
Datapath_STR M0 (count, E, Zero, data, Load_regs, Shift_left, Incr_R2, clock, reset_b);

initial #250 $finish;
initial begin clock = 0; forever #5 clock = ~clock; end
initial begin reset_b = 0; #2 reset_b = 1; end
initial fork
    data = 8'haa;
    Load_regs = 0;
    Incr_R2 = 0;
    Shift_left = 0;
    #10 Load_regs = 1;
    #20 Load_regs = 0;
    #50 Incr_R2 = 1;
    #120 Incr_R2 = 0;
    #90 Shift_left = 1;
    #200 Shift_left = 0;
join
endmodule

// Integrated system
module Count_Ones_Gates_1_Hot_STR
# (parameter dp_width = 8, R2_width = 4)
(
    output [R2_width -1: 0] count,
    input [dp_width -1: 0] data,
    input Start, clock, reset_b
);
wire Load_regs, Incr_R2, Shift_left, Zero, E;
Controller_Gates_1Hot M0 (Ready, Load_regs, Incr_R2, Shift_left, Start, Zero, E, clock, reset_b);
Datapath_STR M1 (count, E, Zero, data, Load_regs, Shift_left, Incr_R2, clock, reset_b);
endmodule

```

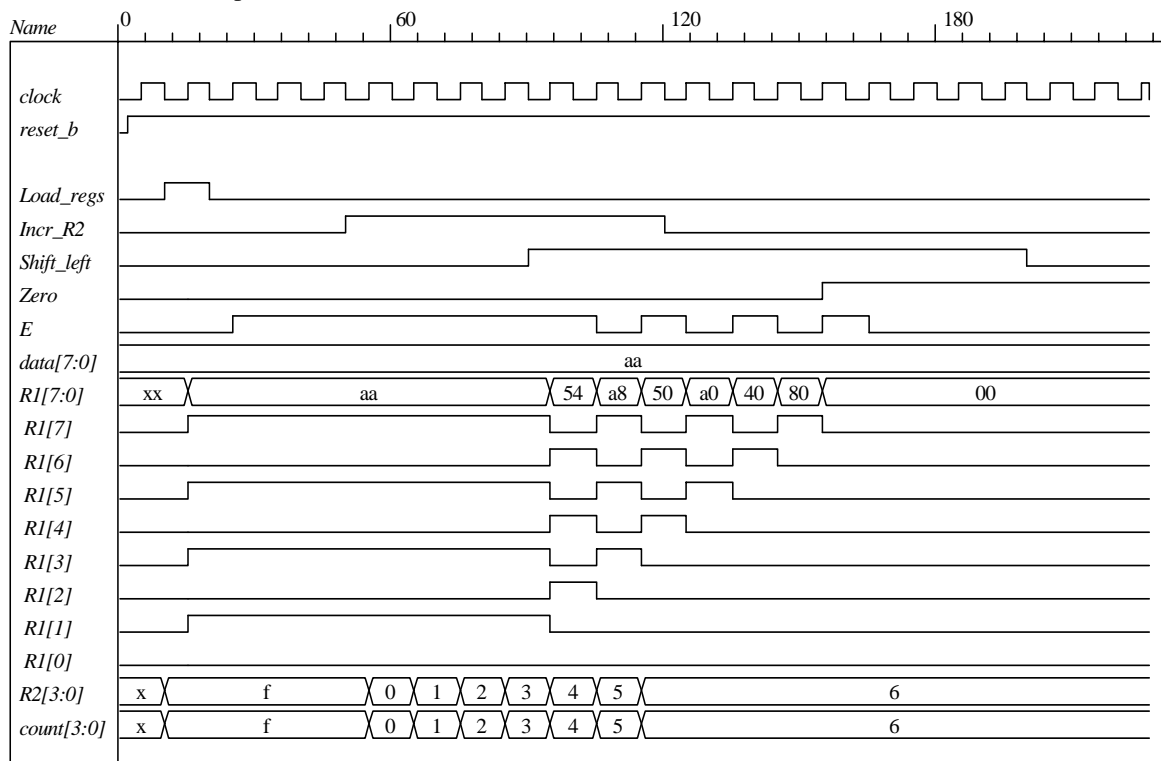
```
// Test plan for integrated system
// Test for data values of 8'haa, 8'h00, 8'hff.

// Test bench for integrated system

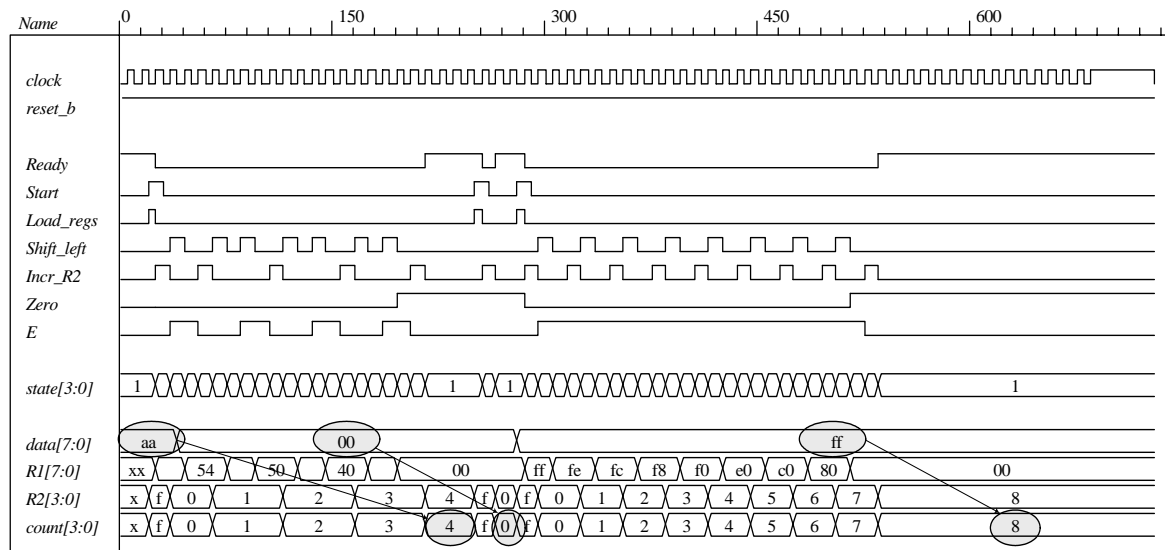
module t_count_Ones_Gates_1_Hot_STR ();
    parameter dp_width = 8, R2_width = 4;
    wire [R2_width-1: 0] count;
    reg [dp_width-1: 0] data;
    reg Start, clock, reset_b;
    wire [3: 0] state = {M0.M0.T3, M0.M0.T2, M0.M0.T1, M0.M0.T0};

    Count_Ones_Gates_1_Hot_STR M0 (count, data, Start, clock, reset_b);
    initial #700 $finish;
    initial begin clock = 0; forever #5 clock = ~clock; end
    initial begin reset_b = 0; #2 reset_b = 1; end
    initial fork
        data = 8'haa;    // Expect count = 4
        Start = 0;
        #20 Start = 1;
        #30 Start = 0;
        #40 data = 8'b00;    // Expect count = 0
        #250 Start = 1;
        #260 Start = 0;
        #280 data = 8'hff;
        #280 Start = 1;
        #290 Start = 0;
    join
endmodule
```

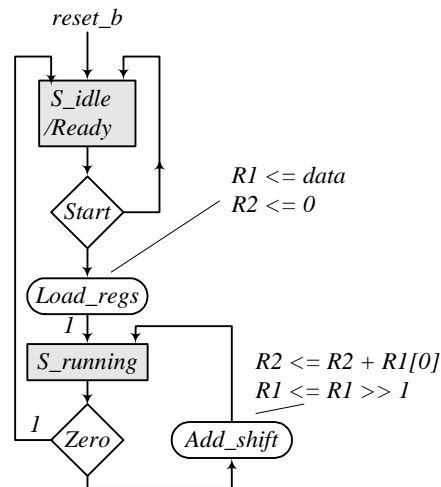
Note: The simulation results show tests of the operations of the datapath independent of the control unit, so count does not represent the number of ones in the data.



Simulations results for the integrated system match those shown in Prob. 8.34(e). See those results for additional annotation.



### 8.37 (a) ASMD chart:



### (b) RTL model:

```

module Datapath_Unit_2_Beh #(parameter dp_width = 8, R2_width = 4)
(
    output [R2_width - 1: 0] count,
    output Zero,
    input [dp_width - 1: 0] data,
    input Load_regs, Add_shift, clock, reset_b
);
    reg [dp_width - 1: 0] R1;
    reg [R2_width - 1: 0] R2;
    assign count = R2;
    
```



```

assign Zero = ~|R1;
always @ (posedge clock, negedge reset_b)
begin
    if (reset_b == 0) begin R1 <= 0; R2 <= 0; end else begin
        if (Load_regs) begin R1 <= data; R2 <= 0; end
        if (Add_shift) begin R1 <= R1 >> 1; R2 <= R2 + R1[0]; end // concurrent operations
    end
end
endmodule

```

```

// Test plan for datapath unit
// Verify active-low reset action
// Test for action of Add_shift
// Test for action of Load_regs

```

```

module t_Datapath_Unit_2_Beh();
    parameter R1_size = 8, R2_size = 4;
    wire [R2_size - 1: 0] count;
    wire Zero;
    reg [R1_size - 1: 0] data;
    reg Load_regs, Add_shift, clock, reset_b;

    Datapath_Unit_2_Beh M0 (count, Zero, data, Load_regs, Add_shift, clock, reset_b);

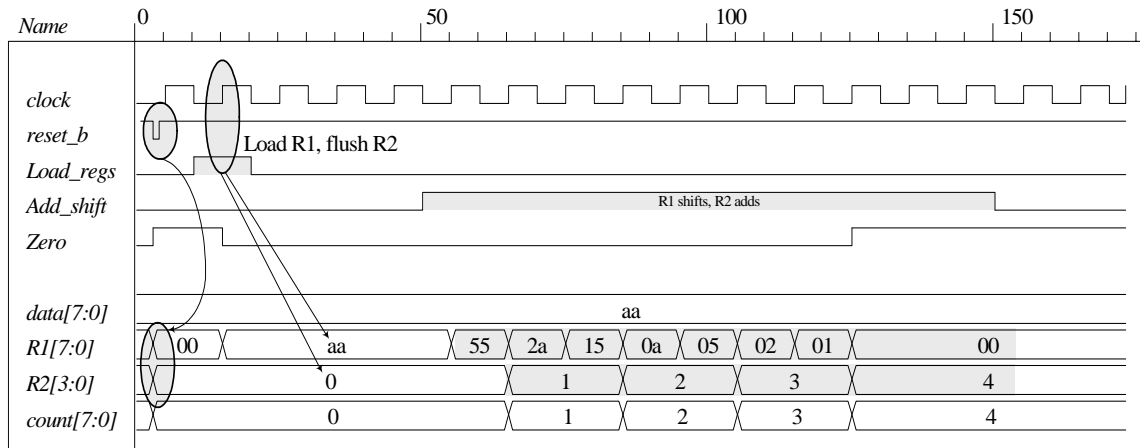
```

```

initial #1000 $finish;
initial begin clock = 0; forever #5 clock = ~clock; end
initial fork
    #1 reset_b = 1;
    #3 reset_b = 0;
    #4 reset_b = 1;
join
initial fork
    data = 8'haa;
    Load_regs = 0;
    Add_shift = 0;
    #10 Load_regs = 1;
    #20 Load_regs = 0;
    #50 Add_shift = 1;
    #150 Add_shift = 0;
join
endmodule

```

Note that the operations of the datapath unit are tested independent of the controller, so the actions of *Load\_regs* and *add\_shift* and the value of *count* do not correspond to *data*.



```

module Controller_2_Beh (
    output Ready,
    output reg Load_regs,
    Add_shift,
    input Start, Zero, clock, reset_b
);
    parameter S_idle = 0, S_running = 1;
    reg state, next_state;
    assign Ready = (state == S_idle);

    always @ (posedge clock, negedge reset_b)
        if (reset_b == 0) state <= S_idle;
        else state <= next_state;

    always @ (state, Start, Zero) begin
        next_state = S_idle;
        Load_regs = 0;
        Add_shift = 0;

        case (state)
            S_idle: if (Start) begin Load_regs = 1; next_state = S_running; end
            S_running: if (Zero) next_state = S_idle;
                     else begin Add_shift = 1; next_state = S_running; end
        endcase
    end
endmodule

module t_Controller_2_Beh ();
    wire Ready, Load_regs, Add_shift;
    reg Start, Zero, clock, reset_b;

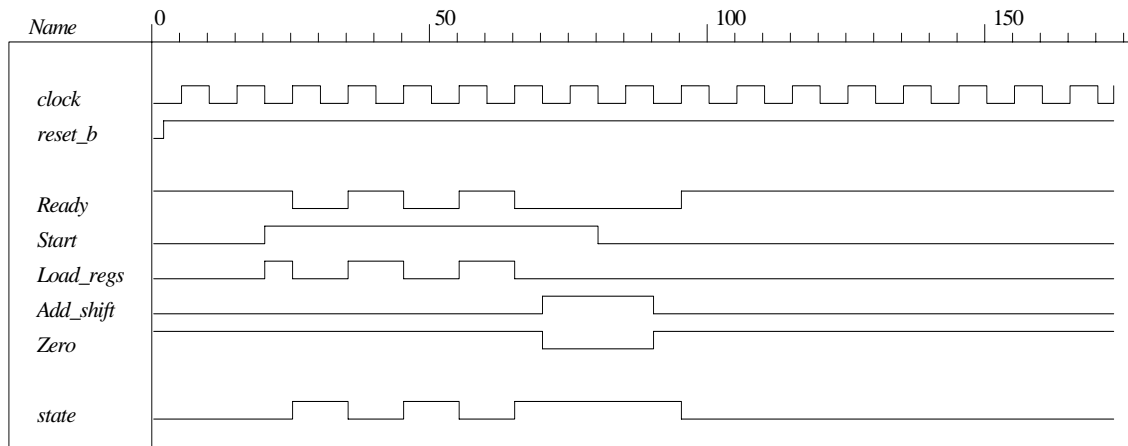
    Controller_2_Beh M0 (Ready, Load_regs, Add_shift, Start, Zero, clock, reset_b);

    initial #250 $finish;
    initial begin clock = 0; forever #5 clock = ~clock; end
    initial begin reset_b = 0; #2 reset_b = 1; end
    initial fork
        Zero = 1;
        Start = 0;
        #20 Start = 1; // Cycle from S_idle to S_1
        #80 Start = 0;
        #70 Zero = 0; // S_idle to S_1 to S_idle
    end
endmodule

```

```
#90 Zero = 1; // Return to S_idle
join
endmodule
```

Note: The state transitions and outputs of the controller match the ASMD chart.



```
module Count_of_Ones_2_Beh #(parameter dp_width = 8, R2_width = 4)
(
    output [R2_width -1: 0] count,
    output Ready,
    input [dp_width -1: 0] data,
    input Start, clock, reset_b
);
    wire Load_regs, Add_shift, Zero;

    Controller_2_Beh M0 (Ready, Load_regs, Add_shift, Start, Zero, clock, reset_b);
    Datapath_Unit_2_Beh M1 (count, Zero, data, Load_regs, Add_shift, clock, reset_b);
endmodule
```

```
// Test plan for integrated system
// Test for data values of 8'haa, 8'h00, 8'hff.
```

```
// Test bench for integrated system
```

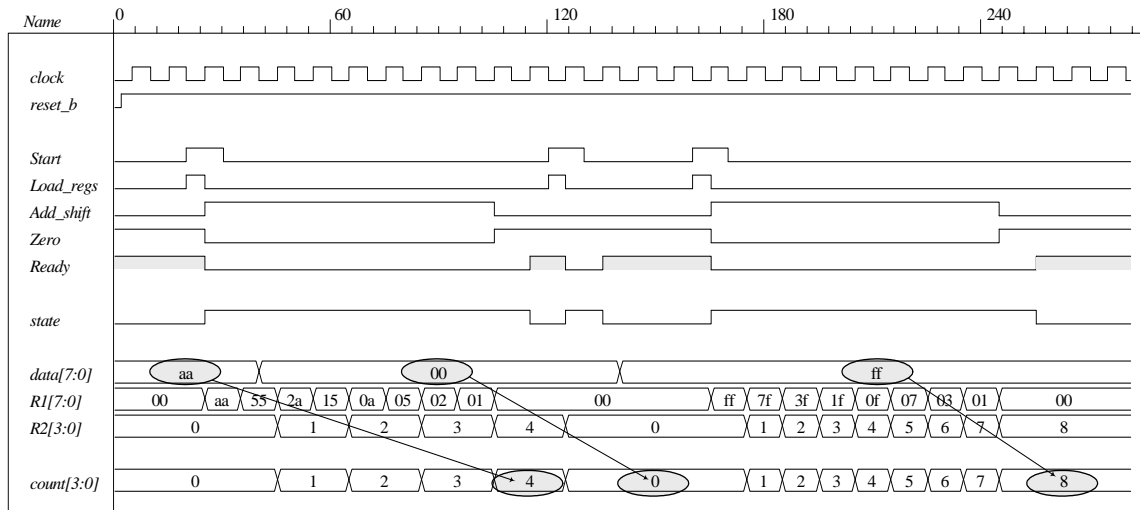
```
module t_Count_Ones_2_Beh ();
    parameter dp_width = 8, R2_width = 4;
    wire [R2_width -1: 0] count;
    reg [dp_width -1: 0] data;
    reg Start, clock, reset_b;

    Count_of_Ones_2_Beh M0 (count, Ready, data, Start, clock, reset_b);

    initial #700 $finish;
    initial begin clock = 0; forever #5 clock = ~clock; end
    initial begin reset_b = 0; #2 reset_b = 1; end
    initial fork
        data = 8'haa; // Expect count = 4
        Start = 0;
        #20 Start = 1;
        #30 Start = 0;
        #40 data = 8'b00; // Expect count = 0
        #120 Start = 1;
        #130 Start = 0;
    end
```

```
#140 data = 8'hff;
#160 Start = 1;
#170 Start = 0;
```

```
join
endmodule
```



- (c)  $T_0, T_1$  are to be asserted when the state is in  $S\_idle, S\_running$ , respectively. Let  $D0, D1$  denote the inputs to the one-hot flip-flops.

$$D_0 = T_0 \text{ Start}' + T_1 \text{ Zero}$$

$$D_1 = T_0 \text{ Start} + T_1 E'$$

- (d) Gate-level one-hot controller

```
module Controller_2_Gates_1Hot
(
  output Ready, Load_regs, Add_shift,
  input Start, Zero, clock, reset_b
);
  wire w1, w2, w3, w4;
  wire T0, T1;
  wire set;
  assign Ready = T0;
  assign Add_shift = T1;
  and (Load_regs, T0, Start);
  not (set, reset_b);
  DFF_S M0 (T0, D0, clock, set); // Note: reset action must initialize S_idle = 2'b01
  DFF M1 (T1, D1, clock, reset_b);

  not (Start_b, Start);
  not (Zero_b, Zero);
  and (w1, T0, Start_b);
  and (w2, T1, Zero);
  or (D0, w1, w2);

  and (w3, T0, Start);
  and (w4, T1, Zero_b);
  or (D1, w3, w4);
endmodule
```

```

module DFF (output reg Q, input D, clock, reset_b);
    always @ (posedge clock, negedge reset_b)
        if (reset_b == 0) Q <= 0;
        else Q <= D;
endmodule

module DFF_S (output reg Q, input D, clock, set);
    always @ (posedge clock, posedge set)
        if (set == 1) Q <= 1;
        else Q <= D;
endmodule

// Test plan for Control Unit
// Verify that state enters S_idle with reset_b asserted.
// With reset_b de-asserted, verify that state enters S_running and asserts Load_Regs when
// Start is asserted.
// Verify that state returns to S_idle from S_running if Zero is asserted.
// Verify that state goes to S_running if Zero is not asserted.

// Test bench for One-Hot Control Unit

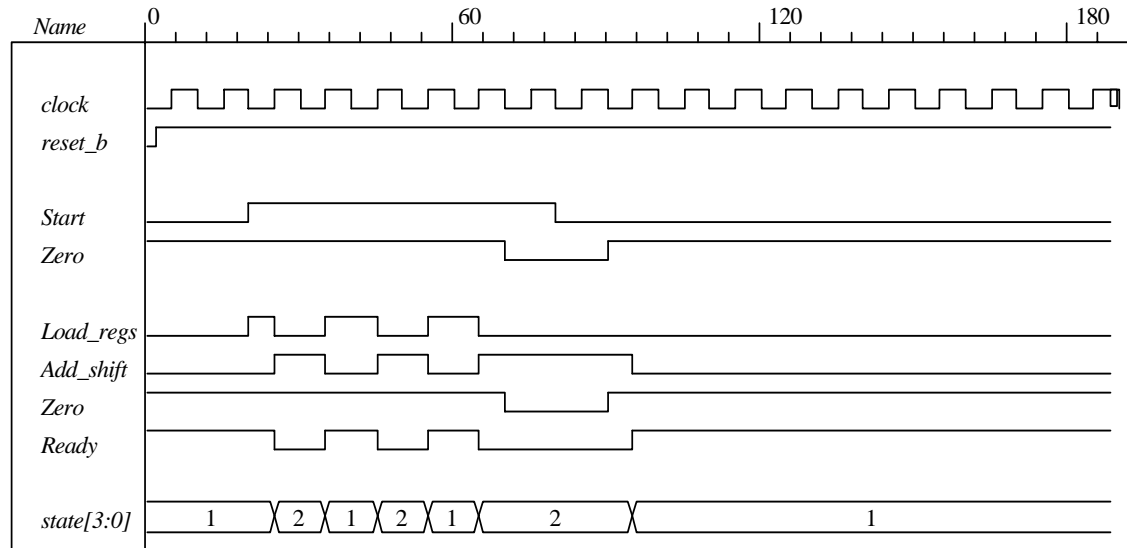
module t_Control_Unit ();
    wire      Ready, Load_regs, Add_shift;
    reg       Start, Zero, clock, reset_b;
    wire [3: 0] state = {M0.T1, M0.T0}; // Observe one-hot state bits

    Controller_2_Gates_1Hot M0 (Ready, Load_regs, Add_shift, Start, Zero, clock, reset_b);

    initial #250 $finish;
    initial begin clock = 0; forever #5 clock = ~clock; end
    initial begin reset_b = 0; #2 reset_b = 1; end
    initial fork
        Zero = 1;
        Start = 0;
        #20 Start = 1; // Cycle from S_idle to S_1
        #80 Start = 0;
        #70 Zero = 0; // S_idle to S_1 to S_idle
        #90 Zero = 1; // Return to S_idle
    join
endmodule

```

Simulation results show that the controller matches the ASMD chart.



// Datapath unit – structural model

```

module Datapath_2_STR
#(parameter dp_width = 8, R2_width = 4)
(
    output [R2_width - 1: 0]    count,
    output                     Zero,
    input [dp_width - 1: 0]    data,
    input                     Load_regs, Add_shift, clock, reset_b);
    supply1                    pwr;
    supply0                    gnd;
    wire [dp_width - 1: 0] R1_Dbus, R1;
    wire [R2_width - 1: 0] R2_Dbus;
    wire DR1_0, DR1_1, DR1_2, DR1_3, DR1_4, DR1_5, DR1_6, DR1_7;
    wire R1_0, R1_1, R1_2, R1_3, R1_4, R1_5, R1_6, R1_7;
    wire R2_0, R2_1, R2_2, R2_3;
    wire [R2_width - 1: 0] R2 = {R2_3, R2_2, R2_1, R2_0};
    assign count = {R2_3, R2_2, R2_1, R2_0};
    assign R1 = { R1_7, R1_6, R1_5, R1_4, R1_3, R1_2, R1_1, R1_0};
    assign DR1_0 = R1_Dbus[0];
    assign DR1_1 = R1_Dbus[1];
    assign DR1_2 = R1_Dbus[2];
    assign DR1_3 = R1_Dbus[3];
    assign DR1_4 = R1_Dbus[4];
    assign DR1_5 = R1_Dbus[5];
    assign DR1_6 = R1_Dbus[6];
    assign DR1_7 = R1_Dbus[7];

    nor (Zero, R1_0, R1_1, R1_2, R1_3, R1_4, R1_5, R1_6, R1_7);
    not (Load_regs_b, Load_regs);

    DFF DF_0 (R1_0, DR1_0, clock, pwr);    // Disable reset
    DFF DF_1 (R1_1, DR1_1, clock, pwr);
    DFF DF_2 (R1_2, DR1_2, clock, pwr);
    DFF DF_3 (R1_3, DR1_3, clock, pwr);
    DFF DF_4 (R1_4, DR1_4, clock, pwr);
    DFF DF_5 (R1_5, DR1_5, clock, pwr);
    DFF DF_6 (R1_6, DR1_6, clock, pwr);
    DFF DF_7 (R1_7, DR1_7, clock, pwr);

```

```
DFF DR_0 (R2_0, DR2_0, clock, Load_regs_b); // Load_regs (set) drives R2 to all ones
DFF DR_1 (R2_1, DR2_1, clock, Load_regs_b);
DFF DR_2 (R2_2, DR2_2, clock, Load_regs_b);
DFF DR_3 (R2_3, DR2_3, clock, Load_regs_b);

assign DR2_0 = R2_Dbus[0];
assign DR2_1 = R2_Dbus[1];
assign DR2_2 = R2_Dbus[2];
assign DR2_3 = R2_Dbus[3];

wire [1: 0]          sel = {Add_shift, Load_regs};
wire [dp_width -1: 0] R1_shifted = {1'b0, R1_7, R1_6, R1_5, R1_4, R1_3, R1_2, R1_1};
wire [R2_width -1: 0] sum = R2 + {3'b000, R1[0]};

Mux8_4_x_1 M0 (R1_Dbus, R1, data, R1_shifted, R1, sel);
Mux4_2_x_1 M1 (R2_Dbus, R2, sum, Add_shift);
endmodule
```

```

module Mux8_4_x_1 #(parameter dp_width = 8) (output reg [dp_width -1: 0] mux_out,
input [dp_width -1: 0] in0, in1, in2, in3, input [1: 0] sel);
always @ (in0, in1, in2, in3, sel)
    case (sel)
        2'b00: mux_out = in0;
        2'b01: mux_out = in1;
        2'b10: mux_out = in2;
        2'b11: mux_out = in3;
    endcase
endmodule

module Mux4_2_x_1 #(parameter dp_width = 4) (output [dp_width -1: 0] mux_out,
input [dp_width -1: 0] in0, in1, input sel);
assign mux_out = sel ? in1: in0;
endmodule

// Test Plan for Datapath Unit:
// Demonstrate action of Load_regs
// R1 gets data, R2 gets all ones
// Demonstrate action of Incr_R2
// Demonstrate action of Add_shift and detect Zero

// Test bench for datapath

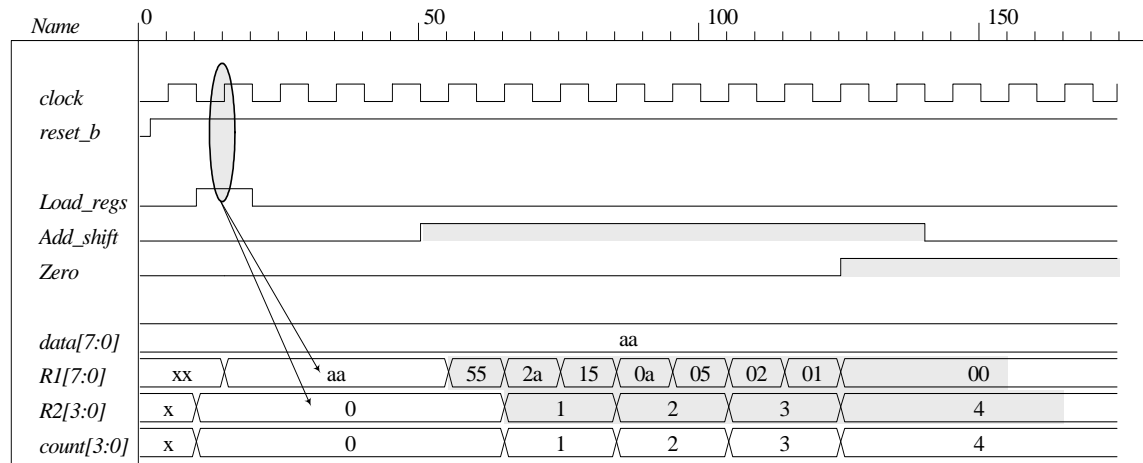
module t_Datapath_Unit
#(parameter dp_width = 8, R2_width = 4)
( );
wire [R2_width -1: 0] count;
wire Zero;
reg [dp_width -1: 0] data;
reg Load_regs, Add_shift, clock, reset_b;

Datapath_2_STR M0 (count, Zero, data, Load_regs, Add_shift, clock, reset_b);

initial #250 $finish;
initial begin clock = 0; forever #5 clock = ~clock; end
initial begin reset_b = 0; #2 reset_b = 1; end
initial fork
    data = 8'haa;
    Load_regs = 0;
    Add_shift = 0;
    #10 Load_regs = 1;
    #20 Load_regs = 0;
    #50 Add_shift = 1;
    #140 Add_shift = 0;
join
endmodule

```





// Integrated system

```

module Count_Ones_2_Gates_1Hot_STR
# (parameter dp_width = 8, R2_width = 4)
(
    output [R2_width -1: 0] count,
    input [dp_width -1: 0] data,
    input Start, clock, reset_b
);
    wire Load_regs, Add_shift, Zero;
    Controller_2_Gates_1Hot M0 (Ready, Load_regs, Add_shift, Start, Zero, clock, reset_b);
    Datapath_2_STR M1 (count, Zero, data, Load_regs, Add_shift, clock, reset_b);
endmodule

```

// Test plan for integrated system  
 // Test for data values of 8'haa, 8'h00, 8'hff.

// Test bench for integrated system

```

module t_Count_Ones_2_Gates_1Hot_STR ();
    parameter dp_width = 8, R2_width = 4;
    wire [R2_width -1: 0] count;
    reg [dp_width -1: 0] data;
    reg Start, clock, reset_b;
    wire [1: 0] state = {M0.M0.T1, M0.M0.T0};

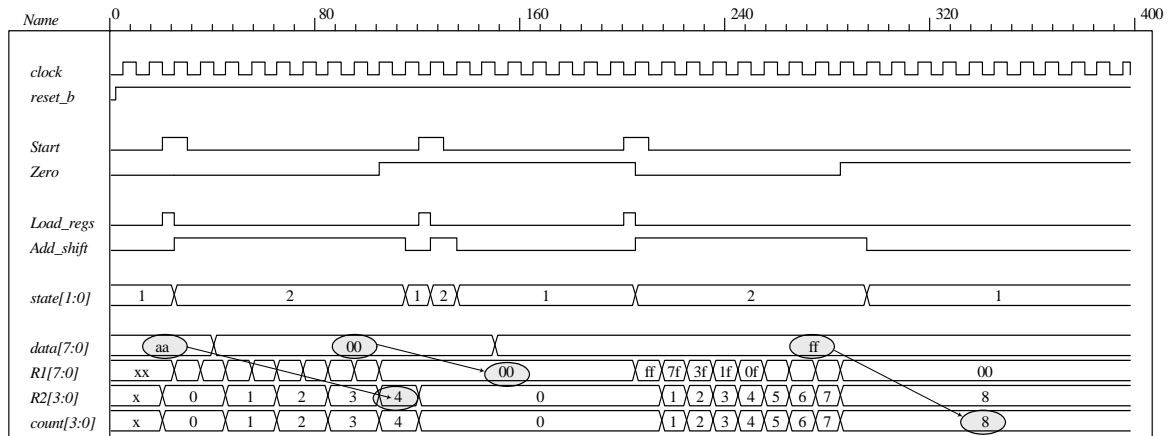
```

Count\_Ones\_2\_Gates\_1Hot\_STR M0 (count, data, Start, clock, reset\_b);

```

initial #700 $finish;
initial begin clock = 0; forever #5 clock = ~clock; end
initial begin reset_b = 0; #2 reset_b = 1; end
initial fork
    data = 8'haa; // Expect count = 4
    Start = 0;
    #20 Start = 1;
    #30 Start = 0;
    #40 data = 8'b00; // Expect count = 0
    #120 Start = 1;
    #130 Start = 0;
    #150 data = 8'hff; // Expect count = 8
    #200 Start = 1;
    #210 Start = 0;
join
endmodule

```



8.38

```

module Prob_8_38 (
  output reg [7: 0] Sum,
  output reg Car_Bor,
  input [7: 0] Data_A, Data_B;
  reg [7: 0] Reg_A, Reg_B;

  always @ (Data_A, Data_B)
    case ({Data_A[7], Data_B[7]})
      2'b00, 2'b11: begin // ++, --
        {Car_Bor, Sum[6: 0]} = Data_A[6: 0] + Data_B[6: 0];
        Sum[7] = Data_A[7];
      end

      default: if (Data_A[6: 0] >= Data_B[6: 0]) begin // +-, -+
        {Car_Bor, Sum[6: 0]} = Data_A[6: 0] - Data_B[6: 0];
        Sum[7] = Data_A[7];
      end
      else begin
        {Car_Bor, Sum[6: 0]} = Data_B[6: 0] - Data_A[6: 0];
        Sum[7] = Data_B[7];
      end
    endcase
endmodule

module t_Prob_8_38 ();
  wire [7: 0] Sum;
  wire Car_Bor;
  reg [7: 0] Data_A, Data_B;
  wire [6: 0] Mag_A, Mag_B;
  assign Mag_A = M0.Data_A[6: 0]; // Hierarchical dereferencing
  assign Mag_B = M0.Data_B[6: 0];
  wire Sign_A = M0.Data_A[7];
  wire Sign_B = M0.Data_B[7];
  wire Sign = Sum[7];
  wire [7: 0] Mag = Sum[6: 0];

  Prob_8_38 M0 (Sum, Car_Bor, Data_A, Data_B);

  initial #650 $finish;

```

# initial fork

```
// Addition
// A B
#0 begin Data_A = {1'b0, 7'd25}; Data_B = {1'b0, 7'd10}; end //+25, +10
#40 begin Data_A = {1'b1, 7'd25}; Data_B = {1'b1, 7'd10}; end // -25, -10
#80 begin Data_A = {1'b1, 7'd25}; Data_B = {1'b0, 7'd10}; end // -25, +10
#120 begin Data_A = {1'b0, 7'd25}; Data_B = {1'b1, 7'd10}; end // 25, -10
// B A
#160 begin Data_B = {1'b0, 7'd25}; Data_A = {1'b0, 7'd10}; end //+25, +10
#200 begin Data_B = {1'b1, 7'd25}; Data_A = {1'b1, 7'd10}; end // -25, -10

#240 begin Data_B = {1'b1, 7'd25}; Data_A = {1'b0, 7'd10}; end // -25, +10
#280 begin Data_B = {1'b0, 7'd25}; Data_A = {1'b1, 7'd10}; end // +25, -10
// Addition of matching numbers

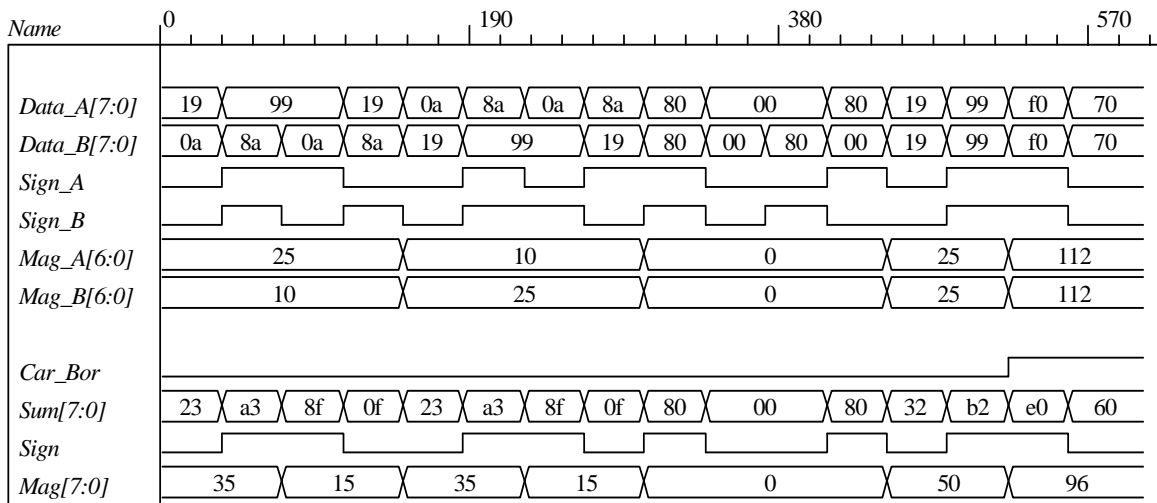
#320 begin Data_A = {1'b1,7'd0}; Data_B = {1'b1,7'd0}; end // -0, -0
#360 begin Data_A = {1'b0,7'd0}; Data_B = {1'b0,7'd0}; end // +0, +0
#400 begin Data_A = {1'b0,7'd0}; Data_B = {1'b1,7'd0}; end // +0, -0
#440 begin Data_A = {1'b1,7'd0}; Data_B = {1'b0,7'd0}; end // -0, +0

#480 begin Data_B = {1'b0, 7'd25}; Data_A = {1'b0, 7'd25}; end // matching +
#520 begin Data_B = {1'b1, 7'd25}; Data_A = {1'b1, 7'd25}; end // matching -

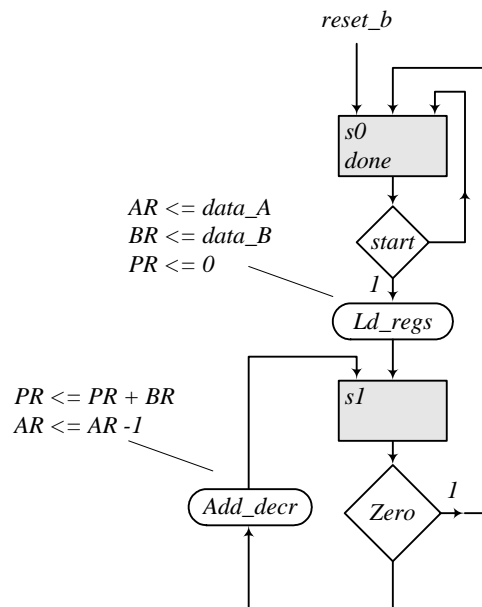
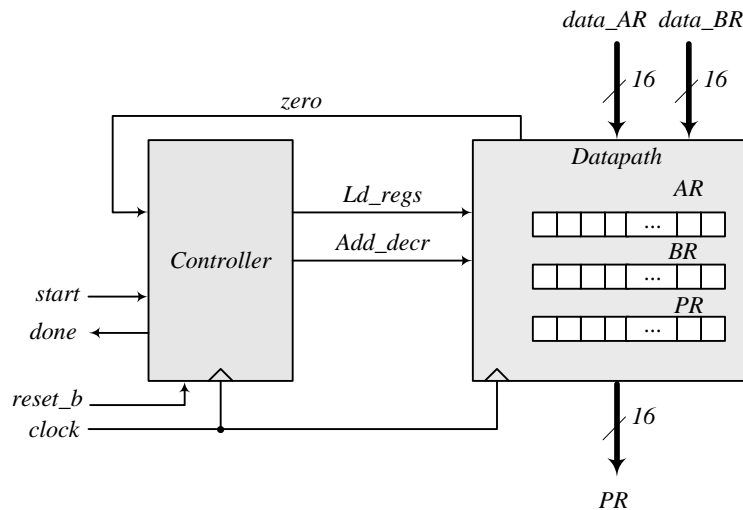
// Test of carry (negative numbers)
#560 begin Data_A = 8'hf0; Data_B = 8'hf0; end // carry - -
// Test of carry (positive numbers)
#600 begin Data_A = 8'h70; Data_B = 8'h70; end // carry ++
```

join

endmodule



### 8.39 Block diagram and ASMD chart:



```

module Prob_8_39 (
    output [15: 0] PR, output done,
    input [7: 0] data_AR, data_BR, input start, clock, reset_b
);

    Controller_P8_39 M0 (done, Ld_regs, Add_decr, start, zero, clock, reset_b);

    Datapath_P8_39 M1 (PR, zero, data_AR, data_BR, Ld_regs, Add_decr, clock, reset_b);
endmodule

module Controller_P8_16 (output done, output reg Ld_regs, Add_decr, input start, zero, clock, reset_b);
    parameter s0 = 1'b0, s1 = 1'b1;
    reg state, next_state;
    assign done = (state == s0);

```

```

always @ (posedge clock, negedge reset_b)
    if (!reset_b) state <= s0; else state <= next_state;

always @ (state, start, zero) begin
    Ld_regs = 0;
    Add_decr = 0;
    case (state)
        s0:      if (start) begin Ld_regs = 1; next_state = s1; end
        s1:      if (zero) next_state = s0; else begin next_state = s1; Add_decr = 1; end
        default: next_state = s0;
    endcase
end
endmodule

module Datapath_P8_16 (
    output reg    [15: 0] PR, output zero,
    input        [7: 0]  data_AR, data_BR, input Ld_regs, Add_decr, clock, reset_b
);

    reg          [7: 0]  AR, BR;
    assign      zero = ~( | AR);

    always @ (posedge clock, negedge reset_b)
        if (!reset_b) begin AR <= 8'b0; BR <= 8'b0; PR <= 16'b0; end
        else begin
            if (Ld_regs) begin AR <= data_AR; BR <= data_BR; PR <= 0; end
            else if (Add_decr) begin PR <= PR + BR; AR <= AR -1; end
        end
    endmodule

// Test plan – Verify;
// Power-up reset
// Data is loaded correctly
// Control signals assert correctly
// Status signals assert correctly
// start is ignored while multiplying
// Multiplication is correct
// Recovery from reset on-the-fly

module t_Prob_P8_16;
    wire    done;
    wire    [15: 0] PR;
    reg     [7: 0]  data_AR, data_BR;
    reg     start, clock, reset_b;

    Prob_8_16 M0 (PR, done, data_AR, data_BR, start, clock, reset_b);

    initial #500 $finish;
    initial begin clock = 0; forever #5 clock = ~clock; end
    initial fork
        reset_b = 0;
        #12 reset_b = 1;
        #40 reset_b = 0;
        #42 reset_b = 1;
        #90 reset_b = 1;
        #92 reset_b = 1;
    join

```

# **initial fork**

```
#20 start = 1;
#30 start = 0;
#40 start = 1;
#50 start = 0;
#120 start = 1;
#120 start = 0;
```

# **join**

# **initial fork**

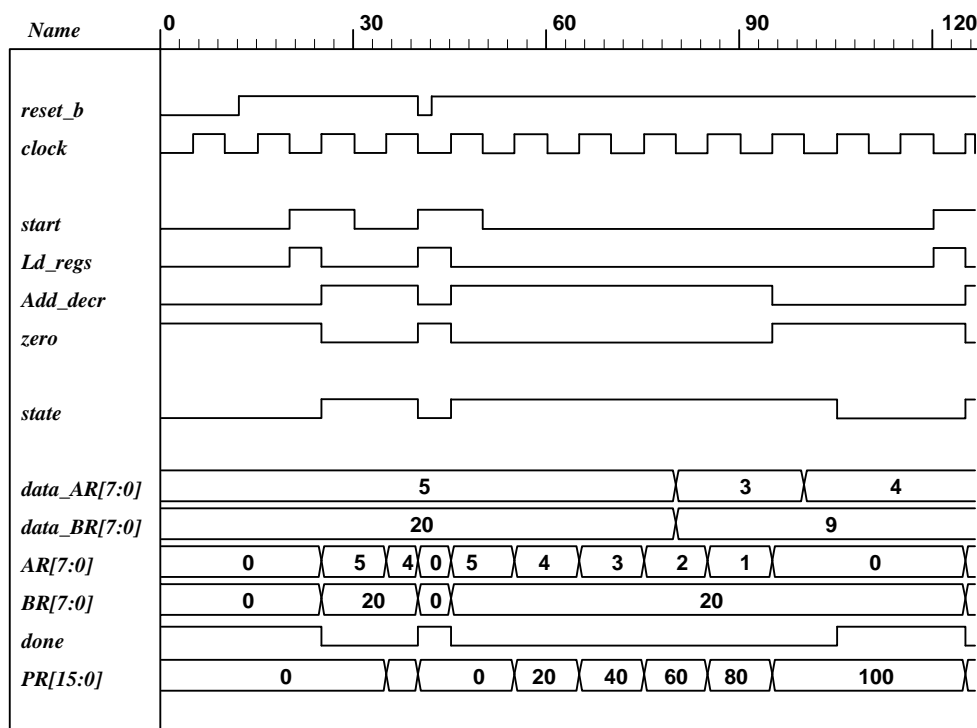
```
data_AR = 8'd5;    // AR > 0
data_BR = 8'd20;
```

```
#80 data_AR = 8'd3;
#80 data_BR = 8'd9;
```

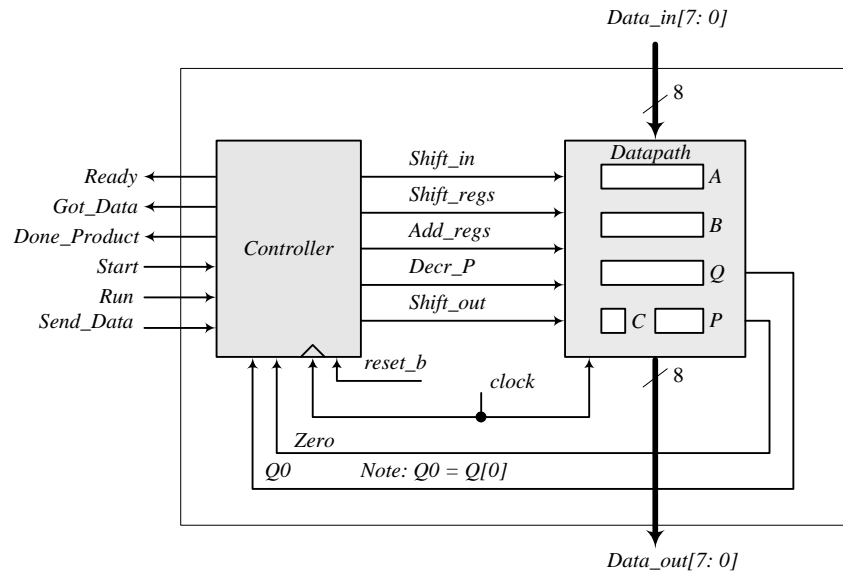
```
#100 data_AR = 8'd4;
#100 data_BR = 8'd9;
```

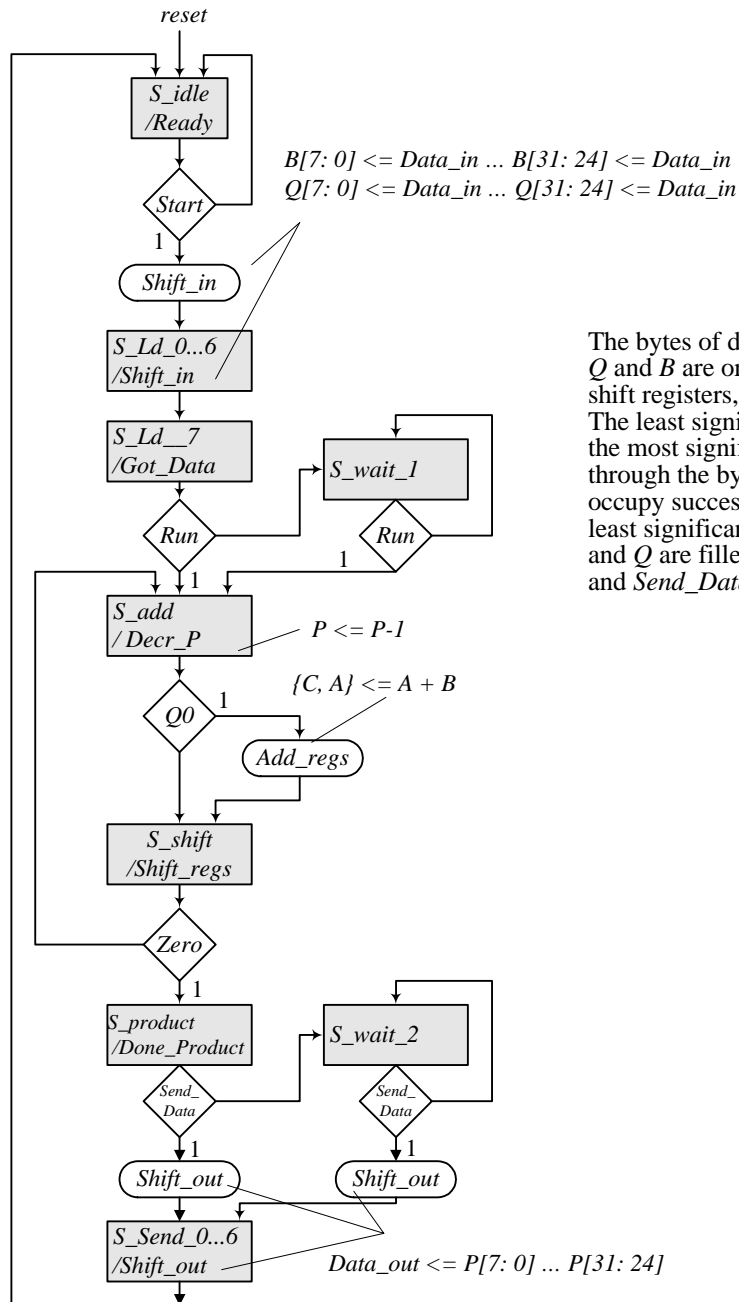
# **join**

# **endmodule**



8.40





The bytes of data will be read sequentially. Registers  $Q$  and  $B$  are organized to act as byte-wide parallel shift registers, taking 8 clock cycles to fill the pipe. The least significant byte of the multiplicand enters the most significant byte of  $Q$  and then moves through the bytes of  $Q$  to enter  $B$ , then proceed to occupy successive bytes of  $B$  until it occupies the least significant byte of  $B$ , and so forth until both  $B$  and  $Q$  are filled. Wait states are used to wait for  $Run$  and  $Send\_Data$ .



```

module Prob_8_40 (
    output [7: 0] Data_out,
    output Ready, Got_Data, Done_Product,
    input [7: 0] Data_in,
    input Start, Run, Send_Data, clock, reset_b
);

Controller M0 (
    Ready, Shift_in, Got_Data, Done_Product, Decr_P, Add_regs, Shift_regs, Shift_out,
    Start, Run, Send_Data, Zero, Q0, clock, reset_b
);
Datapath M1(Data_out, Q0, Zero, Data_in,
    Start, Shift_in, Decr_P, Add_regs, Shift_regs, Shift_out, clock
);
endmodule

module Controller (
    output reg Ready, Shift_in, Got_Data, Done_Product, Decr_P, Add_regs,
    Shift_regs, Shift_out,
    input Start, Run, Send_Data, Zero, Q0, clock, reset_b
);

parameter S_idle = 5'd20,
    S_Ld_0 = 5'd0,
    S_Ld_1 = 5'd1,
    S_Ld_2 = 5'd2,
    S_Ld_3 = 5'd3,
    S_Ld_4 = 5'd4,
    S_Ld_5 = 5'd5,
    S_Ld_6 = 5'd6,
    S_Ld_7 = 5'd7,
    S_wait_1 = 5'd8, // Wait state
    S_add = 5'd9,
    S_Shift = 5'd10,
    S_product = 5'd11,
    S_wait_2 = 5'd12, // Wait state
    S_Send_0 = 5'd13,
    S_Send_1 = 5'd14,
    S_Send_2 = 5'd15,
    S_Send_3 = 5'd16,
    S_Send_4 = 5'd17,
    S_Send_5 = 5'd18,
    S_Send_6 = 5'd19;

reg [4: 0] state, next_state;

always @ (posedge clock, negedge reset_b)
    if (~reset_b) state <= S_idle; else state <= next_state;

always @ (state, Start, Run, Q0, Zero, Send_Data) begin
    next_state = S_idle; // Prevent accidental synthesis of latches
    Ready = 0;
    Shift_in = 0;
    Shift_regs = 0;
    Add_regs = 0;
    Decr_P = 0;
    Shift_out = 0;
    Got_Data = 0;
    Done_Product = 0;

```

```

case (state) // Assign by exception to default values
  S_idle: begin
    Ready = 1;
    if (Start) begin next_state = S_Ld_0; Shift_in = 1; end
  end
  S_Ld_0: begin next_state = S_Ld_1; Shift_in = 1; end
  S_Ld_1: begin next_state = S_Ld_2; Shift_in = 1; end
  S_Ld_2: begin next_state = S_Ld_3; Shift_in = 1; end
  S_Ld_3: begin next_state = S_Ld_4; Shift_in = 1; end
  S_Ld_4: begin next_state = S_Ld_5; Shift_in = 1; end
  S_Ld_5: begin next_state = S_Ld_6; Shift_in = 1; end
  S_Ld_6: begin next_state = S_Ld_7; Shift_in = 1; end
  S_Ld_7: begin Got_Data = 1;
    if (Run) next_state = S_add;
    else next_state = S_wait_1;
  end
  S_wait_1: if (Run) next_state = S_add; else next_state = S_wait_1;
  S_add: begin next_state = S_Shift; Decr_P = 1; if (Q0) Add_regs = 1; end
  S_Shift: begin Shift_regs = 1; if (Zero) next_state = S_product;
    else next_state = S_add; end
  S_product: begin
    Done_Product = 1;
    if (Send_Data) begin next_state = S_Send_0; Shift_out = 1; end
    else next_state = S_wait_2; end
  S_wait_2: if (Send_Data) begin next_state = S_Send_0; Shift_out = 1; end
    else next_state = S_wait_2;
  S_Send_0: begin next_state = S_Send_1; Shift_out = 1; end
  S_Send_1: begin next_state = S_Send_2; Shift_out = 1; end
  S_Send_2: begin next_state = S_Send_3; Shift_out = 1; end
  S_Send_3: begin next_state = S_Send_4; Shift_out = 1; end
  S_Send_4: begin next_state = S_Send_5; Shift_out = 1; end
  S_Send_5: begin next_state = S_Send_6; Shift_out = 1; end
  S_Send_6: begin next_state = S_idle; Shift_out = 1; end
  default: next_state = S_idle;
endcase
end
endmodule

module Datapath #(parameter dp_width = 32, P_width = 6) (
  output [7: 0] Data_out,
  output Q0, Zero,
  input [7: 0] Data_in,
  input Start, Shift_in, Decr_P, Add_regs, Shift_regs, Shift_out, clock
);
reg [dp_width - 1: 0] A, B, Q; // Sized for datapath
reg C;
reg [P_width - 1: 0] P;
assign Q0 = Q[0];
assign Zero = (P == 0); // counter is zero
assign Data_out = {C, A, Q};

always @ (posedge clock) begin
  if (Shift_in) begin
    P <= dp_width;
    A <= 0;
    C <= 0;
    B[7: 0] <= B[15: 8]; // Treat B and Q registers as a pipeline to load data bytes
    B[15: 8] <= B[23: 16];
    B[23: 16] <= B[31: 24];
    B[31: 24] <= Q[7: 0];
    Q[7: 0] <= Q[15: 8];
  end

```

```

    Q[15: 8]   <= Q[ 23: 16];
    Q[23: 16]  <= Q[31: 24];
    Q[31: 24]  <= Data_in;
end
if (Add_regs) {C, A} <= A + B;
if (Shift_regs) {C, A, Q} <= {C, A, Q} >> 1;
if (Decr_P) P <= P -1;
if (Shift_out) begin {C, A, Q} <= {C, A, Q} >> 8; end
end
endmodule

module t_Prob_8_40;
parameter      dp_width = 32;           // Width of datapath
wire  [7: 0]    Data_out;
wire           Ready, Got_Data, Done_Product;
reg           Start, Run, Send_Data, clock, reset_b;

integer        Exp_Value;
reg            Error;
wire  [7: 0]    Data_in;
reg [dp_width -1: 0] Multiplicand, Multiplier;
reg [2*dp_width -1: 0] Data_register;    // For test patterns
assign         Data_in = Data_register [7:0];
wire [2*dp_width -1: 0] product;
assign         product = {M0.M1.C, M0.M1.A, M0.M1.Q};
Prob_8_40 M0 (
    Data_out, Ready, Got_Data, Done_Product, Data_in, Start, Run, Send_Data, clock, reset_b
);

initial #2000 $finish;
initial begin clock = 0; forever #5 clock = ~clock; end
initial fork
    reset_b = 1;
    #2 reset_b = 0;
    #3 reset_b = 1;
join
initial fork
    Start =0;
    Run = 0;
    Send_Data = 0;
    #10 Start = 1;
    #20 Start = 0;

    #50 Run= 1;      // Ignored by controller
    #60 Run = 0;
    #120 Run = 1;
    #130 Run = 0;

    #830 Send_Data = 1;
    #840 Send_Data = 0;
join
// Test patterns for multiplication

initial begin
    Multiplicand = 32'h0f_00_00_aa;
    Multiplier = 32'h0a_00_00_ff;
    Data_register = {Multiplier, Multiplicand};
end

initial begin          // Synchronize input data bytes

```

```
@ (posedge Start)
repeat (15) begin
    @ (negedge clock)
        Data_register <= Data_register >> 8;
    end
end
endmodule
```

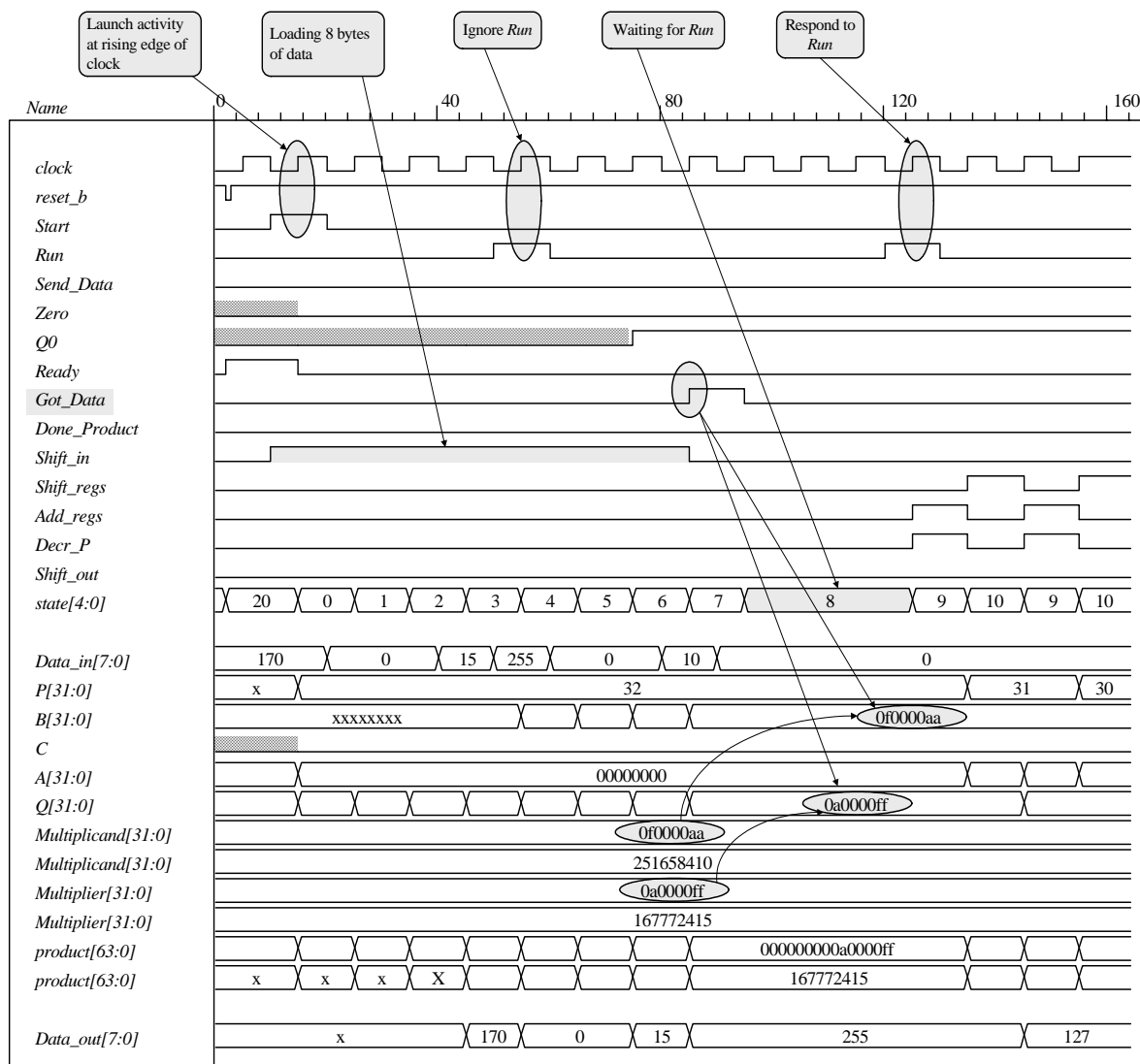
Simulation results: Loading multiplicand (0f0000aa<sub>H</sub>) and multiplier (0a0000ff<sub>H</sub>), 4 bytes each, in sequence, beginning with the least significant byte of the multiplicand.

Note: *Product* is not valid until *Done\_Product* asserts. The value of *Product* shown here (255<sub>10</sub>) reflects the contents of {*C*, *A*, *Q*} after the multiplier has been loaded, prior to multiplication.

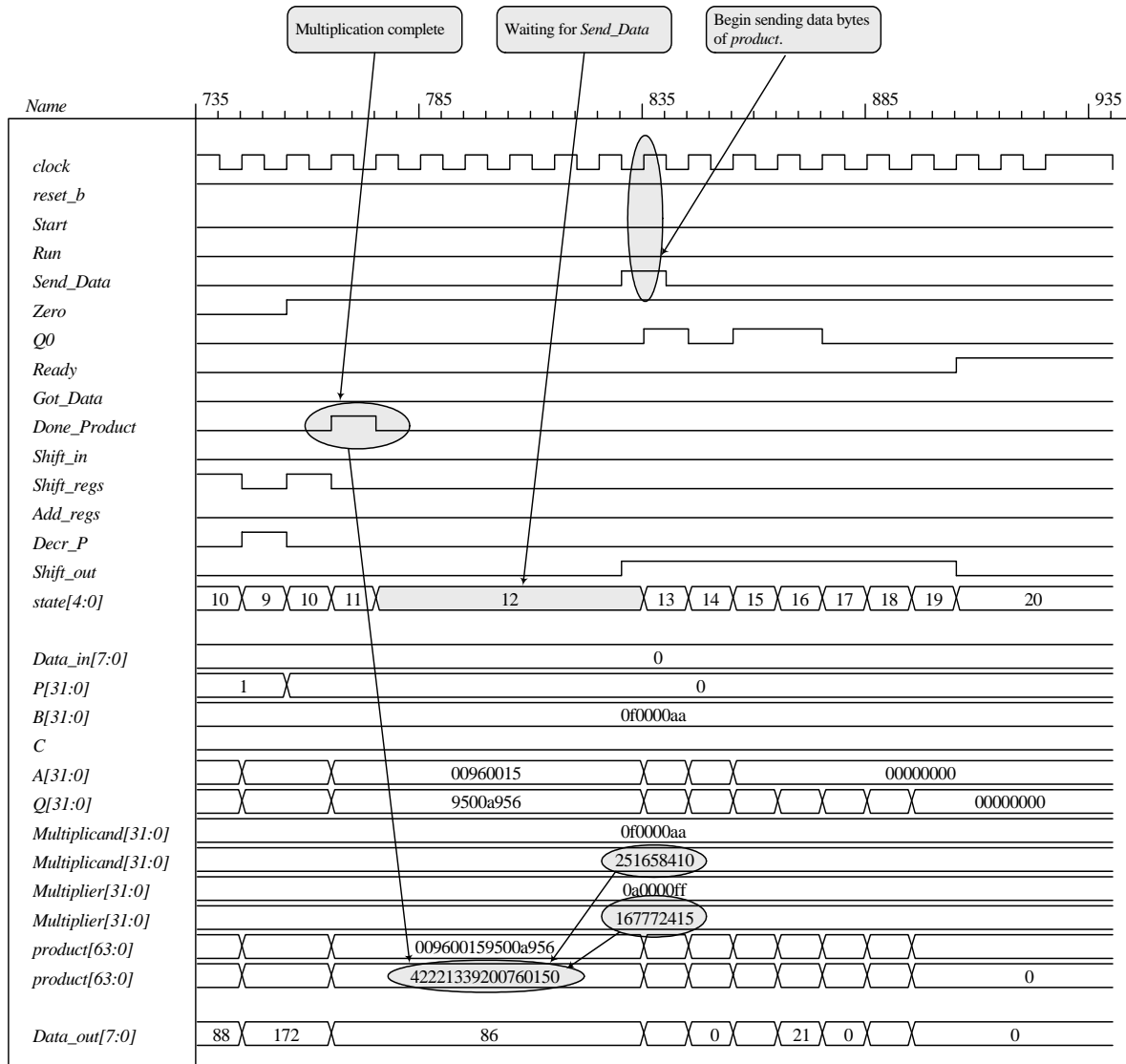
Note: The machine ignores a premature assertion of *Run*.

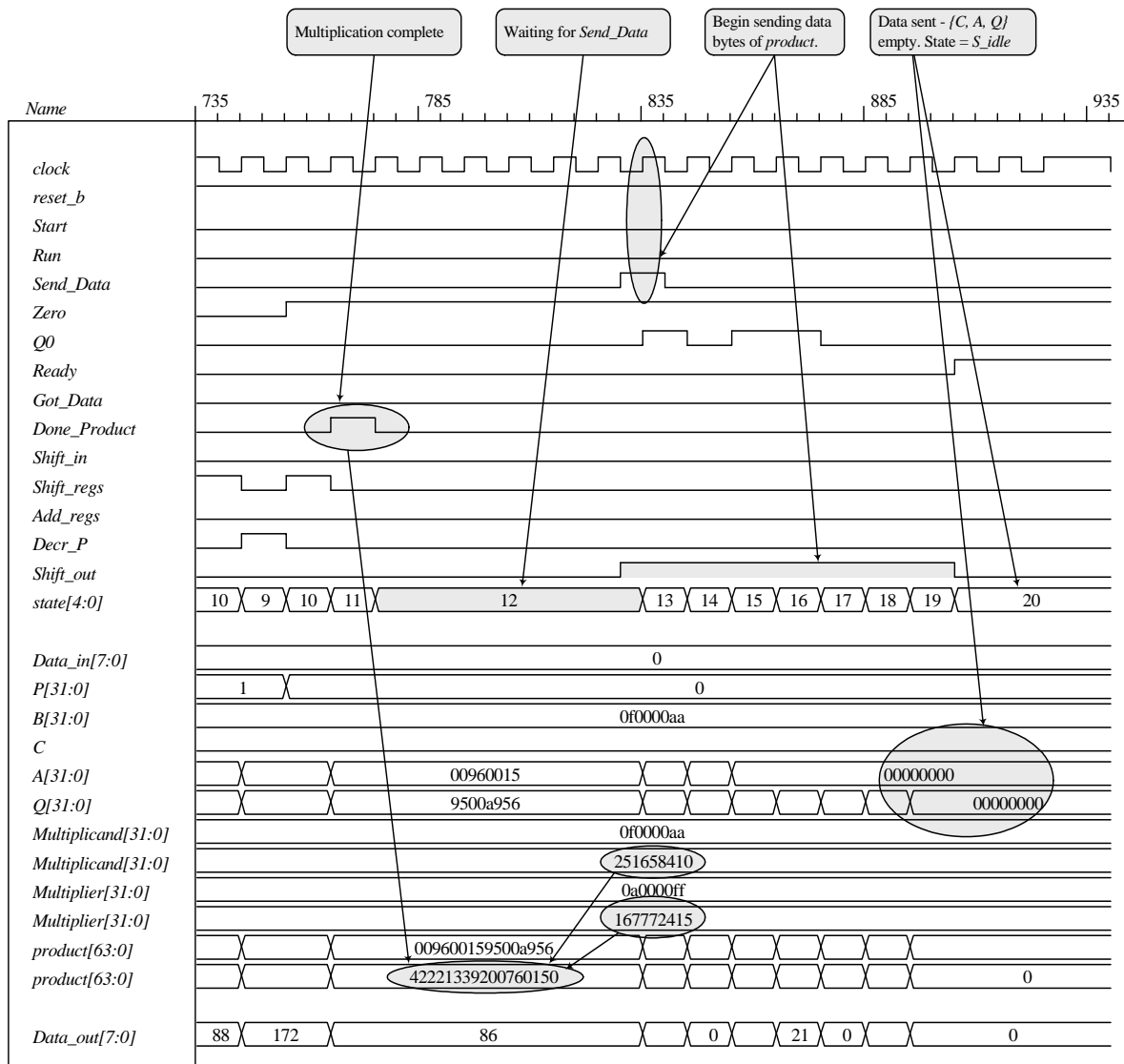
Note: *Got\_Data* asserts at the 8<sup>th</sup> clock after *Start* asserts, i.e., 8 clocks to load the data.

Note: *Product*, *Multiplier*, and *Multiplicand* are formed in the test bench.

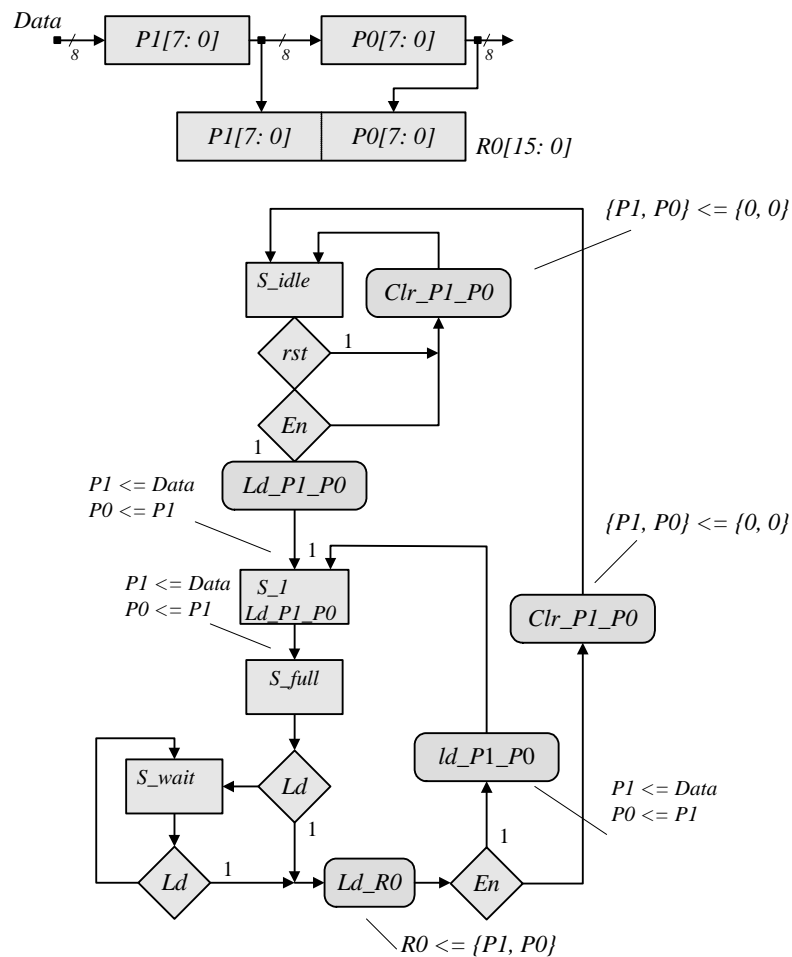


Note: Product (64 bits) is formed correctly





8.41 (a)



(b) HDL model, test bench and simulation results for datapath unit.

```

module Datapath_unit
(
  output reg [15: 0]  R0, input [7: 0] Data, input Clr_P1_P0, Ld_P1_P0, Ld_R0, clock, rst);
  reg [7: 0]  P1, P0;

  always @ (posedge clock) begin
    if (Clr_P1_P0) begin P1 <= 0; P0 <= 0; end
    if (Ld_P1_P0) begin P1 <= Data; P0 <= P1; end
    if (Ld_R0) R0 <= {P1, P0};
  end
endmodule

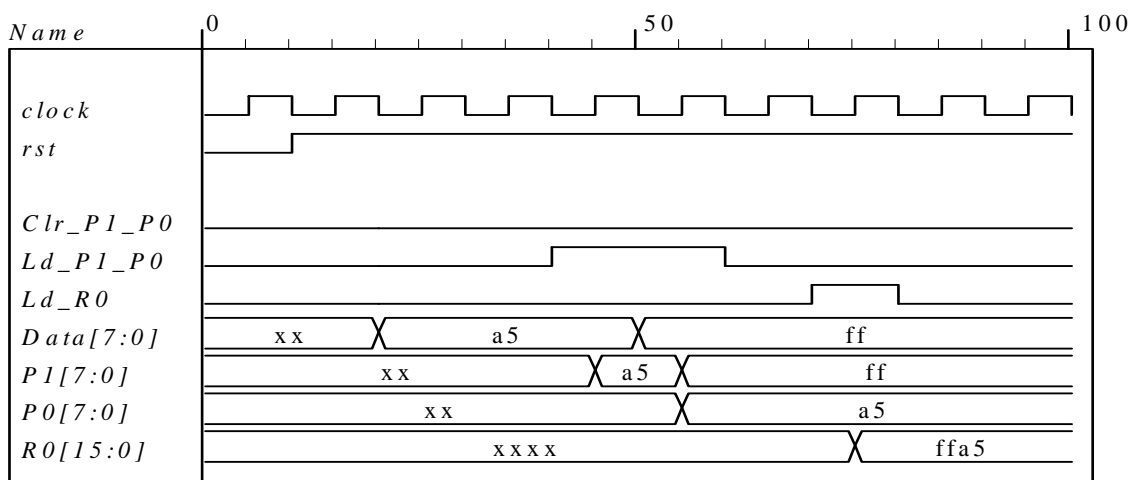
```



```
// Test bench for datapath
module t_Datapath_unit ();
  wire [15: 0] R0;
  reg [7: 0] Data;
  reg Clr_P1_P0, Ld_P1_P0, Ld_R0, clock, rst;

  Datapath_unit M0 (R0, Data, Clr_P1_P0, Ld_P1_P0, Ld_R0, clock, rst);

  initial #100 $finish;
  initial begin clock = 0; forever #5 clock = ~clock; end
  initial begin rst = 0; #2 rst = 1; end
  initial fork
    #20 Clr_P1_P0 = 0;
    #20 Ld_P1_P0 = 0;
    #20 Ld_R0 = 0;
    #20 Data = 8'ha5;
    #40 Ld_P1_P0 = 1;
    #50 Data = 8'hff;
    #60 Ld_P1_P0 = 0;
    #70 Ld_R0 = 1;
    #80 Ld_R0 = 0;
  join
endmodule
```



(c) HDL model, test bench, and simulation results for the control unit.

```
module Control_unit (output reg Clr_P1_P0, Ld_P1_P0, Ld_R0, input En, Ld, clock, rst);
parameter S_idle = 4'b0001, S_1 = 4'b0010, S_full = 4'b0100, S_wait = 4'b1000;
reg [3: 0] state, next_state;
```

```
always @ (posedge clock)
if (rst) state <= S_idle;
else state <= next_state;
```

```
always @ (state, Ld, En) begin
  Clr_P1_P0 = 0;           // Assign by exception
  Ld_P1_P0 = 0;
  Ld_R0 = 0;
  next_state = S_idle;
case (state)
  S_idle: if (En) begin Ld_P1_P0 = 1; next_state = S_1; end
         else next_state = S_idle;

  S_1:    begin Ld_P1_P0 = 1; next_state = S_full; end

  S_full: if (!Ld) next_state = S_wait;
         else begin
           Ld_R0 = 1;
           if (En) begin Ld_P1_P0 = 1; next_state = S_1; end
           else begin Clr_P1_P0 = 1; next_state = S_idle; end
         end

  S_wait: if (!Ld) next_state = S_wait;
         else begin
           Ld_R0 = 1;
           if (En) begin Ld_P1_P0 = 1; next_state = S_1; end
           else begin Clr_P1_P0 = 1; next_state = S_idle; end
         end

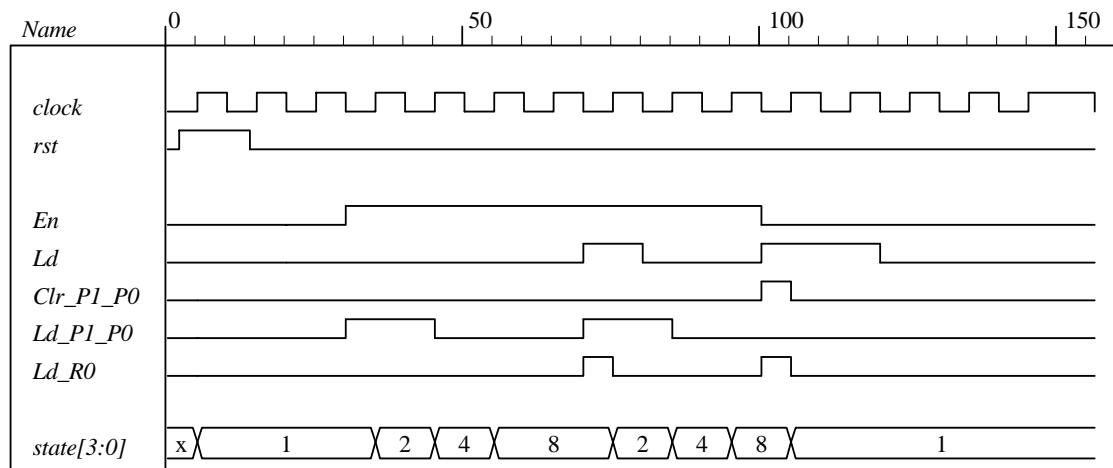
  default: next_state = S_idle;
endcase
end
endmodule
```

// Test bench for control unit

```
module t_Control_unit ();
wire Clr_P1_P0, Ld_P1_P0, Ld_R0;
reg En, Ld, clock, rst;

Control_unit M0 (Clr_P1_P0, Ld_P1_P0, Ld_R0, En, Ld, clock, rst);

initial #200 $finish;
initial begin clock = 0; forever #5 clock = ~clock; end
initial begin rst = 0; #2 rst = 1; #12 rst = 0; end
initial fork
  #20 Ld = 0;
  #20 En = 0;
  #30 En = 1; // Drive to S_wait
  #70 Ld = 1; // Return to S_1 to S_full tp S_wait
  #80 Ld = 0;
  #100 Ld = 1; // Drive to S_idle
  #100 En = 0;
  #110 En = 0;
  #120 Ld = 0;
join
endmodule
```



(c) Integrated system Note that the test bench for the integrated system uses the input stimuli from the test bench for the control unit and displays the waveforms produced by the test bench for the datapath unit.:

```
module Prob_8_41 (output [15: 0] R0, input [7: 0] Data, input En, Ld, clock, rst);
wire Clr_P1_P0, Ld_P1_P0, Ld_R0;
```

```
Control_unit M0 (Clr_P1_P0, Ld_P1_P0, Ld_R0, En, Ld, clock, rst);
Datapath_unit M1 (R0, Data, Clr_P1_P0, Ld_P1_P0, Ld_R0, clock);
```

**endmodule**

```
module Control_unit (output reg Clr_P1_P0, Ld_P1_P0, Ld_R0, input En, Ld, clock, rst);
parameter S_idle = 4'b0001, S_1 = 4'b0010, S_full = 4'b0100, S_wait = 4'b1000;
reg [3: 0] state, next_state;
```

```
always @ (posedge clock)
if (rst) state <= S_idle;
else state <= next_state;
```

```
always @ (state, Ld, En) begin
  Clr_P1_P0 = 0;           // Assign by exception
  Ld_P1_P0 = 0;
  Ld_R0 = 0;
  next_state = S_idle;
  case (state)
    S_idle: if (En) begin Ld_P1_P0 = 1; next_state = S_1; end
           else next_state = S_idle;

    S_1: begin Ld_P1_P0 = 1; next_state = S_full; end

    S_full: if (!Ld) next_state = S_wait;
           else begin
             Ld_R0 = 1;
             if (En) begin Ld_P1_P0 = 1; next_state = S_1; end
             else begin Clr_P1_P0 = 1; next_state = S_idle; end
           end

    S_wait: if (!Ld) next_state = S_wait;
           else begin
```

```

        Ld_R0 = 1;
        if (En) begin Ld_P1_P0 = 1; next_state = S_1; end
        else begin Clr_P1_P0 = 1; next_state = S_idle; end
    end
    default: next_state = S_idle;
endcase
end
endmodule

module Datapath_unit
(
    output reg [15: 0] R0,
    input [7: 0] Data,
    input Clr_P1_P0,
    Ld_P1_P0,
    Ld_R0,
    clock);
    reg [7: 0] P1, P0;

    always @ (posedge clock) begin
        if (Clr_P1_P0) begin P1 <= 0; P0 <= 0; end
        if (Ld_P1_P0) begin P1 <= Data; P0 <= P1; end
        if (Ld_R0) R0 <= {P1, P0};
    end
endmodule

// Test bench for integrated system
module t_Prob_8_41 ();
    wire [15: 0] R0;
    reg [7: 0] Data;
    reg En, Ld, clock, rst;

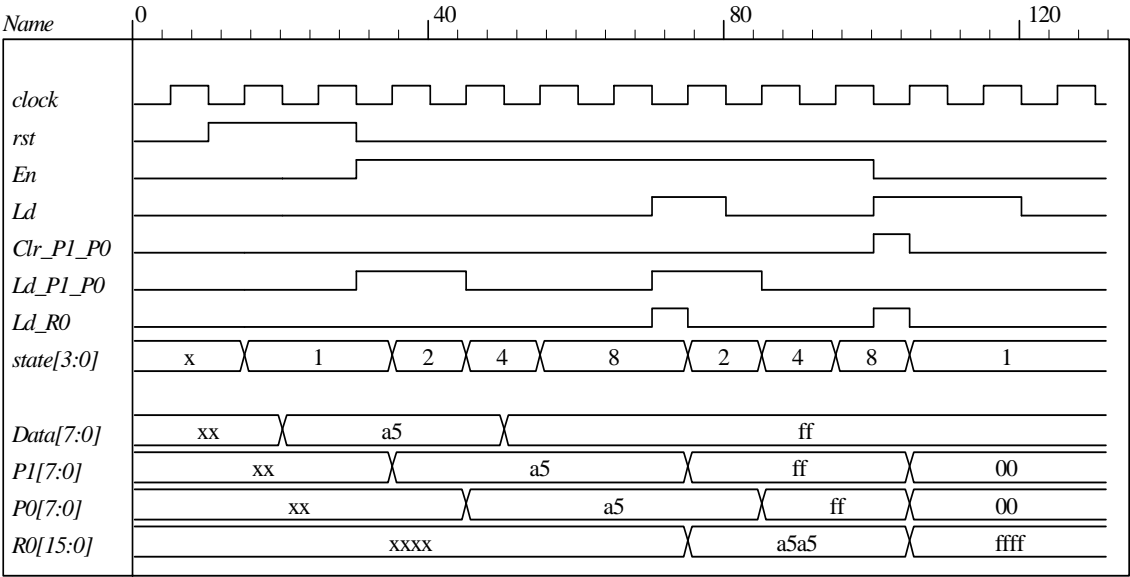
    Prob_8_41 M0 (R0, Data, En, Ld, clock, rst);

    initial #200 $finish;
    initial begin clock = 0; forever #5 clock = ~clock; end
    initial begin rst = 0; #10 rst = 1; #20 rst = 0; end
    initial fork

        #20 Data = 8'ha5;
        #50 Data = 8'hff;

        #20 Ld = 0;
        #20 En = 0;
        #30 En = 1; // Drive to S_wait
        #70 Ld = 1; // Return to S_1 to S_full tp S_wait
        #80 Ld = 0;
        #100 Ld = 1; // Drive to S_idle
        #100 En = 0;
        #110 En = 0;
        #120 Ld = 0;
    join
endmodule

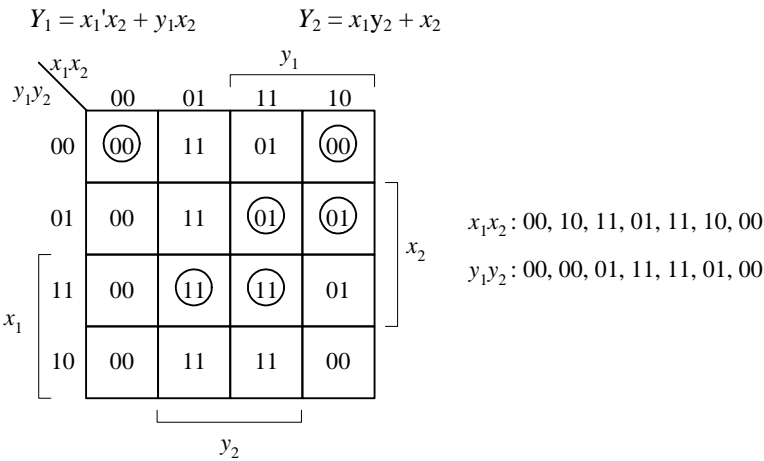
```



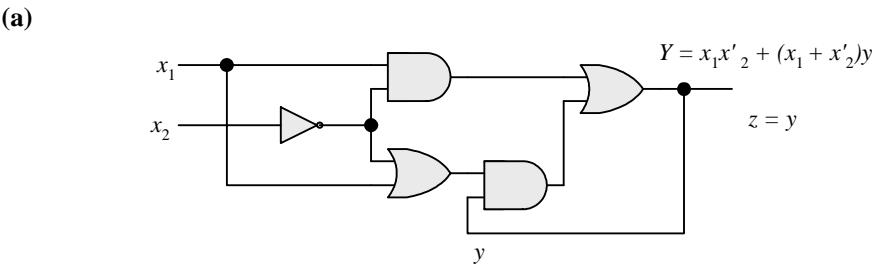
CHAPTER 9

- 9.1 (a) Asynchronous circuits do not use clock pulses and change state in response to input changes. Synchronous circuits use clock pulses and a change of state occurs in response to the clock transition.
- (b) The input signals change one at a time when the circuit is stable.
- (c) The circuit is in a stable state when the excitation variables (Y) are equal to the secondary variables (y) (see F. 9.1). Unstable otherwise.
- (d) The total state is the combination of binary values of the internal state and the inputs.

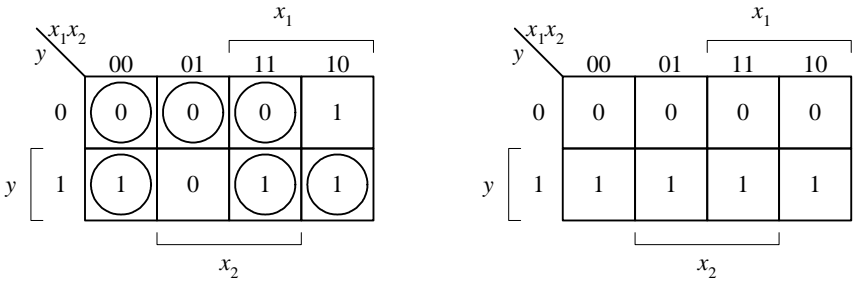
9.2



9.3



(b)



(c)

$x_1x_2$		00	01	11	10
y	a	(a), 0	(a), 0	(a), 0	b, -
	b	(b), 1	a, -	(b), 1	(b), 1

- (d) When the input is 01, the output is 0. When the input is 10, the output is 1. Whenever the input assumes one of the other two combinations, the output retains its previous value.

#### 9.4

$$Y_1 = x_1x_2 + x_1y'_2 + x'_2y_1$$

$x_1x_2$		00	01	11	10
$y_1y_2$	00	(00)	01	11	10
	01	00	01	11	(01)
	11	(11)	01	(11)	10
	10	11	01	11	(10)

Transition Table

$$Y_2 = x_2 + x_1y'_1y'_2 + x'_1y_1$$

$x_1x_2$		00	01	11	10
$y_1y_2$	00	0	1	1	0
	01	0	1	1	0
	11	1	1	1	1
	10	1	1	1	1

Output Map

$$z = x_2 + y_1$$

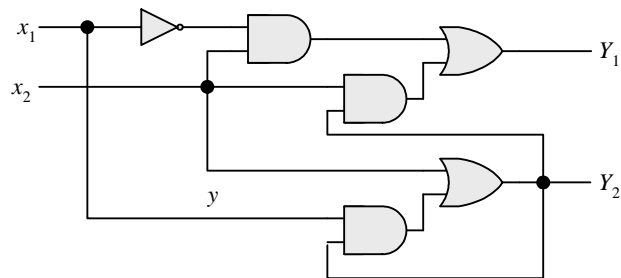
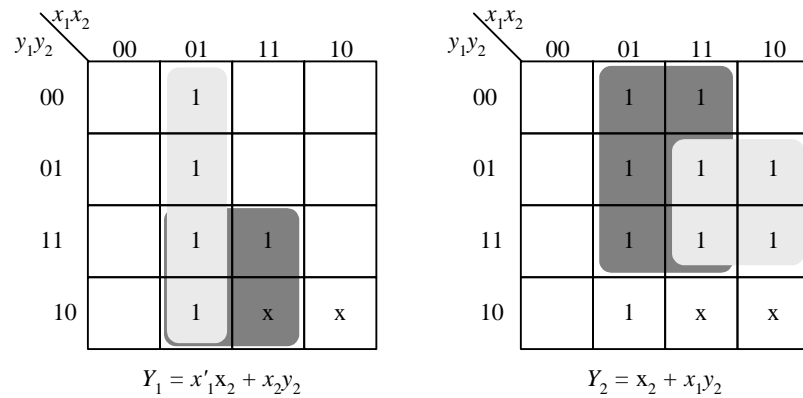
$y_1y_2$		00	01	11	10
a = 00	a	(a), 0	b, 1	c, 1	d, 0
	b = 01	a, 0	(b), 1	c, 1	(b), 0
	c = 11	(c), 1	b, 1	(c), 1	d, 1
	d = 10	c, 1	b, 1	c, 1	(d), 1

Flow Table

The figure consists of two 4x4 Karnaugh maps side-by-side, both for the same 4-variable function. The variables are  $x_1, x_2$  for columns and  $y_1, y_2$  for rows. The column headers are 00, 01, 11, 10. The row headers are 00, 01, 11, 10.

**Left Map:** Contains 10 ones and 6 zeros. Prime implicants are circled: (00, 00), (00, 10), (01, 00), (01, 10), (11, 01), (11, 11), (10, 01), (10, 11), (00, 11), (01, 11), (11, 10), (10, 10). A bracket under the first two columns (00, 01) is labeled "Noncritical races".

**Right Map:** Contains the same 10 ones and 6 zeros. Prime implicants are shaded: (00, 00), (00, 10), (01, 00), (01, 10), (11, 01), (11, 11), (10, 01), (10, 11), (00, 11), (01, 11), (11, 10), (10, 10). The shaded regions include the same prime implicants as the left map, but with a different selection for the last two columns (11, 10), illustrating a noncritical race condition.

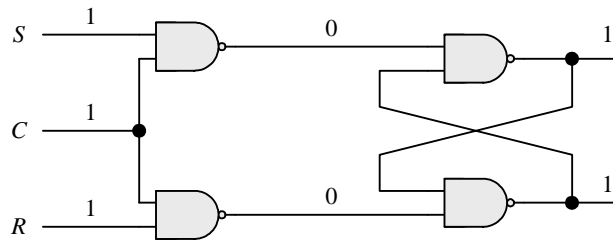


From total state  $y_1 y_2 x_1 x_2$  To total state  $y_1 y_2 x_1 x_2$

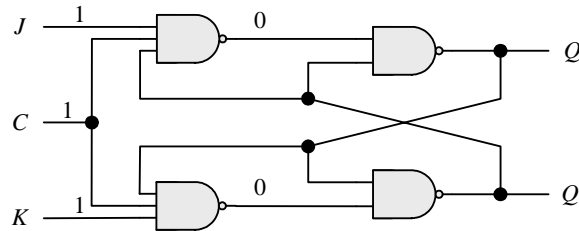
0 0 0 1  $\rightarrow$  1 1 1 1  
 0 0 0 1  $\rightarrow$  1 0 1 1  
 0 0 0 1  $\rightarrow$  0 1 1 1  
 0 0 0 1  $\rightarrow$  1 0 1 0  $\rightarrow$  1 1 0 0  $\rightarrow$  0 1 0 0 Cycle  
 0 1 0 0  $\rightarrow$  1 0 1 0  
 0 1 0 0  $\rightarrow$  0 0 1 0  $\rightarrow$  1 0 1 0 Critical race  
 0 1 0 0  $\rightarrow$  1 1 1 0  
 1 1 1 1  $\rightarrow$  0 0 0 1  
 1 1 1 1  $\rightarrow$  0 1 0 1  $\rightarrow$  0 0 0 1 Noncritical race  
 1 1 1 1  $\rightarrow$  1 0 0 1  $\rightarrow$  0 0 0 1  
 1 0 1 0  $\rightarrow$  1 1 0 0  $\rightarrow$  0 1 0 0 Cycle



- 9.7** When all the inputs are equal to 1, both outputs are equal to 1. (See Fig. 9.11). Going from  $SR = 11$  to  $SR = 00$  when  $C = 1$  produces an unstable output.



- 9.8** When  $C = 1$  and  $J = K = 1$ , the outputs complement and again repeat complementing as long as  $C = 1$ .



- 9.9** (a)

$$\begin{aligned} S_1 &= x'_1 & R_1 &= y'_2 \\ S_2 &= x'_1 y'_1 & R_2 &= x'_2 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} Y_1 &= S'_1 + R_1 y_1 = x_1 + y_1 y'_2 \\ Y_2 &= S'_2 + R_2 y_2 = x_1 + y_1 + x'_2 y_2 \end{aligned}$$

$$Q = Y_2$$

- (b)

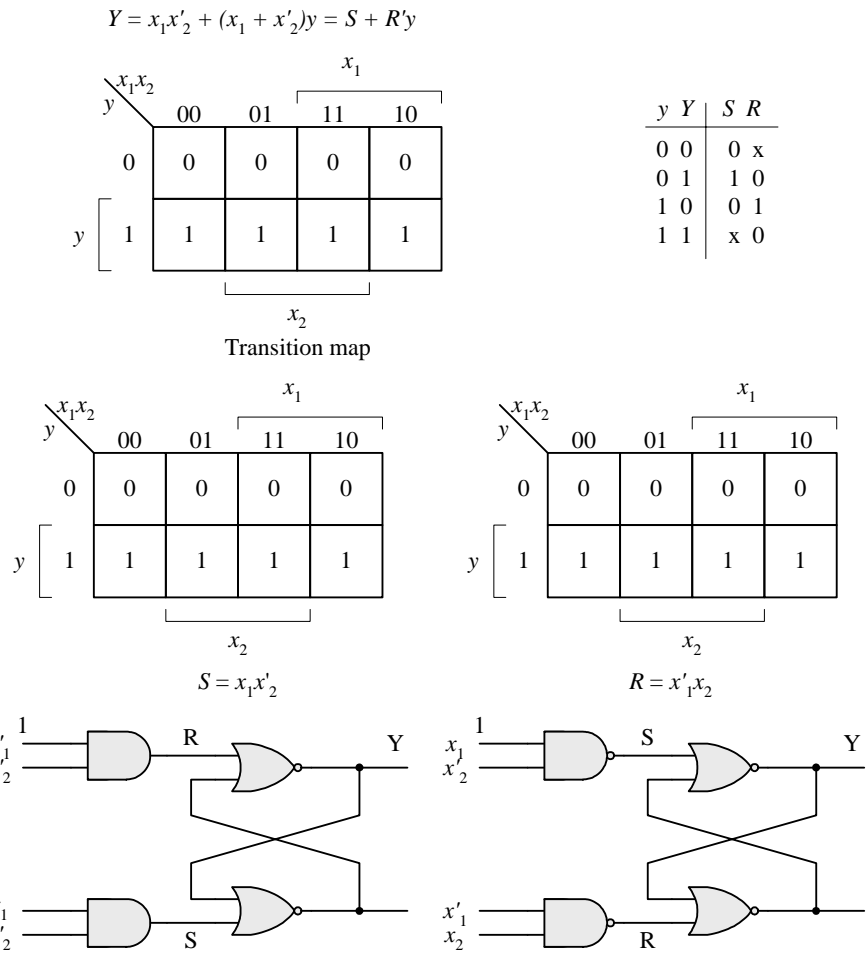
$y_1 y_2 \backslash x_1 x_2$	00	01	11	10
00	00	00	11	11
01	01	00	11	11
11	01	01	11	11
10	00	11	11	11

Transition table

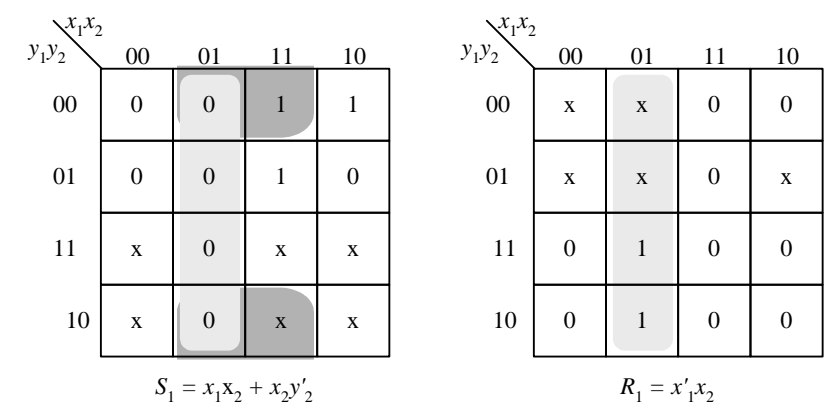
$y_1 y_2 \backslash x_1 x_2$	00	01	11	10
00	0	0	1	1
01	1	0	1	1
11	1	1	1	1
10	1	1	1	1

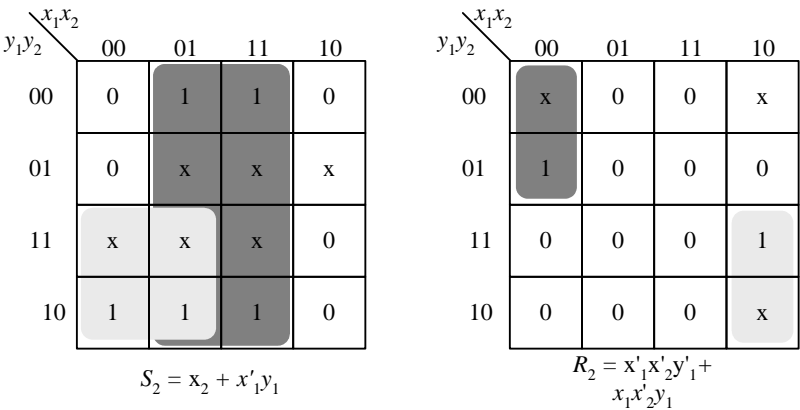
Output map

9.10



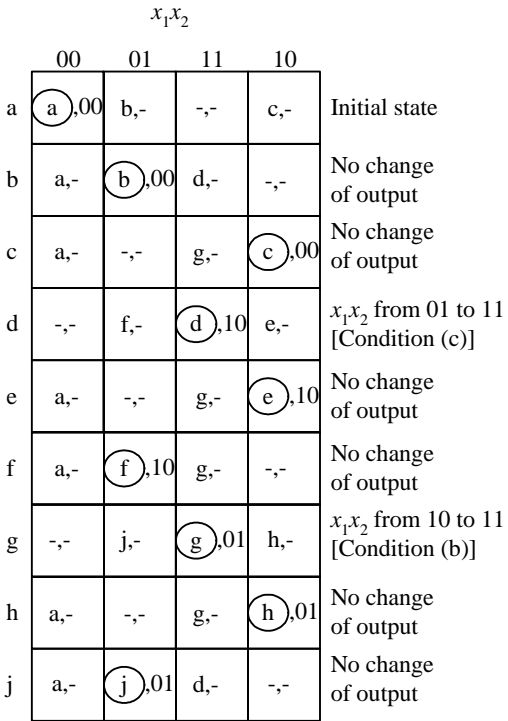
9.11 Use solution of Prob. 9.4 transition table.





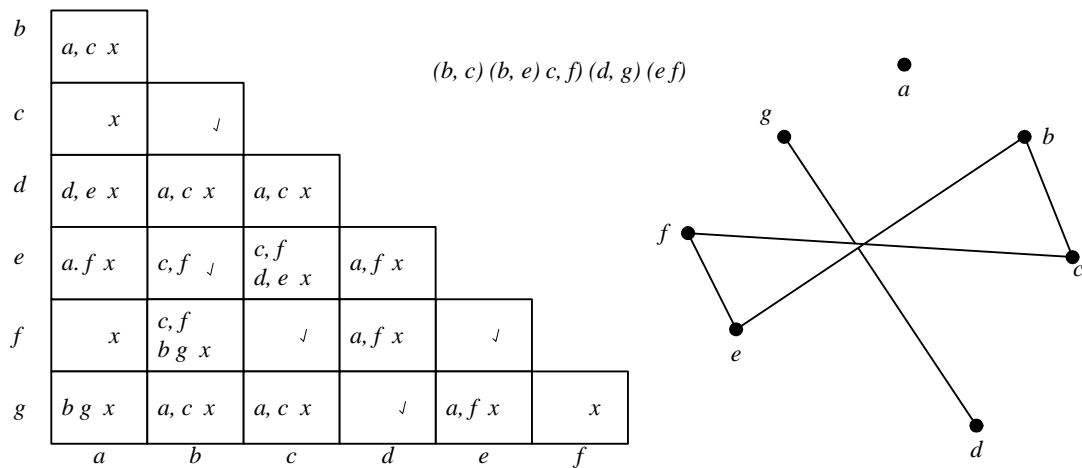
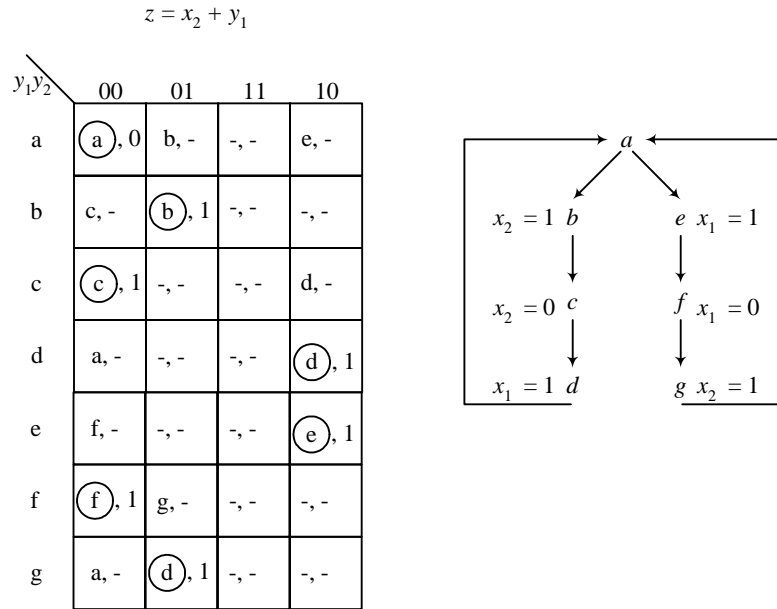
The circuit may be drawn as in Fig. 9.38(b) or Fig. 9.46. It will require 6 NAND gates for the inputs to the latches, 4 NAND gates for the two latches, and one NAND gate for the out put  $z = x_2 + y_1 = (x_2'y_1)'$ .

9.12



9.13

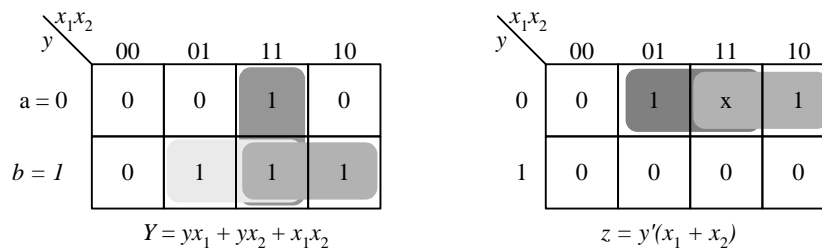
State	Switch input		Output light (red = 1)	Comments
	$x_1x_2$	$z$		
a	0 0	0		No train in intersection
b	0 1	1		Train turns on $x_2$ after state a
c	0 0	1		Train between two switches
d	1 0	1		Train turns on $x_1$ after state c
e	1 0	1		Train trains on $x_1$ after state a
f	0 0	1		Train between two switches
g	0 1	1		Train turns on $x_2$ after state f



There are two possibilities for a four-row flow table:

(a)  $(b, c) (d, g) (e, f)$  or (a)  $(b, e) (c, f) (d, g)$ . Continue with the solution of Prob. 9.25.

### 9.14 (b)



9.15

	00	01	11	10
00	0	x	x	x
01	0	1	x	x
11	0	x	1	0
10	x	1	1	1

(a)

	00	01	11	10
00	0	0	x	0
01	0	0	1	1
11	x	1	1	1
10	0	1	1	0

(b)

9.16

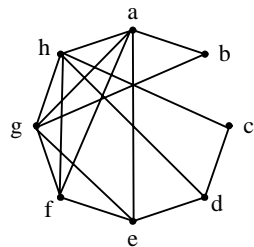
<i>b</i>	<i>a, c x</i> <i>b, d x</i>		
<i>c</i>	<i>b, d x</i>	<i>a, c x</i>	
<i>d</i>	<i>x</i>	<i>x</i>	<i>x</i>
<i>e</i>	<i>x</i>	<i>x</i>	<i>x, e x</i>
	<i>a</i>	<i>b</i>	<i>c</i>

9.17

<i>b</i>	<i>b, c x</i> <i>d, f x</i>					
<i>c</i>	<i>b, e x</i>	<i>d, f x</i> <i>c, e x</i>				
<i>d</i>	<i>x</i>	<i>x</i>	<i>x</i>			
<i>e</i>	<i>b, c x</i> <i>d, f x</i>	<i>x</i>	<i>d, f x</i>	<i>x</i>		
<i>f</i>	<i>x</i>	<i>x</i>	<i>x</i>	<i>x</i>	<i>x</i>	
<i>g</i>	<i>x</i>	<i>x</i>	<i>x</i>	<i>x</i>	<i>x</i>	<i>x</i>
<i>h</i>	<i>x</i>	<i>x</i>	<i>x</i>	<i>x</i>	<i>x</i>	<i>x</i>
	<i>a</i>	<i>b</i>	<i>c</i>	<i>d</i>	<i>e</i>	<i>f</i>

(a, c) (b, e) (d, h) (f) (g)  
See solution to Prob. 6.14 for the reduced state table.

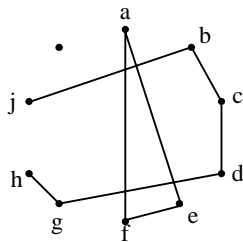
9.18 (a)



- 1: (a, b) (a, e) (a, f) (a, g) (a, h)  
(b, g) (b, h) (c, d) (c, h)  
(d, e) (d, h) (e, f) (e, g) (e, h)  
(f, g) (f, h) (g, h)

- 2, 3: (a, b) (c, d) e, f, g, h)

(b)



- 1: (a, e) (a, f) (b, c) (b, j) (c, d)  
(d, g) (e, f) (g, h)

- 2: (a, e, f) (b, c) (b, j) (c, d)  
(d, g) (g, h) (k)

- 3: (a, e, f) (b, j) (c, d) (g, h) (k)

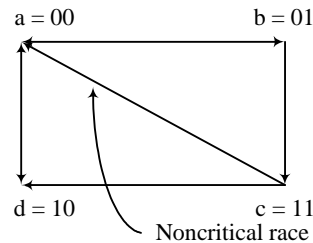
9.19

$y_1y_2 \backslash x_1x_2$	00	01	11	10
a = 00	00	00	01	10
b = 01	00	01	01	11
c = 11	00	xx	10	11
d = 10	00	00	10	10

Transition table

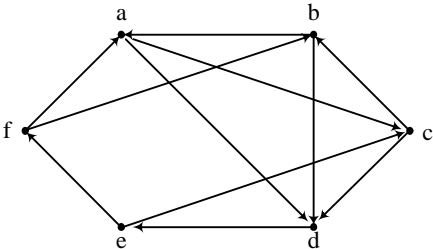
$y_1y_2 \backslash x_1x_2$	00	01	11	10
00	0	1	x	x
01	0	0	0	0
11	0	x	x	0
10	x	1	1	1

Output map = z



$$\begin{aligned} S_1 &= x_1x'_2 \\ R_1 &= x'_1 \\ S_2 &= x_1x_2y'_1 \\ R_2 &= x'_1x'_2 + x_2y_1 \\ z &= x_2y'_2 + x_1y'_2 \end{aligned}$$

9.20



Transition diagram

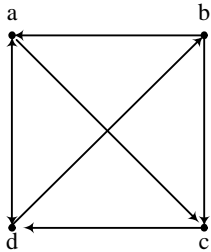
	00	01	11	10
0	a	g	b	f
1	c	h	d	e

Binary assignment  
(Add states g and h)

	00	01	11	10
000 = a	(a)	<del>a</del> g	(a)	c
011 = b	<del>a</del> g	(b)	(b)	d
100 = c	<del>a</del> h	(c)	<del>b</del> h	(c)
111 = d	(d)	(d)	e	(d)
110 = e	f	c	(e)	c
010 = f	(f)	b	a	(f)
001 = g	a	h	b	-
101 = h	d	d	g	-

Modified flow table

9.21



Transition diagram

	00	01	11	10
0	a <sub>1</sub>	b <sub>1</sub>	c <sub>1</sub>	d <sub>1</sub>
1	c <sub>2</sub>	d <sub>2</sub>	a <sub>2</sub>	b <sub>2</sub>

Binary assignment

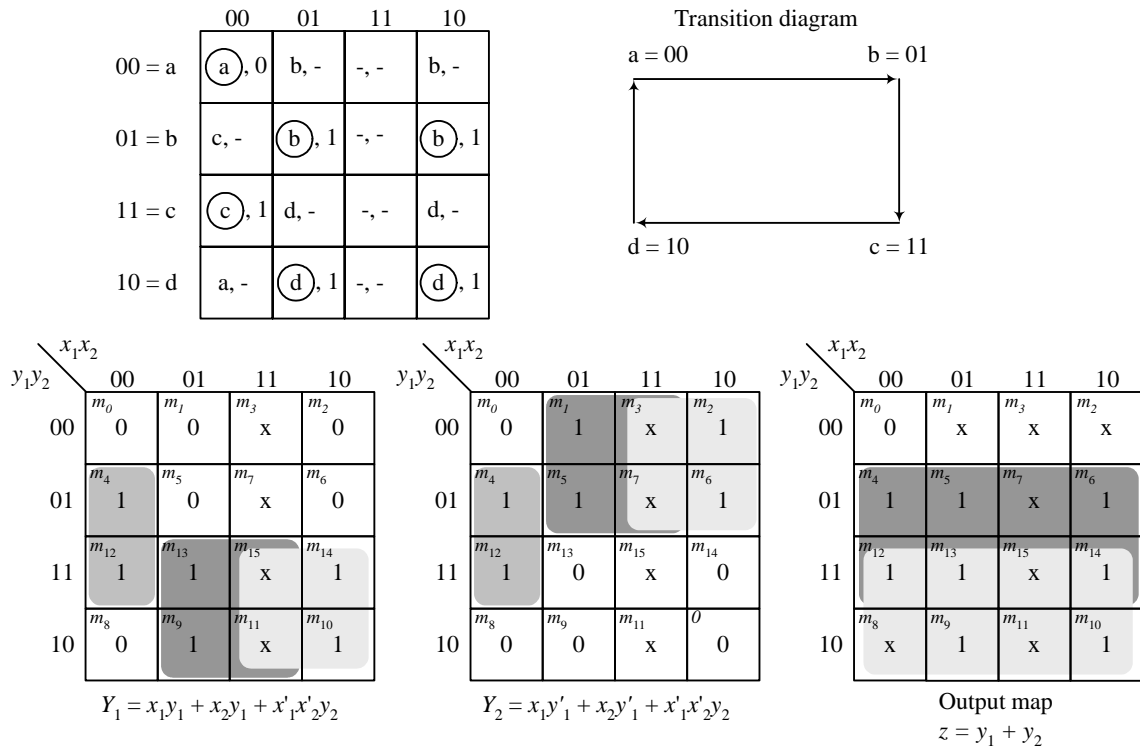
	00	01	11	10
000 = a <sub>1</sub>	(a <sub>1</sub> )	c <sub>2</sub>	(a <sub>1</sub> )	d <sub>1</sub>
011 = a <sub>2</sub>	(a <sub>2</sub> )	c <sub>1</sub>	(a <sub>2</sub> )	d <sub>2</sub>
100 = b <sub>1</sub>	a <sub>1</sub>	(b <sub>1</sub> )	c <sub>1</sub>	(b <sub>1</sub> )
111 = b <sub>2</sub>	a <sub>2</sub>	(b <sub>2</sub> )	c <sub>2</sub>	(b <sub>2</sub> )
110 = c <sub>1</sub>	(c <sub>1</sub> )	(c <sub>1</sub> )	(c <sub>1</sub> )	d <sub>1</sub>
010 = c <sub>2</sub>	(c <sub>2</sub> )	(c <sub>2</sub> )	(c <sub>2</sub> )	d <sub>2</sub>
001 = d <sub>1</sub>	(d <sub>1</sub> )	b <sub>2</sub>	a <sub>1</sub>	(d <sub>1</sub> )
101 = d <sub>2</sub>	(d <sub>2</sub> )	b <sub>1</sub>	a <sub>2</sub>	(d <sub>2</sub> )

Flow table





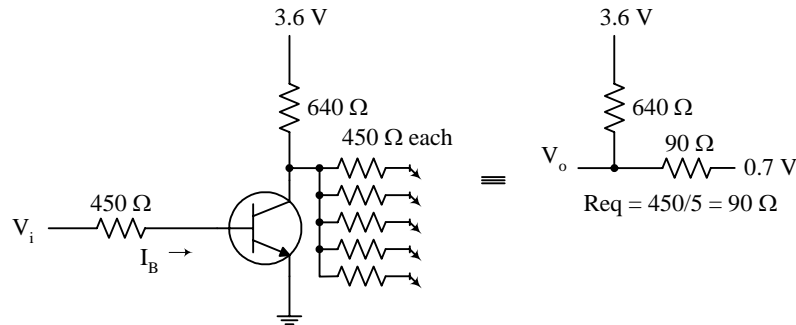
**9.25** Continued from solution to Prob. 9.13. The four row table obtained from the compatibles (a) (b, c) (d, g) (e, f) requires three state variables because there is a critical race. Use (a) (b, e) (c, f) (d, g).



## CHAPTER 10

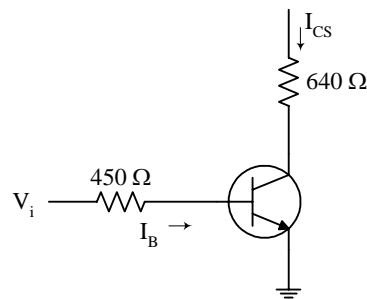
- 10.1** Fan-out =  $I_{OL}/I_{IL} = 20/2 = 10$ ;  $I_{OH}/I_{IH} = 1/0.050 = 20$   
 Power dissipation  $5 \times (10 + 20)/2 = 75$  mW for 4 gates,  $75/4 = 18.75$  mW per gate  
 Propagation delay = 3 ns Noise margin =  $2.7 - 2 = 0.7$  or  $0.8 - 0.5 = 0.3$  V

### 10.2



(a)  $V_o = 90/(640 + 90) \times 3.6 + 0.7 \times 640/(640 + 90) = 0.444 + 0.614 = 1.058$  V

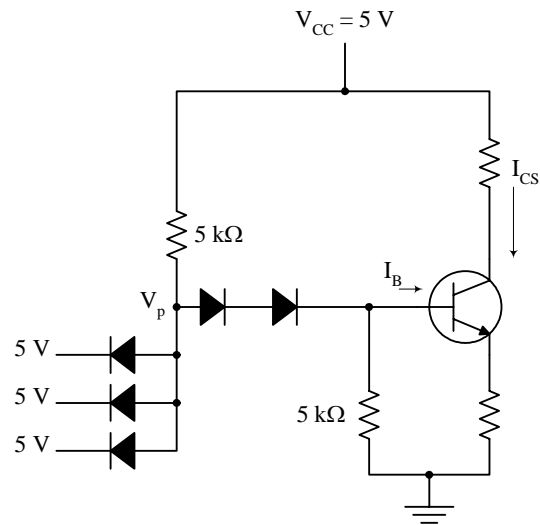
(b)



$I_{CS}/h_{FE} = (3.6 - 0.2)/640/20 = 0.266$  mA  
 For saturation:  $I_B = (V_i - 0.7)/450 \geq 0.266$  mA  
 $V_i \geq 0.266 \times 10^{-3} \times 450 + 0.7 = 0.82$  V

(c)  $1.058 - 0.82 = 0.238$  V

### 10.3



$$V_P = 0.7 + 0.7 + 0.7 = 2.1 \text{ V (Input diodes are off)}$$

$$I_B = (5 - 2.1)/5000 - 0.7/5000 = 0.58 - 0.14 = 0.44 \text{ mA}$$

$$I_{CS} = (5 - 0.2)/2000 = 2.4 \text{ mA}$$

The transistor is saturated because  $I_b = 0.44 \text{ mA} \geq I_{CS}/h_{FE} = 2.4/20 \text{ mA} = 0.12 \text{ mA}$

### 10.4

(a)  $I_R = (5 - 0.2)/2K = 2.4 \text{ mA}$

(b)  $I_L = (5 - 0.9)/5K = 0.82 \text{ mA}$

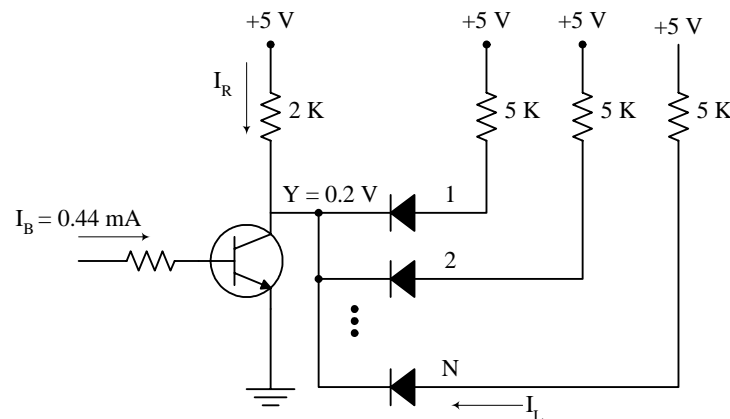
(c)  $I_{CS} = I_R + N I_L = 2.4 + 0.82N$

(d)  $I_B h_{FE} = 0.44 \times 20 = 8.8 \text{ mA}$

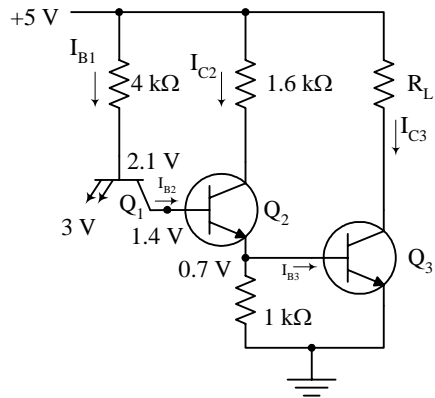
$$I_{CS} = 2.4 + 0.82 N \leq I_B h_{FE} = 8.8$$

$$N \leq (8.8 - 2.4)/0.82 = 7.8$$

(e) Fanout = 7

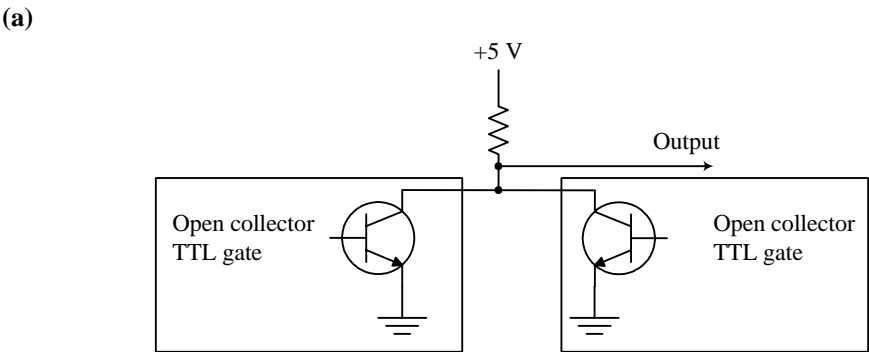


10.5



- (a)  $V_B(Q_1) = 2.1\text{ V}$     $V_C(Q_1) = 1.4\text{ V}$   
 $V_B(Q_2) = 1.4\text{ V}$     $V_C(Q_2) = 0.9\text{ V}$   
 $V_B(Q_3) = 0.7\text{ V}$     $V_C(Q_3) = 0.2\text{ V}$   
 $V_E(Q_1) = 3.0\text{ V}$     $V_E(Q_2) = 0.7\text{ V}$
- (b)  $I_{B1} = I_{B2} = (5 - 2.1)/4000 = 0.725\text{ mA}$   
 $I_{C2} = (5 - 0.9)/1600 = 2.56\text{ mA}$   
 $h_{FE}(Q_2) \geq 2.56/0.726 = 3,53$
- (c)  $I_{B3} = I_{B2} + I_{C2} - 0.7/1000 = 0.725 + 2.56 - 0.7 = 2.585\text{ mA}$
- (d)  $I_{C3} < I_{B3} h_{FE} = 2.585 \times 6.18 = 16\text{ mA}$
- (e)  $(5 - 0.2)/R_L < 16\text{ mA}$   
 $R_L > 4.8 / 16 \times 10^{-3} = 4800/16 = 300$

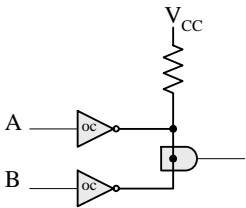
10.6



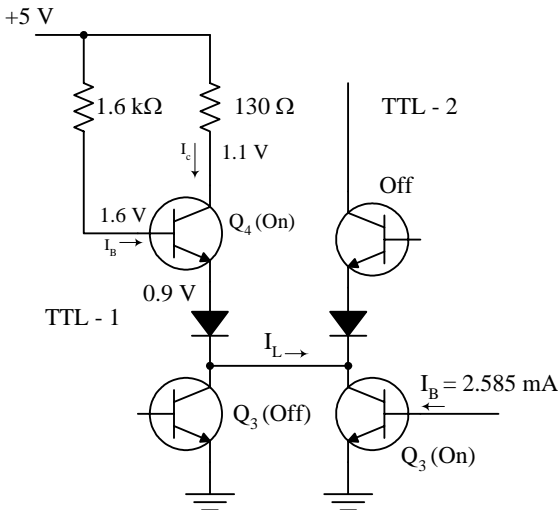
If one or more transistor are ON, the output is at a low level. The output is high if and only if all transistors are off.

Q1	Q2	Output	AND
ON	ON	LOW	= 0
ON	OFF	LOW	= 0
OFF	ON	LOW	= 0
OFF	OFF	HIGH	= 1

(b)  $A' B' = (A + B)'$



10.7



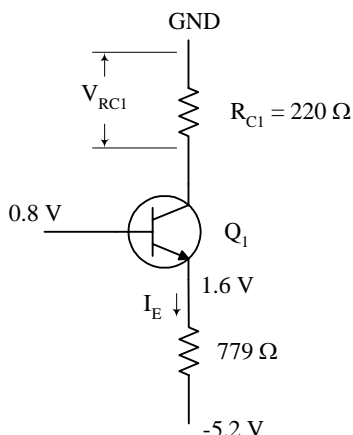
See Prob. 10.5

$I_B(Q4) = (5 - 1.6)/1600 = 2.123 \text{ mA}$   
 $I_C(Q4) = (5 - 1.1)/130 = 30 \text{ mA}$   
 $I_L = I_B + I_C = 2.125 + 30 = 32.125 \text{ mA}$   
Note: 32 mA of current flows between the two circuits provided Q4 (of TTL -1) and Q3 (of TTL – 2) are both saturated.

10.8

	(a) C=L A=L	(b) C=L A=H	(c) C=L A=H
Q1 (base-emitter)	ON	OFF	ON
Q1(base-collector)	OFF	ON	OFF
Q2	OFF	ON	OFF
Q3 Totem-pole output	OFF ON	ON OFF	OFF OFF
Q5	ON	OFF	OFF
Q6 (base-emittter)	ON	ON	OFF
Q6 (base-collector)	OFF	OFF	ON
Q7	OFF	OFF	ON
Q8	OFF	OFF	ON
State of output	HIGH	LOW	HIGH IMPEDANCE

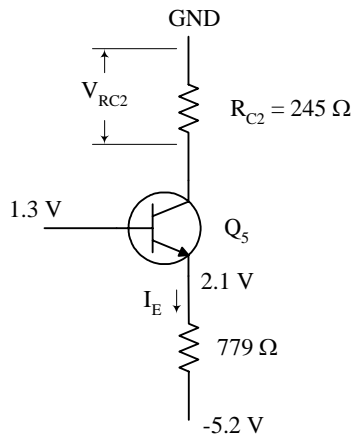
**10.9** (a) When one or more inputs are HIGH, Q5 is OFF and the input transistor(s) is ON.



$$I_E = (5.2 - 1.6)/779 = 4.62 \text{ mA}$$

$$V_{RC1} = 4.62 \times 10^{-3} \times 220 = 1.02 \text{ V}$$

(b) When all inputs are low, Q5 conducts and the input transistors are OFF.

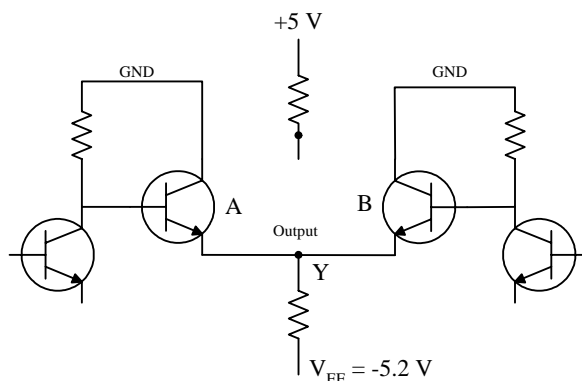


$$I_E = (5.2 - 2.1)/779 = 4 \text{ mA}$$

$$V_{RC2} = 4 \times 10^{-3} \times 245 = 0.98 \text{ V}$$

**10.10** Noise margin =  $0.6 - 0.3 = 0.3 \text{ V}$

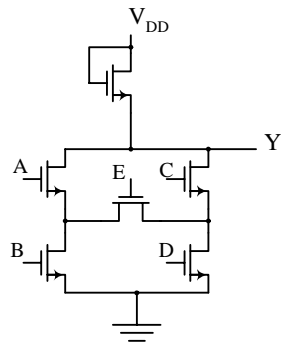
**10.11**



A	B	Y	OR
-1 V	-1 V	-1.8 V (L)	= 0
-1 V	GND	-0.8 V (H)	= 1
GND	-1 V	-0.8 V (H)	= 1
GND	GND	-0.8 V (H)	= 1

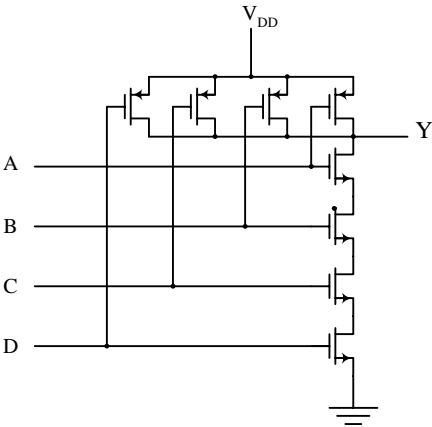
-1 V = 0, GND = 1

10.12

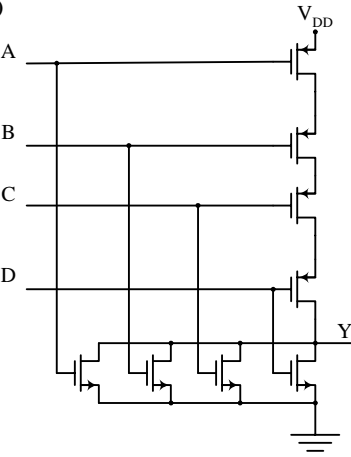


10.13

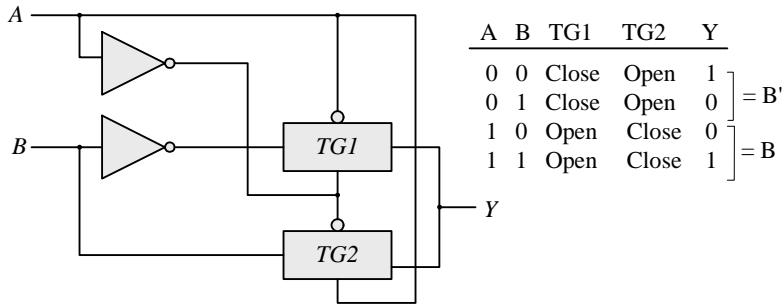
(a)



(b)



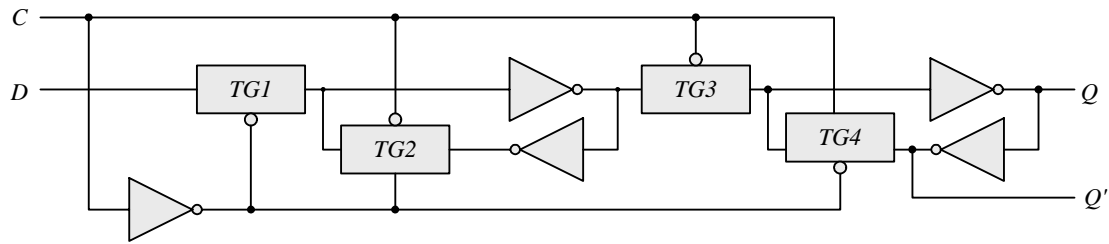
10.14



10.15

Add another level to the diagram of Fig. 10.26 and a third selection input,  $S_2$ . The first level is controlled by  $S_0$  and has 8 transmission gates between the data inputs and the four lines labeled  $I_0 \dots I_3$  in Fig. 10.26. The other two levels are as in Fig. 10.26 except that the second level is controlled by  $S_1$  and the third level is controlled by  $S_2$ .

### 10.16



### 10.17

// Test bench for NAND2

```
module t_NAND2;
  reg A, B;
  wire Y;
```

```
  NAND2 M0 (Y, A, B);    // Instantiate NAND2
```

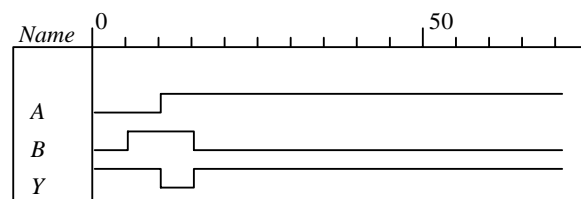
```
  initial #100 $finish;
  initial fork
    A = 0;
    B = 0;
    #5 B = 1;
    #10 A = 1;
    #15 B = 0;
  join
```

```
  initial $monitor ($time, "A = %b B = %b Y = %b", A, B, Y);
endmodule
```

//CMOS 2-input NAND Fig. 10.22(b)

```
module NAND2 (Y, A, B);
  input A, B;
  output Y;
  supply1 PWR;
  supply0 GRD;
  wire W1;    // terminal between two nmos
  pmos (Y, PWR, A); // source connected to Vdd
  pmos (Y, PWR, B); // parallel connection
  nmos (Y, W1, A);   // serial connection
  nmos (W1, GRD, B); // source connected to ground
endmodule
```

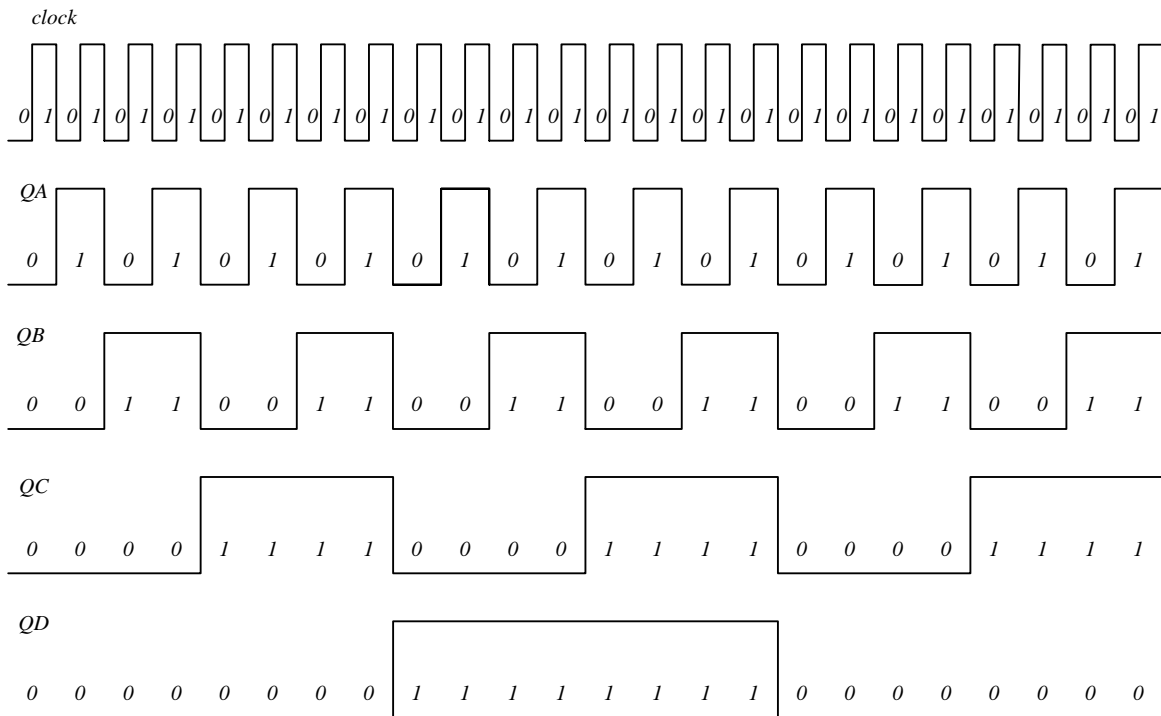
```
0 A = 0 B = 0 Y = 1
5 A = 0 B = 1 Y = 1
10 A = 1 B = 1 Y = 0
15 A = 1 B = 0 Y = 1
```





## CHAPTER 11

### 11.1 Oscilloscope display:



BCD count: Oscilloscope displays from 0000 to 1001

Output pattern:

QA = alternate 1's and 0's

QB = Two 1's, two 0's, two 1's, four 0's

QC = Four 1's, six 0's

QD = Two 1's, eight 0's.

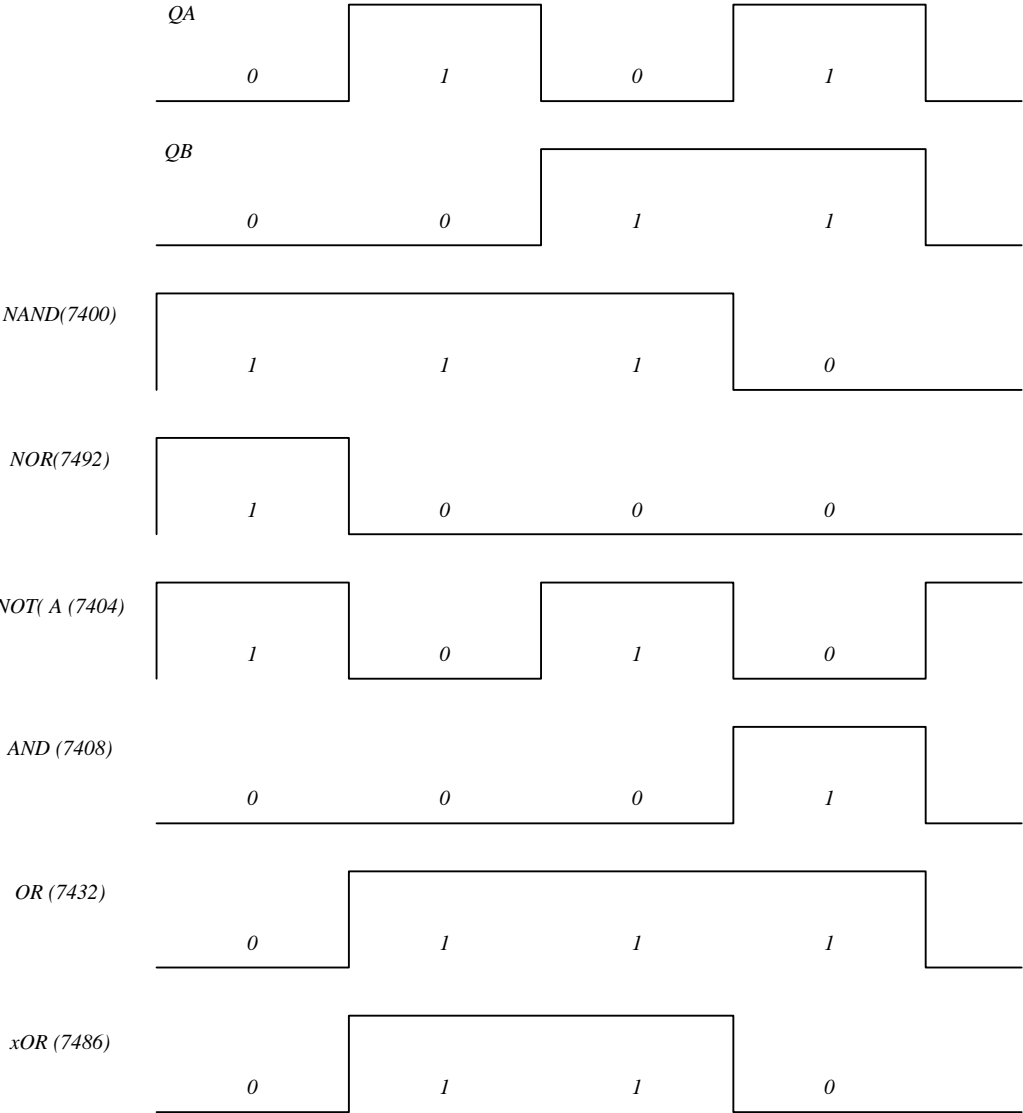
Other counts:

- (a) 0101 must reset at 0110 – connect QB to R1, QC to R2
- (b) 0111 must reset at 1000 – connect QD to both R1 and R2
- (c) 1011 must reset at 1100 – connect QC to R1, QD to R2

11.2 Truth table:

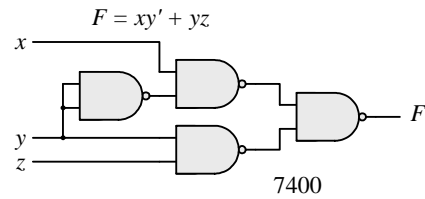
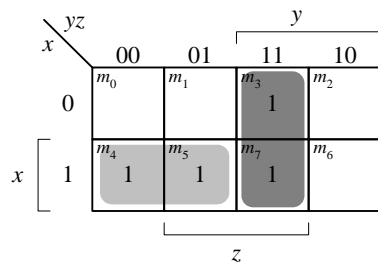
Inputs							
A	B	NAND	NOR	NOT(A)	AND	OR	XOR
0	0	1	0	1	0	0	0
0	1	1	1	0	0	1	1
1	0	1	1	1	0	1	1
1	1	0	1	0	1	1	0

Waveforms:

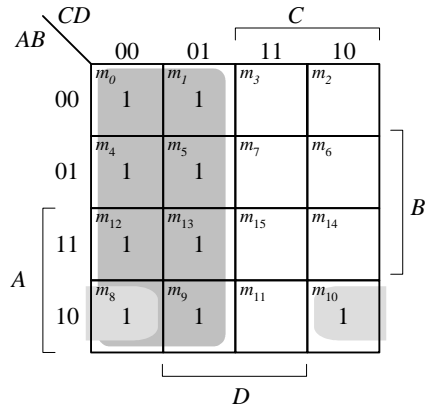


### 11.3

Logic Diagram

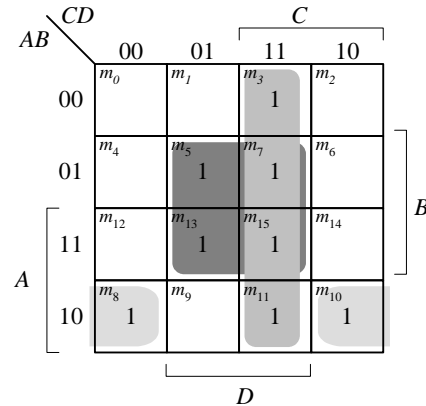


Boolean Functions:



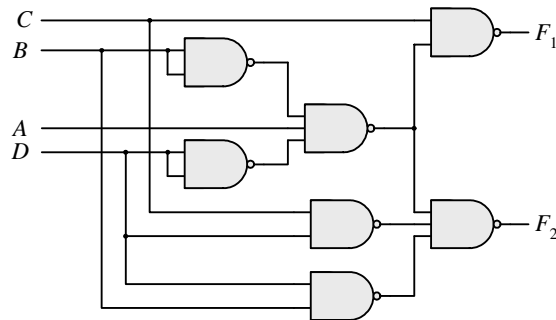
$$F_1 = C' + AB'D'$$

Boolean Functions:



$$F_2 = BD + CD + AB'D'$$

2 ICs: 7400, 7410

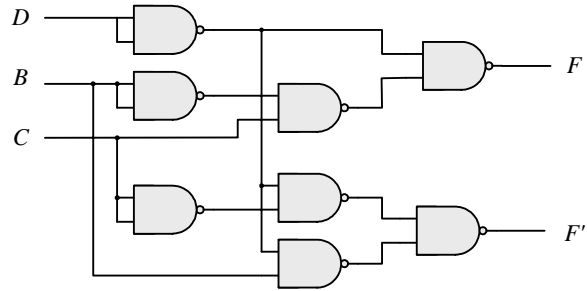


Complement:

CD		C			
		00	01	11	10
AB	00	$m_0$ 0	$m_1$ 1	$m_3$ 1	$m_2$ 1
	01	$m_4$ 0	$m_5$ 1	$m_7$ 1	$m_6$ 0
	11	$m_{12}$ 0	$m_{13}$ 1	$m_{15}$ 1	$m_{14}$ 0
	10	$m_8$ 0	$m_9$ 1	$m_{11}$ 1	$m_{10}$ 1

$$F = D + B'C$$

$$F' = C'D' + BD'$$



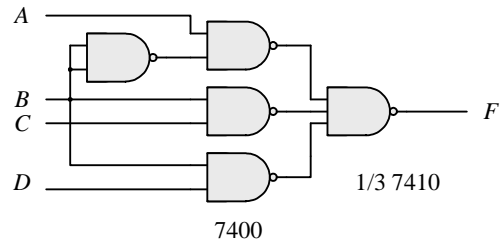
2 - 7400 ICs

#### 11.4

Design Example:

CD		C			
		00	01	11	10
AB	00	$m_0$	$m_1$	$m_3$	$m_2$
	01	$m_4$	$m_5$ 1	$m_7$ 1	$m_6$ 1
	11	$m_{12}$	$m_{13}$ 1	$m_{15}$ 1	$m_{14}$ 1
	10	$m_8$ 1	$m_9$ 1	$m_{11}$ 1	$m_{10}$ 1

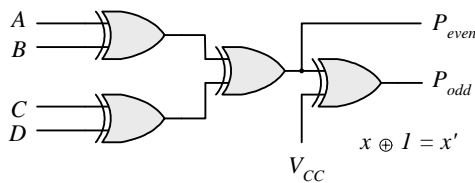
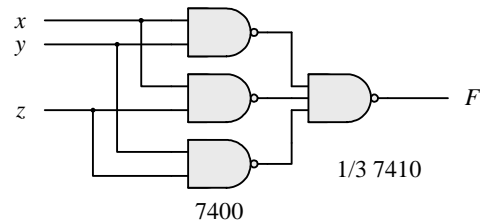
$$F = AB' + BC + BD$$



Majority Logic

yz		y			
		00	01	11	10
x	0	$m_0$	$m_1$	$m_3$ 1	$m_2$
	1	$m_4$	$m_5$ 1	$m_7$ 1	$m_6$ 1

$$F = xy + xz + yz$$

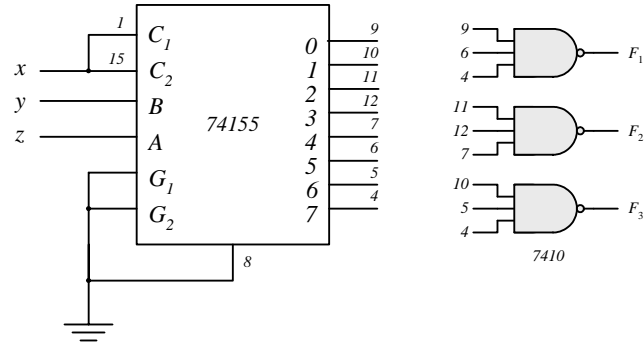


### Decoder Implementation

$$F_1 = xz + x'y'z' = \Sigma(0, 5, 7)$$

$$F_2 = x'y + xy'z' = \Sigma(2, 3, 4)$$

$$F_3 = xy + x'y'z = \Sigma(1, 6, 7)$$



### 11.5 Gray code to Binary – See solution to Prob. 4.7.

9's complementer – See solution to Prob. 4.18.

$$w = A'B'C'$$

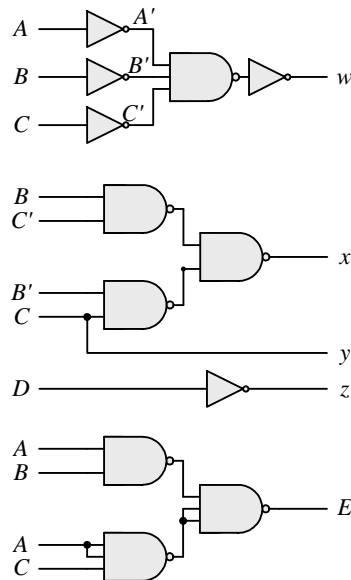
$$x = BC' + B'C$$

$$y = C$$

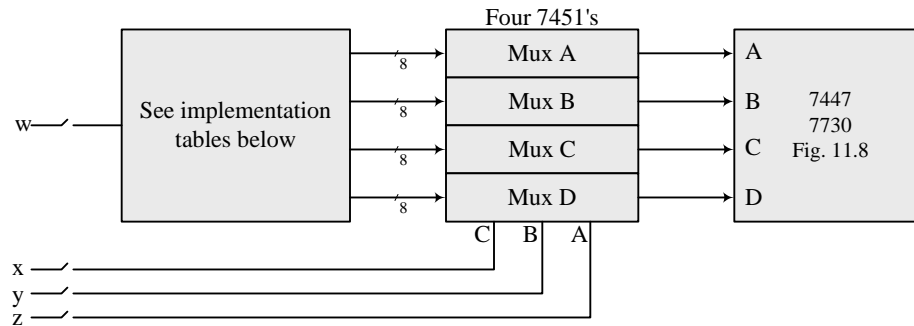
$$z = D'$$

$$E = AB + AC$$

3 ICs: 7400, 7404, 7410



## 11.6

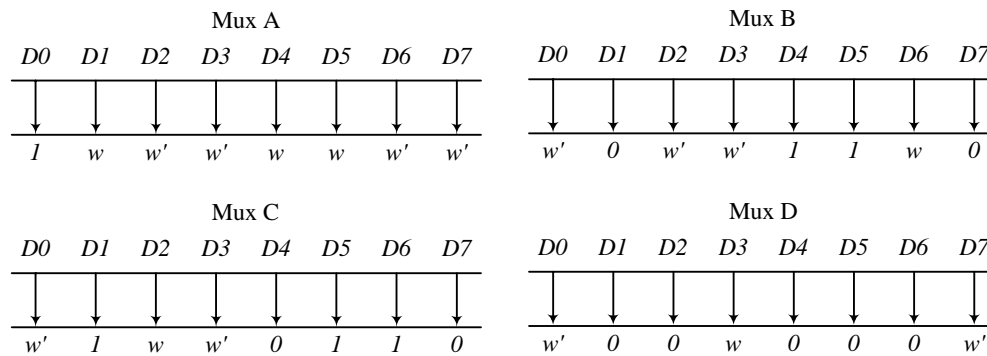


$$A = \sum(0, 2, 3, 6, 7, 8, 9, 12, 13)$$

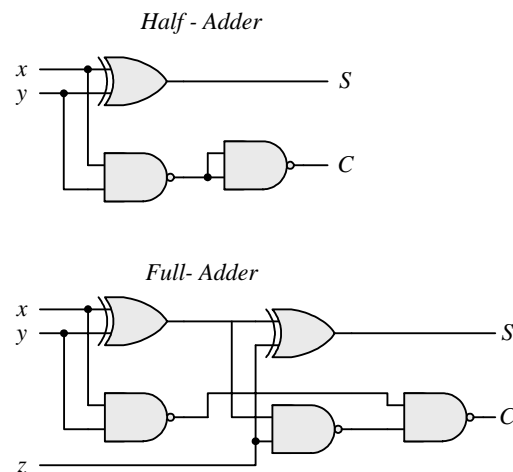
$$B = \sum(0, 2, 3, 4, 5, 12, 13, 14)$$

$$C = \sum(0, 1, 3, 5, 6, 9, 10, 13, 14)$$

$$D = \sum(0, 7, 11)$$



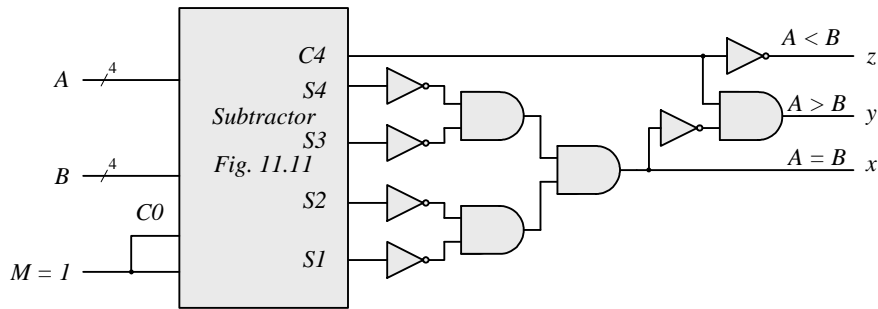
## 11.7



Parallel adder - See circuit of Fig. 11.10.

Adder-subtractor - See circuit of Fig. 11.11.

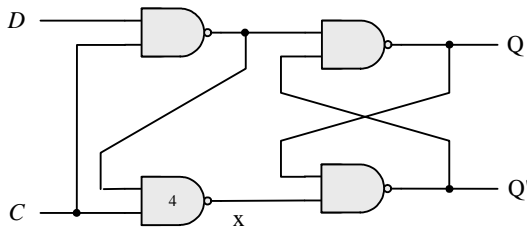
Operation	Inputs				Outputs		
	M	A	B	C <sub>0</sub>	S	C <sub>4</sub>	
9 + 5 = 14	0	1001	0101	0	1110	0	
9 + 9 = 19 = 16 + 2	0	1001	1001	0	0010	1	sum < 15
9 + 15 = 24 = 16 + 8	0	1001	1111	0	1000	1	sum > 15
9 - 5 = 4	1	1001	0101	1	0100	1	sum > 15
9 - 9 = 0	1	1001	1001	1	0000	1	A > B
9 - 15 = -6	1	1001	1111	1	1010	0	A = B
							A < B



11.8     **SR Latch:** See Fig. 5.4.

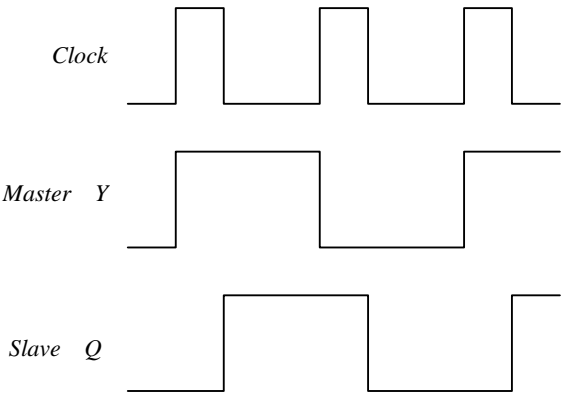
**D Latch:**

Let  $CP = C$ ,  $x$  = output of gate 4.  
 $x = [(DC)'C]' = (D'C)'$



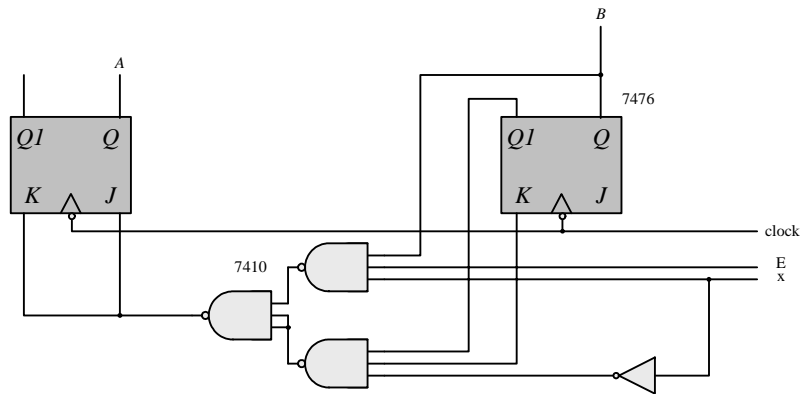
**Master-Slave D Flip-Flop:** The circuit is as in Fig. 5.9.

The oscilloscope display:



Timing diagram for a D flip-flop. The top signal is *Clock*, a periodic square wave. The bottom signal is *Output*, which is low when the clock is low and transitions to high at the rising edge of the clock when the *Data* input is high. The *Data* input is a constant high signal.

### 11.9 Up-Down Counter with Enable:



Digital Design – Solution Manual. M. Mano. M.D. Ciletti, Copyright 2007, All rights reserved.



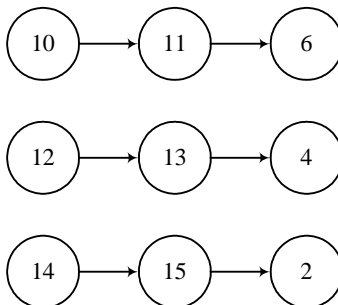
**11.10** Ripple counter: See Fig. 6.8

Down counter: Either take outputs from Q' outputs or connect complement Q' to next clock input.

Synchronous counter: See Fig. 6.12.

BCD counter: See solution to Prob. 6.19.

Unused states:



Binary counter with parallel load:

Connect QA and QD through a NAND gate to the load. See Fig. 6.15.

**11.11** Ring counter:

See Fig. 6.17(a).

States of register:

QA	QB	QC	QD
1	0	0	0
0	1	0	0
0	0	1	0
0	0	0	1

Switch-tail ring counter: See Fig. 6.18(a). Connect (QD)' at pin 12 to the serial input at pin 4. State sequence as in Fig. 6.18(b).

Feedback shift register: Serial input =  $QC \oplus QD$  (Use 7486).

Sequence of states:

QA	QB	QC	QD
1	0	0	0
0	1	0	0
0	0	1	0
1	0	0	1
1	1	0	0
0	1	1	0
1	0	1	1
0	1	0	1
1	0	1	0
0	0	1	1
1	1	0	1
0	0	0	1
1	1	1	1
0	1	1	0
1	0	1	1
0	0	0	1

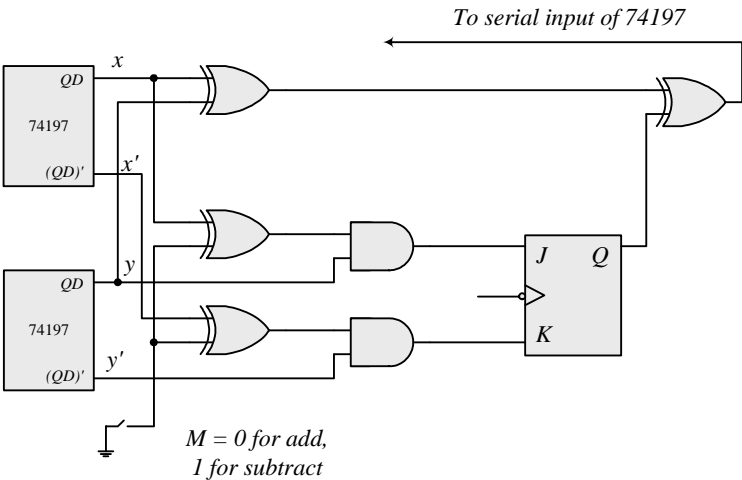
Bidirectional shift register with parallel load:

Function table:

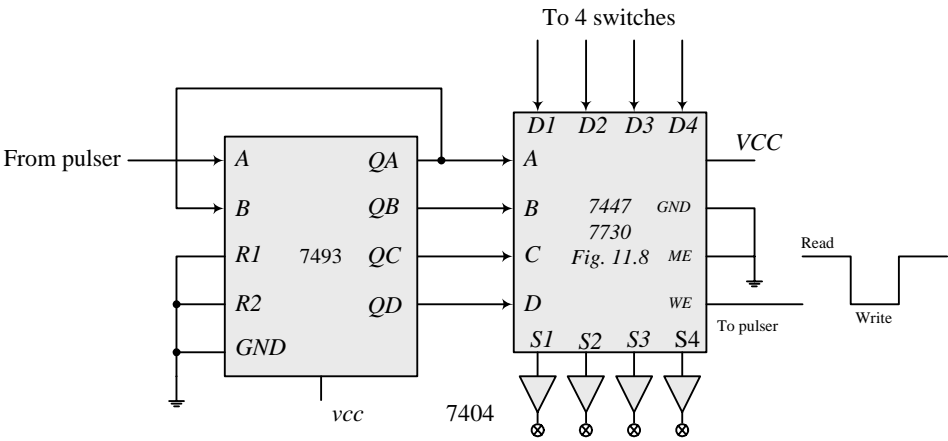
74195			74157		Function
Clear	Clock	SH/LD	STROBE	SELECT	
0	x	x	x	x	Async clear
1	↑	1	x	x	Shift right ( $QA \rightarrow QB$ )
1	↑	0	0	1	Shift left (Select B)*
1	↑	0	0	0	Parallel Load (Select A)
1	↑	0	1	x	Synchronous clear

\* B inputs come from QA-QD shifted by one position.

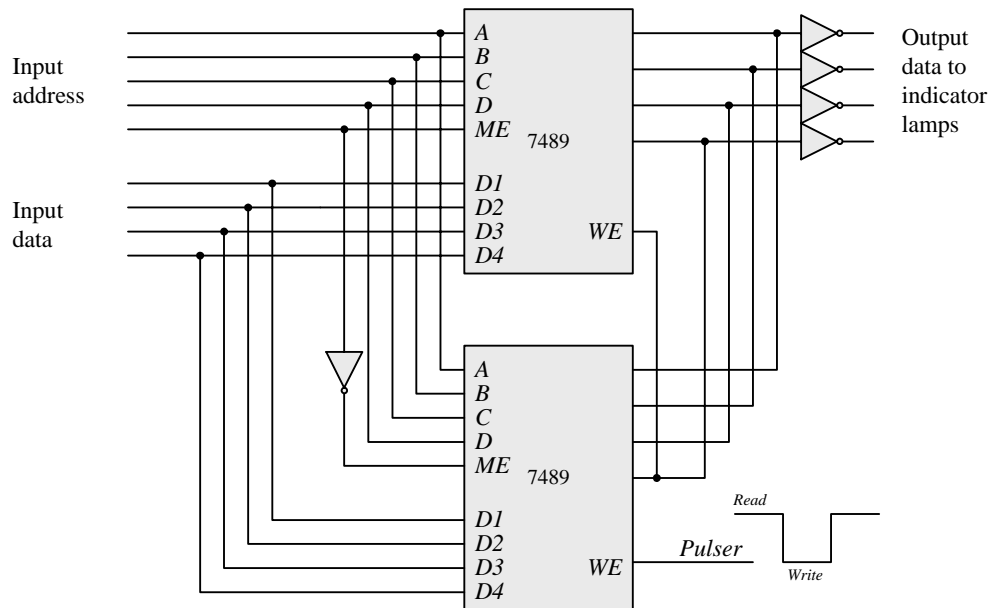
11.12



11.13 Testing the RAM:



### Memory Expansion:



### 11.14 Circuit Analysis – Answers to questions:

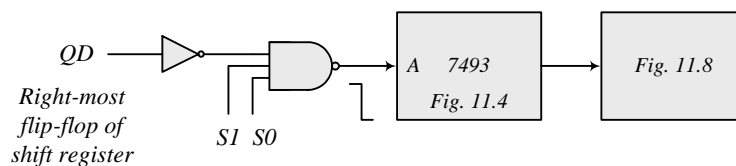
- 1) Resets to 0 the two 74194 ICs, the two D flip-flops, and the start SR latch. This makes  $SISO = 11$  (parallel load).
- 2) The start switch sets the SR latch to 1. The clock pulses load 0000\_0001 into the 8-bit register. If the start switch stays on, the register never clears to all 0s when  $SISO = 11$  (right-most  $QD$  stays on).
- 3) Pressing the pulser makes  $SISO = 10$  and the light shifts left. When  $QC$  becomes 1, the start SR latch is cleared to 0. When  $QA$  of the left 74194 becomes 1, it changes  $S1$  to 0 (through the  $PR$  input) and  $S0$  to 1 (through the  $CLR$  input. with  $SISO = 01$ , the single light shifts right).
- 4) If the pulser is pressed while the light is moving to the left or the right,  $SISO$  becomes 11 and all 0s are loaded into the register in parallel. The light goes off.
- 5) When the right-most  $QD$  becomes a 1,  $SISO$  changes from 01 (shift right) to 11 (parallel load). If the pulser is pressed before the next clock pulse,  $SISO$  goes to 10 (shift left). If not pressed, an all 0s value is loaded into the register in parallel. (Provided the start switch is in the logic 1 position.)

### Lamp Ping-Pong

Add a left pulser. Three wire changes to the D flip-flop on the left:

- 1) Connect the clock input of the flip-flop to the pulser.
- 2) Connect the D input to the  $QA$  of the left 74197
- 3) Connect the input of the inverter (that goes to  $PR$ ) to ground.

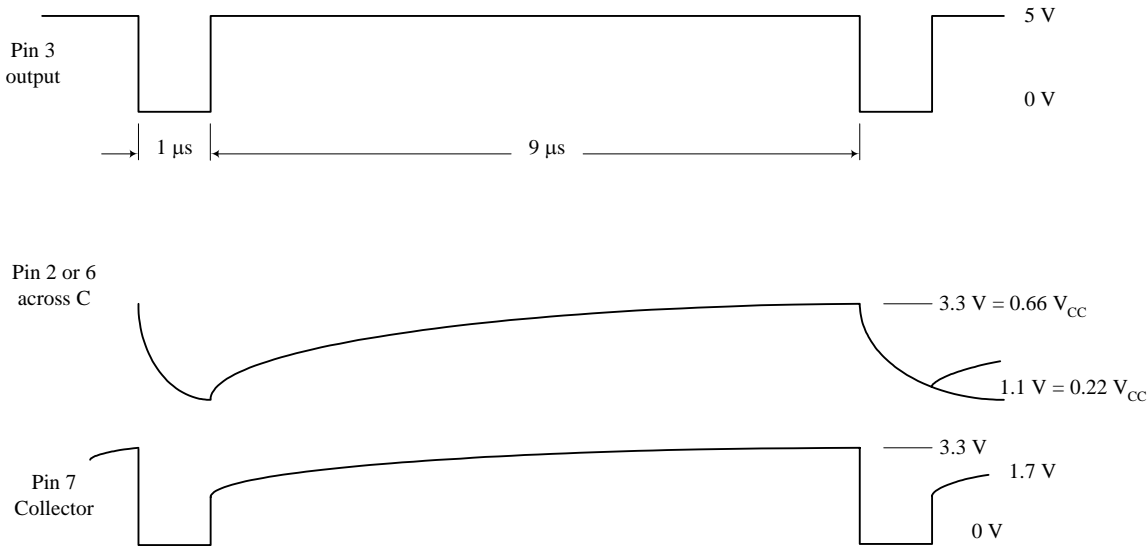
### Counting the Losses



11.15 Clock Pulse Generator

$t_L = 0.693 R_B C = 10^{-6}$   
 $R_B = 10^{-6} / (0.693 \times 0.001 \times 10^{-6}) = 10^3 / 0.693 = 1.44 \text{ K}\Omega$  (Use  $R_B = 1.5 \text{ K}\Omega$ )  
 $t_H/t_L = 0.693 (R_A + R_B)C / (0.693 R_B C) = (R_A + R_B) / R_B = 9 / 1 = 9$   
 $9 R_B = R_A + R_B \quad R_A = 8 R_B = 8 \times 1.5 \text{ K}\Omega = 12 \text{ K}\Omega$

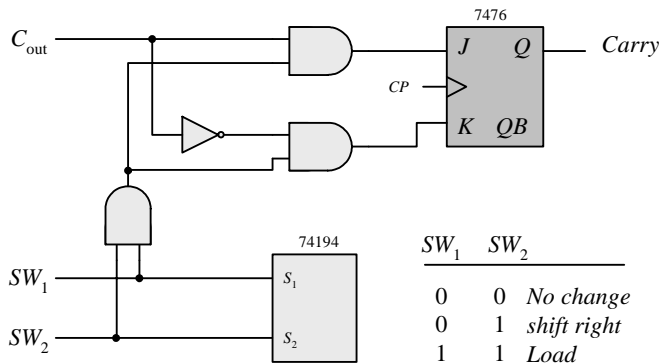
Oscilloscope Waveforms (Actual results may be off by  $\pm 20 \%$ .)



Variable Frequency Pulse Generator:

20 KHz:  $10^{-3} / 20 = 0.05 \times 10^{-3} = 50 \mu s$   
100 KHz:  $10^{-3} / 100 = 10^{-5} = 10 \mu s$   
 $t_H = 49 \mu s: (R_A + R_P + R_B) / R_B = 49 / 1 = 49$   
 $R_P = 48 R_B - R_A = 48 \times 1.5 - 11 = 60 \text{ K}\Omega$

11.15 Control of Register



### Checking the Circuit:

	Carry	Register
Initial	0	0 0 0 0
+ 0110	0	0110
+ 1110	1	0100
+ 1101	1	0001
+ 0101	0	0110
+ 0011	0	1001

### Circuit Operation:

Address	Carry	RAM	
0	0	0110	RAM Value
1	0	0110	RAM + Register
2	0	0011	Shift Register
3		1110	RAM Value
4	1	0001	RAM + Register
5	1	1000	SHIFT
6		1101	RAM Value
7	1	0101	RAM + Register
8	1	1010	SHIFT
9		0101	RAM Value
10	0	1111	RAM + Register
11	0	0111	SHIFT
12		0011	RAM Value
13	0	1010	RAM + Register
14	0	0101	SHIFT

### 11.17 Multiplication Example )11 x 15 = 165)

Multiplicand B = 1111

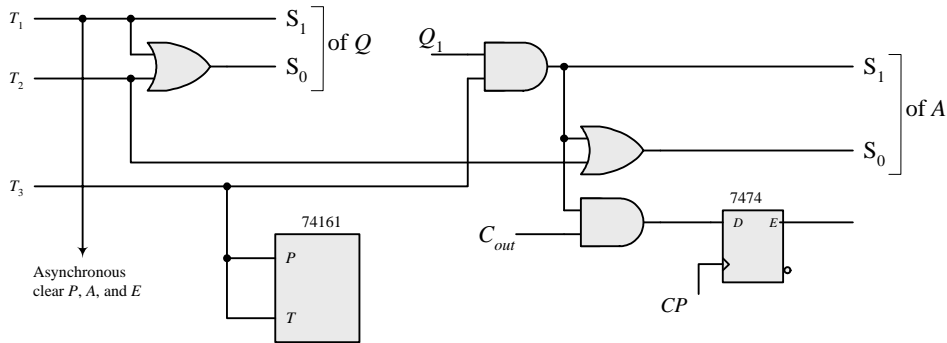
		C	A	Q	P
Initial:	T <sub>1</sub> = 1	0	0000	1011	0000
T <sub>2</sub> = 1	Add B; P <= P+1		1111		
		0	1111	1011	0001
T <sub>3</sub> = 1	Shift CAQ	0	0111	1101	0001
T <sub>2</sub> = 1	Add B; P <= P+1		1111		
		1	0110	1101	0010
T <sub>3</sub> = 1	Shift CAQ	0	1011	0110	0010
T <sub>2</sub> = 1	P <= P+1	0	1011	0110	0011
T <sub>3</sub> = 1	Shift CAQ	0	0101	1011	0011
T <sub>2</sub> = 1	Add B; P <= P+1		1111		
		1	0100	1011	0100
T <sub>3</sub> = 1	Shift CAQ	0	1010	0101	0100
T <sub>0</sub> = 1	(Because P <sub>C</sub> = 1)		1010	0101	= Product

Data Processor Design

Load Q	Load A	Shift AQ	Register Q	Register A
$T_1$	$T_2Q_1$	$T_3$	$S_1 S_0$	$S_1 S_0$
0	0	0	0 0	0 0
1	0	0	1 1	0 0
0	1	0	0 0	1 1
0	0	1	0 1	0 1

$$S_1(Q) = T_1$$
$$S_0(Q) = T_1 + T_3$$

$$S_1(A) = T_2Q_1$$
$$S_0(A) = T_2Q_1 + T_3$$

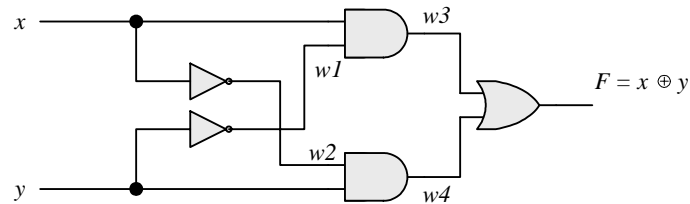


Design of Control: See Section 8.8.

## SOLUTIONS FOR SECTION 11.20

### Supplement to Experiment 2:

(a)



Initially, with  $xy = 00$ ,  $w1 = w2 = 1$ ,  $w3 = w4 = 0$  and  $F = 0$ .  $w1$  should change to 0 10ns after  $xy$  changes to 01.  $w4$  should change to 1 20 ns after  $xy$  changes to 01.  $F$  should change from 0 to 1 30 ns after  $w4$  changes from 0 to 1, i.e., 50 ns after  $xy$  changes from 00 to 01.  $w3$  should remain unchanged because  $x = 0$  for the entire simulation.

(b)

```
`timescale 1ns/1ps
```

```
module Prob_3_33 (output F, input x, y);
  wire w1, w2, w3, w4;
```

```
  and #20 (w3, x, w1);
  not #10 (w1, x);
  and #20 (w4, y, w2);
  not #10 (w2, y);
  or #30 (F, w3, w4);
```

```
endmodule
```

```
module t_Prob_3_33 ();
  reg x, y;
  wire F;
```

```
  Prob_3_33 M0 (F, x, y);
```

```
  initial #200 $finish;
```

```
  initial fork
```

```
    x = 0;
```

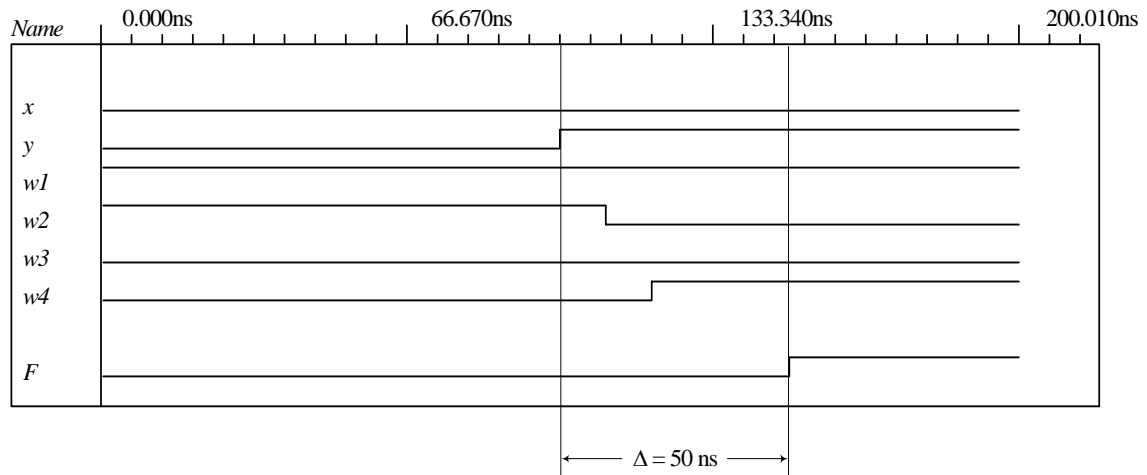
```
    y = 0;
```

```
    #100 y = 1;
```

```
  join
```

```
endmodule
```

(c) To simulate the circuit, it is assumed that the inputs  $xy = 00$  have been applied sufficiently long for the circuit to be stable before  $xy = 01$  is applied. The testbench sets  $xy = 00$  at  $t = 0$  ns, and  $xy = 1$  at  $t = 100$  ns. The simulator assumes that  $xy = 00$  has been applied long enough for the circuit to be in a stable state at  $t = 0$  ns, and shows  $F = 0$  as the value of the output at  $t = 0$ . The waveforms show the response to  $xy = 01$  applied at  $t = 100$  ns.



#### Supplement to Experiment 4:

(a)

// Gate-level description of circuit in Fig. 4-2

**module** Circuit\_of\_Fig\_4\_2 (

**output**  F1, F2,

**input**   A, B, C);

**wire**  T1, T2, T3, F2\_not, E1, E2, E3;

**orG1** (T1, A, B, C);

**and**  G2 (T2, A, B, C);

**and**  G3 (E1, A, B);

**and**  G4 (E2, A, C);

**and**  G5 (E3, B, C);

**orG6** (F2, E1, E2, E3);

**not**  G7 (F2\_not, F2);

**and**  G8 (T3, T1, F2\_not);

**orG9** (F1, T2, T3);

**endmodule**

**module** t\_Circuit\_of\_Fig\_4\_2;

**reg**  [2: 0] D;

**wire**  F1, F2;

**parameter** stop\_time = 100;

Circuit\_of\_Fig\_4\_2 M1 (F1, F2, D[2], D[1], D[0]);

**initial** # stop\_time \$finish;

**initial begin** // Stimulus generator

  D = 3'b000;

**repeat** (7)

    #10 D = D + 1'b1;

**end**

**initial begin**

**\$display** ("A  B  C  F1  F2");

**\$monitor** ("%b  %b  %b  %b  %b", D[2], D[1], D[0], F1, F2);

**end**

**endmodule**

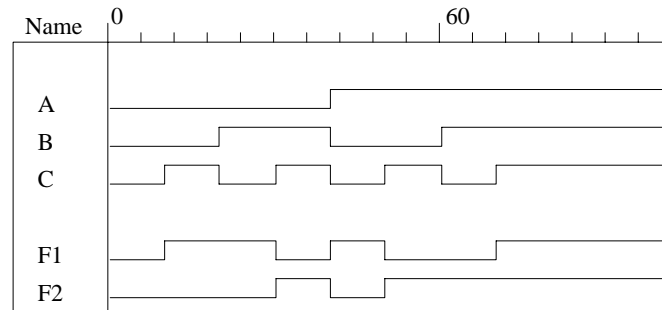


```

/*
A  B  C  F1 F2
0  0  0  0  0
0  0  1  1  0
0  1  0  1  0
0  1  1  0  1
1  0  0  1  0
1  0  1  0  1
1  1  0  0  1
1  1  1  1  1
*/

```

The simulation results demonstrate the behavior of a full adder, with F1 = sum, and F2 – carry.



(b)

```

// 3-INPUT MAJORITY DETECTOR CIRCUIT.
// Circuit implements  $F = xy + xz + yz$ .
module Majority_Detector (output F, input x, y, z);
    wire w1, w2, w3;
    nand n1(w1, x, y),
        n2(w2, x, z),
        n3(w3, y, z),
        n4(F, w1, w2, w3);
endmodule

// Test bench
// Treating inputs to majority detector as a vector, reg [2:0]D; //D[2] = x, D[1] = y, D[0] = z. wire F;
module t_Majority_Detector ();
    wire F;
    reg [2: 0] D;
    wire x = D[2];
    wire y = D[1];
    wire z = D[0];

    Majority_Detector M0 (F, x, y, z);

    initial #100 $finish;
    initial $monitor ($time, "xyz = %b F = %b", D, F);

```

**initial begin**

D = 0;

**repeat** (7)

#10 D = D + 1;

**end**

**endmodule**

**Simulation results:**

0 xyz = 000 F = 0

10 xyz = 001 F = 0

20 xyz = 010 F = 0

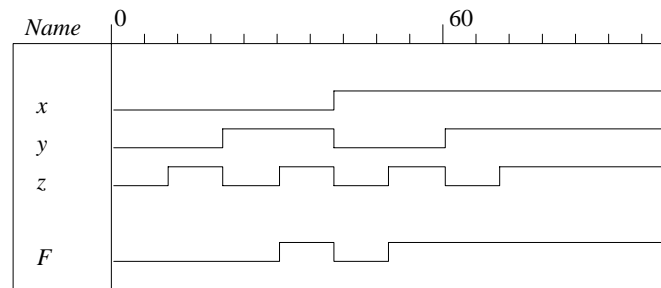
30 xyz = 011 F = 1

40 xyz = 100 F = 0

50 xyz = 101 F = 1

60 xyz = 110 F = 1

70 xyz = 111 F = 1



**Supplement to Experiment 5:** See the solution to Prob. 4.42.

**Supplement to Experiment 7:**

(a)

//BEHAVIORAL DESCRIPTION OF 7483 4-BIT ADDER,

**module** Adder\_7483 (

**output** S4, S3, S2, S1, C4,

**input** A4, A3, A2, A1, B4, B3, B2, B1, C0, VCC, GND

);

// Note: connect VCC and GND to supply1 and supply0 in the test bench

**wire** [4: 1] sum;

**wire** [4: 1] A = {A4, A3, A2, A1};

**wire** [4: 1] B = {B4, B3, B2, B1};

**assign** S4 = sum[4];

**assign** S3 = sum[3];

**assign** S2 = sum[2];

**assign** S1 = sum[1];

**assign** {C4, sum} = A + B + C0;

**endmodule**

```

module t_Adder_7483 ();
  wire S4, S3, S2, S1, C4;
  wire A4, A3, A2, A1, B4, B3, B2, B1;
  reg C0;
  supply1 VCC;
  supply0 GND;
  reg [4:1] A, B;
  assign A4 = A[4];
  assign A3 = A[3];
  assign A2 = A[2];
  assign A1 = A[1];
  assign B4 = B[4];
  assign B3 = B[3];
  assign B2 = B[2];
  assign B1 = B[1];

  Adder_7483 M0 (S4, S3, S2, S1, C4, A4, A3, A2, A1, B4, B3, B2, B1, C0, VCC, GND);

  initial #2600 $finish;
  initial begin
    A = 0; B = 0; C0 = 0;
    repeat (256) #5 {A, B} = {A, B} + 1;
    A = 0; B = 0; C0 = 1;
    repeat (256) #5 {A, B} = {A, B} + 1;
  end
endmodule

```

(b)

```

module Supp_11_17b (output [4: 1] S, output carry, input [4: 1] A, B, input M, VCC, GND);
  wire B4, B3, B2, B1;
  xor (B4, M, B[4]);
  xor (B3, M, B[3]);
  xor (B2, M, B[2]);
  xor (B1, M, B[1]);
  Adder_7483 M0 (S[4], S[3], S[2], S[1], carry, A[4], A[3], A[2], A[1], B4, B3, B2, B1, M, VCC, GND);
endmodule

module Adder_7483 (
  output S4, S3, S2, S1, C4,
  input A4, A3, A2, A1, B4, B3, B2, B1, C0, VCC, GND
);
// Note: connect VCC and GND to supply1 and supply0 in the test bench
wire [4: 1] sum;
wire [4: 1] A = {A4, A3, A2, A1};
wire [4: 1] B = {B4, B3, B2, B1};
assign S4 = sum[4];
assign S3 = sum[3];
assign S2 = sum[2];
assign S1 = sum[1];
assign {C4, sum} = A + B + C0;
endmodule

```

```

module t_Supp_11_17b ();
  wire [4: 1] S;
  wire carry;
  reg C0;
  reg [4: 1] A, B;
  reg M;
  supply1 VCC;
  supply0 GND;

  Supp_11_17b M0 (S, carry, A, B, M, VCC, GND);
  initial #2600 $finish;
  initial begin
    A = 0; B = 0; M = 0;
    repeat (256) #5 {A, B} = {A, B} + 1;
    A = 0; B = 0; M = 1;
    repeat (256) #5 {A, B} = {A, B} + 1;
  end
endmodule

```

(c), (d)

```

module supp_11_7c (output S3, S2, S1, S0, C, V, input A3, A2, A1, A0, B3, B2, B1, B0, M);
  wire [3: 0] Sum, B;
  assign S3 = Sum[3];
  assign S2 = Sum[2];
  assign S1 = Sum[1];
  assign S0 = Sum[0];
  wire [3:0] A = {A3, A2, A1, A0};
  xor(B[3], B3, M);
  xor(B[2], B2, M);
  xor(B[1], B1, M);
  xor(B[0], B0, M);
  xor (V, C, C3);
  ripple_carry_4_bit_adder M0 (Sum, C, C3, A, B, M);
endmodule

```

```

module t_supp_11_7c ();
  wire S3, S2, S1, S0, C, V;
  reg A3, A2, A1, A0, B3, B2, B1, B0, M;
  wire [3: 0] sum = {S3, S2, S1, S0};
  wire [3: 0] A = {A3, A2, A1, A0};
  wire [3: 0] B = {B3, B2, B1, B0};

  supp_11_7c M0 (S3, S2, S1, S0, C, V, A3, A2, A1, A0, B3, B2, B1, B0, M);

  initial #2600 $finish;
  initial begin
    {A3, A2, A1, A0, B3, B2, B1, B0} = 0; M = 0;
    repeat (256) #5 {A3, A2, A1, A0, B3, B2, B1, B0} = {A3, A2, A1, A0, B3, B2, B1, B0} + 1;
    {A3, A2, A1, A0, B3, B2, B1, B0} = 0; M = 1;
    repeat (256) #5 {A3, A2, A1, A0, B3, B2, B1, B0} = {A3, A2, A1, A0, B3, B2, B1, B0} + 1;
  end
endmodule

```

```

module half_adder (output S, C, input x, y);    // Verilog 2001, 2005 syntax
// Instantiate primitive gates
  xor (S, x, y);
  and (C, x, y);
endmodule

module full_adder (output S, C, input x, y, z);
  wire S1, C1, C2;

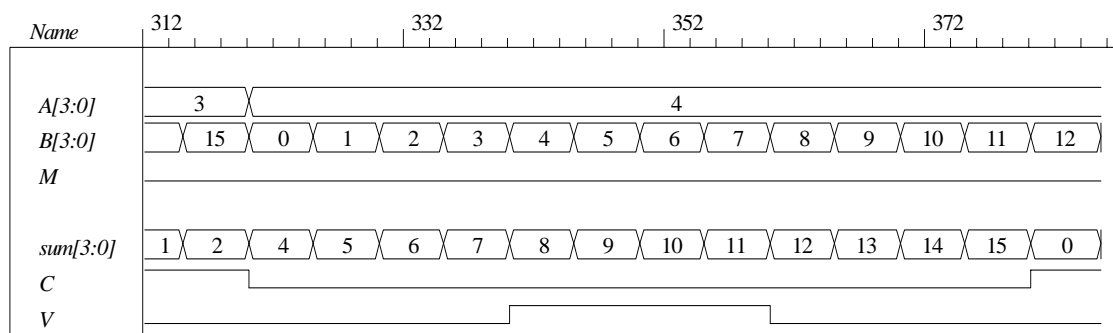
// Instantiate half adders
  half_adder HA1 (S1, C1, x, y);
  half_adder HA2 (S, C2, S1, z);
  or G1 (C, C2, C1);
endmodule

// Modify for C3 output
module ripple_carry_4_bit_adder ( output [3: 0] Sum, output C4, C3, input [3:0] A, B, input C0);
  wire C1, C2; // Intermediate carries
// Instantiate chain of full adders
  full_adder FA0 (Sum[0], C1, A[0], B[0], C0),
              FA1 (Sum[1], C2, A[1], B[1], C1),
              FA2 (Sum[2], C3, A[2], B[2], C2),
              FA3 (Sum[3], C4, A[3], B[3], C3);

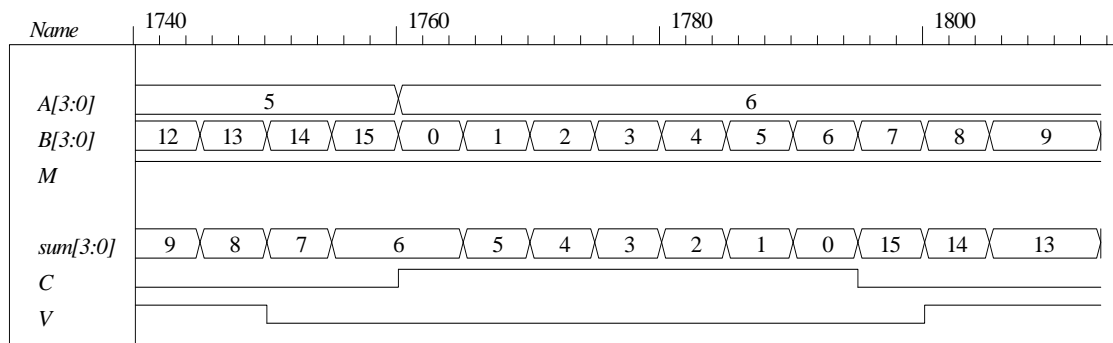
endmodule

```

#### Addition:



#### Subtraction:



## Supplement to Experiment 8:

(a)

```
module Flip_flop_7474 (output reg Q, input D, CLK, preset, clear);
    always @ (posedge CLK, negedge preset, negedge clear)
        if (!preset)      Q <= 1'b1;
        else if (!clear)   Q <= 1'b0;
        else               Q <= D;
endmodule
```

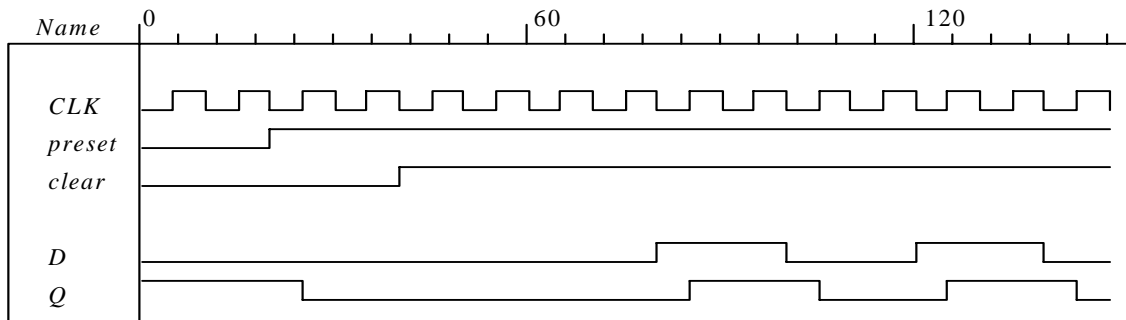
```
module t_Flip_flop_7474 ();
    wire Q;
    reg D, CLK, preset, clear;
```

```
Flip_flop_7474 M0 (Q, D, CLK, preset, clear);
```

```
initial #150 $finish;
initial begin CLK = 0; forever #5 CLK = ~CLK; end
```

```
initial fork
    preset = 0; clear = 0;
    #20 preset = 1;
    #40 clear = 1;
join
```

```
initial begin D = 0; #60 forever #20 D = ~D; end
endmodule
```



(b)

//Solution to supplement Experiment 8(b)

//Behavioral description of a 7474 D flip-flop with Q\_not

```
module Flip_Flop_7474_with_Q_not (output reg Q, Q_not, input D, CLK, Preset, Clear);
```

```
    always @ (posedge CLK, negedge Preset, negedge Clear)
```

```
    /* case ({Preset, Clear})
```

```
        2'b00: begin Q <= 1; Q_not <= 1; end
```

```
        2'b01: begin Q <= 1; Q_not <= 0; end
```

```
        2'b10: begin Q <= 0; Q_not <= 1; end
```

```
        2'b11: begin Q <= D; Q_not <= ~D; end
```

```
    // NOTE: Q_not <= ~Q will produce a pipeline effect and delay Q_not by one clock
```

```
    endcase*/
```

```
    if (Preset == 0) begin Q <= 1; if (Clear == 0) Q_not <= 1; else Q_not <= 0; end
```

```
    else if (Clear == 0) begin Q <= 0; Q_not <= 1; end
```

```
else begin Q <= D; Q_not <= ~D; end
endmodule
```

// Note: this model will not work if Preset and Clear are // both brought low and then high again.  
 // A case statement for both Q and Q\_not is also OK.

```
module t_Flip_Flop_7474_with_Q_not ();
```

```
  wire Q, Q_not;
```

```
  reg D, CLK, Preset, Clear;
```

```
  Flip_Flop_7474_with_Q_not M0 (Q, Q_not, D, CLK, Preset, Clear);
```

```
  initial #250 $finish;
```

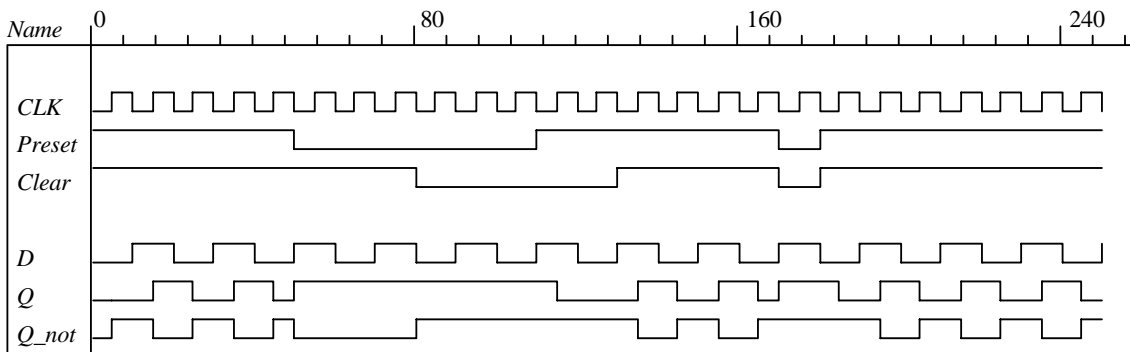
```
  initial begin CLK = 0; forever #5 CLK = ~CLK; end
```

```
  initial fork
```

```
    Preset = 1; Clear = 1;
```

```
    #50 Preset = 0;
```

```
    #80 Clear =
```



### Supplement to Experiment #9:

(a)

```
module Figure_11_9a (output reg y, input x, clock, reset_b);
```

```
  reg [1: 0] state, next_state;
```

```
  parameter S0 = 2'b00, S1 = 2'b01, S2 = 2'b10, S3 = 2'b11;
```

```
  always @ (posedge clock, negedge reset_b) if (reset_b == 0) state <= S0; else state <= next_state;
```

```
  always @ (state, x) begin
```

```
    y = 0;
```

```
    case (state)
```

```
      S0:if (x) begin next_state = S0; y = 1; end else begin next_state = S1; y = 0; end
```

```
      S1:if (x) begin next_state = S3; y = 0; end else begin next_state = S2; y = 1; end
```

```
      S2:if (x) begin next_state = S1; y = 0; end else begin next_state = S0; y = 1; end
```

```
      S3:if (x) begin next_state = S2; y = 1; end else begin next_state = S3; y = 0; end
```

```
    endcase
```

```
  end
```

```
endmodule
```

```
module t_Figure_11_9a ();
```

```
  wire y;
```

```
  reg x, clock, reset_b;
```

```
  Figure_11_9a M0 (y, x, clock, reset_b);
```

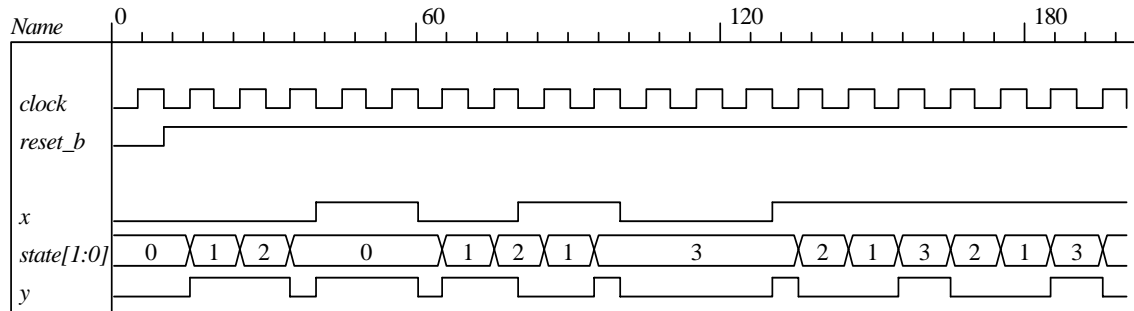
```
  initial #200 $finish;
```

```
  initial begin clock = 0; forever #5 clock = ~clock; end
```

```

initial fork
  reset_b = 0;
  x = 0;      // S0. S1, S2 after release of reset_b
  #10 reset_b = 1;
  #40 x = 1;   // Stay in S0
  #60 x = 0;   // S1, S2
  #80 x = 1;   // s1, S3,
  #100 x = 0; // S3
  #130 x = 1;  // S2, S1, S3 cycle
join
endmodule

```



(b) The solution depends on the particular design.

(c, d)

Note: The HDL description of the state diagram produces outputs *T0*, *T1*, and *T2*. Additional logic must form the signals that control the datapath unit (*Load\_regs*, *Incr\_P*, *Add\_regs*, and *Shift\_regs*). An alternative controller that generates the control signals, rather than the states, as the outputs is given below too. It produces identical simulation results.

```

module Supp_11_9cd # (parameter dp_width = 5)
(
  output [2*dp_width - 1: 0] Product,
  output Ready,
  input [dp_width - 1: 0] Multiplicand, Multiplier,
  input Start, clock, reset_b
);
  wire Load_regs, Incr_P, Add_regs, Shift_regs, Done, Q0;

  Controller M0 (
    Ready, Load_regs, Incr_P, Add_regs, Shift_regs, Start, Done, Q0,
    clock, reset_b
  );

  Datapath M1(Product, Q0, Done, Multiplicand, Multiplier,
    Start, Load_regs, Incr_P, Add_regs, Shift_regs, clock, reset_b);
endmodule

```

/\* // This alternative controller directly produces the signals needed to control the datapath.

```

module Controller (
  output Ready,
  output reg Load_regs, Incr_P, Add_regs, Shift_regs,
  input Start, Done, Q0, clock, reset_b
);

  parameter S_idle = 3'b001, // one-hot code
            S_add = 3'b010,
            S_shift = 3'b100;

```



```

reg [2: 0]    state, next_state;    // sized for one-hot
assign      Ready = (state == S_idle);

always @ (posedge clock, negedge reset_b)
    if (~reset_b) state <= S_idle; else state <= next_state;

always @ (state, Start, Q0, Done) begin
    next_state = S_idle;
    Load_regs = 0;
    Incr_P = 0;
    Add_regs = 0;
    Shift_regs = 0;
    case (state)
        S_idle: if (Start) begin next_state = S_add; Load_regs = 1; end
        S_add:  begin next_state = S_shift; Incr_P = 1; if (Q0) Add_regs = 1; end
        S_shift: begin Shift_regs = 1;
                    if (Done) next_state = S_idle;
                    else next_state = S_add;
                end
        default: next_state = S_idle;
    endcase
end
endmodule
*/

// This controller has an embedded unit to generate T0, T1, and T2 and additional logic to form // // the
signals needed to control the datapath.

module Controller (
    output Ready, Load_regs, Incr_P, Add_regs, Shift_regs,
    input Start, Done, Q0, clock, reset_b
);

    State_Generator M0 (T0, T1, T2, Start, Done, Q0, clock, reset_b);
    assign Ready = T0;
    assign Load_regs = T0 && Start;
    assign Incr_P = T1;
    assign Add_regs = T1 && Q0;
    assign Shift_regs = T2;
endmodule

module State_Generator (output T0,T1, T2, input Start, Done, Q0, clock, reset_b);
    parameter      S_idle = 3'b001,        // one-hot code
                  S_add  = 3'b010,
                  S_shift = 3'b100;
    reg [2: 0]    state, next_state;    // sized for one-hot
    assign  T0 = (state == S_idle);
    assign  T1 = (state == S_add);
    assign  T2 = (state == S_shift);

    always @ (posedge clock, negedge reset_b)
        if (~reset_b) state <= S_idle; else state <= next_state;

```

```

always @ (state, Start, Q0, Done) begin
    next_state = S_idle;
    case (state)
        S_idle:    if (Start) next_state = S_add;
        S_add:     next_state = S_shift;
        S_shift:   if (Done) next_state = S_idle; else next_state = S_add;
        default:  next_state = S_idle;
    endcase
end
endmodule

module Datapath #(parameter dp_width = 5, BC_size = 3) (
    output [2*dp_width - 1: 0] Product, output Q0, output Done,
    input [dp_width - 1: 0] Multiplicand, Multiplier,
    input Start, Load_regs, Incr_P, Add_regs, Shift_regs, clock, reset_b
);
// Default configuration: 5-bit datapath
reg [dp_width - 1: 0]    A, B, Q;           // Sized for datapath
reg                    C;
reg [BC_size - 1: 0]    P;                 // Bit counter

assign Q0 = Q[0];
assign Done = (P == dp_width);           // Multiplier is exhausted
assign Product = {C, A, Q};
always @ (posedge clock, negedge reset_b)
    if (reset_b == 0) begin                // Added to this solution, but
        P <= 0;                          // not really necessary since Load_regs
        B <= 0;                          // initializes the datapath
        C <= 0;
        A <= 0;
        Q <= 0;
    end
    else begin
        if (Load_regs) begin
            P <= 0;
            A <= 0;
            C <= 0;
            B <= Multiplicand;
            Q <= Multiplier;
        end
        if (Add_regs) {C, A} <= A + B;
        if (Shift_regs) {C, A, Q} <= {C, A, Q} >> 1;
        if (Incr_P) P <= P+1 ;
    end
endmodule

module t_Supp_11_9cd;
    parameter dp_width = 5;                // Width of datapath
    wire [2 * dp_width - 1: 0] Product;
    wire Ready;
    reg [dp_width - 1: 0] Multiplicand, Multiplier;
    reg Start, clock, reset_b;
    integer Exp_Value;
    reg Error;

    Supp_11_9cd M0(Product, Ready, Multiplicand, Multiplier, Start, clock, reset_b);

    initial #115000 $finish;
    initial begin clock = 0; #5 forever #5 clock = ~clock; end

```

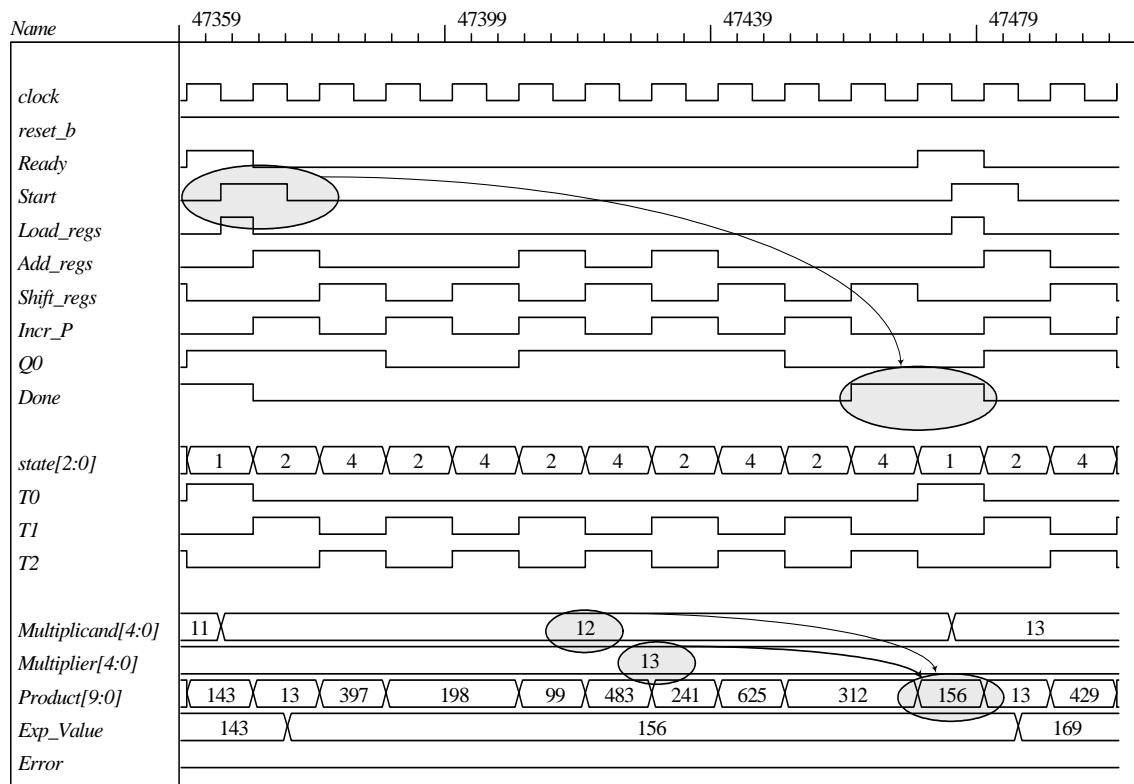
```

initial fork
    reset_b = 1;
    #2 reset_b = 0;
    #3 reset_b = 1;
join
always @ (negedge Start) begin
    Exp_Value = Multiplier * Multiplicand;
    //Exp_Value = Multiplier * Multiplicand + 1; // Inject error to confirm detection
end
always @ (posedge Ready) begin
    # 1 Error <= (Exp_Value ^ Product) ;
end

initial begin
    #5 Multiplicand = 0;
    Multiplier = 0;

    repeat (32) #10 begin
        Start = 1;
        #10 Start = 0;
        repeat (32) begin
            Start = 1;
            #10 Start = 0;
            #100 Multiplicand = Multiplicand + 1;
        end
        Multiplier = Multiplier + 1;
    end
end
endmodule

```



### Supplement to Experiment #10:

```

module Counter_74161 (
    output      QD, QC, QB, QA,    // Data output
    output      COUT,             // Output carry
    input       D, C, B, A,       // Data input
    input       P, T,             // Active high to count
    L,          // Active low to load
    CK,         // Positive edge sensitive
    CLR         // Active low to clear
);

    reg [3: 0] A_count;
    assign QD = A_count[3];
    assign QC = A_count[2];
    assign QB = A_count[1];
    assign QA = A_count[0];

    assign COUT = ((P == 1) && (T == 1) && (L == 1) && (A_count == 4'b1111));

    always @ (posedge CK, negedge CLR)
    if (CLR == 0)      A_count <= 4'b0000;
    else if (L == 0)    A_count <= {D, C, B, A};
    else if ((P == 1) && (T == 1)) A_count <= A_count + 1'b1;
    else A_count <= A_count; // redundant statement
endmodule

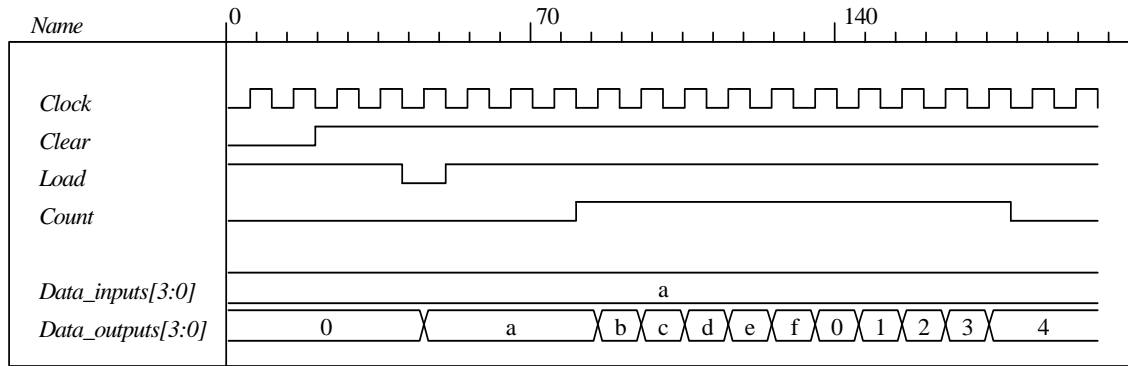
module t_Counter_74161 ();
    wire      QD, QC, QB, QA;
    wire [3: 0] Data_outputs = {QD, QC, QB, QA};
    wire      Carry_out;    // Output carry
    reg [3:0] Data_inputs;  // Data input
    reg      Count,         // Active high to count
    Load,    // Active low to load
    Clock,    // Positive edge sensitive
    Clear;    // Active low to clear

    Counter_74161 M0 (QD, QC, QB, QA, Carry_out,
        Data_inputs[3], Data_inputs[2], Data_inputs[1], Data_inputs[0], Count, Count, Load, Clock, Clear);

    initial #200 $finish;
    initial begin Clock = 0; forever #5 Clock = ~Clock; end

    initial fork
        Clear = 0;
        Load = 1;
        Count = 0;
        #20 Clear = 1;
        #40 Load = 0;
        #50 Load = 1;
        #80 Count = 1;
        #180 Count = 0;
        Data_inputs = 4'ha;    // 10
    join
endmodule

```



### Supplement to Experiment #11.

(a)

// Note: J and K\_bar are assumed to be connected together.

```

module SReg_74195 (
    output reg QA, QB, QC, QD,
    output QD_bar,
    input A, B, C, D, SH_LD, J, K_bar, CLR_bar, CK
);
    assign QD_bar = ~QD;

    always @ (posedge CK, negedge CLR_bar)
        if (!CLR_bar) {QA, QB, QC, QD} <= 4'b0;
        else if (!SH_LD) {QA, QB, QC, QD} <= {A, B, C, D};
        else case ({J, K_bar})
            2'b00: {QA, QB, QC, QD} <= {1'b0, QA, QB, QC};
            2'b11: {QA, QB, QC, QD} <= {1'b1, QA, QB, QC};
            2'b01: {QA, QB, QC, QD} <= {QA, QA, QB, QC}; // unused
            2'b10: {QA, QB, QC, QD} <= {~QA, QA, QB, QC}; // unused
        endcase
endmodule

```

```

module t_SReg_74195 ();
    wire QA, QB, QC, QD;
    wire QD_bar;
    reg A, B, C, D, SH_LD, CLR_bar, CK;
    reg Serial_Input;
    wire J = Serial_Input;
    wire K_bar = Serial_Input;
    wire [3: 0] Data_inputs = {A, B, C, D};
    wire [3: 0] Data_outputs = {QA, QB, QC, QD};

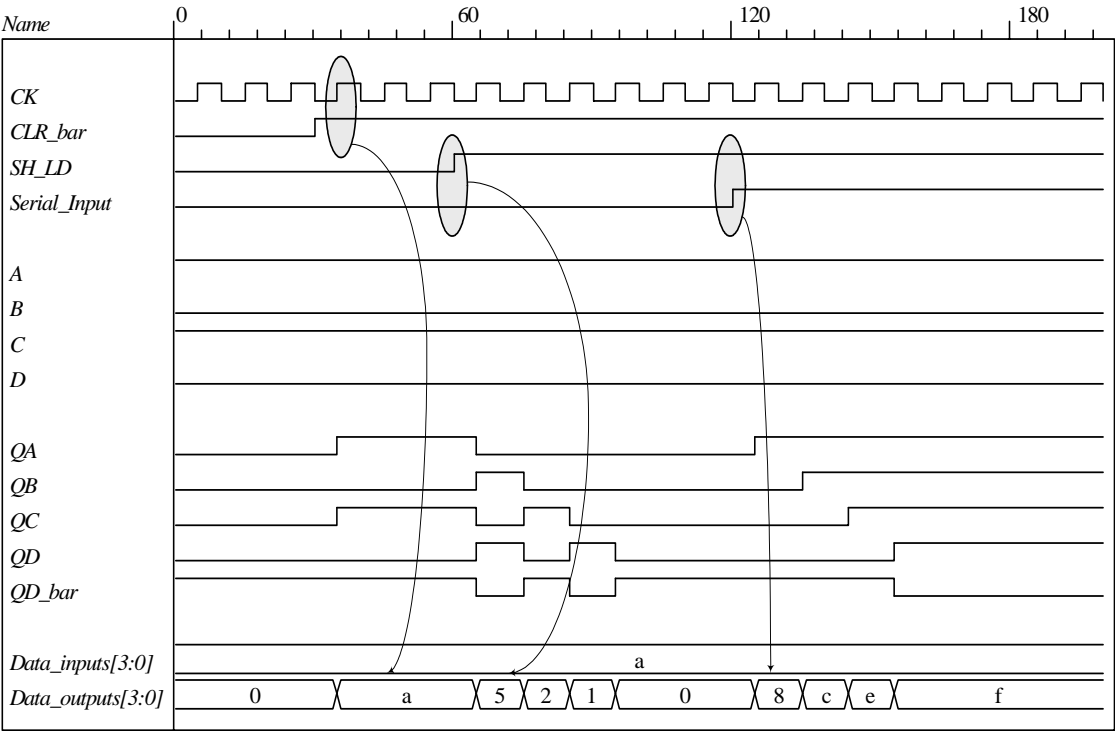
```

SReg\_74195 M0 (QA, QB, QC, QD, QD\_bar, A, B, C, D, SH\_LD, J, K\_bar, CLR\_bar, CK);

```

initial #200 $finish;
initial begin CK = 0; forever #5 CK = ~CK; end
initial fork
    {A, B, C, D} = 4'ha;
    CLR_bar = 0;
    Serial_Input = 0;
    SH_LD = 0;
    #30 CLR_bar = 1;
    #60 SH_LD = 1;
    #120 Serial_Input = 1;
join
endmodule

```



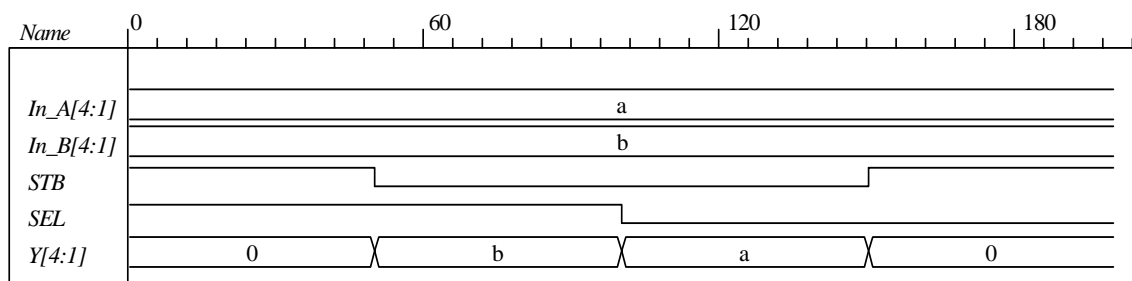
```
(b)
module Mux_74157 (
    output reg Y1, Y2, Y3, Y4,
    input A1, A2, A3, A4, B1, B2, B3, B4, SEL, STB
);
    wire [4: 1] In_A = {A1, A2, A3, A4};
    wire [4: 1] In_B = {B1, B2, B3, B4};

    always @ (In_A, In_B, SEL, STB)
        if (STB) {Y1, Y2, Y3, Y4} = 4'b0;
        else if (SEL) {Y1, Y2, Y3, Y4} = In_B;
        else {Y1, Y2, Y3, Y4} = In_A;
endmodule
```

```
module t_Mux_74157 ();
    wire Y1, Y2, Y3, Y4;
    reg A1, A2, A3, A4, B1, B2, B3, B4, SEL, STB;
    wire [4: 1] In_A = {A1, A2, A3, A4};
    wire [4: 1] In_B = {B1, B2, B3, B4};
    wire [4: 1] Y = {Y1, Y2, Y3, Y4};

    Mux_74157 M0 (Y1, Y2, Y3, Y4, A1, A2, A3, A4, B1, B2, B3, B4, SEL, STB);

    initial #200 $finish;
    initial fork
        {A1, A2, A3, A4} = 4'ha;
        {B1, B2, B3, B4} = 4'hb;
        STB = 1;
        SEL = 1;
        #50 STB = 0;
        #100 SEL = 0;
        #150 STB = 1;
    join
endmodule
```



```
(c)
module Bi_Dir_Shift_Reg (output [1: 4] D_out, input [1: 4] D_in, input SEL, STB, SH_LD, clock,
CLR_bar);
    wire QD_bar;
    wire [1: 4] Y;
    SReg_74195 M0 (D_out[1], D_out[2], D_out[3], D_out[4], QD_bar, Y[1], Y[2], Y[3], Y[4],
        SH_LD, D_out[4], D_out[4], CLR_bar, clock
    );
```

```
Mux_74157 M1 (Y[1], Y[2], Y[3], Y[4], D_in[1], D_in[2], D_in[3], D_in[4],
D_out[2], D_out[3], D_out[4], D_out[1], SEL, STB
);
endmodule
```

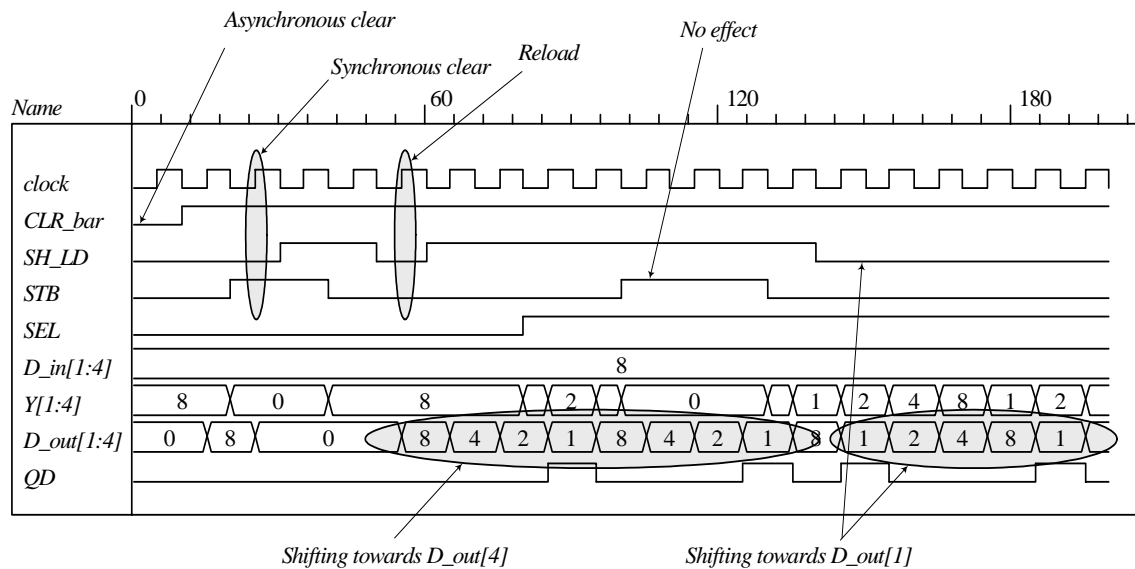
```
module SReg_74195 (
output reg QA, QB, QC, QD,
output QD_bar,
input A, B, C, D, SH_LD, J, K_bar, CLR_bar, CK
);
assign QD_bar = ~QD;
always @ (posedge CK, negedge CLR_bar)
if (!CLR_bar) {QA, QB, QC, QD} <= 4'b0;
else if (!SH_LD) {QA, QB, QC, QD} <= {A, B, C, D};
else case ({J, K_bar})
2'b00: {QA, QB, QC, QD} <= {1'b0, QA, QB, QC};
2'b11: {QA, QB, QC, QD} <= {1'b1, QA, QB, QC};
2'b01: {QA, QB, QC, QD} <= {QA, QA, QB, QC}; // unused
2'b10: {QA, QB, QC, QD} <= {~QA, QA, QB, QC}; // unused
endcase
endmodule
```

```
module Mux_74157 (
output reg Y1, Y2, Y3, Y4,
input A1, A2, A3, A4, B1, B2, B3, B4, SEL, STB
);
wire [4: 1] In_A = {A1, A2, A3, A4};
wire [4: 1] In_B = {B1, B2, B3, B4};

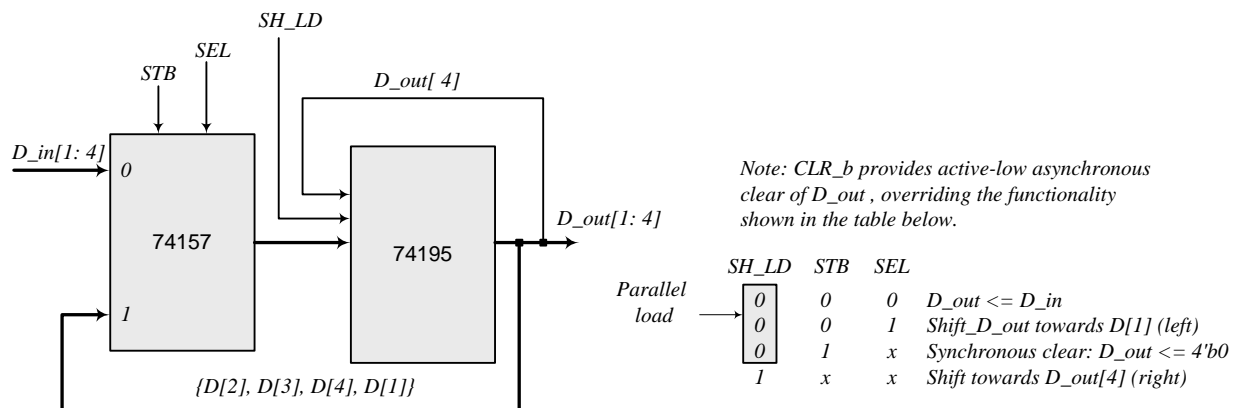
always @ (In_A, In_B, SEL, STB)
if (STB) {Y1, Y2, Y3, Y4} = 4'b0;
else if (SEL) {Y1, Y2, Y3, Y4} = In_B; // SEL = 1
else {Y1, Y2, Y3, Y4} = In_A; // SEL = 0
endmodule
```

```
module t_Bi_Dir_Shift_Reg ();
wire [1: 4] D_out;
reg [1: 4] D_in;
reg SEL, STB, SH_LD, clock, CLR_bar;
Bi_Dir_Shift_Reg M0 (D_out, D_in, SEL, STB, SH_LD, clock, CLR_bar);
initial #200 $finish;
initial begin clock = 0; forever #5 clock = ~clock; end
initial fork
D_in = 4'h8; // Data for walking 1 to right
CLR_bar = 0;
STB = 0;
SEL = 0; // Selects D_in
SH_LD = 0; // load D_in
#10 CLR_bar = 1;
#20 STB = 1;
#40 STB = 0;
#30 SH_LD = 1;
#50 SH_LD = 0; // Interrupt count to load
#60 SH_LD = 1;
#80 SEL = 1;
#100 STB = 1;
#130 STB = 0;
#140 SH_LD = 0;
// #150 SH_LD = 1;
join
endmodule
```





The behavioral model is listed below. The two models have matching simulation results.



```

module Bi_Dir_Shift_Reg_beh (output reg [1: 4] D_out, input [1: 4] D_in, input SEL, STB, SH_LD, clock,
CLR_bar);
always @ (posedge clock, negedge CLR_bar)
    if (!CLR_bar) D_out <= 4'b0;
    else if (SH_LD) D_out <= {D_out[4], D_out[1], D_out[2], D_out[3]};
    else if (!STB) D_out <= SEL ? {D_out[2: 4], D_out[1]}: D_in;
    else D_out <= 4'b0;
endmodule

```

```

module t_Bi_Dir_Shift_Reg_beh ();
wire [1: 4] D_out;
reg [1: 4] D_in;
reg SEL, STB, SH_LD, clock, CLR_bar;

```

```

Bi_Dir_Shift_Reg_beh M0 (D_out, D_in, SEL, STB, SH_LD, clock, CLR_bar);

```

```

initial #200 $finish;

```

```

initial begin clock = 0; forever #5 clock = ~clock; end
initial fork
    D_in = 4'h8;          // Data for walking 1 to right
    CLR_bar = 0;
    STB = 0;
    SEL = 0;              // Selects D_in
    SH_LD = 0;           // load D_in
    #10 CLR_bar = 1;
    #20 STB = 1;
    #40 STB = 0;
    #30 SH_LD = 1;
    #50 SH_LD = 0;        // Interrupt count to load
    #60 SH_LD = 1;
    #80 SEL = 1;
    #100 STB = 1;
    #130 STB = 0;
    #140 SH_LD = 0;
    // #150 SH_LD = 1;
join
endmodule

```

### Supplement to Experiment #13.

```

module RAM_74189 (output S4, S3, S2, S1, input D4, D3, D2, D1, A3, A2, A1, A0, CS, WE);
// Note: active-low CS and WE
wire [3: 0]          address = {A3, A2, A1, A0};
reg [3: 0]           RAM [0: 15];          // 16 x 4 memory
wire [4: 1]          Data_in = { D4, D3, D2, D1}; // Input word
tri [4: 1]            Data;                // Output data word, three-state output
assign S1 = Data[1];          // Output bits
assign S2 = Data[2];
assign S3 = Data[3];
assign S4 = Data[4];

always @ (Data_in, address, CS, WE) if (~CS && ~WE) RAM[address] = Data_in;
assign Data = (~CS && WE) ? ~RAM[address] : 4'bz;
endmodule

module t_RAM_74189 ();
reg [4: 1] Data_in;
reg [3: 0] address;
reg CS, WE;
wire S1, S2, S3, S4;
wire D1, D2, D3, D4;
wire A0, A1, A2, A3;
wire [4: 1] Data_out = {S4, S3, S2, S1};
assign D1 = Data_in [1];
assign D2 = Data_in [2];
assign D3 = Data_in [3];
assign D4 = Data_in [4];
assign A0 = address[0];
assign A1 = address[1];
assign A2 = address[2];
assign A3 = address[3];

wire [3: 0] RAM_0 = M0.RAM[0];
wire [3: 0] RAM_1 = M0.RAM[1];
wire [3: 0] RAM_2 = M0.RAM[2];
wire [3: 0] RAM_3 = M0.RAM[3];
wire [3: 0] RAM_4 = M0.RAM[4];

```

```
wire [3: 0] RAM_5 = M0.RAM[5];  
wire [3: 0] RAM_6 = M0.RAM[6];  
wire [3: 0] RAM_7 = M0.RAM[7];  
wire [3: 0] RAM_8 = M0.RAM[8];  
wire [3: 0] RAM_9 = M0.RAM[9];  
wire [3: 0] RAM_10 = M0.RAM[10];  
wire [3: 0] RAM_11 = M0.RAM[11];  
wire [3: 0] RAM_12= M0.RAM[12];  
wire [3: 0] RAM_13 = M0.RAM[13];  
wire [3: 0] RAM_14 = M0.RAM[14];  
wire [3: 0] RAM_15 = M0.RAM[15];  
wire [4: 1] word = ~Data_out;
```

```
RAM_74189 M0 (S4, S3, S2, S1, D4, D3, D2, D1, A3, A2, A1, A0, CS, WE);
```

```
initial #110 $finish;
```

```
initial fork
```

```
WE = 1;
```

```
CS = 1;
```

```
address = 0;
```

```
Data_in = 3;
```

```
#10 CS = 0;
```

```
#15 WE = 0;
```

```
#20 WE = 1;
```

```
#25 address = 14;
```

```
#25 Data_in = 1;
```

```
#30 WE = 0;
```

```
#35 WE = 1;
```

```
#40 CS = 1;
```

```
#50 address = 0;
```

```
#60 CS = 0;
```

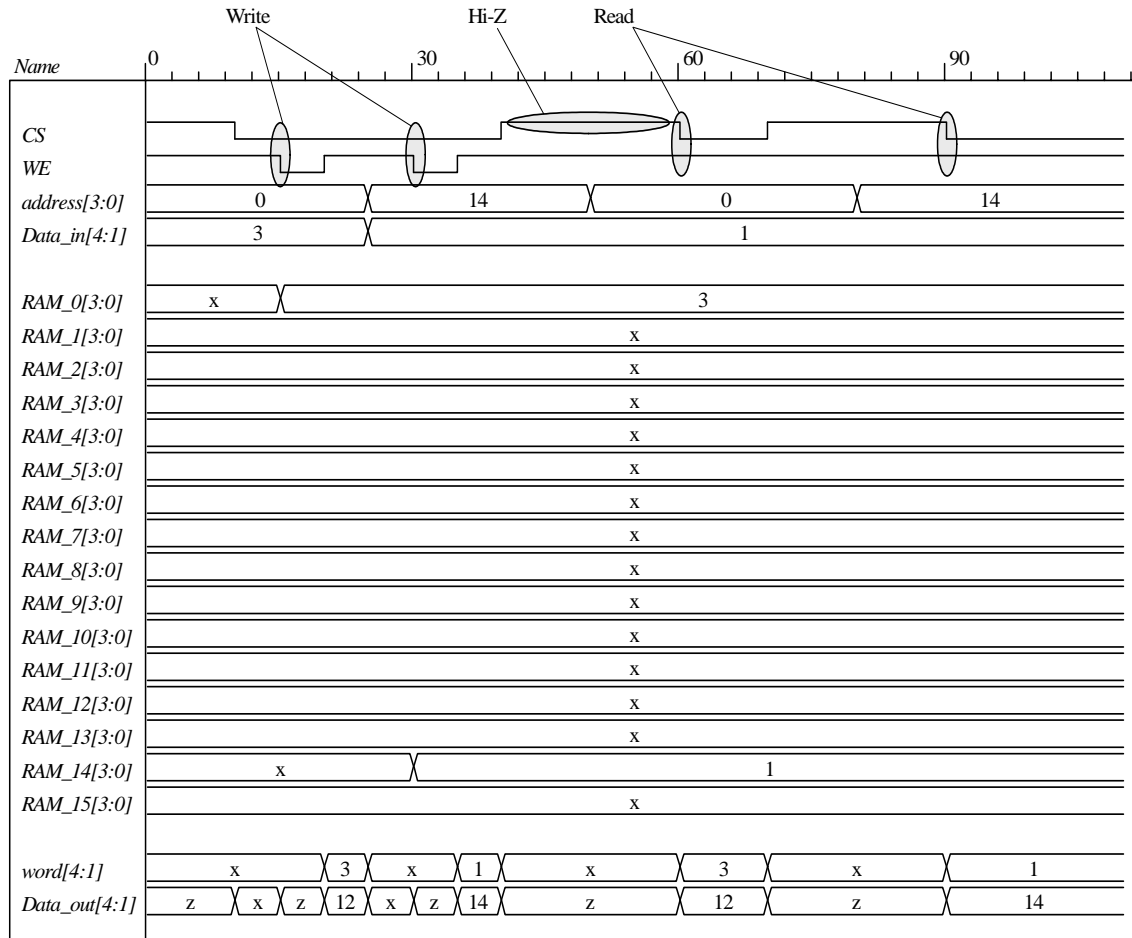
```
#70 CS = 1;
```

```
#80 address = 14;
```

```
#90 CS = 0;
```

```
join
```

```
endmodule
```



Note: Data\_out is the complement of the stored value

### Supplement to Experiment #14.

```

module Bi_Dir_Shift_Reg_74194 (
    output reg  QA, QB, QC, QD,
    input      A, B, C, D, SIR, SIL, s1, s0, CK, CLR
);
    always @ (posedge CK, negedge CLR)
        if (!CLR) {QA, QB, QC, QD} <= 4'b0;
        else case ({s1, s0})
            2'b00: {QA, QB, QC, QD} <= {QA, QB, QC, QD};
            2'b01: {QA, QB, QC, QD} <= {SIR, QA, QB, QC};
            2'b10: {QA, QB, QC, QD} <= {QB, QC, QD, SIL};
            2'b11: {QA, QB, QC, QD} <= {A, B, C, D};
        endcase
endmodule

module t_Bi_Dir_Shift_Reg_74194 ();
    wire QA, QB, QC, QD;
    reg A, B, C, D, SIR, SIL, s1, s0, clock, CLR;

    Bi_Dir_Shift_Reg_74194 M0 (QA, QB, QC, QD, A, B, C, D, SIR, SIL, s1, s0, clock, CLR);

    initial #250 $finish;
    initial begin clock = 0; forever #5 clock = ~clock; end

```

**initial fork**

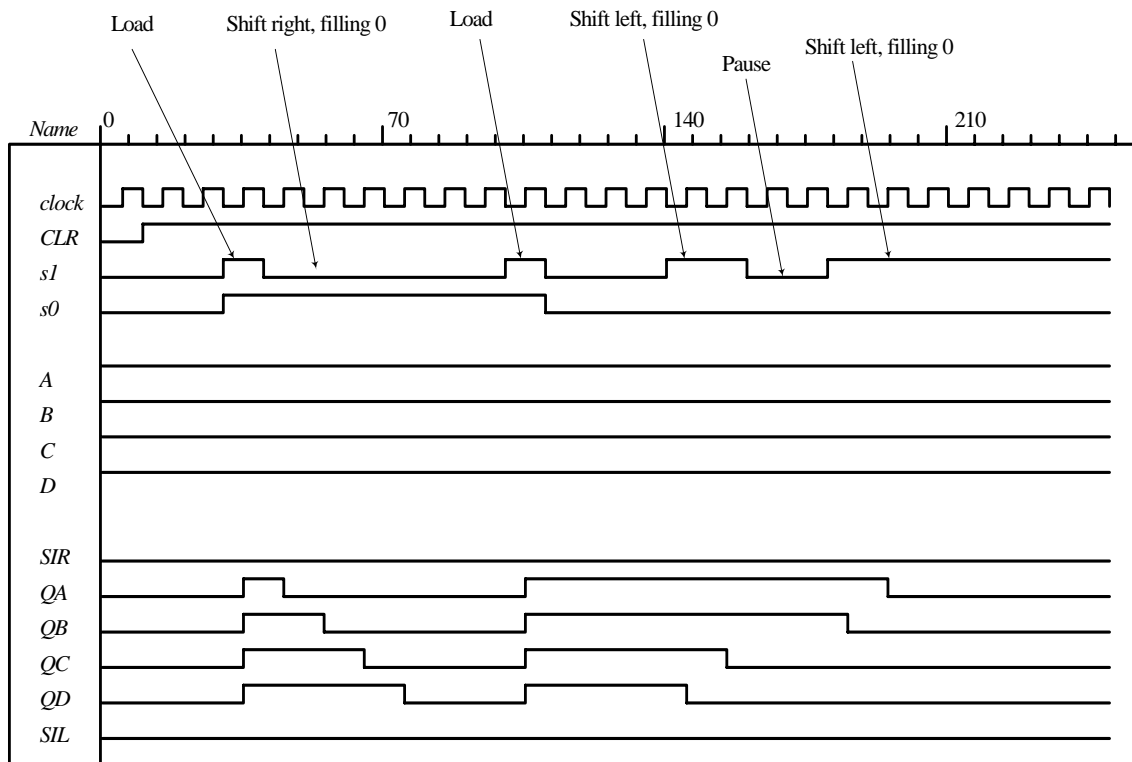
```

CLR = 0;
{A, B, C, D} = 4'hf;
s1 = 0;
s0 = 0;
SIL = 0;
SIR = 0;
#10 CLR = 1;
#30 begin s1 = 1; s0 = 1; end    // load
#40 s1 = 0;    // shift right
#100 s1 = 1; // load
#110 begin s1 = 0; s0 = 0; end
#140 s1 = 1;    // shift left
#160 s1 = 0;    // pause
#180 s1 = 1;    // resume

```

**join**

**endmodule**



## Supplement to Experiment #16.

The HDL behavioral descriptions of the components in the block diagram of Fig. 11.23 are described in the solutions of previous experiments, along with their test benches and simulations results: 74189 is described in Experiment 13(a); 74157 in Experiment 11(b); 74161 in Experiment 10; 7483 in Experiment 7(a); 74194 in Experiment 14; and 7474 in Experiment 8(a). The structural description of the parallel adder instantiates these components to show how they are interconnected (see the solution to the supplement for Experiment 17 for a similar procedure). A test bench and simulation results for the integrated unit are given below.

// LOAD condition for 74194: s1 = 1, s0 = 1

// SHIFT condition: s1 = 0, s0 = 1

// NO CHANGE condition: s1 = 0, s0 = 0

```

module Supp_11_16 (
  output [3: 0] accum_sum,
  output carry,
  input [3: 0] Data_in, Addr_in,
  input SIR, SIL, CS, WE, s1, s0, count, Load, select, STB, clock, preset, clear, VCC, GND
);
  wire B4 = Data_in[3]; // Data word to memory
  wire B3 = Data_in[2];
  wire B2 = Data_in[1];
  wire B1 = Data_in[0];
  wire S4, S3, S2, S1;
  wire D4, D3, D2, D1;
  wire S4b = ~S4; // Inverters
  wire S3b = ~S3;
  wire S2b = ~S2;
  wire S1b = ~S1;
  wire D = Addr_in[3]; // For parallel load of address counter
  wire C = Addr_in[2];
  wire B = Addr_in[1];
  wire A = Addr_in[0];
  wire Ocar, Y1, Y2, Y3, Y4, QA, QB, QC, QD, A3, A2, A1, A0;
  assign accum_sum = {D4, D3, D2, D1};

  Flip_flop_7474 M0 (Ocar, carry, clock, preset, clear);
  Adder_7483 M1 (D4, D3, D2, D1, carry, S4b, S3b, S2b, S1b, QD, QC, QB, QA, Ocar, VCC, GND);
  Mux_74157 M2 (Y4, Y3, Y2, Y1, QD, QC, QB, QA, B4, B3, B2, B1, select, STB);
  Counter_74161 M3 (A3, A2, A1, A0, COUT, D, C, B, A, count, count, Load, clock, clear);
  RAM_74189 M4 (S4, S3, S2, S1, Y4, Y3, Y2, Y1, A3, A2, A1, A0, CS, WE);
  Reg_74194 M5 (QD, QC, QB, QA, D4, D3, D2, D1, Ocar, SIL, s1, s0, clock, clear);
endmodule

module t_Supp_11_16 ();
  wire [3: 0] sum;
  wire carry;
  reg [3: 0] Data_in, Addr_in;
  reg SIR, SIL, CS, WE, s1, s0, count, Load, select, STB, clock, preset, clear;
  supply1 VCC;
  supply0 GND;
  wire [3: 0] RAM_0 = M0.M4.RAM[0];
  wire [3: 0] RAM_1 = M0.M4.RAM[1];
  wire [3: 0] RAM_2 = M0.M4.RAM[2];
  wire [3: 0] RAM_3 = M0.M4.RAM[3];
  wire [3: 0] RAM_4 = M0.M4.RAM[4];
  wire [3: 0] RAM_5 = M0.M4.RAM[5];
  wire [3: 0] RAM_6 = M0.M4.RAM[6];

```

```

wire [3: 0] RAM_7 = M0.M4.RAM[7];
wire [3: 0] RAM_8 = M0.M4.RAM[8];
wire [3: 0] RAM_9 = M0.M4.RAM[9];
wire [3: 0] RAM_10 = M0.M4.RAM[10];
wire [3: 0] RAM_11 = M0.M4.RAM[11];
wire [3: 0] RAM_12 = M0.M4.RAM[12];
wire [3: 0] RAM_13 = M0.M4.RAM[13];
wire [3: 0] RAM_14 = M0.M4.RAM[14];
wire [3: 0] RAM_15 = M0.M4.RAM[15];

```

```

wire [4: 1] word = {M0.S4b, M0.S3b, M0.S2b, M0.S1b};
wire [4: 1] mux_out = { M0.Y4, M0.Y3, M0.Y2, M0.Y1};
wire [4: 1] Reg_Output = {M0.QD, M0.QC, M0.QB, M0.QA};

```

Supp\_11\_16 M0 (sum, carry, Data\_in, Addr\_in, SIR, SIL, CS, WE, s1, s0, count, Load, select, STB, clock, preset, clear, VCC, GND);

```

integer k;
initial #600 $finish;
initial begin clock = 0; forever #5 clock = ~clock; end
initial fork
    #10 begin preset = 1; clear = 0; s1 = 0; s0 = 0; Load = 1; count = 0; CS = 1; WE = 1; STB = 0; end
    // initialize memory
    #10 begin k = 0; repeat (16) begin M0.M4.RAM[k] = 4'hf; k = k + 1; end end
    #20 begin Data_in = 4'hf; Addr_in = 0; select = 1; end
    #30 begin clear = 1; WE = 0; end
    // load memory
    #40 begin
        count = 1;
        CS = 0;
        begin
            repeat (16) @ (negedge clock) Data_in = Data_in + 1;
            count = 0;
            @ (negedge clock) CS = 1;
        end
    end
    #200 count = 1;           // Establish address
    #240 count = 0;
    #250 WE = 1;
    #260 CS = 0;             // Read from memory
    #280 clear = 0;
    #290 clear = 1;
    #300 count = 1;         // Establish address
    #340 begin s1 = 1; s0 = 1; count = 0; end
    #390 CS = 0;
    #400 clear = 0;         // Clear the registers
    #410 clear = 1;
    #420 begin count = 1; CS = 0; end           // Accumulate values
    #490 begin count = 0; CS = 1; end
join
endmodule

```

```

module Flip_flop_7474 (output reg Q, input D, CLK, preset, clear);
    always @ (posedge CLK, negedge preset, negedge clear)
        if (!preset)           Q <= 1'b1;
        else if (!clear)      Q <= 1'b0;
        else                  Q <= D;
endmodule

```

```

module Adder_7483 (
    output S4, S3, S2, S1, C4,
    input A4, A3, A2, A1, B4, B3, B2, B1, C0, VCC, GND
);
// Note: connect VCC and GND to supply1 and supply0 in the test bench
    wire [4: 1] sum;
    wire [4: 1] A = {A4, A3, A2, A1};
    wire [4: 1] B = {B4, B3, B2, B1};
    assign S4 = sum[4];
    assign S3 = sum[3];
    assign S2 = sum[2];
    assign S1 = sum[1];
    assign {C4, sum} = A + B + C0;
endmodule

module Mux_74157 (
    output reg Y1, Y2, Y3, Y4,
    input A1, A2, A3, A4, B1, B2, B3, B4, SEL, STB
);
    wire [4: 1] In_A = {A1, A2, A3, A4};
    wire [4: 1] In_B = {B1, B2, B3, B4};

    always @ (In_A, In_B, SEL, STB)
        if (STB) {Y1, Y2, Y3, Y4} = 4'b0;
        else if (SEL) {Y1, Y2, Y3, Y4} = In_B;
        else {Y1, Y2, Y3, Y4} = In_A;
endmodule

module Counter_74161 (
    output QD, QC, QB, QA,    // Data output
    output COUT,            // Output carry
    input D, C, B, A,       // Data input
    input P, T,             // Active high to count
    L,                      // Active low to load
    CK,                     // Positive edge sensitive
    CLR                     // Active low to clear
);
    reg [3: 0] A_count;
    assign QD = A_count[3];
    assign QC = A_count[2];
    assign QB = A_count[1];
    assign QA = A_count[0];
    assign COUT = ((P == 1) && (T == 1) && (L == 1) && (A_count == 4'b1111));

```



```

always @ (posedge CK, negedge CLR)
if (CLR == 0)          A_count <= 4'b0000;
else if (L == 0)       A_count <= {D, C, B, A};
else if ((P == 1) && (T == 1)) A_count <= A_count + 1'b1;
else                  A_count <= A_count; // redundant statement
endmodule

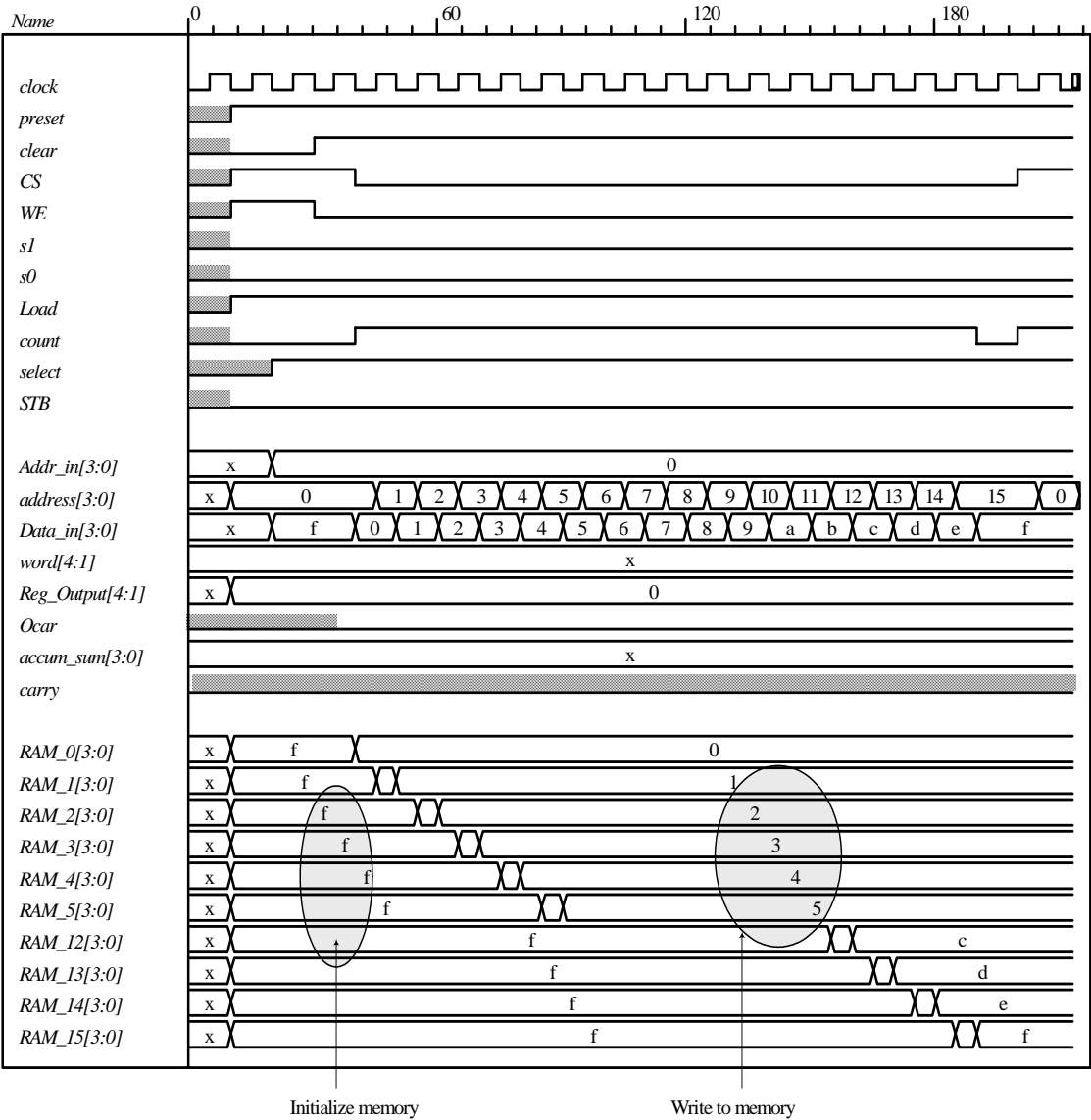
module RAM_74189 (output S4, S3, S2, S1, input D4, D3, D2, D1, A3, A2, A1, A0, CS, WE);
// Note: active-low CS and WE
wire [3: 0] address = {A3, A2, A1, A0};
reg [3: 0] RAM [0: 15]; // 16 x 4 memory
wire [4: 1] Data_in = { D4, D3, D2, D1}; // Input word
tri [4: 1] Data; // Output data word, three-state output
assign S1 = Data[1]; // Output bits
assign S2 = Data[2];
assign S3 = Data[3];
assign S4 = Data[4];

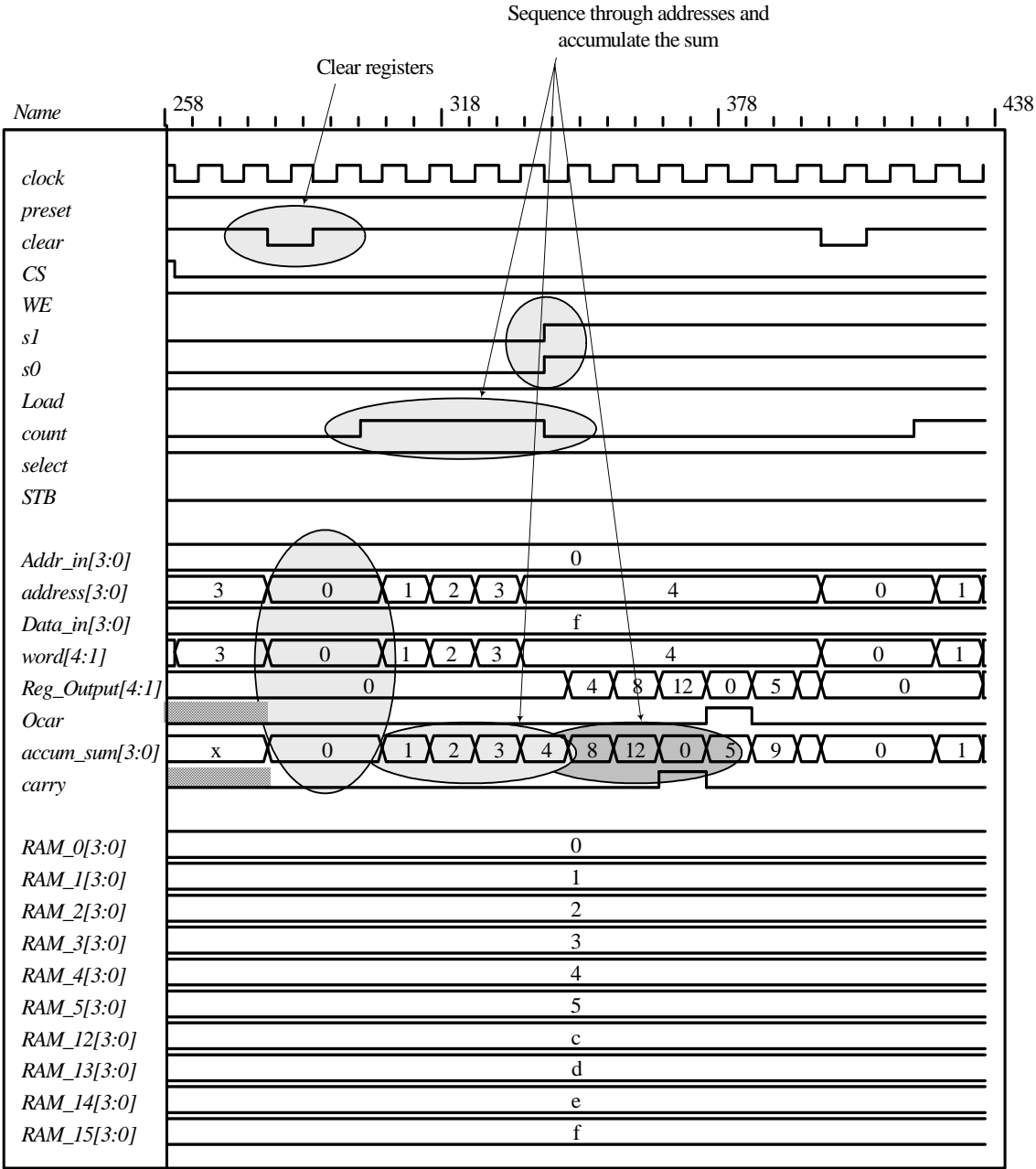
always @ (Data_in, address, CS, WE) if (~CS && ~WE) RAM[address] = Data_in;
assign Data = (~CS && WE) ? ~RAM[address] : 4'bz; // Note complement of data word
endmodule

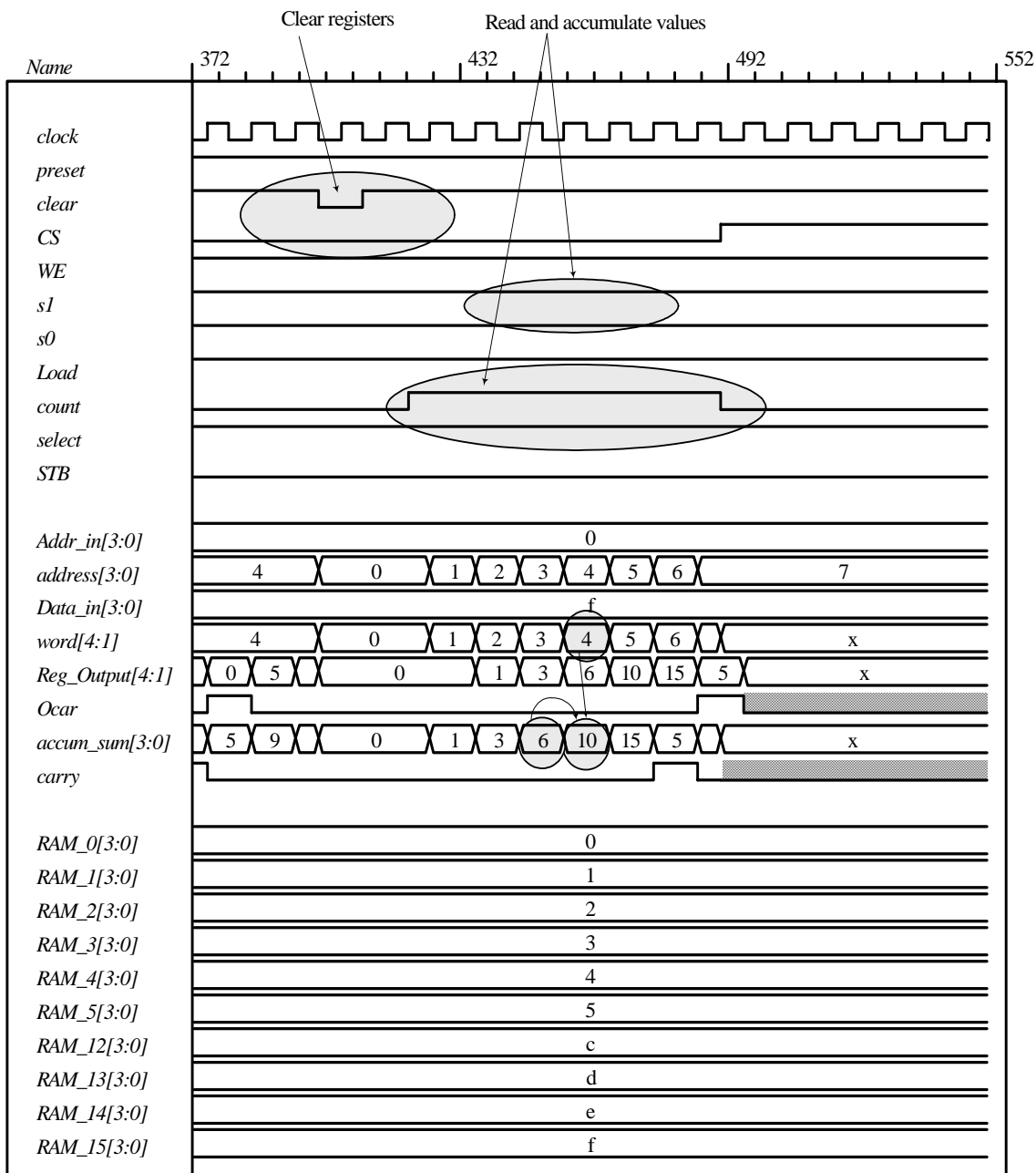
module Reg_74194 (
output reg QA, QB, QC, QD,
input A, B, C, D, SIR, SIL, s1, s0, CK, CLR
);
always @ (posedge CK, negedge CLR)
if (!CLR) {QA, QB, QC, QD} <= 4'b0;
else case ({s1, s0})
2'b00: {QA, QB, QC, QD} <= {QA, QB, QC, QD};
2'b01: {QA, QB, QC, QD} <= {SIR, QA, QB, QC};
2'b10: {QA, QB, QC, QD} <= {QB, QC, QD, SIL};
2'b11: {QA, QB, QC, QD} <= {A, B, C, D};
endcase
endmodule

```

Simulation results: initializing memory to 4'hf, then writing to memory. Note: the values of the inputs are ambiguous until the clear signal is asserted. Signals Ocar and carry are ambiguous because the output of memory is high-z until memory is read is read.







### Supplement to Experiment #17.

The HDL behavioral descriptions of the components in the block diagram of Fig. 11.23 are described in the solutions of previous experiments, along with their test benches and simulations results: 74161 in Experiment 10; 7483 in Experiment 7(a); 74194 in Experiment 14; and 7474 in Experiment 8(a). The structural description of the parallel adder instantiates these components to show how they are interconnected (see the solution to the supplement for Experiment 17 for a similar procedure). A test bench and simulation results for the integrated unit are given below.

```
// Control unit is obtained by modifying the solution to Prob. 8.24.
// Datapath is implemented with a structural HDL model and IC components.
// LOAD condition for 74194: s1 = 1, s0 = 1
// SHIFT condition: s1 = 0, s0 = 1
// NO CHANGE condition: s1 = 0, s0 = 0

module Supp_11_17_Par_Mult # (parameter dp_width = 4)
(
    output [2*dp_width - 1: 0] Product,
    output Ready,
    input [dp_width - 1: 0] Multiplicand, Multiplier,
    input Start, clock, reset_b, VCC, GND
);
    wire Load_regs, Incr_P, Add_regs, Shift_regs, Done, Q0;

    Controller M0 (
        Ready, Load_regs, Incr_P, Add_regs, Shift_regs, Start, Done, Q0,
        clock, reset_b);

    Datapath M1(Product, Q0, Done, Multiplicand, Multiplier,
        Start, Load_regs, Incr_P, Add_regs, Shift_regs, clock, reset_b, VCC, GND);
endmodule

module Controller (
    output Ready,
    output reg Load_regs, Incr_P, Add_regs, Shift_regs,
    input Start, Done, Q0, clock, reset_b
);

    parameter S_idle = 3'b001, // one-hot code
               S_add = 3'b010,
               S_shift = 3'b100;

    reg [2: 0] state, next_state; // sized for one-hot
    assign Ready = (state == S_idle);

    always @ (posedge clock, negedge reset_b)
        if (~reset_b) state <= S_idle; else state <= next_state;
    always @ (state, Start, Q0, Done) begin
        next_state = S_idle;
        Load_regs = 0;
        Incr_P = 0;
        Add_regs = 0;
        Shift_regs = 0;
        case (state)
            S_idle: if (Start) begin next_state = S_add; Load_regs = 1; end
            S_add: begin next_state = S_shift; Incr_P = 1; if (Q0) Add_regs = 1; end
            S_shift: begin
                Shift_regs = 1;
                if (Done) next_state = S_idle;
                else next_state = S_add;
            end
            default: next_state = S_idle;
        endcase
    end
endmodule

module Datapath #(parameter dp_width = 4, BC_size = 3) (
    output [2*dp_width - 1: 0] Product, output Q0, output Done,
    input [dp_width - 1: 0] Multiplicand, Multiplier,
    input Start, Load_regs, Incr_P, Add_regs, Shift_regs, clock, clear, VCC, GND
);
```

```

wire C;
wire Cout, Sum3, Sum2, Sum1, Sum0, P3, P2, P1, P0, A3, A2, A1, A0;
wire Q3, Q2, Q1;
wire [dp_width - 1: 0] A = {A3, A2, A1, A0};
wire [dp_width - 1: 0] Q = {Q3, Q2, Q1, Q0};
assign Product = {C, A, Q};
wire [BC_size - 1: 0] P = {P3, P2, P1, P0};

// Registers must be controlled separately to execute add and shift operations correctly.
// LOAD condition for 74194: s1 = 1, s0 = 1
// SHIFT condition: s1 = 0, s0 = 1
// NO CHANGE condition: s1 = 0, s0 = 0

wire B3 = Multiplicand[3];      // Data word to adder
wire B2 = Multiplicand[2];
wire B1 = Multiplicand[1];
wire B0 = Multiplicand[0];
wire Q3_in = Multiplier[3];
wire Q2_in = Multiplier[2];
wire Q1_in = Multiplier[1];
wire Q0_in = Multiplier[0];
assign Done = ({P3, P2, P1, P0} == dp_width);    // Counts bits of multiplier
wire s1A = Load_regs || Add_regs;                // Controls for A register
wire s0A = Load_regs || Add_regs || Shift_regs;
wire s0Q = Load_regs || Shift_regs;              // Controls for Q register
wire s1Q = Load_regs;
wire Pout;                                         // Unused
wire clr_P = clear && ~Load_regs;
Flip_flop_7474 M0_C (C, Cout, clock, VCC, clr_P);
Adder_7483 M1 (Sum3, Sum2, Sum1, Sum0, Cout, A3, A2, A1, A0, B3, B2, B1, B0, GND, VCC, GND);
Counter_74161 M3_P (P3, P2, P1, P0, Pout, GND, GND, GND, GND, Incr_P, Incr_P, VCC, clock,
clr_P);
Reg_74194 M4_A (A3, A2, A1, A0, Sum3, Sum2, Sum1, Sum0, C, GND, s1A, s0A, clock, clr_P);
Reg_74194 M5_Q (Q3, Q2, Q1, Q0, Q3_in, Q2_in, Q1_in, Q0_in, A0, GND, s1Q, s0Q, clock, clear);

endmodule

module t_Supp_11_17_Par_Mult;
parameter dp_width = 4;      // Width of datapath
wire [2 * dp_width - 1: 0] Product;
wire Ready;
reg [dp_width - 1: 0] Multiplicand, Multiplier;
reg Start, clock, reset_b;
integer Exp_Value;
reg Error;
supply0 GND;
supply1 VCC;
Supp_11_17_Par_Mult M0 (Product, Ready, Multiplicand, Multiplier, Start, clock, reset_b, VCC, GND);
wire [dp_width - 1: 0] sum = {M0.M1.Sum3, M0.M1.Sum2, M0.M1.Sum1, M0.M1.Sum0};
initial #115000 $finish;
initial begin clock = 0; #5 forever #5 clock = ~clock; end
initial fork
    reset_b = 1;
    #2 reset_b = 0;
    #3 reset_b = 1;
join
always @ (negedge Start) begin
    Exp_Value = Multiplier * Multiplicand;
    //Exp_Value = Multiplier * Multiplicand + 1;    // Inject error to confirm detection
end

```

```

always @ (posedge Ready) begin
    # 1 Error <= (Exp_Value ^ Product) ;
end
initial begin
    #5 Multiplicand = 0;
    Multiplier = 0;
    repeat (32) #10 begin
        Start = 1;
        #10 Start = 0;
        repeat (32) begin
            Start = 1;
            #10 Start = 0;
            #100 Multiplicand = Multiplicand + 1;
        end
        Multiplier = Multiplier + 1;
    end
end
endmodule

module Flip_flop_7474 (output reg Q, input D, CLK, preset, clear);
    always @ (posedge CLK, negedge preset , negedge clear)
    if (!preset)          Q <= 1'b1;
    else if (!clear)      Q <= 1'b0;
    else                  Q <= D;
endmodule

module Adder_7483 (
    output S4, S3, S2, S1, C4,
    input A4, A3, A2, A1, B4, B3, B2, B1, C0, VCC, GND
);
// Note: connect VCC and GND to supply1 and supply0 in the test bench
wire [4: 1] sum;
wire [4: 1] A = {A4, A3, A2, A1};
wire [4: 1] B = {B4, B3, B2, B1};
assign S4 = sum[4];
assign S3 = sum[3];
assign S2 = sum[2];
assign S1 = sum[1];
assign {C4, sum} = A + B + C0;
endmodule

module Counter_74161 (
    output  QD, QC, QB, QA,    // Data output
    output  COUT,             // Output carry
    input   D, C, B, A,       // Data input
    input   P, T,             // Active high to count
           L,                 // Active low to load
           CK,                // Positive edge sensitive
           CLR                 // Active low to clear
);
reg [3: 0] A_count;
assign QD = A_count[3];
assign QC = A_count[2];
assign QB = A_count[1];
assign QA = A_count[0];
assign COUT = ((P == 1) && (T == 1) && (L == 1) && (A_count == 4'b1111));

```

```

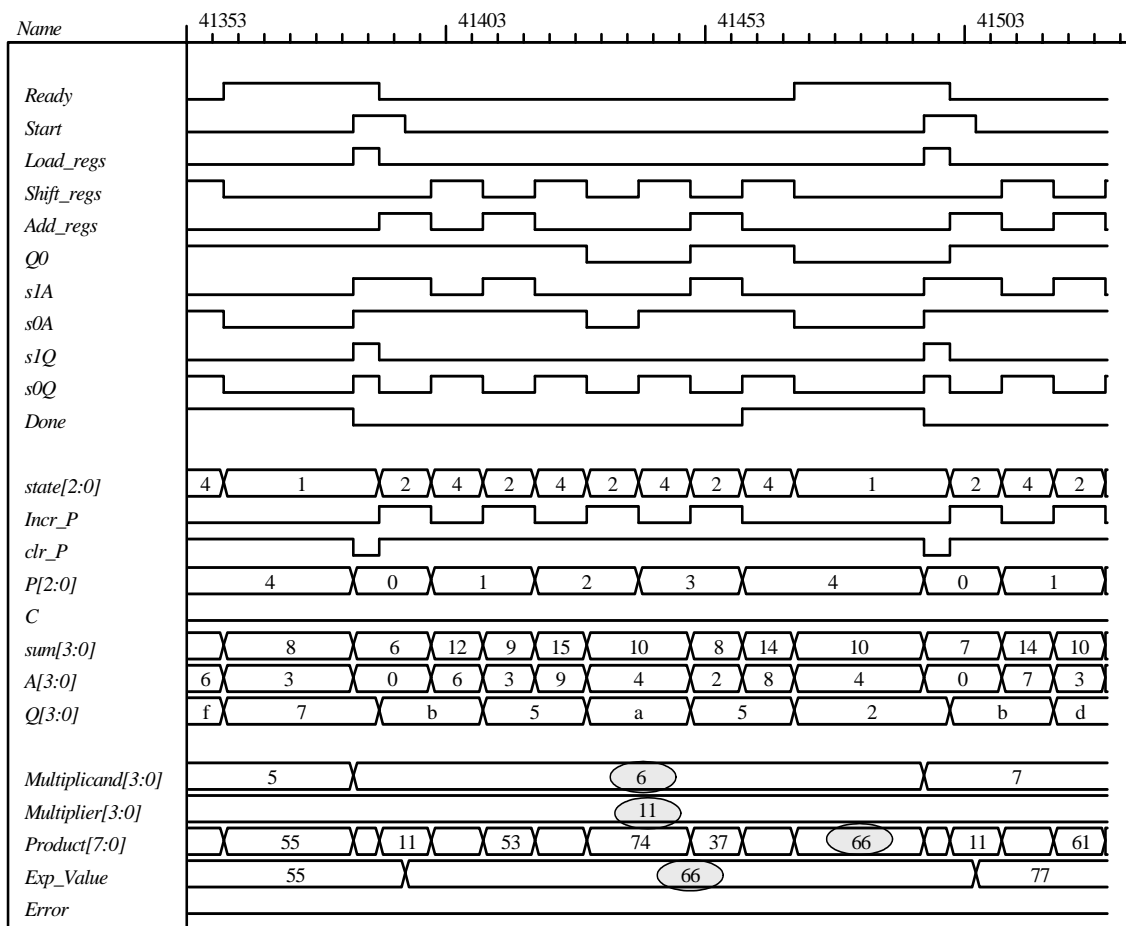
always @ (posedge CK, negedge CLR)
if (CLR == 0)      A_count <= 4'b0000;
else if (L == 0)   A_count <= {D, C, B, A};
else if ((P == 1) && (T == 1)) A_count <= A_count + 1'b1;
else              A_count <= A_count; // redundant statement
endmodule

```

```

module Reg_74194 (
output reg QA, QB, QC, QD,
input A, B, C, D, SIR, SIL, s1, s0, CK, CLR
);
always @ (posedge CK, negedge CLR)
if (!CLR) {QA, QB, QC, QD} <= 4'b0;
else case ({s1, s0})
2'b00: {QA, QB, QC, QD} <= {QA, QB, QC, QD};
2'b01: {QA, QB, QC, QD} <= {SIR, QA, QB, QC};
2'b10: {QA, QB, QC, QD} <= {QB, QC, QD, SIL};
2'b11: {QA, QB, QC, QD} <= {A, B, C, D};
endcase
endmodule

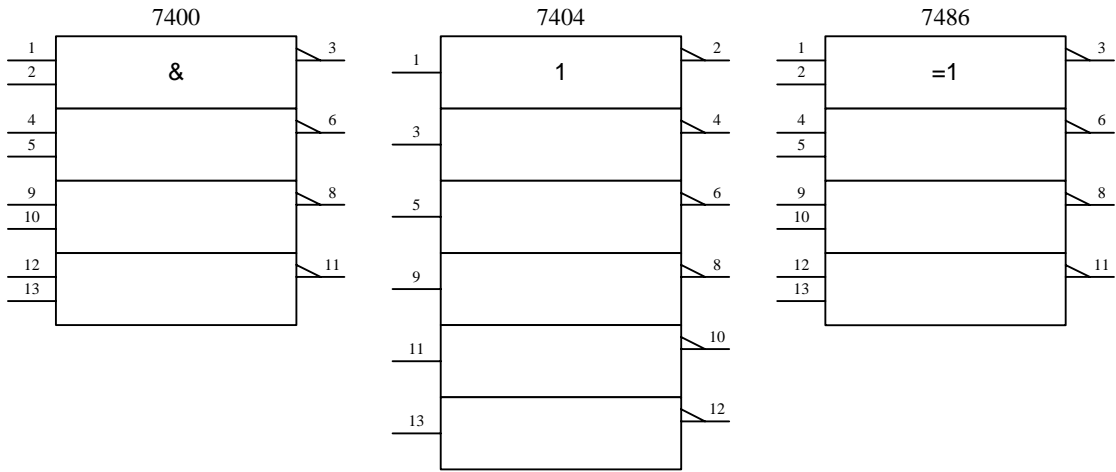
```





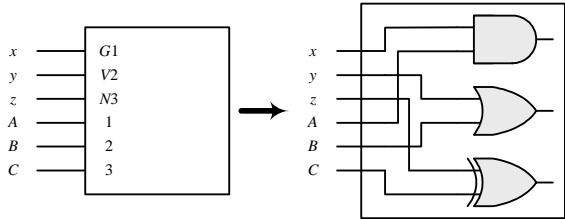
CHAPTER 12

12.1

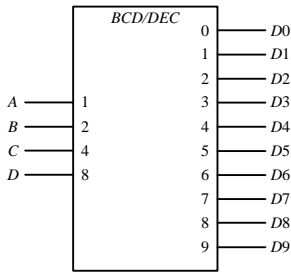


12.2 See textbook.

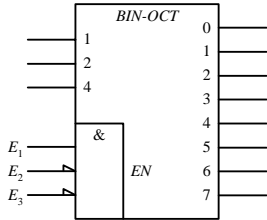
12.3



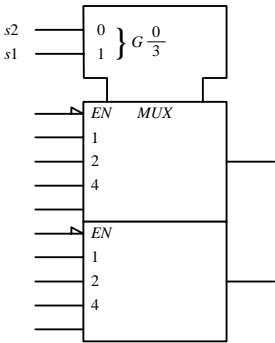
12.4 BCD-to-decimal decoder (similar to IC 7442)



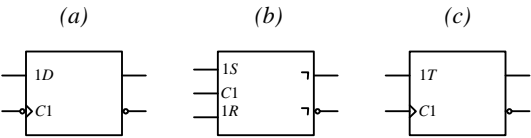
12.5 Similar to 7438:



12.6 IC type 74153.

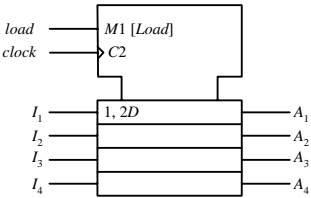


12.7



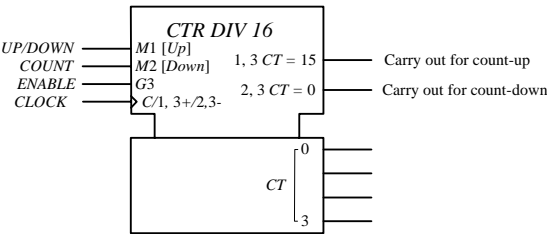
12.8 The common control block is used when the circuit has one or more inputs that are common to all lower sections.

12.9



12.10 See textbook.

12.11



12.12

